WARRANTY - LIMITED: THE EXECUTIVE 2005 1
WARRANTY - LIMITED: 2005 ROADMASTER CHASSIS . . .6
WARRANTY INFORMATION FILE 10

WARRANTY - LIMITED: THE EXECUTIVE 2005

MONACO MOTORHOME LIMITED WARRANTY

If you use your Monaco® motorhome only for recreational travel and family camping purposes, the Limited Warranty provided by Monaco ("Warrantor") covers your new motorhome when sold by an authorized dealer, for twelve (12) months from the original retail purchase date or the first 24,000 miles of use, whichever occurs first. However, the Limited Warranty provided by Warrantor covers the steel or aluminum frame structure of the sidewalls (excluding slide outs), roof, and rear and front walls for sixty (60) months from the original retail purchase date or the first 50,000 miles of use, whichever occurs first.

If you use your motorhome for any rental, commercial or business purposes whatsoever, the Limited Warranty provided by Warrantor covers your new motorhome when sold by an authorized dealer for ninety (90) days from the original retail purchase date or the first 24,000 miles of use, whichever occurs first. In addition, the Limited Warranty provided by Warrantor covers the steel or aluminum frame structure of the sidewalls (excluding slide outs), roof, and rear and front walls for twelve (12) months from the original retail purchase date or the first 24,000 miles of use, whichever occurs first. A conclusive presumption that your motorhome has been used for commercial and/or business purposes arises if you have filed a federal or state tax form claiming any business tax benefit related to your ownership of the motorhome.

The above Limited Warranty coverage applies to all owners, including subsequent owners, of the motorhome. However, a subsequent owner must submit a warranty transfer form by filing the form through an authorized Monaco dealer. A subsequent owner's warranty coverage period is the remaining balance of the warranty coverage period the prior owner was entitled to under this Limited Warranty. Warranty transfer forms can be obtained by contacting the Customer Relations Department. There is no charge for the transfer.

Limitations of Implied Warranties

ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES ARISING BY WAY OF STATE LAW, INCLUDING ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY AND ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ARE LIMITED IN DURATION TO THE TERM OF THIS LIMITED WARRANTY AND ARE LIMITED IN SCOPE OF COVERAGE TO THOSE PORTIONS OF THE MOTORHOME COVERED BY THIS LIMITED WARRANTY. Warrantor disclaims all implied and express warranties, including the implied warranty of merchantability and the implied warranty of fitness for a particular purpose, on components and appliances excluded from coverage as set forth below. There is no warranty of any nature made by Warrantor beyond that contained in this Limited Warranty. No person has authority to enlarge, amend or modify this Limited Warranty. The dealer is not the Warrantor's agent but is an independent entity. Warrantor is not responsible for any undertaking, representation or warranty made by any dealer or other person beyond those expressly set forth in this Limited Warranty. Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so the above limitation may not apply to you.

What the Warranty Covers

Warrantor's Limited Warranty covers defects in the manufacture of your motorhome and defects in materials used to manufacture your motorhome. Also see the section "What the Warranty Does Not Cover" set out below.

What We Will Do to Correct Problems

Warrantor will repair and/or replace, at its option, any covered defect if: (**1**) you notify Warrantor or one of its authorized servicing dealers of the defect within the warranty coverage period and within five (5) days of discovering the defect; and (**2**) you deliver your Motorhome to Warrantor or Warrantor's authorized servicing dealer at your cost and expense. It is reasonable to expect some service items to occur during the warranty period. The performance of warranty repairs shall not extend the original warranty coverage period. Further, any performance of repairs after the warranty coverage period has expired or any performance of repairs to component parts and appliances excluded from coverage shall be considered "good will" repairs, which shall not alter the express terms of this limited warranty.

Warrantor may use new and/or remanufactured parts and/or components of substantially equal quality to complete any repair.

Defects and/or damage to interior and exterior surfaces, trim, upholstery and other appearance items may occur at the factory during manufacture, during delivery of the motorhome to the selling dealer or on the selling dealer's lot. Normally, any such defect or damage is detected and corrected at the factory or by the selling dealer during the inspection process performed by the Warrantor and the selling dealer. If, however, you discover any such defect or damage when you take delivery of the motorhome, you must notify your dealer or Warrantor within five days of the date of purchase to have repairs performed to the defect at no cost to you as provided by this Limited Warranty.

If either three or more unsuccessful repair attempts have been made to correct any covered defect that you believe substantially impairs the value, use or safety of your motorhome or repairs to any covered defect(s), which you believe substantially impairs the value, use or safety of your motorhome, have taken 30 or more days to complete, you must, to the extent permitted by law, notify Warrantor directly in writing of the failure to successfully repair the defect(s) so that Warrantor can become directly involved in exercising a final repair attempt for the purpose of performing a successful repair to the identified defect(s).

How to Get Service

The Warranty Registration form must be returned to Warrantor promptly upon purchase to assure proper part replacement and repair of your motorhome. Failure to return the warranty registration form will not affect your rights under the Limited Warranty so long as you can furnish proof of purchase. For warranty service simply contact one of Warrantor's authorized service centers for an appointment, then deliver your motorhome (at your expense) to the service center. If you need assistance in locating an authorized warranty service facility, contact Warrantor's **Warranty Department (1-877-466-6226)**. The mailing address is:

Warranty Department
91320 Coburg Industrial Way
Coburg, Oregon 97408

In the event the motorhome is inoperative due to malfunction of a warranted part, Warrantor will pay the cost of having the motorhome towed to the nearest authorized repair facility provided you notify Warrantor prior to incurring the towing charges to receive directions to the nearest repair facility.

Because Warrantor does not control the scheduling of service work by its authorized servicing dealers, you may encounter some delay in scheduling and/or in the completion of the repairs.

What the Warranty Does Not Cover

This Limited Warranty does not cover: any motorhome sold or registered outside of the United States or Canada; items which are added or changed after the motorhome leaves Warrantor's possession; items that are working as designed but which you are unhappy with because of the design; normal wear and usage, such as fading or discoloration of fabrics, or the effects of condensation inside the motorhome; defacing, scratching, dents and chips on any surface or fabric of the motorhome, not caused by Warrantor; routine maintenance, including by way of example wheel alignments; the automotive chassis and power train, including, by way of example the engine, drivetrain, steering and handling, braking, wheel balance, muffler, tires, tubes, batteries and gauges; appliances and components covered by their own manufacturer's warranty including, by way of example the microwave, refrigerator, ice maker, stove, oven, generator, roof air conditioners, hydraulic jacks, VCR, television(s), water heater, furnace, stereo, radio, compact disc player, washer, dryer, inverter and cellular phone; or flaking, peeling and chips or other defects or damage in or to the exterior or finish caused by rocks or other road hazards, the environment including airborne pollutants, salt, tree sap and hail.

Events Discharging Warrantor from Obligation Under Warranty

Misuse or neglect, accidents, unauthorized alteration, failure to provide reasonable and necessary maintenance (See Owner's Manual), damage caused by off road use, collision, fire, theft, vandalism, explosions, overloading in excess of rated capacities, and odometer tampering shall discharge Warrantor from any express or implied warranty obligation to repair any resulting defect.

Disclaimer of Consequential & Incidental Damages

THE ORIGINAL PURCHASER OF THE MOTORHOME AND ANY PERSON TO WHOM THE MOTORHOME IS TRANSFERRED, AND ANY PERSON WHO IS AN INTENDED OR UNINTENDED USER OR BENEFICIARY OF THE MOTORHOME , SHALL NOT BE ENTITLED TO RECOVER FROM WARRANTOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES RESULTING FROM ANY DEFECT IN THE MOTORHOME. THE EXCLUSION OF CONSEQUENTIAL AND INCIDENTAL DAMAGES SHALL BE DEEMED INDEPENDENT OF, AND SHALL SURVIVE, ANY FAILURE OF THE ESSENTIAL PURPOSE OF ANY LIMITED REMEDY. Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of consequential or incidental damages, so the above exclusions may not apply to you.

THESE WARRANTIES ARE NOT INTENDED TO "EXTEND TO FUTURE PERFORMANCE". ANY ACTION TO ENFORCE THESE EXPRESS OR ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES SHALL NOT BE COMMENCED MORE THAN NINETY (90) DAYS AFTER THE EXPIRATION OF THE ONE YEAR WARRANTY COVERAGE PERIOD DESIGNATED ABOVE. IF YOU USE YOUR MOTOR HOME FOR COMMERCIAL OR BUSINESS PURPOSES, ANY ACTION TO ENFORCE THESE EXPRESS OR ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES SHALL NOT BE COMMENCED MORE THAN ONE YEAR AFTER THE EXPIRATION OF THE NINETY (90) WARRANTY COVERAGE PERIOD DESIGNATED ABOVE. THE PERFORMANCE OF REPAIRS SHALL NOT SUSPEND THIS LIMITATIONS PERIOD FROM EXPIRING. THESE TERMS AND ALL EXPRESS AND IMPLIED WARRANTY DISPUTES BETWEEN WARRANTOR AND PURCHASER SHALL BE GOVERNED BY THE SUBSTANTIVE LAWS OF THE STATE OF INDIANA, WITHOUT REGARD TO CONFLICTS OF LAW RULES. Some states do not allow the reduction in the statute of limitations or a choice of law provision, so the above reduction in the statute of limitations and/or choice of law provision may not apply to you.

THIS WARRANTY GIVES YOU SPECIFIC LEGAL RIGHTS. YOU MAY ALSO HAVE OTHER RIGHTS, WHICH VARY FROM STATE TO STATE.

101503

WARRANTY - LIMITED: 2005
ROADMASTER CHASSIS

ROADMASTER CHASSIS LIMITED WARRANTY

WHAT THE PERIOD OF COVERAGE IS:

If you use the Roadmaster Chassis that your motorhome is mounted upon for only recreational travel and family camping purposes, the Limited Warranty provided by Roadmaster ("Warrantor") covers your Roadmaster Chassis for thirty-six (36) months from the original retail purchase date or the first 36,000 miles of use, whichever occurs first.

If you use the Roadmaster Chassis that your motorhome is mounted upon for any rental, commercial or business purposes whatsoever, the Limited Warranty provided by Warrantor covers your new Roadmaster Chassis for Ninety (90) days from the original retail purchase date of the motorhome or the first 24,000 miles of use, whichever occurs first. A conclusive presumption that the Roadmaster Chassis has been used for commercial and/or business purposes arises if you have filed a federal or state tax form claiming any business tax benefit related to your ownership of the motorhome.

Limitations of Implied Warranties

ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES ARISING BY WAY OF STATE LAW, INCLUDING ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY AND ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ARE LIMITED IN DURATION TO THE TERM OF THIS LIMITED WARRANTY AND ARE LIMITED IN SCOPE OF COVERAGE TO THOSE PORTIONS OF THE ROADMASTER CHASSIS COVERED BY THIS LIMITED WARRANTY. Warrantor disclaims all implied and express warranties, including the implied warranty of merchantability and the implied warranty of fitness for a particular purpose, on components and appliances excluded from coverage as set forth below. There is no warranty of any nature made by Warrantor beyond that contained in this Limited Warranty. No person has authority to enlarge, amend or modify this Limited Warranty. Any dealer selling a motorhome assembled upon a Roadmaster Chassis is not the Warrantor's agent but is an independent entity. Warrantor is not responsible for any undertaking, representation or warranty made by any dealer or other person beyond those expressly set forth in this Limited Warranty. Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so the above limitation may not apply to you.

What the Warranty Covers

Warrantor's Limited Warranty covers defects in the manufacture of the Roadmaster Chassis and defects in materials used to manufacture the Roadmaster Chassis.

What We Will Do to Correct Problems

Warrantor will repair and/or replace, at its option, any covered defect if: (**1**) you notify Warrantor or one of its authorized servicing dealers of the defect within the warranty coverage period and within five (5) days of discovering any such defect; and (**2**) you deliver the Roadmaster Chassis to Warrantor or Warrantor's authorized servicing dealer at your cost and expense. It is reasonable to expect some service items to occur during the warranty period. The performance of warranty repairs shall not extend the original warranty coverage period. Further, any performance of repairs after the warranty coverage period has expired or any performance of repairs to component parts and appliances excluded from coverage shall be considered "good will" repairs, which shall not alter the express terms of this limited warranty.

Warrantor may use new and/or remanufactured parts and/or components of substantially equal quality to complete any repairs.

Defect and/or damage to the Roadmaster Chassis may occur during manufacture at the factory, during delivery of the motorhome to the selling dealer or on the selling dealer's lot. Normally, any factory defect or damage is detected and corrected at the factory or by the selling dealer during the inspection process performed by the Warrantor and the selling dealer. If, however, you discover any such defect or damage when you take delivery of the Roadmaster Chassis, you must notify your dealer or Warrantor within five days of the date of purchase to have repairs performed to any such defect at no cost to you as provided by this Limited Warranty.

If either three or more unsuccessful repair attempts have been made to correct any covered defect that you believe substantially impairs the value, use or safety of your motorhome or repairs to any covered defect(s), which you believe substantially impairs the value, use or safety of your motorhome, have taken 30 or more days to complete, you must, to the extent permitted by law, notify Warrantor directly in writing of the failure to successfully repair the defect(s) so that Warrantor can become directly involved in exercising a final repair attempt for the purpose of performing a successful repair to the identified defect(s).

How to Get Service

For warranty service simply contact one of Warrantor's authorized service centers for an appointment, then deliver your Roadmaster Chassis (at your expense) to the service center. If you need assistance in locating an authorized warranty service facility, contact Warrantor's **Warranty Department** (**1-877-466-6226**). The mailing address is:

Warranty Department
91320 Coburg Industrial Way
Coburg, Oregon 97408

In the event the Roadmaster Chassis is inoperative due to malfunction of a warranted part, Warrantor shall pay the cost of having the Roadmaster Chassis that the motorhome is mounted upon towed to the nearest authorized repair facility provided you notify Warrantor prior to incurring the towing charges to receive directions to the nearest repair facility.

Because Warrantor does not control the scheduling of service work by its authorized servicing dealers, you may encounter some delay in scheduling and/or in the completion of the repairs.

What the Warranty Does Not Cover

This Limited Warranty does not cover: modifications and alterations to the Roadmaster Chassis by others; the motorhome that is mounted upon the Roadmaster Chassis, including by way of example the motorhome manufacturer's design, manufacture, assembly and/or installation of the side walls, roof, windows, flooring, electrical system, plumbing system, LP gas system, appliances and slide outs; items that are working as designed but which you are unhappy with because of the design; normal wear and usage; routine maintenance including by way of example wheel alignments; component parts covered by their own manufacturer's warranty, including by way of example the engine, transmission, tires, tubes, batteries, exhaust system and the emission control systems; and, flaking, peeling rusting and chips or other defects or damage in or to the frame and frame cross members caused by rocks or other road hazards and the environment including airborne pollutants and salt.

Events Discharging Warrantor from Obligation Under Warranty

Misuse or neglect, accidents, unauthorized alteration, failure to provide reasonable and necessary maintenance (See Owner's Manual), damage caused by off road use, collision, fire, theft, vandalism, explosions, overloading in excess of rated capacities, and odometer tampering shall discharge Warrantor from any express or implied warranty obligation to repair any resulting defect.

Disclaimer of Consequential & Incidental Damages

THE ORIGINAL RETAIL PURCHASER OF THE ROADMASTER CHASSIS AND ANY PERSON TO WHOM THE ROADMASTER CHASSIS IS TRANSFERRED, AND ANY PERSON WHO IS AN INTENDED OR UNINTENDED USER OR BENEFICIARY OF THE ROADMASTER CHASSIS, SHALL NOT BE ENTITLED TO RECOVER FROM WARRANTOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES RESULTING FROM ANY DEFECT IN THE MOTORHOME. THE EXCLUSION OF CONSEQUENTIAL AND INCIDENTAL DAMAGES SHALL BE DEEMED INDEPENDENT OF, AND SHALL SURVIVE, ANY FAILURE OF THE ESSENTIAL PURPOSE OF ANY LIMITED REMEDY. Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of consequential or incidental damages, so the above exclusions may not apply to you.

Legal Remedies

THESE WARRANTIES ARE NOT INTENDED TO "EXTEND TO FUTURE PERFORMANCE". ANY ACTION TO ENFORCE THESE EXPRESS OR ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES SHALL NOT BE COMMENCED MORE THAN NINETY (90) DAYS AFTER THE EXPIRATION OF THE ONE YEAR WARRANTY COVERAGE PERIOD DESIGNATED ABOVE. IF YOU USE YOUR ROADMASTER CHASSIS FOR COMMERCIAL OR BUSINESS PURPOSES, ANY ACTION TO ENFORCE THESE EXPRESS OR ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES SHALL NOT BE COMMENCED MORE THAN ONE YEAR AFTER THE EXPIRATION OF THE NINETY (90) WARRANTY COVERAGE PERIOD DESIGNATED ABOVE. THE PERFORMANCE OF REPAIRS SHALL NOT SUSPEND THIS LIMITATIONS PERIOD FROM EXPIRING. THESE TERMS AND ALL EXPRESS AND IMPLIED WARRANTY DISPUTES BETWEEN WARRANTOR AND PURCHASER SHALL BE GOVERNED BY THE SUBSTANTIVE LAWS OF THE STATE OF INDIANA, WITHOUT REGARD TO CONFLICTS OF LAW RULES. Some states do not allow the reduction in the statute of limitations or a choice of law provision, so the above reduction in the statute of limitations and/or choice of law provision may not apply to you.

THIS WARRANTY GIVES YOU SPECIFIC LEGAL RIGHTS. YOU MAY ALSO HAVE OTHER RIGHTS, WHICH VARY FROM STATE TO STATE.

ROADMASTER CHASSIS DIVISION
MONACO COACH CORPORATION
91320 COBURG INDUSTRIAL WAY
COBURG, OREGON 97408

101503

WARRANTY INFORMATION FILE

In addition to this Owner's Manual you will find a Warranty Information File in your unit. This file contains valuable documents about your motorhome's systems and equipment. Many of the component manufacturer's warranty registration cards can be found in the box. They will need to be filled out and mailed. Be sure you read and understand all the information in this file to help you safely operate, maintain and troubleshoot those items.

WOOD FINISH

Because no two trees look alike, authentic woods vary in color and character markings such as streaks, knots and grain patterns. Since the stains may attach differently to these grain patterns, some natural light and dark areas may result. The beauty lies in these natural variations of color and grain that give each cabinet its own individual charm.

The beauty of these products is protected with a furniture-quality exterior finish. After a period of time, there may be minimal changes in the finish color as it ages in its surrounding conditions. This is an inherent characteristic of this particular finish, and the natural aging process adds to the unique appearance of the cabinetry. Due to the minor differences in tone, it may not be possible to match the finish color of existing cabinets exactly when replacing doors or adding additional cabinets at a later date.

The foregoing is not a warning. See the Limited Warranty or call (877) 466-6226 for warranty information and limitations.

The Executive 2005

Sections

General Information ~ 1

Driving & Safety ~ 2

Exterior & Interior Care ~ 3

Appliances ~ 4

Equipment ~ 5

Water Systems ~ 6

LP-Gas Systems ~ 7

Electrical Systems - House ~ 8

Electrical Systems - Chassis ~ 9

Chassis Information ~ 10

Index ~ pp 529

The information contained in this document is intended to reflect standard and optional equipment included in a typically equipped model at the time of delivery to the initial retail owner. Your actual unit may vary from this document as a result of optional equipment that is not generally offered on this model. In the case that you are not the initial retail owner of this unit, this document will not reflect modifications that may have been performed by previous owners.

Product information and specifications are shown herein as of the time of printing. The motorhome manufacturer reserves the right to change product specifications, designs and standard equipment without notice and without incurring obligation.

©Copyright Monaco Coach Corporation. All rights reserved. Executive® is a registered trademark of Monaco. All other trademarks or registered trademarks are property of their respective holders. Brand name products of other companies mentioned in this manual are not endorsed by the manufacturer of the motorhome.

04054ATG

The Executive 2005

General Information

Section 1

SAFETY LEGEND....15
INTRODUCTION....17
CUSTOMER RELATIONS....18
REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS....18
TAKING DELIVERY....18
Monaco Responsibilities....18
Dealer Responsibilities....19
Customer Responsibilities....19
SERVICE SUGGESTIONS....19
Prepare for the Appointment....20
Prepare a List....20
Be Reasonable With Your Requests....20
No Looking Over the Technician's Shoulder....20
Inspect the Work Properly....20
GLOSSARY OF TERMS....21
VENDOR LIST....25
LIMITED WARRANTY TRANSFER APPLICATION....31

WARNING: Information pertaining to personal safety and/or potential extensive or permanent damage to the motorhome.

CAUTION: Information pertaining to potential damage to the motorhome and/or its components.

DANGER: Information pertaining to danger or caution of potential electrical shock to person(s) or component(s), and/or risk of electrical fire to motorhome.

FLAMMABLE or EXPLOSIVE: Information concerning fire or explosive material pertaining to personal safety and/or protection of the motorhome and its components.

POISON: Information pertaining to safety and/or use of a poisonous substance or harmful chemical.

NOTE: Information and reminders concerning operation of motorhome and/or components.

INSPECTION: Inspection of the motorhome and/or its components is required. Additional instruction may follow.

LUBE: Lubrication, or addition of a lubricant product, to the motorhome and/or a specified component or part is required. Additional instruction may follow.

ASSEMBLE/REPAIR: Assembly, disassembly or installation of a component or part, and/or repair to the motorhome may be required. Assistance of Technical Support or Technician may be necessary.

INFORMATION: References to additional information regarding operation of the motorhome and/or its components found in additional sources other than the Owner's Manual. Also refers to the WARRANTY INFORMATION FILE, found within the Warranty Information Box inside the motorhome.

TIP: Information regarding helpful hints and/or suggestion for ease of operation of the motorhome and/or its components.

This section contains warranty information and knowledge for the operation and care of the motorhome. Not all information may be applicable to your model of motorhome. More detailed information with **CAUTION** or **WARNING** instructions, other than what is found in this chapter, can be found in the manufacturer's owner manuals located in the owner information box.

Safety Instructions:

Many of the safety alert symbols are "Personal Safety Instructions." Definitions for the symbols are located on a previous page under "Safety Symbol Legend." It is important to thoroughly read and understand these safety instructions where the symbols are displayed throughout the manual. Failure to comply with specific instructions may result in personal injury or death. Many instructions are required by National Safety Associations.

Additional Information:

Changes, additions and supplemental information in the form of Manual Addendums and "Tech Tips" can be obtained by visiting our Website at **www.monaco-online.com**. Select one of the products from the product lineup. Go to the Service menu. A submenu will appear.

It may also be helpful to browse the "Tech Tips" menu for the other product lines. The tips may not completely apply to your particular model but information contained therein can be useful.

MANUAL ADDENDUMS

www.monaco-online.com

Click on **Monaco**, then click on **ENTER** to enter the main web page. Point on the **SERVICE** link and choose **OWNERS MANUAL ADDENDUMS** from the drop down menu.

TECH TIPS

Find current and archived tech tips with answers to frequently asked questions at:

www.monaco-online.com

Click on **Monaco,** then click on **ENTER** to enter the main web page. Point on the **SERVICE** link and choose **TECH TIPS** from the drop down menu.

Out and About in the Motorhome:

In time you will develop a knack for spotting wonderful little roadside locations by turning off the main highway and exploring. There are many modern recreational vehicle parks (including state, county and federal parks) with good facilities where you can obtain hook-ups for electrical, water and sewage connections. Directories are published which describe these parks and the availability of services and hook-ups. On overnight or weekend trips, chances are you will probably not fill up the sewage holding tanks, deplete the water or LP-Gas supply, or run down the batteries which supply the living area with 12 Volt DC current. On longer trips, when you have stayed where sewer connections and utility hook-ups were not available, it will be necessary to occasionally empty the holding tanks and replenish the water and LP-Gas supply.

Many gas stations have installed sanitary dumping stations. Publications are available which list these dumping stations. When stopped for the night, the motorhome is built to be safely parked in any spot that is relatively level and where the ground is firm. Try to pick as level a parking spot as possible. All the facilities are fully self-contained and readily available within the motorhome.

CUSTOMER RELATIONS

Only by ensuring your confidence and satisfaction with our products and services can we have continued success as a manufacturer of motorhomes. We believe a good relationship with our customers is just as important as improving the technical excellence of our products. Your authorized dealer is pleased to help you with instructions about your motorhome and to offer service when you need it. If problems remain after you have consulted your dealer you are invited to contact our Customer Service Department. Please have all pertinent information (serial numbers, model number, etc.) when calling. We will work with the dealer and see that every attempt to resolve the matter is made.

Customer Service Department
91320 Coburg Industrial Way
Coburg, Oregon 97408
877-466-6226

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS

If you believe that your motorhome has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Monaco. If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of motorhomes, it may order a recall or remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer or Monaco. To contact NHTSA you may either call the Auto Safety Hot line toll-free at 1-800-424-9393 (or 1-202-366-0123 in the Washington D.C. area) or write to:

NHTSA
U.S. Department of Transportation
400 Seventh Street
Washington, DC 20590
www.nhtsa.dot.gov

TAKING DELIVERY
Monaco Responsibilities

Your motorhome has been manufactured to the highest quality and standards by factory trained personnel. Quality inspections are performed throughout the manufacturing process of your motorhome. The motorhome has been carefully and almost completely hand assembled in our factory. Prior to the motorhome arriving at the dealership, all systems have been carefully tested and inspected to ensure optimum performance. The necessary forms and required manuals have been placed in the motorhome at the time of shipment to the dealership.

Dealer Responsibilities

The dealer must perform additional pre-delivery inspections and system checks, assist in the customer's understanding of the Limited Warranty and assist in completing any necessary forms. They must do a customer orientation to the motorhome, its systems, components and their operation.

The dealer should also ensure the customer receives a complete Owner's Packet with warranty cards and registrations for the motorhome and for separately warranted products, including detailed operating and maintenance instructions. The dealer is responsible for performing a review of the Limited Warranty provisions with the customer, while stressing the importance of mailing warranty cards and registrations to the manufacturers within the prescribed time limit to avoid loss of warranty coverage. They must assist the customer in completing these forms and locating serial numbers. They should request that the customer reads all warranty information when possible and explain any provision not clearly understood.

The dealer should instruct the customer on how to obtain local and out-of-town service on the motorhome and its various individual warranted components, whether the service is warrantable or out of warranty.

Customer Responsibilities

As a new motorhome owner you are responsible for regular and proper maintenance. This will help you prevent conditions arising from neglect that are not covered by your Limited Warranty. Maintenance services should be performed in accordance with this Owner's Manual, and any other applicable manuals. As the owner, it is your responsibility and obligation to return the motorhome to an authorized dealer for repairs and service (See the Limited Warranty). Since the authorized dealer where you purchased your new motorhome is responsible for its proper servicing before delivery, and has an interest in your continued satisfaction, we recommend that Inspection, Warranty and Maintenance Services be performed by the dealership. We suggest that you take your new motorhome on a weekend shakedown before leaving on an extended trip.

SERVICE SUGGESTIONS

Know when to take your motorhome in for service. Give some thought to the appointment time. There are several things to consider when selecting a time for service. Location of the service center and the time of year can be a major issue. Monday and Friday are busy days for most dealers. Therefore, it makes sense to make a mid-week appointment whenever possible. Ask your dealer if additional time is needed for check in and completion of paperwork.

Prepare for the Appointment

If you're having warranty work done, be sure to have your warranty registration papers with you. All work to be performed may not be covered by the warranty; be sure to discuss additional charges with the service manager. Keep a maintenance log of your motorhome service history. This can often provide a clue to the current problem.

Prepare a List

Make a written list of specific repairs needed. It is important the service manager be aware of all previous work which has been done on your motorhome. For example: if the motorhome has been repaired due to an accident. While this may not seem important, it could have a significant effect on the dealer's diagnosis of a problem.

Be Reasonable With Your Requests

Do not leave a list of 20 items to be serviced and expect to have the motorhome back by 5:00 p.m. If you list a number of items, and must have your motorhome back by the end of the day, discuss the situation with the service manager and list items in order of priority. Some items may not be able to be repaired due to work loads or parts availability. Expect to make a second appointment for work not completed or for the long, drawn-out repair item.

No Looking Over the Technician's Shoulder

Please do not be offended when you are told you cannot watch the work being done. Many service area insurance requirements forbid the admission of customers into the service work area.

Inspect the Work Properly

Check out the service or repair job when you pick up your motorhome and notify the service manager of any dissatisfaction. If circumstances prevent returning for immediate corrective work, make an appointment as soon as possible.

AC Electricity - Alternating current also known as household power.

Air Compressor - Pumps air to and builds air pressure in an air system.

Air Dryer - Cools, filters and dries the air delivered by an air compressor.

Air Governor - Controls the operation of the air compressor by constantly monitoring air pressure in the supply tank of the air system. The air governor initiates the unload cycle when the cut-out pressure is reached.

Ampere (Amp) - The unit of measure of electron flow rate of current through a circuit.

Ampere-hour (Amp-hr. AH) - A unit of measure for a battery electrical storage capacity, obtained by multiplying the current in amperes by the time in hours of discharge. (Example: A battery which delivers 5 amperes for 20 hours, delivers 5 amperes times 20 hours, or 100 Amp-Hr. of capacity.)

ANSI - American National Standards Institute.

ASTM - American Society for Testing and Materials.

Black Water - Term associated with the sewage holding tank. The toilet drains directly into this tank.

Chassis Battery - Powers chassis 12 Volt accessories and starts engine.

Circuit - An electric circuit is the path of an electric current. A closed circuit has a complete path. An open circuit has a broken or disconnected path.

City Water - A term associated with the water supply that you hook-up to at campgrounds. It is called city water because water is pulled from a central source (like in a city) and not the fresh water tank.

Compressor Load Cycle - The time during which the air compressor is building air pressure in an air system.

Compressor Unload Cycle - The time during which the air compressor is idling and is not building air pressure in an air system.

Curbside - This refers to the side of the motorhome which faces the curb when it is parked. Often called the door side or the passenger's side.

Current - The rate of flow of electricity or the movement rate of electrons along a conductor. It is comparable to the flow of a stream of water. The unit of measure for current is the ampere.

Current - Alternating (AC) - A current that varies periodically in magnitude and direction. A battery does not deliver alternating current. Also referred to as shore power, utility power, inverter power, generator power, etc.

Current - Direct (DC) - Power that is stored in a battery bank or supplied by photovoltaics, alternator, chargers and DC generators. Direct current is also known as battery power.

Cut-In Pressure - The pressure level in the air system supply tank which triggers the compressor load cycle. May apply to some water systems, such as water pump, accumulator tank, etc.

Cut-Out Pressure - The pressure level in the air system supply tank which triggers the compressor unload cycle. May apply to some water systems, such as water pump, accumulator tank, etc.

Cycle - In a battery, one discharge plus one recharge equals one cycle.

Desiccant - A granular substance that has a high affinity for water and is used to retain moisture from the air stream flowing through the air dryer cartridge.

Drain Trap - This is a curve that is in all drains. Water is trapped in the curve and this creates a barrier so tank odors cannot escape through the drain.

Dry Camping - Camping in the motorhome when there is no city water hook-up or shore power. In other words, using only the water and power that is in the motorhome and not from another source.

Drying Cycle - The time during which the air dryer cools, filters and removes moisture from the air delivered by the air compressor. The drying cycle begins and ends the same as the compressor load cycle.

Dump Station - A site where the waste (grey) and sewage (black) tanks can be drained. In most states it is illegal to drain waste tanks anywhere other than at a dump station.

Dump Valve - Another name for the T-handle valve used to drain the sewage (black) and waste (grey) tanks.

Egress Window - The formal name for the emergency window located in the rear of the motorhome. Egress windows can be easily identified by their red handles.

Full Hook-Up Site - A campground that has city water, shore power and sewer hook-ups or connections available.

Grey Water - Term associated with the waste water holding tank. Water from the sink drains, the shower and the washer/dryer (if equipped) go into this tank.

House Battery - Powers 12 Volt lights and accessories inside motorhome.

LED - (Light Emitting Diode) Indicator light.

Low Point Drain - The lowest point in the plumbing. Drains are placed here so that water will drain out of the lower end of the motorhome. These drains must be closed when you fill the water tank.

OHM - A unit for measuring electrical resistances.

Ohm's Law - Express the relationship between Volt (E), amperes (I) in an electrical circuit with resistance (R). It can be expressed as follows: E = IR. If any two of the three values are known, the third value can be calculated by using the above formula.

Pounds Per Square Inch Gauge (psig) - Pressure measured with respect to that of the atmosphere. This is a pressure gauge reading in which the gauge is adjusted to read zero at the surrounding atmospheric pressure. It is commonly called gauge pressure.

Purge - The initial blast of air (decompression) from the air dryer purge valve at the beginning of the air compressor.

Purge Cycle - The time during which the air dryer is undergoing purge and regeneration. This cycle starts at the beginning of the compressor unload cycle and normally ends well before the beginning of the compressor load cycle.

Regeneration - The mild backflow of air through the air dryer and out the purge valve that begins immediately after the purge and lasts normally 10 to 15 seconds. This backflow of air, from the air system and through the air dryer, removes moisture from the desiccant cartridge and prepares the air dryer for the next compressor load cycle.

Roadside - This refers to the side of the motorhome which faces the road when it is parked. Often called the off-door side or the driver's side.

Shore Line - This is the electrical cord which runs from the motorhome to the campground 120 Volt electrical supply.

Shore Line Plug - The 120/240 Volt AC outlet allows the motorhome to be hooked up to a campground facility.

Stinger - An arm attachment on a tow truck that is used to lift motorhome slightly so that it can be towed.

VIM - Vehicle Interface Module.

Volt - The unit of measure for electric potential.

Watt - The unit for measuring electrical power, i.e. the rate of doing work, in moving electrons by or against an electric potential.

Wet Cell Battery - A type of battery that uses liquid as an electrolyte. This type of battery requires periodic maintenance such as cleaning the connections and checking the electrolyte level.

Air Bags
Firestone
317-818-8600
www.bridgestone-firestone.com

Air Conditioner - Dash
SCS/Frigette
800-545-6341
www.scsfrigette.com

Air Conditioner - Roof
Dometic Corp.
800-544-4881
www.dometic.com

Air Filter
Donaldson
(612) 887-3131
www.donaldson.com

Aladdin™
Monaco Coach Corporation
Technical Support
877-466-6226

Alternator
Leece-Neville
800-346-8093
www.prestolite.com

Aqua-Hot (Optional)
Vehicle System
800-685-4298
www.hydro-hot.com

Awnings (Optional)
Carefree
800-621-2617
www.carefreeofcolorado.com

Awnings (Optional)
Girard Systems
800-382-8442
www.girardrv.com

Axles-ABS-ATC-Brakes
Eaton Corporation
800-826-4357
www.truck.eaton.com

Batteries
Interstate
800-272-6548
www.interstatebatteries.com

AGM (All-Electric Optional)
Lifeline Distributors Inc.
800-527-3224
www.lifelinebatteries.com

Battery Isolator Relay Delay
Intellitec
800-251-2408
www.intellitecsve.com

Carbon Monoxide Detector
Safe-T-Alert
800-383-0269
www.safe-t-alert.com

Citizen Band Radio
Cobra
733-889-3087
www.cobraelec.com

Collision Warning System (Optional)
Eaton Vorad
800-826-4357
www.truck.eaton.com

Cooktop
Kitchenaid (LP-Gas)
800-422-1230
www.kitchenaid.com

Seaward Products (Electric) (Optional)
562-699-7997
www.seawardproducts.com

Dash Radio
Panasonic
800-211-7262
www.panasonic.com

Dishwasher
Fisher/Paykel
1-800-863-5394
www.fisherpaykel.com

Drapery Motor
Somfy
800-637-6639
www.somfysystems.com

Dumping System (Optional)
RV Sanicon
866-410-1965
www.emptythetanks.com

DVD Player - Bedroom
Panasonic
800-211-7262
www.panasonic.com

Engine
Cummins
800-343-7357
www.cummins.com

Detroit Diesel (Optional)
800-445-1980
www.detroitdiesel.com

Entertainment Center - Bedroom
Fisher
800-421-5013
www.sanyoservice.com

Entry Step
Kwikee
800-736-9961
www.kwikee.com

Fan - Bathroom Exhaust
Fan-Tastic Vent
800-521-0298
www.fantasticvent.com

Fan - Kitchen Exhaust
KoolOMatic
269-863-2600

Faucet
Moen Faucets
800-289-6636
www.moen.com

Filters - Coolant/Fuel/Oil/Hydraulic
Detroit Power Cool/ Power Gaurd
800-445-1980
www.detroitdiesel.com

Fleetguard
800-223-4583
800-22Filter
www.fleetguard.com

Racor Fluid Filters
800-344-3286
www.parker.com/racor/

Fire Extinguisher
Kidde
800-880-6788
www.kiddesafety.com

Flooring - Plank (Optional)
Wilson Art
800-433-3222
www.wilsonart.com

Fuel Sender
Centroid Products
800-423-3574
www.centroidproducts.com

Generator
Onan
800-888-6626
www.onan.com

Home Theater System
Sony
800-222-7669
www.sony.com

Insta Hot (Optional)
Insinkerator
800-558-5700
www.insinkerator.com

Inverter
Xantrex
360-435-8826
www.traceengineering.com

Keyless Entry
Essex Electronics
800-539-5377
www.keyless.com

Leveling Jacks - Hydraulic (Optional)
RVA
760-746-5732

Leveling System - Air
HWH Corporation
800-321-3494
www.hwhcorp.com

LP-Detector
MTI Industries, Inc.
800-383-0269
www.mtiindustries.com

LP - Gas Tank
Brunner
574-534-9328
www.mantank.com

Manabloc Water Manifold
Vanguard Pipe
800-775-5039
www.vanguardpipe.com

Microwave
Sharp Electronics Corp.
800-237-4277
www.sharp-usa.com

Mirror (Ceiling)
Wilsonart
800-433-3222
www.wilsonart.com

Navigation System
Pioneer
800-746-6337
www.pioneerelectronics.com

Outside Mirrors
Velvac Mirror
800-783-8871
www.velvac.com

On Star (Optional)
River Park
1-800-442-7717
www.riverparkinc.com

Power Cord/ Power Hose Reel (Optional)
Glendinning Marine
800-500-2380
www.glendinningprods.com

Rear Vision System
Kenwood
800-536-9663
www.kenwoodusa.com

Refrigerator
Norcold
800-543-1219
www.norcold.com

Whirlpool (All Electric Optional)
800-253-1301
www.whirlpoolcorp.com

Safe (Optional)
Allied Safe
800-448-8338
www.alliedsafe.com

Satellite Radio (Optional)
Sirius
1-888-539-7474
www.siriusradio.com

Satellite Systems (Optional)
KVH
888-584-4163
www.kvh.com

Tracstar
407-650-9054
www.tracstar.com

Satellite Receiver (Optional)
River Park
1-800-442-7717
www.riverparkinc.com

Security System - Viper (Optional)
Directed Electronics Inc.
800-876-0800
www.directed.com

Shock Absorbors
Bilstein
800-537-1085
www.bilstein.com

Slide-Out Motor - Electric (Bedroom)
Power Gear
800-344-4712
www.powergear.com

Slide-out Motor - Hydraulic
HWH Corporation
800-321-3494
www.hwhcorp.com

Smoke Detector
MTI Industries, Inc.
800-383-0269
www.mtiindustries.com

Solar Panels (Optional)
RV Solar Consultants
541-937-9812
www.amsolar.com

Steering Gear
TRW
615-444-6110
www.trw.com

Steering Wheel (Smart Wheel)
Vehicle Improvement Products
847-395-7250
www.vipwheels.com

Storage Trays (Optional)
Kwikee
800-736-9961
www.kwikee.com

Television
Sharp LCD
800-237-4277
www.sharp-usa.com

Sony Vega
800-222-7669
www.sony.com

Television Antenna
Winegard
800-288-8094
www.winegard.com

Tires
Goodyear Tire & Rubber
800-321-2136
www.goodyear.com

Toilet
Sealand
800-321-9886
www.sealandtechnology.com

Transfer Switch
ESCO
574-264-4156

Transmission
Allison Transmission
800-524-2303
www.allisontransmission.com

Universal Remote
Mito Corporation
800-433-6486
www.mitocorp.com

Washer/Dryer (Optional)
Splendide
800-356-0766 ext. 5
www.splendide.com

Water Filters
Premier/Watts
888-774-7405
www.wattspurewater.com

TruPure (Ozone)
920-863-2444
www.trupure.com

Water Pump
Aquatec
800-975-9995
www.aquatec.com

Wheels - Aluminum
Accuride
800-626-7096
www.accuridecorp.com

Windshield Wipers
Diesel Equipment
800-632-4959
www.dieselequipment.com

NOTES

Limited Warranty Transfer Application

Mail Monaco Coach Limited Warranty Transfer Application to:

Monaco Coach Corporation
Warranty Transfer
91320 Coburg Industrial Way
Coburg, OR 97408

Please read terms and representations below before signing.

DEALER IMPRINT

A PRIOR OWNER INFORMATION

TRANSFER COVERAGE FROM:

FIRST NAME | INITIAL | LAST NAME | VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

B NEW OWNER INFORMATION

TRANSFER COVERAGE TO:

FIRST NAME | INITIAL | LAST NAME | TELEPHONE NUMBER

STREET ADDRESS | DATE OF TRANSFER

CITY | STATE | ZIP | ODOMETER READING AT TRANSFER

C SIGNATURES

NEW OWNER'S SIGNATURE | SELLING DEALER SIGNATURE

TERMS & REPRESENTATIONS

By your signature(s) on this form, and in order to induce Monaco Coach Corporation to transfer its Limited Warranty, you represent the following:

1. That you have received and read a copy of the Limited Warranty.
2. You understand that the unit is to be used only for family camping and cross country travel on improved roads.
3. All information provided by you on this form is true and correct.
4. You understand that you are purchasing a pre-owned recreational vehicle and Monaco Coach Corporation does not make any representation as to its present condition.
5. You understand that the Limited Warranty does not cover the chassis, component parts and appliances if they are covered by a separate warranty issued by the chassis, component part or appliance manufacturer.

The Executive 2005

Driving & Safety

Section 2

DRIVING & SAFETY 35
- Inspections 35
- Familiarize Yourself 35
- Mirror Adjust (Manual) 35
- Safety Seat Belts 37
- Driving Tips 40

COLLISION WARNING SYSTEM (OPT) 45
- CWS Components 45
- Driver Display Unit 46
- Smart Cruise® 47
- Side Sensors 48
- CWS Situations 48
- Data Recorder 51

PRE-TRIP PREPARATIONS - CHECKLIST 52

HITCH 55
- Using the Rear Receiver 55
- Tow Plug Connection 56

REAR VIEW SYSTEM 57
- See Vision (OPT) 58

BACKING UP A MOTORHOME 59

SET-UP PROCEDURE CHECKLIST 61

DRY CAMPING TIPS 63

BREAKING CAMP 66

EMERGENCY ROADSIDE PROCEDURES 67
- Onstar® (OPT) 68
- In Case of Flat Tire 69
- Light - Retractable 70
- Running Out of Fuel 70
- Dead Chassis Battery 71

TOWING PROCEDURES 74
- Brake - Disabling Parking Brake 75

TIRES 76
- Importance of Air Pressure 77
- Tire Pressure Inflation Guideline 78
- Tire Chart - Goodyear 78
- Inspecting & Pressure 80
- Air Pressure Checklist 82
- Supporting When Leveling 83
- Tire Vibration 84
- Tire Rotation 84
- Tread 84
- Storage of Tires - Long Term 85

WHEEL MOUNTING 86

WEIGHING THE MOTORHOME 88
- Weight Label 92
- Six-Point Weighing (Example) 93

VIEWS 103
- Front 103
- Rear 103
- Roadside 104
- Curbside 104

SECURITY SYSTEM (OPT) 105

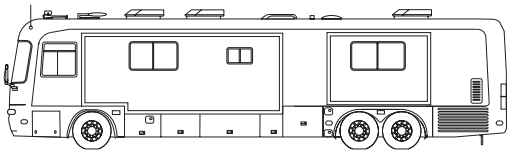
SMOKE DETECTOR 112
- Operation 112
- Testing 112
- Maintenance 113
- Troubleshooting 113

CARBON MONOXIDE DETECTOR 113
- Operation 114
- Alarm 115
- Testing 115
- Cleaning & Maintenance 116

FIRE EXTINGUISHER 117

ESCAPE (EGRESS) WINDOW 118

This section contains information on driving tips, emergency situations, towing, safety devices, weighing the motorhome and tires.



010688 no text

NOTE:
The motorhome has an electronic data recording device that may record information regarding direction, road speed, engine speed, brake application, steering attitude or other vehicle operating data. Data recording devices can be present in engines, transmissions, ABS (Antilock Brake Systems) or other systems affiliated with operation of the vehicle. Information from data recording devices can be examined in case of an accident. Contact the component manufacturer to learn more about these devices.

Inspections

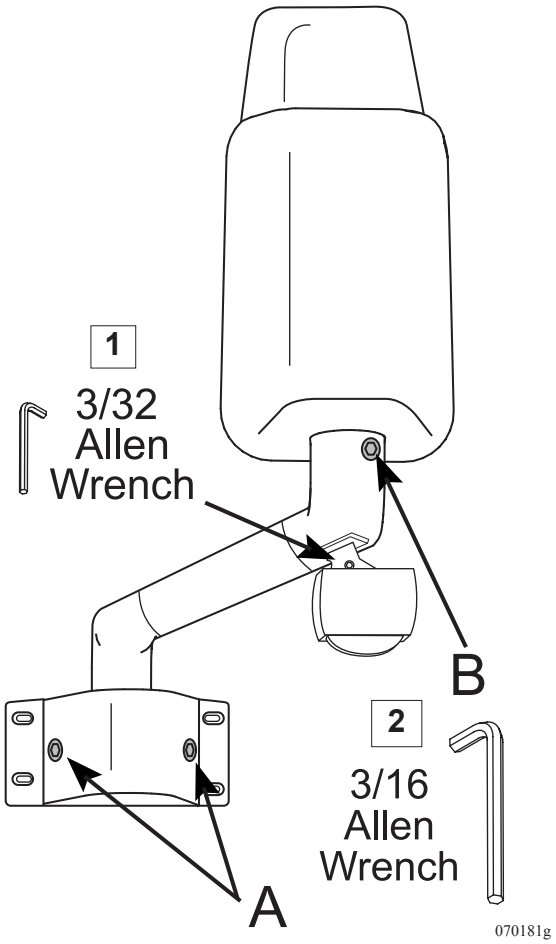
There are significant differences between a passenger automobile and a motorhome. Always be aware of these differences when traveling. The key to safely operating a motorhome is **inspection**. Undetected problems could cause problems on the road and may result in lost time and increased repair costs. **Several states require a special license endorsement and that the motorhome be inspected prior to registration.** Know and observe the laws of the states in which you will be traveling. Laws may vary from state to state. A systematic inspection conducted prior to moving the motorhome can help ensure nothing is overlooked and will assist in familiarizing the owner with the motorhome. Prior to moving the motorhome perform a general **inspection**, which includes examining the condition of the vehicle and the surrounding area of the motorhome. Look high and low when walking around the motorhome.

Familiarize Yourself

Because the location of the driver's seat in the motorhome is higher and farther to the left than most vehicles, a different perspective of the roadway is created. Rely on the outside mirrors to line up with the center of the road and to check conditions behind the motorhome. The dashboard may include more gauges and controls than are normally found in passenger automobiles. Become familiar with these gauges and their indications before starting out.

Mirror Adjust (Manual)

Prior to starting out, adjust mirrors. It is recommended have an assistant help with the adjustments to prevent damage to the mirror or the motorhome.



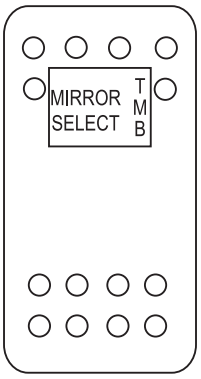
Mirror with optional "See Vision" camera

Mirror Adjusting:

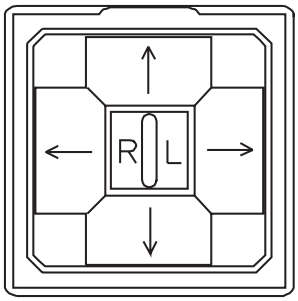
- Tools needed: 3/16" and 3/32" Allen wrench.
- Adjust the driver seat to travel position.
- Using 3/16" Allen wrench, have the assistant loosen the two 3/16" Allen set screws located at the base of the mirror (see A on illustration).
- Adjust the mirror for a clear side view of the motorhome.
- Tighten the two base screws once proper adjustment is made.
- Use a 3/32"Allen wrench to loosen the camera. Adjust the camera angle and retighten.
- To adjust the head of the mirror, loosen the screw located at point B. Adjust to the left or right.
- Make sure all Allen set screws are tight.

NOTE:

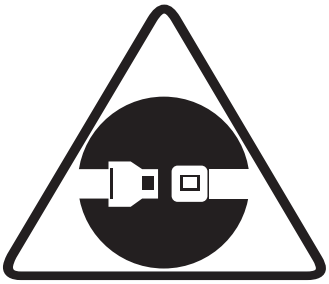
Use the mirror select and adjust switch located on the roadside console to fine tune the view.



Mirror Select Switch



Mirror Adjust Switch


seatbelt.eps

All occupants must be furnished with and use seat belts while the motorhome is moving. The driver's seat, and all other seats designed to carry passengers while the motorhome is in motion, are equipped with safety seat belts. Do not occupy beds or seats that are not equipped with a safety belt while the motorhome is in motion. The driver's seat must be locked in the forward facing position while motorhome is in motion. Do not use a seat belt on more than one person.

To fasten the seat belt, pull the belt out of the retractors and insert the tab into the buckle; you will hear a click when the tab locks into the buckle. Seat belt lengths automatically adjust to your size and sitting position. Do not route belts over armrest.

WARNING:
Safety belts are supplied at affixed seating positions. Do not occupy seats not equipped with safety belts while the motorhome is in motion. Seat belts must only be used on permanently mounted seats. Do not use a single seat belt on more than one person. Pilot and Co-pilot seats must be locked in a forward facing position with seat belts fastened while the motorhome is in motion. Avoid seat rotation while in transit.

Child Safety Seat:

Children that fit into **Example 1** and **Example 2** require the use of a child safety seat. In the motorhome, the child safety seat can be positioned in two places: the front passenger (co-pilot) seat and the forward facing permanently mounted booth dinette seat.

WARNING:
Children must not be transported unrestrained. Infants must be placed in approved safety seats. Small children must be restrained in child safety seats. Do not use a single seat belt on more than one child. Failure to comply with these rules can lead to injury or death.

NOTE:
Individual states and Canadian provinces may have laws that can exceed the requirements described above. It is your obligation to know and comply with the laws in the state or province in which you travel.

A child safety seat is required for a child:

- From birth to one year, or up to 21 pounds, the child is considered an infant. A (convertible) safety seat for an infant must be secured facing rearward. The top of the head must be below the top of the safety seat. Secure safety seat harness straps at or below the shoulders. (**See Example 1**).

Example 1: Convertible Seat Facing to the Rear.

• Children over 40 pounds (ages 4 to 8), unless over 4' 9", require a booster seat. The booster seat places the child's waist and shoulders at the proper height for the supplied safety belt to be effective. The top of the head must be below the top of the safety seat. (**See Example 2**).

Example 2: High back booster seat facing forward.

WARNING:
Installation illustrations are for reference only, and are not to be used as a guide. Because there are many styles of safety and booster seats, refer to the safety seat manufacturer's manual for proper installation and how to properly install and secure the safety or booster seat.

NOTE:
Individual states and Canadian provinces may prohibit use of a safety or booster seat in the front seat.

Seat Belt Care:

Keep the belt clean and dry. To clean, use mild soap and lukewarm water. Avoid cleaning seat belts with bleach, dye or abrasive cleansers that may weaken the belt material. Periodically inspect belts for cuts, frays or loose parts, and replace damaged parts. Do not disassemble or modify the system. Replace the seat belt assembly after a severe impact, even when damage is not obvious.

Driving Tips

downhill.eps

The motorhome is a complex vehicle that requires increased driving awareness because of its size and various components. Due to the motorhome length the turning radius will be much wider than that of a standard automobile. Always pay close attention to all perimeters of the motorhome: front, sides, rear, roof and undercarriage. Ensure the surrounding area is clear of obstacles. Utilize the driving mirrors to observe traffic conditions as well as the motorhome exterior: tires, bay doors, blind spots, etc. Use a push-pull method of steering, with both hands parallel on the steering wheel. The motorhome is also heavier than an automobile with a higher center of gravity. These factors affect the reaction time of the motorhome. Swerves and sharp turns, especially performed at high speeds, could result in loss of control of the motorhome. Keep the size of the motorhome in mind and drive with extra caution to avoid situations which might require quick momentum changes. Increase reaction time by paying attention to traffic and road conditions 12-15 seconds ahead of the motorhome's position.

The motorhome will travel safely and comfortably at highway speed limits. However, it takes more time to reach highway speed. When passing another vehicle, allow extra time and space to complete the pass due to the added length of the motorhome. When descending a long hill, manually shift the transmission to a lower gear and begin the descent at a slow speed. Do not allow the motorhome to gain momentum before trying to slow down. Use the exhaust or engine brake in conjunction with the service brakes to help maintain a safe slow speed of descent. The transmission and engine will help control downhill speed and can extend the service life of the brake lining. The distance required to stop the motorhome is greater than an automobile. The brakes are designed for the (GVWR) Gross Vehicle Weight Rating. Practice stopping away from traffic to get the "feel" of distance required to stop the motorhome.

When backing up, have the co-pilot stand at the roadside rear corner so the co-pilot remains visible in the roadside mirror. The co-pilot can watch for obstacles and give hand signals during the backing up process.

When traveling, make sure bridges being crossed can support the weight of the motorhome. Check the tonnage limit of the bridges before crossing. Signs should be posted at bridge entrances. Check the posted height of all overpasses or situations where overhead clearance is limited. Keep in mind that road surfaces may be repaved or packed with snow; therefore, the actual posted clearance height would not apply in such conditions.

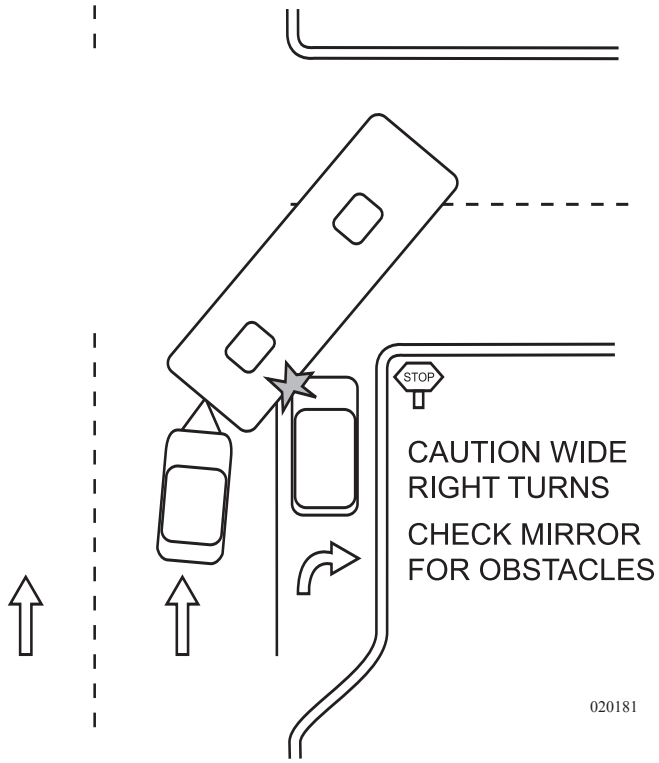
Driving Cautions:

- Avoid getting too close to the edge of the road, a soft shoulder may not support the weight of the motorhome.
- Side spacing is best maintained by keeping the motorhome centered in the driving lane.
- Driving lanes in work zones can be uneven, congested and narrower than usual.
- Be cautious of road debris which can damage the undercarriage of the motorhome or become lodged in the dual tires causing damage to the tires, wheel rims or tow car.
- Keep in consideration that posted speed signs are passenger automobile rated. Therefore, an extra awareness of the driving conditions and appropriate speed for a motorhome are necessary, especially on corners and mountain roads.
- Downgrade speed should be at least 5 mph less than upgrade speed, or downgrade speed should be attainable within three seconds of a brake application.
- Use a four second rule when following other vehicles at speeds under 40 mph. Use a five second rule when following at speeds over 40 mph.

Right Turns:

Negotiating a right hand turn in a motorhome can be difficult. Many drivers fear they cannot make the turn without entering into the other lane or jumping the curb. Here are a few tips to make a right hand turn easier:

- As the turn approaches, look into the mirror to ensure the lane to the left is clear, then move wide over to the left.
- When making the right turn, the left rear wheel should touch the center line of the road and your hips should be parallel to the roadside curb of the corner being turned. This will aid in avoiding a premature turn.
- Make the turn slowly.
- Check mirrors frequently. Stay aware of necessary clearance and space management of the motorhome while negotiating the turn.



Left Turns:

- Do not start the turn until the center of the intersection is reached with your hips. If there are two lanes available, take the right hand lane. A car or driver on the left hand side is easier seen.

Ascending a Grade:

When approaching an uphill grade, assess the grade and length before beginning the climb. Prepare early for long climbs. Unlike gasoline engines, diesels do not necessarily produce more power by pressing further on the accelerator! A gasoline engine will happily work at full throttle (at least for a short period of time), but a diesel usually just wastes fuel at full throttle. The power output from a diesel engine is dependent upon the following:

- **RPM -** Every engine has a range of RPM that produces power most efficiently.
- **Fuel/Air mixture -** At a given RPM, the engine, even with the help of a turbo-charger, can only "pump" a given volume of air into the combustion chamber. This volume of air can efficiently combine with only so much fuel; so it follows logically that feeding more fuel to the fire will simply waste fuel.

Determine ranges where the motorhome works best by driving long grades when temperatures remain stable for the duration of the climb.

IMPORTANT SAFETY TIP:

If the road speed degrades to the point where the motorhome is moving significantly below the posted speed, turn on the four way flashers. Take advantage of pullouts if traffic is building. Once in the pullout, if there is sufficient clearance for safety, take a break. Idle the engine to allow the exhaust and the turbo to cool. While these are cooling, the transmission also cools. Monitor the gauges and enjoy the view while you wait.

Descending a Grade:

downhill

Prepare to descend a grade at the crest of the hill. Observe any signs indicating grade angle and duration. The sign may suggest maximum downhill speed according to Gross Combined Weight (the combined weight of the motorhome and a trailer/tow car). At the crest of the hill, manually shift the transmission into a lower gear. Do not allow the motorhome to gain momentum before slowing down. Use the engine brake (Jacobs Brake) to help maintain a slow safe downhill speed. Located on the Driver Side console is an Engine Brake switch and a brake **Hi/Low** switch. When the engine brake switch is on, the engine brake will activate when the throttle is released. The brake **Hi/Low** switch sets the amount of engine braking force. When set to Hi, the engine brake will use all six cylinders. When set to Lo, only three cylinders are used.

With engine brake applied, road speed may increase until the transmission automatically upshifts to the next higher gear. Apply the brakes using moderately heavy pressure on the brake pedal to reduce speed and manually downshift to maintain a safe slow speed. Do not "pump" the brakes as this can result in a loss of air pressure. Avoid "riding" the brakes as this can cause the brakes to overheat. Either method can result in loss of brake effectiveness or brake failure.

Night Driving:

- As always be well rested and alert when driving. If necessary, find a safe stopping place to rest until ready to continue.
- Avoid using interior lights while driving that can create a glare on the windshield and decrease visibility.
- Dim dash lights to a comfortable level to reduce the level of glare.

Extreme Heat and Hot Weather Conditions:

- Frequently observe all gauges. Variations from normal conditions should be promptly evaluated.
- Check tire pressure before traveling in hot conditions. Tire air pressure increases with heat. Do not let air out of a hot tire. When the tires cool down they will return to the correct/previous tire pressure.
- Pay extra attention to hoses and belts that are more susceptible to fatigue in extreme heat.

Winter and Cold Climate Conditions:

- The motorhome should be prepared for Cold Weather Use.
- Keep speeds slow and steady. Make moves gradually and increase visual distance for a gain in reaction time.
- If road or weather conditions are treacherous find a safe stopping place and wait for conditions to improve.
- Avoid using an engine braking device on wet or slippery surfaces, which can cause the drive wheels to skid.
- Wiper blades should be in good condition. Fill the washer reservoir with antifreeze formula window washer fluid.
- Use mirror heat to keep mirrors clear.
- Remove any ice build-up from the entry step to avoid accidental slipping.

Wet Conditions:

- Worn or improperly inflated tires can increase the risk of hydroplaning.
- Heavy rain or deep standing water can affect brake application causing brakes to apply unevenly or grab.

Fuel Economy:

Driving style, wind resistance, terrain, vehicle weight, and engine-driven accessories are some of the factors that affect the fuel economy.

Guidelines to Help Increase Fuel Efficiency:

- When starting out, apply the throttle lightly and accelerate gradually. Avoid using excessive throttle and accelerating quickly.
- Check the tire pressure. A low tire is not only a safety hazard, but also increases rolling resistance to increase fuel consumption.
- While operating the motorhome, keep the engine at a low to mid operating range of 1100 to 1500 RPM. This will use less fuel than operating at higher RPM.
- Avoid using full throttle when ascending a long hill. This wastes fuel and increases engine operating temperature from incomplete combustion. Manually downshift to a lower gear and use less throttle. Fuel will burn more efficiently.
- Avoid extended idling to "warm-up" the engine. Start the engine and wait for normal oil pressure to register. Engage the high idle feature until the engine coolant temperature gauge raises. The engine is now ready for travel. Whenever coolant temperature is below 160° F (idling engine) incomplete combustion occurs, causing carbon build-up and raw fuel to wash lubricating oil from the cylinder walls and dilute the crankcase oil.
- Excessive idling (more than 10 or 15 minutes) can clog fuel injectors, eventually causing piston rings and valves to stick.
- Operate the transmission with the **MODE** function set to **Economy** whenever possible; this allows for earlier shifts and enhanced fuel economy.
- Follow the maintenance schedule for the engine.

Refueling:

- Truck stops are good refueling points for motorhomes.
- Know which side the fuel port is on to prevent having to turn around in the parking lot to reposition for the pump.
- Check overhead clearance heights before pulling through the fuel island.
- Be aware of concrete/steel posts installed around fuel islands.
- Avoid running over the fuel hose as it can get hung up on the motorhome, causing body damage.
- Use of gloves is recommended for refueling. Store gloves in the outside compartment.
- To prevent grease and fuel deposits from being tracked into the motorhome when refueling, change shoes before entering. Store the extra pair of shoes near the entry door.

WARNING:

Avoid the risk of fire or explosion. Turn off all pilot lights and appliances before entering a refueling station.

COLLISION WARNING SYSTEM *(Optional)*

The following information and instructions will briefly cover components, features and operations of the Eaton Vorad Collision Warning System, a sophisticated, computerized component that monitors road conditions in front and to the side of the motorhome. The Eaton Vorad system operates in darkness, fog, snow, rain, dust and smoke. This system is designed as a driving aid and is not a substitute for safe driving practices.

CWS Components

The antenna assembly transmits and receives low power, high frequency radar signals for analysis. The antenna can detect moving objects up to 350 feet, and stationary objects up to 220 feet, monitoring up to 20 vehicles at one time.

Side sensors are located at or near the blind spot areas. The side sensor display utilizes two indicator lights to monitor objects within those perimeters. Side sensor displays are typically mounted on the pillar, within the same line of sight as the side view mirror.

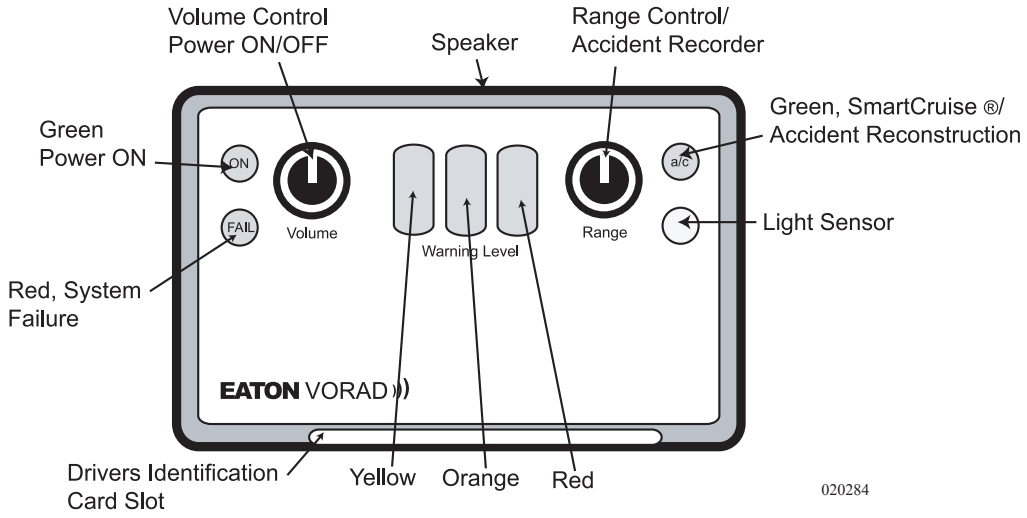
The ambient light display measures surrounding light to adjust brightness of the indicators for maximum visibility.

The Central Processing Unit (CPU) processes all information from the antenna assembly, side sensors, internal sensor, speedometer, brake circuit, turn signals and the motorhome data base to communicate key information via the indicator lights on the driver display unit. The CPU stores an optional Vehicle Information Management System of recorded data that can be downloaded for record of trip events. The CPU is also capable of storing digital information similar to the 'black box' used on aircraft.

INFORMATION:
Refer to the manufacturer's manual for more detail on the CWS components and their operation.

Driver Display Unit

The driver display unit is typically mounted in or on the dashboard within reach of the motorhome operator.



When the ignition is engaged, all indicators light up for five seconds. The green ON indicator remains active following the initial system check. The Eaton Vorad System tracks speed and location of up to 20 vehicles, using the most potentially dangerous vehicle as the basis for alert by factoring distance, speed, and relative angle. A series of audible and visual alerts are available within the system.

Indicator Lamps:

A danger alert comprising illumination of the three lights, along with an audible alarm, is designed to warn the operator of a potentially hazardous obstacle ahead of the moving motorhome. The danger alert is also activated when the system detects a moving vehicle ahead that is moving 20% slower than the speed of the motorhome.

- The **yellow** light illuminates when an object is detected within 350 feet ahead of the motorhome, and remains on as long as the object is within that perimeter.
- The **yellow** and **orange** lights illuminate when the vehicle detected ahead is within range that the motorhome will travel in three seconds. A warning tone will sound at two seconds. Vehicles moving in range at a faster rate of speed will not cause the warning tone to sound.
- The **red**, **yellow** and **orange** lights will illuminate, along with an audible warning, when the vehicle ahead is within range that the motorhome will enter in one second.
- A repeated alarm will sound, regardless of motorhome speed, when the motorhome and potential hazard are within one-half second of collision.

Smart Cruise® activates when the motorhome cruise control system is engaged and the Eaton Vorad System is On. When Smart Cruise® is active, the S/C light in the upper right corner of the Driver Display will illuminate. A Range Control Knob is utilized to adjust Following Intervals. The system will either maintain the selected Following Interval between the motorhome and the vehicle ahead of the motorhome, or in the case of no vehicle ahead, the preset cruise control speed. Following Interval takes priority over the preset cruise control speed. Smart Cruise® will adjust or reduce speed when overtaking a vehicle within Following Interval range, adjusted by using the Control Knob located on the Driver Display. The system is also capable of engaging the engine brake.

WARNING:
Smart Cruise® is not a substitute for an alert driver. Smart Cruise® will not react to stationary objects and cannot apply the service brakes to bring the motorhome to a complete stop. The driver needs to use good driving practices and remain in control of the motorhome at all times to avoid accidents.

WARNING:
If the motorhome speed and speed of the vehicles ahead significantly differ, the driver will need to apply the service brakes to maintain a safe distance. As with the cruise control, Smart Cruise® must be reset after application of the brakes.

WARNING:
The Eaton Vorad Collision Warning System/Smart Cruise® is not a substitute for an alert, safe driver. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the motorhome. The driver should fully understand the operating characteristics and limitations of the Smart Cruise® and take all necessary actions to operate the motorhome in a safe manner.

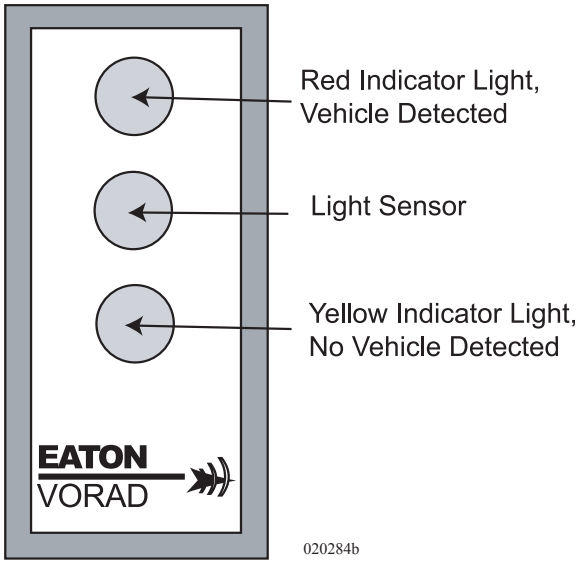
Proximity Alert:

The proximity alert is activated when the motorhome is moving up to two miles per hour and an object is detected less than 15 feet in front of the motorhome. In this case, the yellow light comes on, accompanied by a low-pitch tone.

Side Sensors

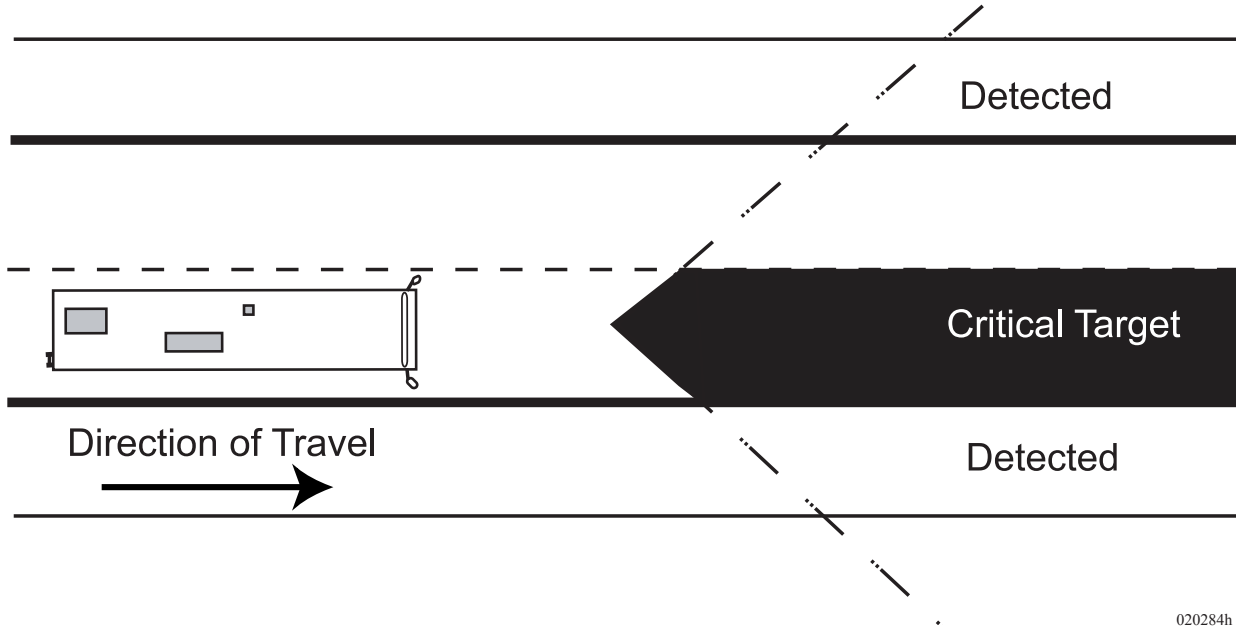
The side sensor display includes two lights:

- **Yellow** light indicates no obstacle detected by the side sensor.
- **Red** light illuminates when the side senor detects an obstacle. When the red light is on, and the turn signal is activated, the system will sound a high-pitched audible alarm. The alarm will sound only once during turn signal activation.
- **Red** light illuminates continuously to signify system failure.

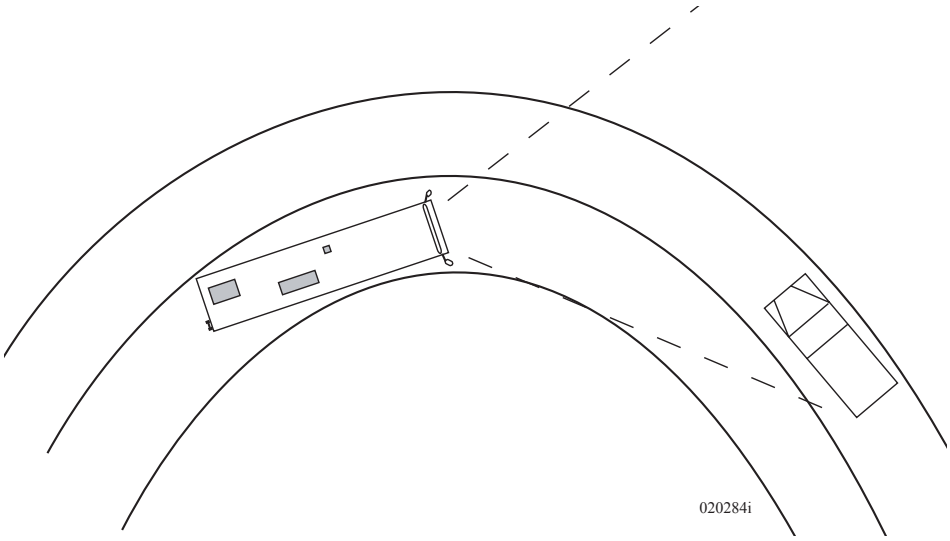


CWS Situations

Interpretation of curves, dips and hills can influence the Eaton Vorad CWS system alerts. The following road situations may help you to better understand how to safely and effectively use the Collision Warning system.

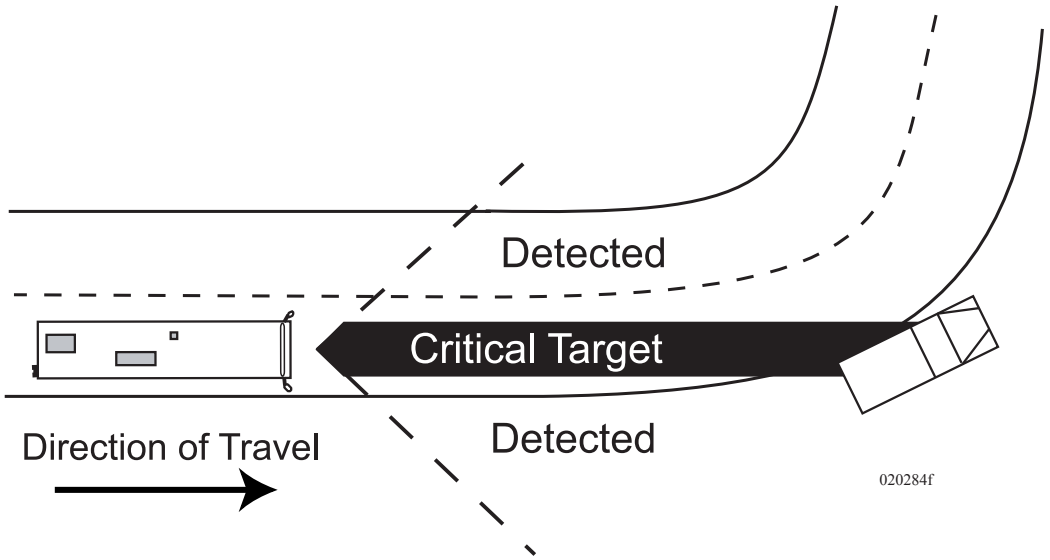


When the motorhome is in the midst of a sharp turn, the system will not provide audible alerts for objects in front. Due to the likelihood of nuisance alerts from traffic, only visual alerts will occur.

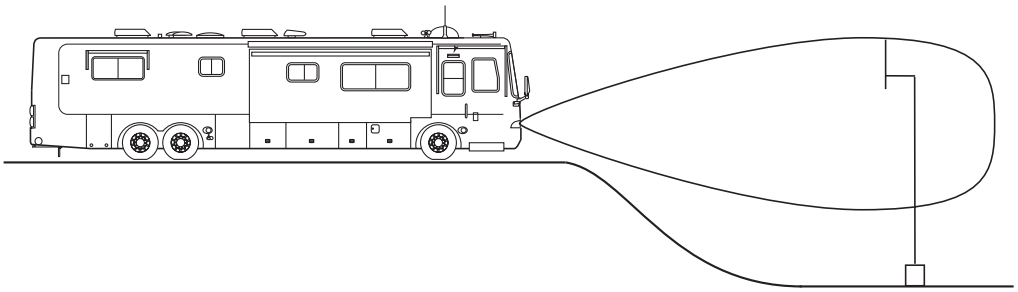


Gradual turns, such as lane changes, negotiating cloverleaves, or on/off ramp travel, generally do not effect system alerts.

When approaching a curve, alerts may sound and illuminate if there is an object on the side of a curved portion of the road that lies in a direct line with the motorhome prior to entering the curve.

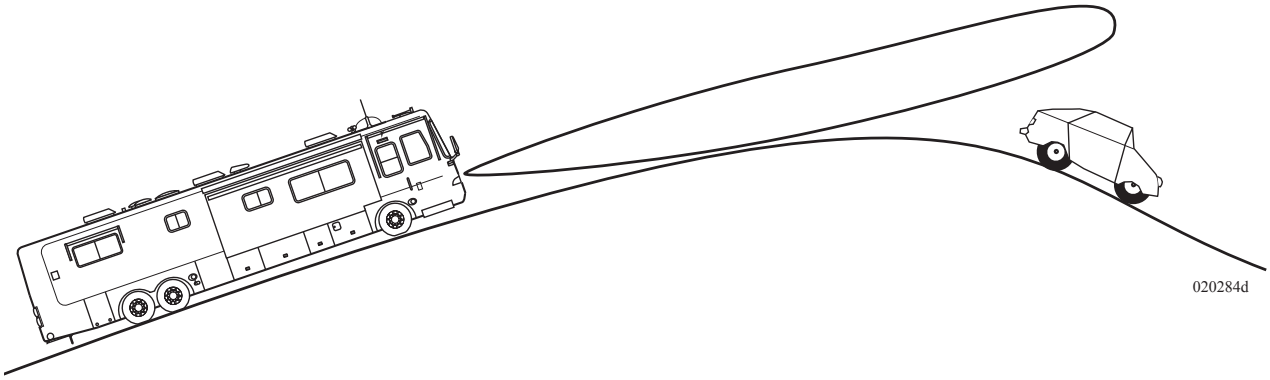


Unusual road elevation angles may cause the CWS to detect overhead signs or overpasses that are in line with the motorhome. In some situations, a bridge abutment may set off an alert even though the road ahead is actually clear.



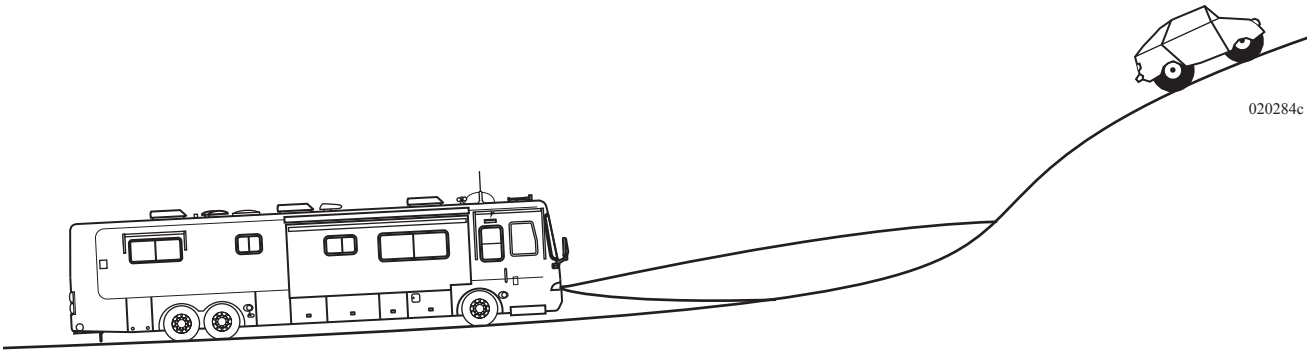
020284e

The antenna assembly cannot detect objects over a hill. Alerts will not sound until objects are within field of vision.



020284d

The antenna assembly cannot detect objects above its beam, causing vehicles ascending a hill to go undetected. Generally, the alarm will not sound from deflecting the road surface.



020284c

The side sensor can only detect objects within range, generally as far as the adjoining lane of travel. Stationary objects that maintain continuous presence to range, such as guard rails or construction walls, may cause the **red** sensor display indictor to illuminate.

The Eaton Vorad side sensor can detect heavy rain, splash and spray conditions that may interfere with side sensor operation causing both LEDs to illuminate until weather conditions improve.

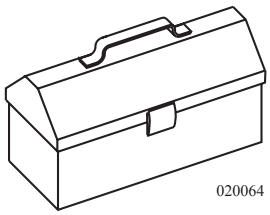
The Eaton Vorad System cannot provide additional warning for situations including, but not limited to, pedestrians or animals darting into the path of the motorhome, head-on collisions involving oncoming vehicles, and intersection cross-traffic. This system is not a substitute for safe driving practices.

Data Recorder

Eaton Vorad CWS may be equipped with an optional feature that retains system data surrounding a particular incident including motorhome data as well as information regarding vehicles within range. Current data is automatically saved until the motorhome is driven, and then replaced with new data. To save specific information, push and hold the Range Knob on the Driver Display Unit for five seconds until the green Smart Cruise® lamp begins to flash. The CPU will then store the last several minutes of vehicle information.

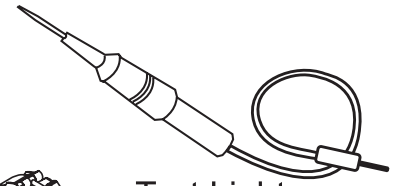
WARNING:
The Eaton Vorad System is a tool to enhance, not substitute for safe driving practices. The driver is ultimately responsible for safe operation of the motorhome.

PRE-TRIP PREPARATIONS - CHECKLIST


020064

Prior to departure on a trip, several items will need to be prepared. Suggestions are listed below to use as a general guideline when preparing to depart.

INFORMATION:
For chassis maintenance details, please refer to the chassis section.


Test Light

T-Bolt Clamp

Link

090333b

Items To Carry:

- Local, State and National Maps. A "Motor Carrier" road atlas can be useful for showing maps, refueling stations and truck repair facilities.
- Emergency road kit containing a flashlight, road flares, warning signs and a fire extinguisher.
- Potable/non-potable water hoses and a water pressure regulator.
- Assortment of termination connectors for sewage.
- Hand tools.
- 12 Volt DC test light and a 120 AC Polarity Tester. (These may be helpful when on the phone with a technician.)
- Battery hydrometer.
- Spare 12 Volt DC continuous duty solenoid (if applicable).
- An assortment of spare fuses.
- One link kit for ride height control assembly (for air suspension only).
- Spare alternator belt.
- Charge air cooler T-bolt clamp.

Polarity Tester

Interior Items:

- Start refrigerator operation the night before departure to get a head start on the cooling process. Pre-cool items prior to loading them in the refrigerator.
- Load pots, pans, utensils, soap, linens, etc.
- Secure and fasten bi-fold and pocket doors. Lock the shower door.
- Close roof vents and windows.
- Secure loose, heavy or sharp objects in case of a sudden stop.
- Close all cabinet doors and drawers.
- Walk the interior and check for items not secured.
- Test appliances before leaving home.
- Turn interior lighting off.

Exterior Items:

- Check operation of all exterior lights, headlamps, taillights, brake and clearance lights.
- Check the battery fluid level of Liquid Lead Acid batteries.
- Check all fluid levels on the chassis and generator. (See **Chassis Information** section and the OEM generator manual for details.)
- Check the fuel/water separator in the engine compartment. Clean and drain if needed.
- Adjust mirrors.
- Test the windshield wipers.
- Fill the LP-Gas tank.
- Test the generator.
- Make sure the following items are in the motorhome: sewer connection hose, water fill hose, awning rod and electrical adapters.

Engine Checklist:

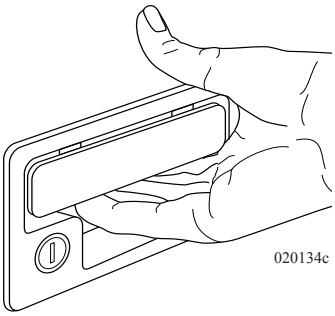
- **Inspect** the engine, transmission and engine compartment for fluid leaks.
- Inspect the area under the motorhome for fluid leaks or puddles.
- Check all fluid levels, oil, antifreeze, transmission, hydraulic fluid and washer fluid.
- Inspect belts and hoses for wear.
- Inspect wiring for loose, frayed or corroded connections.
- Start engine and listen for unusual noises.

Driving Preparations:

- **Inspect** oil level of tag axle oil bath hubs.
- Fill the water tank and confirm waste tanks are empty. Test the water pump.
- Disconnect and store the fresh water hose.
- Check all tires for accurate pressure. Inspect tires for cuts, punctures, weather damage or cracks in the sidewalls and tread areas.
- Check for foreign objects lodged between dual tires.
- Make sure all lug nuts are tight. This should be done by an approved repair facility.
- If applicable, program the navigation system.
- Secure all awning locks.
- Secure items in storage bays to prevent shifting or damage to items.
- Outside compartment doors should be closed and locked.
- Look around, above and under the motorhome for obstruction.
- Check fuel level gauge. Fill the fuel tank if necessary.
- Check all other dash gauges for operation and correct level indications.
- Secure and lock the entry door for travel.
- Lower the antenna.

Storing Cargo:

Exercise caution when opening storage bays as cargo may shift during travel. When closing the bay doors, keep fingers clear of openings.



CAUTION:
Open the cargo door slowly as cargo may shift forward during travel.

WARNING:
To avoid injury, never place hands or fingers near the edges of the bay door when opening or closing. Always use the latch handle. Apply pressure with the other hand just above the latch handle.

It is important to remember that regardless of how large the motorhome there is a limit to storage capacity. Pack as lightly as possible to allow for additional storage during the trip. It is often easier to purchase needed items at the final destination rather than discarding items to make room for additional cargo.

When packing the motorhome keep two things in mind: turning and braking. For the motorhome to handle well, the load will need to be evenly distributed side-to-side and front-to-back. Additionally, heavy items should be stored as low as possible to keep the motorhome from becoming top heavy. Make sure that everything is secure and safe from quick turns, bumps and sudden stops.

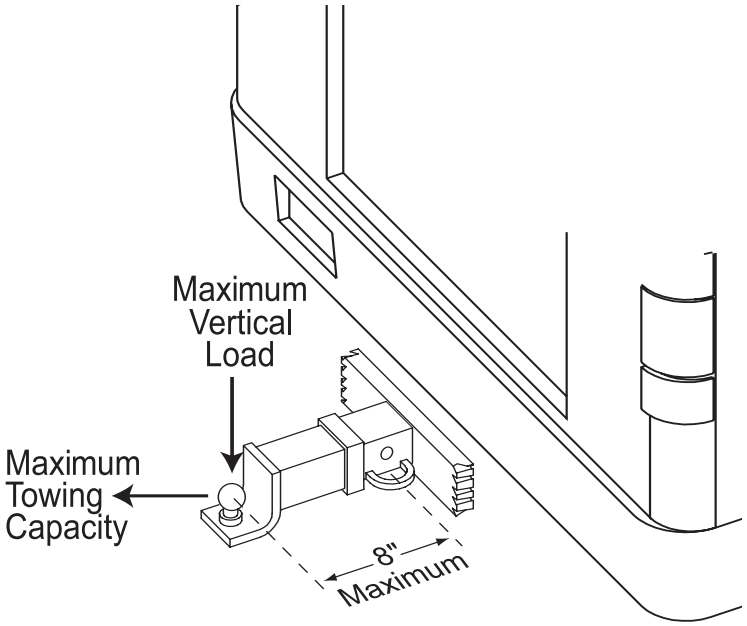
Guidelines for Loading the Motorhome:

- Distribute the cargo weight evenly from side-to-side and front-to-back. This practice will prevent both handling problems and uneven stress on the components throughout the life of the motorhome.
- Heavy items should be stored near the rear axle; lighter items stored toward the front.
- To maintain a low center of gravity and reduce sway, store light items in the overhead cabinets and heavier items near the floor.
- Secure loose items to prevent weight shifts that could affect the balance of the motorhome.

TIPS:
Multi-purpose items, versatile clothing and periodic removal of unused cargo will streamline cargo storage.

When using the rear hitch receiver, remember that the motorhome is intended for towing light loads and is primarily designed as a recreational vehicle. Safety and durability of the hitch receiver requires proper receiver use. Avoid excessive towing loads or other misuse of the receiver. Towing will affect fuel economy. Weight pushing down on the rear hitch must not exceed 10% of the hitch capacity.

It is recommended to weigh the motorhome when fully loaded to ensure proper weight distribution of the GCVW (Gross Combined Vehicle Weight). When weighing the motorhome add all passenger weight to the GCVW total. The motorhome fully loaded, including fresh water, LP-Gas and any vehicle or trailer towed, must not exceed the GCWR (Gross Combined Weight Rating).



020065d

WARNING:
Most states and Canadian provinces require trailers and/or towed vehicles to have adequate auxiliary brakes. Failure to comply with these State and Canadian province requirements may result in fines and/or pose a safety hazard, which may result in an accident.

WARNING:
Do not tow a trailer or vehicle that exceeds the rated capacity of the hitch receiver. Overloading the hitch receiver can cause unusual handling characteristics and overstress the hitch receiver and chassis. It could also void the warranty. If there are any questions, call a factory technician.

MONACO
COACH CORPORATION

Coburg, Oregon
Springfield, Oregon
Wakarusa, Indiana
Elkhart, Indiana
Nappanee, Indiana

Do Not Cut, Weld or Modify 03213019

Do Not Exceed Vehicle Ratings

Maximum Towing Capacity 10,000 Lbs.
(4,536 Kg.)
Maximum Vertical Load 1,000 Lbs.
(454 Kg.)

Any Towed Vehicle or Trailer Over 1000 lbs (454 kg) Should Have Separate Functioning Brake System.

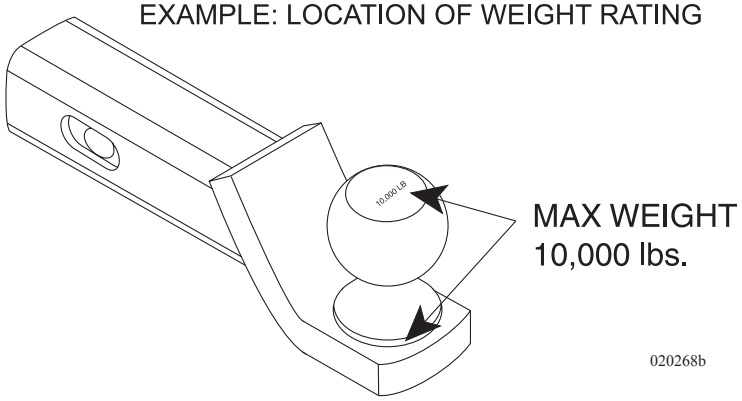
Refer To Owner's Manual For Additional Towing Guidelines

100200

Tow Car or Trailer:

1. Connect a tow car or trailer to the motorhome with safety chains rated for the weight of load.
2. Make the electrical connection and perform a light check before starting a trip and at each rest stop.
3. Check the tires frequently. Flat tires on a towed vehicle cannot be detected from the motorhome while driving. A flat tire is a safety hazard and may cause extensive damage.

EXAMPLE: LOCATION OF WEIGHT RATING

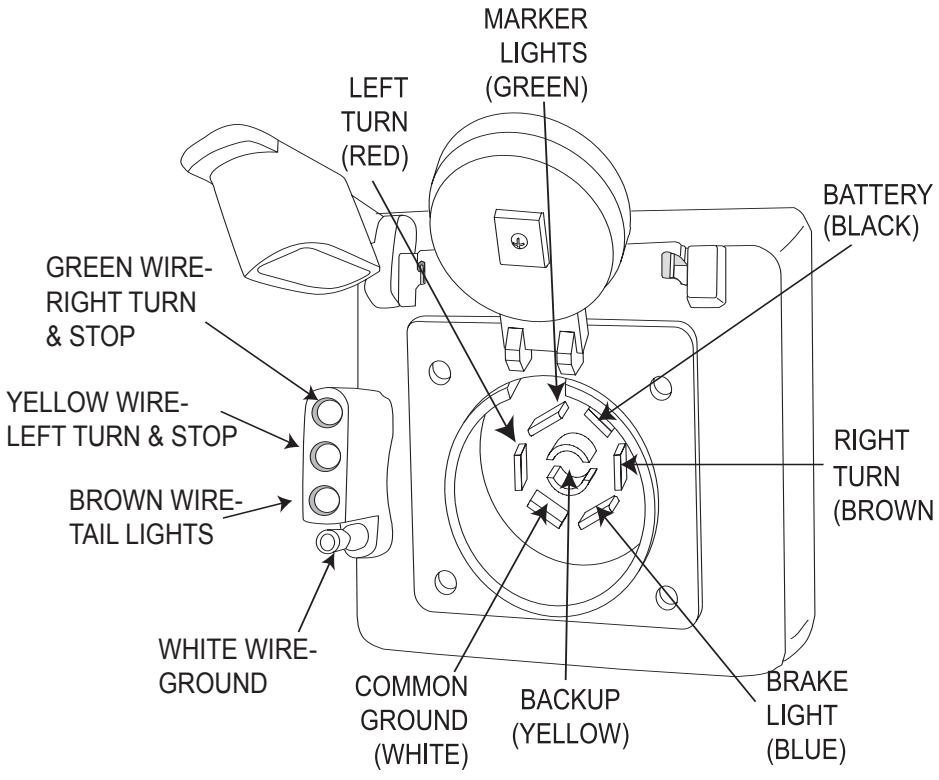


020268b

WARNING:
Be sure the weight ratings of the ball mount, tow ball and safety chains are equal to or greater than the load. The use of an extension to the receiver or extended ball mount will significantly reduce hitch receiver weight ratings. Modifications to the hitch receiver, or use of the hitch receiver other than intended, can void the warranty of the hitch receiver, chassis or both.

Tow Plug Connection

The motorhome is pre-wired from the factory with an electrical connection for towing, located on or near the hitch receiver. Convoluted tubing protects the tow harness wires. Current draw should not exceed ten amps for each designated light circuit. Within the electrical connection is a positive terminal for use when towing a trailer equipped with a battery. The positive terminal maintains the charge of the trailer battery.



080462b

When preparing a tow plug connection strip the wires 3/8". Twist the wire strands and place under the clip and secure the screw. Make sure there are no loose strands of wire that could short against the case or other terminals. Do not accidentally mirror image the trailer connection.

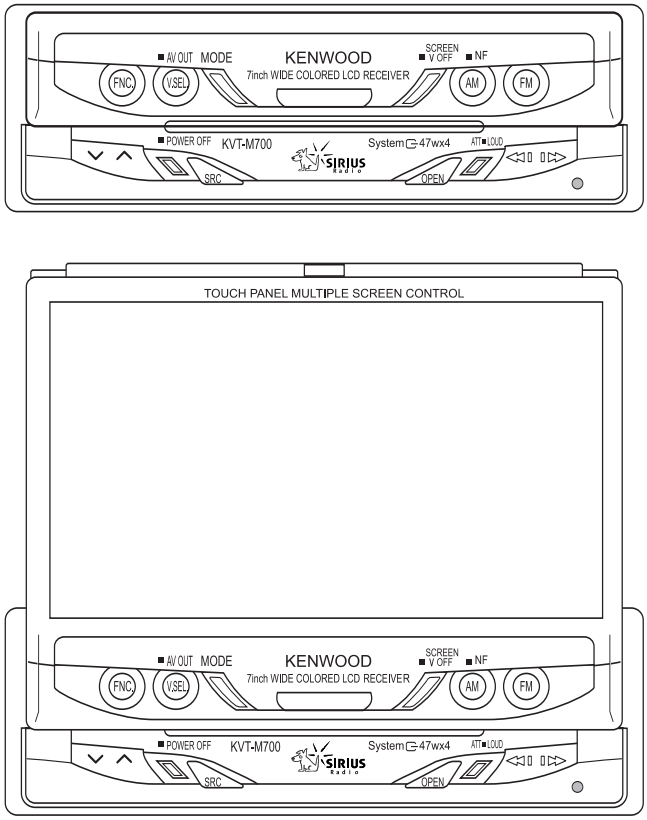
CAUTION:
Positive terminal connection of the tow plug remains live at all times. When towing a trailer equipped with a battery, unplug the electrical tow connection when parked. Failure to unplug the tow connection may result in discharged chassis batteries.

REAR VIEW SYSTEM

Power Requirements:
- Main battery disconnect switch (located in the battery compartment) must be on.
- Turn **ON** the interior house power using the battery cut-off switch.
- The ignition key must be in either the **ON** position or the **ACC** position.

To View:
- Press the **OPEN** button.
- The steering wheel may interfere with the monitor while opening. If this occurs, move the steering column (ensure this can be performed safely) before operating the set. The monitor will automatically retract if it cannot open due to an obstacle.

Closing the Monitor:
- Press the **OPEN** button again to close the monitor.



031050

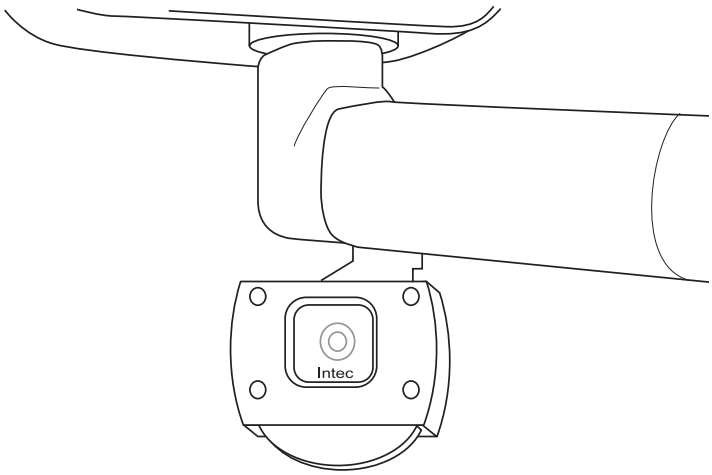
Power Controls:
- Press the **SRC** button for at least one second to Power **ON** the monitor.
- Press the **SRC** button again to Power **OFF** the monitor.

NOTE:
The rear camera will automatically display when the motorhome is placed in reverse.

NOTE:
The radio systems operate with the radio remote control or from the radio touch screen labels.

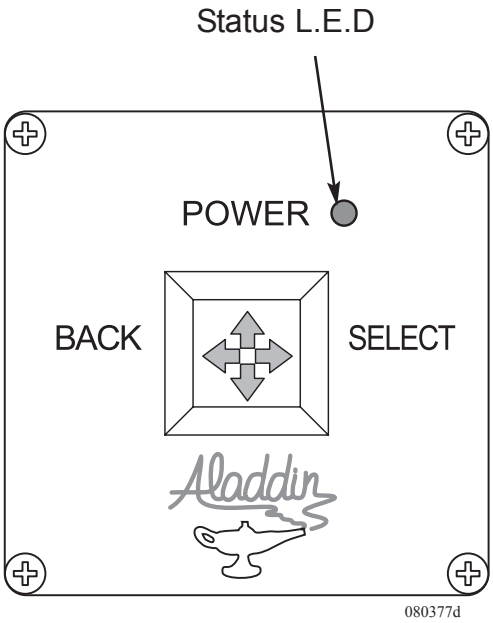
See Vision (Optional)

The optional See Vision system includes three additional cameras. A camera is mounted on each of the rear view mirrors and one camera is also mounted on the front overhead to provide a view of the interior.



To obtain different camera views:

- Turn on the interior house power using the battery cut-off switch.
- Move the Aladdin joystick in any direction to "waken" the system.
- From the Main Menu, use the Aladdin joy stick to move the cursor to Select Camera.
- Move the joystick Right to enter Select Camera. Move the joystick up or down to select the desired view.
- Activating the turn signal will select that camera, either right or left. When the turn signal lever is placed to the neutral position, the system will return to the previously selected camera.



NOTE:
When the motorhome is placed in reverse, the rear camera will automatically display. As an aid in guidance when backing, select either right or left turn signal to display the desired camera for a more complete view. Cancel the turn signal to return to rear view.

BACKING UP A MOTORHOME

Whether you are a long time owner of recreational vehicles, or just starting out, backing up can be a challenge. Following some simple guidelines may help to reduce that challenge. When backing up, the driver (pilot) should be comfortable using the mirrors, the back-up camera and the co-pilot's directions (ground guide) for assistance. Practice first, backing up with the co-pilot's guidance, in a large unobstructed parking lot. Backing up is a team effort.

The backing process should begin while the motorhome is in forward motion. Maneuver the motorhome to align with the chosen site. Aligning the motorhome with the site after the backing process begins may require more than one attempt. When the motorhome is properly aligned with the site, the parking area will be visible in both mirrors. Use road markings as reference points, when possible.

When "pull-through" sites are not available, pick a solid, level site on the left side for a better field of vision using the roadside mirror. If the site is on the right, use the curbside mirror for backing up, but stay aware of blind spots. Prior to backing in a site, get out and walk the area. Look for potential hazards or obstacles that may damage the motorhome. If the site is satisfactory, prepare to back in carefully. Have the co-pilot provide guidance using the five hand signals. Use of walkie-talkies will also aid in guidance.

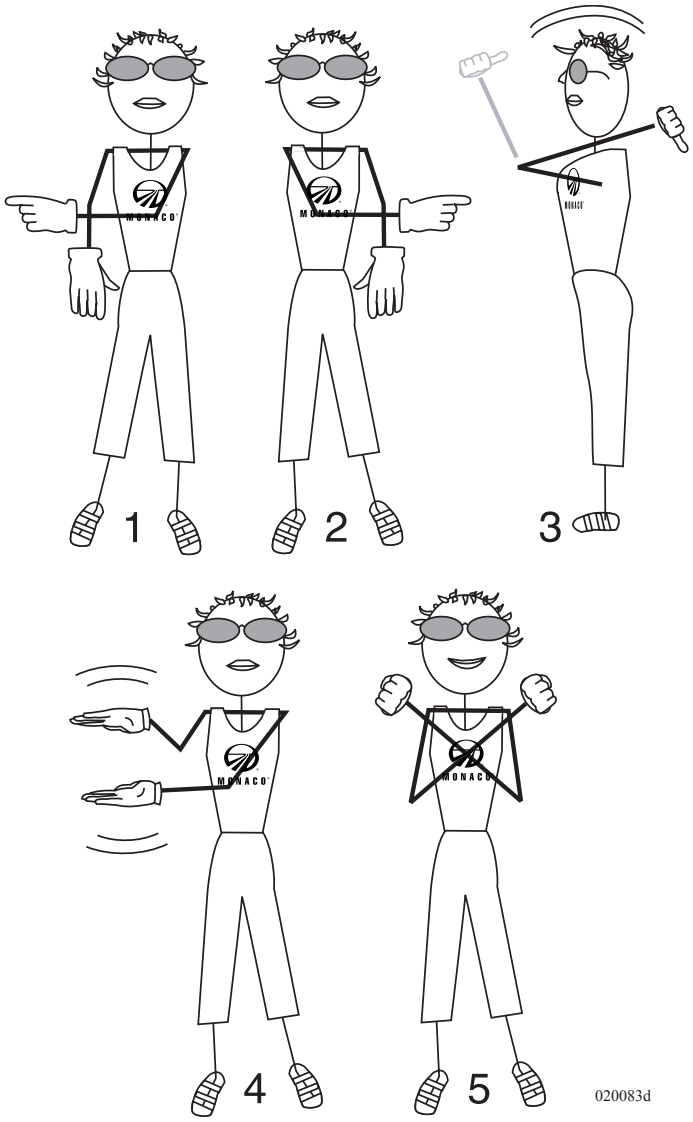
The co-pilot will perform just as important a job as the driver. When guiding the driver, the co-pilot should be located safely at the left rear corner of the motorhome, facing forward, while remaining visible in the roadside mirror at all times. The co-pilot should make a conscious effort to maintain sight of the driver through the roadside mirror as the motorhome maneuvers. If the driver loses sight of the co-pilot, stop the backing up process until the co-pilot returns to view. To avoid mishaps, the co-pilot should be focused only on what the driver is doing, with brief observation moments. If necessary, stop the backing up process to have co-pilot inspect other areas or angles of concern.

The driver should receive directions only from the co-pilot. When the co-pilot is guiding the driver, only five clearly defined signals should be used, with only one signal given at a time. Flailing arms with indecisive signals only confuse the driver. Signals should be given with purpose and confidence. Directional signals are directing travel of the rear of the motorhome.

If the desired direction is left, the co-pilot points left. For example: The co-pilot will use his/her right arm and forefinger pointing distinctly left with arm and finger held on a horizontal plane, indicating desired direction of travel of the rear of the motorhome. The directional signal given should remain steady until the desired movement is complete.

The five directional signals are as follows:

1. Co-pilot uses left hand and arm held horizontal, with forefinger pointing right, to direct rear of motorhome to the right.
2. Co-pilot uses right hand and arm held horizontal, with forefinger pointing left, to direct rear of motorhome to the left.
3. Co-pilot uses both arms and hands parallel with thumbs pointing up and to rear in a waving vertical motion. This signals driver to maintain a straight back direction.
4. Co-pilot holds arms horizontally, hands open with palms facing one another. Start with a wide separation, gradually closing distance of hands, in a rate appropriate to vehicle speed, to indicate amount of distance to the stop point.
5. Closed fists indicate STOP.



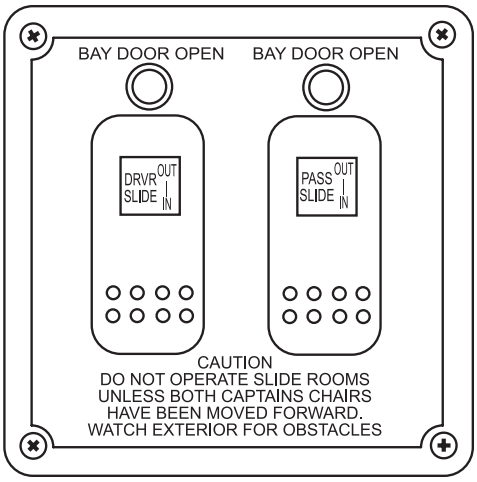
Backing Up Trailers:

Towed vehicles using a tow bar or tow dolly have more than one pivot point and are not suitable for backing. Attempting to back up the motorhome while connected to a tow bar or tow dolly can jack-knife the tow device causing the wheels of the towed vehicle to move in a forward 'sideways' motion that will cause irreparable and expensive damage. If necessary, disconnect the tow vehicle to avoid a backing up situation.

Trailers have one pivot point and may be backed up. The same rules for backing a motorhome can be applied to backing a trailer. When preparing to back the trailer into a space, maneuver the motorhome sweeping wide. Turn back to the opposite direction to maneuver the trailer into the space. Keep the bottom of the steering wheel in the desired direction of travel for the trailer. For example: If the desired direction of the trailer is left, rotate the bottom of the steering wheel left. If the trailer moves in an undesired direction, use a short "pull-up" method, pulling forward just far enough to align the trailer with the space. The co-pilot should stand safely at the left rear corner of the trailer within view of the driver in the roadside mirror, using the five hand signals for guidance.

<u>CAUTION:</u>
Tow bars or car dollies are generally made to travel in a forward direction only. Most towing equipment of this type is not designed for backing. Never attempt short back up distances with a tow bar or tow dolly. Damage to the motorhome, vehicle or towing device will result.

If the site for the motorhome provides full hook-ups, use this quick reference checklist as a guide only. The checklist contains information on hooking up the utilities and preparing appliances for use. Specific information on slide room, awning and leveling system operations is discussed in detail in other sections.



060133b

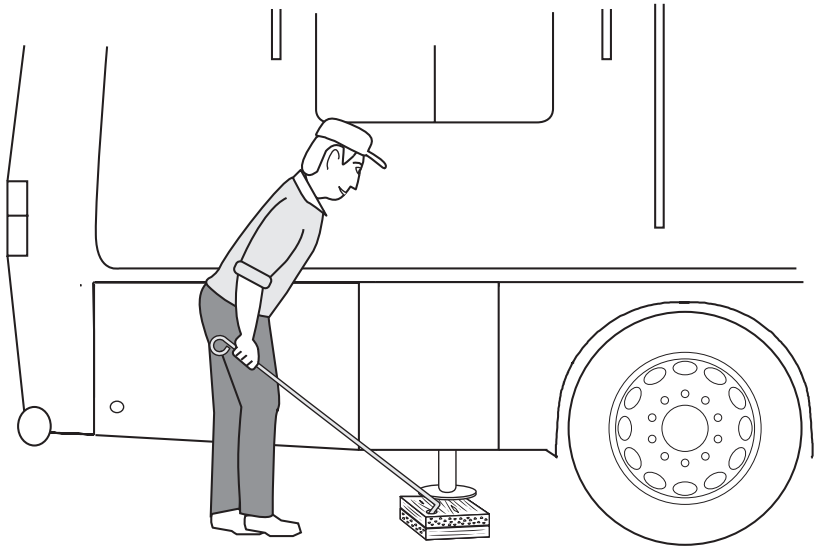
CAUTION:
Check for lateral clearance before extending the slide-out room.

NOTE:
To operate any slide room, turn the ignition switch to OFF, and set the park brake.

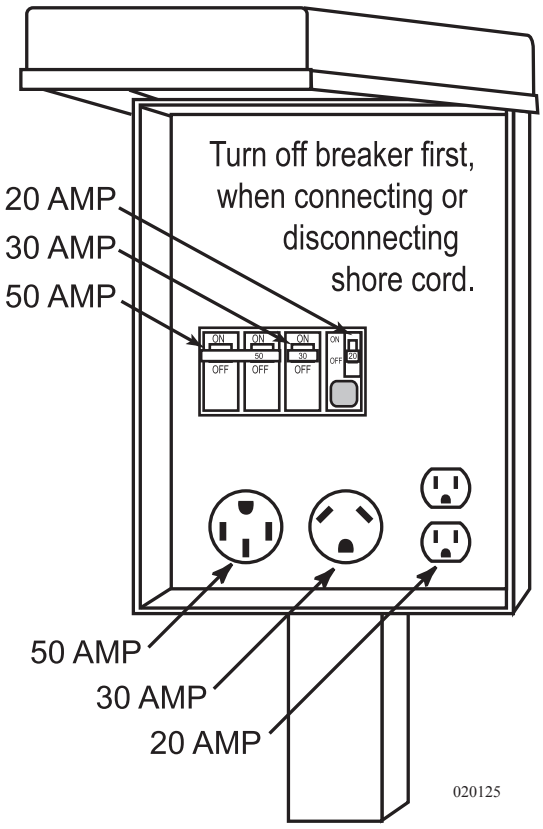
- Follow the procedures and guidelines for *"Leveling the Motorhome"* in **Section 10**. If the motorhome is equipped with hydraulic jacks, confirm that the parking surface will accommodate the weight placed on the jacks.

CAUTION:
Before leveling the motorhome survey the area around and under the motorhome for obstructions which can damage the motorhome or undercarriage components when the air bags are deflated.

CAUTION:
Hot asphalt, gravel or dirt may not support the weight that is placed on the hydraulic jack pads. Place thick plywood under the jack pads to help disperse the weight. If blocking up a rear jack pad to gain added clearance when the motorhome is on a slope, place a wheel chock at the opposite set of rear wheels to prevent the motorhome from rolling.



- Open the LP-Gas tank primary valve.
- Prepare the shore cord for connection. Uncoil and inspect the cord, and perform necessary cord maintenance. Install proper electrical adapters if anything other than 50 Amp service is provided. Operate electrical appliances in sequence when hooked to limited shore power service. Turn shore power circuit breaker OFF prior to plugging in the shore cord.
- If possible, begin appliance operation on LP-Gas for the first 60 minutes. Switch the refrigerator operation to gas and start the Aqua-Hot (if needed). This allows time for the inverter to stabilize battery charging.



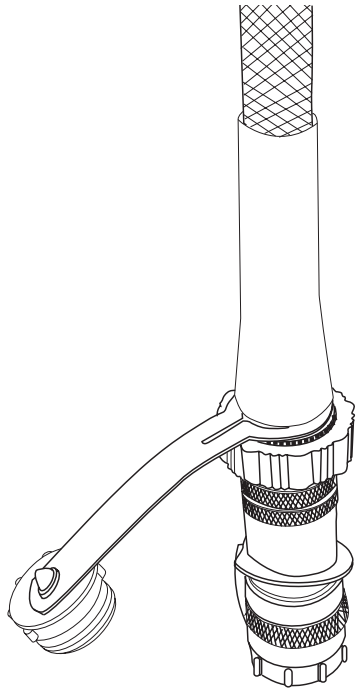
Typical Power Pedestal

CAUTION:
If shore power service is limited to 15 or 20 Amps, use of light duty extension cords and electrical adapters will create a voltage loss through the cord and at each electrical connection. Line voltage loss and the resistance at each electrical connection can be a hazardous combination. Damage to sensitive electronic equipment may result!

NOTE:
To avoid shore power overload when hooked to 30 Amp service, determine appliances current load prior to turning on appliances or using interior outlets.

- If cable service is provided, hook-up a 75 Ohm RG59 or RG6 cable to the cable connection in the service center. If the motorhome has a video selector box press the appropriate viewing button for the item desired.
- A phone connection port is provided in the service center. Phone utility outlets are placed throughout the motorhome, including a phone line attached to the satellite receiver for Pay-Per-View movies and events.
- Hook the potable water hose to the city water connection in the service center. Install a water pressure regulator to protect the water hose from excess pressure. Turn the hand valve so the pointer indicates "city water."

NOTE:
A water pressure regulator attached between the city water faucet and the potable fresh water hose will protect the hose from swelling or bursting under high city water pressure. Securing the pressure regulator to the hose with pliers will prevent the regulator from being misplaced.



Pressure Regulator 040480e

- Hook-up the sewer hose. Sewer drain pipe diameters are generally either three or four inches. Proper sewer hose adapters will ensure against leaks or spillage. With the sewer hose properly connected open the grey water valve (small valve). The black water valve (large valve) remains closed until the tank is full or until time of departure.

DRY CAMPING TIPS

Plan ahead and conserve resources while dry camping. Dry camping requires fully charged and properly maintained batteries (corrosion cleaned, terminals tightened, cables checked, etc.). If water levels in liquid lead acid batteries are low, fill the batteries with distilled water only. (Tap Water containing a high concentration of minerals will alter battery chemistry, reducing capacity, performance and longevity.)

Begin with a full fresh water tank. Remember to fill the hot water tank before topping off the fresh water supply. Confirm that waste holding tanks are empty. When water supplies run low, evacuate waste holding tanks prior to refilling the fresh water tank.

Solar panels are a valuable addition for battery charging. The motorhome is equipped with one solar panel to help offset parasitic load. A second panel, or adding up to five panels, will help charge the motorhome batteries during daylight hours. Clean solar panels regularly for optimum performance using window cleaner and a soft cloth.

Confirm that the location you intend to visit can accommodate the size and length of your motorhome. Drive-through sites are preferred for easier positioning of the motorhome and tow vehicle. If only back-in sites are available, disconnect the tow vehicle before entering the campground for easier maneuverability.

Arrive during daylight hours. If arriving late, consider parking in an open area until the following day to avoid negotiating narrow and winding campground roadways during hours of darkness. When driving through the campground, stay aware of low hanging limbs, tree trunks and barriers lining the roadway. Have the co-pilot or campground host provide exterior guidance when negotiating curves and bends. Prior to moving the motorhome into the site space, perform an exterior inspection to gauge positioning for slide rooms and awnings that is free of obstruction.

Take time to properly set up. Before lowering the air suspension and leveling the motorhome, check under the vehicle for obstacles that may damage undercarriage components. When using the automatic leveling system, prevent persons or pets from moving about the interior during the leveling process. When leveling manually, avoiding interior movement is less critical.

Monitor battery voltage. Do not allow batteries to fully discharge before engaging the generator. If possible, run the generator twice a day, morning and afternoon, to ingest a steady rate of charge to the motorhome batteries. The length of time the generator will need to run will vary on individual electrical requirements. Similar to driving a vehicle - distance dictates amount of fuel. Float indication on the inverter remote panel generally signifies a sufficient amount of charge.

Suggestions for Dry Camping:

- Switch refrigerator operation from Auto to LP-Gas.
- Open windows during the day to reduce use of the roof air conditioner.
- Turn off interior 12 Volt DC power whenever possible. The refrigerator is designed to operate with the power off. Battery charging is unaffected, and the generator will continue to operate the inverter.
- Operate the Aqua-Hot on diesel. To conserve fuel turn the system on about twenty minutes before hot water is needed. Once heated, water will remain hot for several hours. Turn the system off when not in use.
- When interior heat is required during cold weather, set the thermostat temperature a bit lower to prevent the Aqua-Hot system from frequent cycling.
- Turn off small items that use battery power, such as the porch light, bay lights, the light under the step, generator compartment lights, engine compartment lights, etc. If the television is not in use, turn off the 12 Volt booster. Even one light left on, such as under the front cap, can quickly reduce battery reserves.
- Keep flashlights handy to illuminate potential barriers surrounding the campground site.
- Use a flashlight to navigate inside of the motorhome during the night to avoid running interior lights. When interior lighting is desired, use one light in a central location, such as the vanity, unscrewing all but one or two bulbs to reduce battery requirements.
- Turn on the water pump only when using water.
- If it is too early in the morning, or too late in the night, to run the generator, use the inverter for AC power, and turn off the inverter when not in use. When conditions permit, turn on the generator for a couple of hours to help charge the batteries, particularly while preparing meals.
- Frequently monitor water and battery consumption. Routinely check fuel levels, especially during cold weather temperatures.

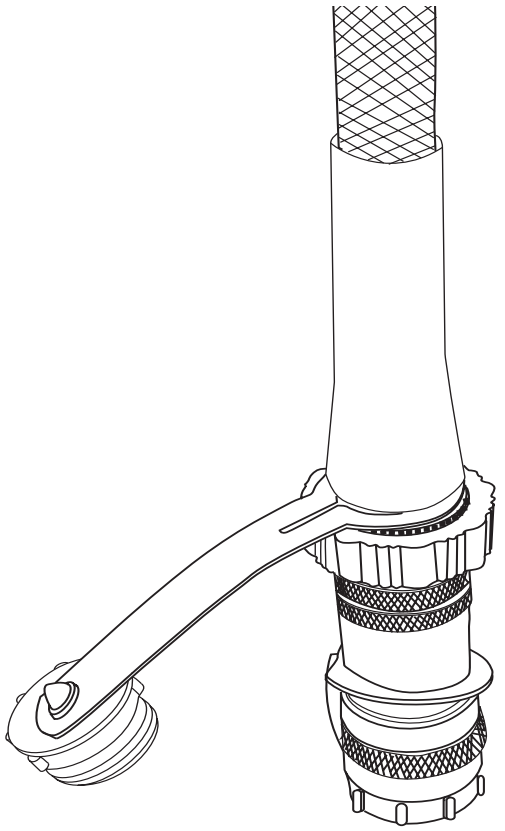
- Plan what is needed from the refrigerator prior to opening. If weather does not permit eating at the picnic table, or no outdoor table is available, eat at the dinette table by candlelight.
- Careful management of water is critical when dry camping. Learn the motorhome tank capacities. Picture the amount of liquid in a gallon container and visualize that amount each time you use water. When dry camping for extended periods, limit shower usage. Turn water off when soaping down in the shower, and back on to rinse. When water conservation is critical, take a sponge bath. Chances are that a campground without hookups will also lack comfortable shower rooms or bathrooms, and may only be equipped with primitive facilities. However, if it helps to economize on fresh water and holding tank capacity, use them.
- Do not fill the sink full of water to wash only a few dishes. Use disposable dishes when possible.
- Conserve propane and electricity by cooking dinner over the campfire. When using the inverter to operate the microwave/convection oven, conserve battery power by engaging the generator.
- Leave shoes outdoors or at the entry step to avoid tracking in dirt.

Get back to nature and still enjoy the comforts of the motorhome. With a little imagination, the ways to conserve available resources while dry camping are endless.

Typical Current Draw:
- Interior house power draws 1.5 Amps just to have it on.
- A 13" TV has a 1.7 Amp draw.
- Rope lights (10 ft) are a 1.3 Amp draw.
- The porch light is a 2.0 Amp draw.
- One fluorescent dual bulb light has a 2.1 Amp draw.
- One halogen ceiling light has a .09 Amp.

BREAKING CAMP

Preparing the motorhome for travel will require several small tasks. Properly securing and storing items will help to prevent them from getting lost or damaged. Below is a checklist guide to reference when preparing to break camp.



040480m

Cap the end of the hose before storage to prevent leakage and to prevent dust and insects from entering hose.

Outside Checklist:

- Disconnect the cable TV and lower the satellite dish and/or antenna.
- Disconnect and stow the telephone line.
- Retract awnings and secure them for travel.
- Close the primary LP-Gas tank valve.
- Connect the sewer hose.
- Drain and flush holding tanks. Start by closing the grey water valve. Run enough cold water down the sink and shower drains to fill the grey tank at least 50%. Use caution to avoid overfilling or flooding the grey tank. Connect a non-potable water hose to the "No-Fuss" hose bib, open the black tank valve, and allow adequate time for the black tank to drain. Close the black tank valve and open the grey water valve. Water from the grey tank will help to flush the drain hose. Once evacuated, close the grey water valve. Disconnect the sewer hose and flush that hose with clean water from a **non-potable** hose. Store the hose. Replace the sewer cap.
- Disconnect fresh water hose from the source and store with end cap in place. If applicable, remove the hose protection water pressure regulator from the city water faucet.
- Turn shore power breaker off and disconnect the shore line. Wind up and store the shore cord and secure the door.
- **Inspect** fluid level in oil bath hubs (if applicable) and check all tire pressures.
- Secure all compartment doors.
- **Inspect** tires and wheels.
- Check for fluid leaks under and around the motorhome.

Engine Checklist:

- **Inspect** the engine, transmission and the engine compartment for fluid leaks.
- **Inspect** the area under the motorhome for fluid leaks or puddles.
- Check all fluid levels: oil, antifreeze, transmission, hydraulic fluid and washer fluid.
- **Inspect** belts and hoses for wear.
- **Inspect** wiring for loose, frayed or corroded connections.
- Start engine and listen for unusual noises.
- **Inspect** gauges and controls for proper operation.

Interior Checklist:

- If applicable, retract leveling jacks allowing the air suspension to obtain proper ride height.
- Clear the slide room path, clean the floor, move the driver seat forward, and after confirming the bay doors are closed, retract the slide room. When the slide room is fully retracted, secure all slide room awning locks.

NOTE:
To operate the kitchen slide the ignition must be OFF, the park brake must be set.

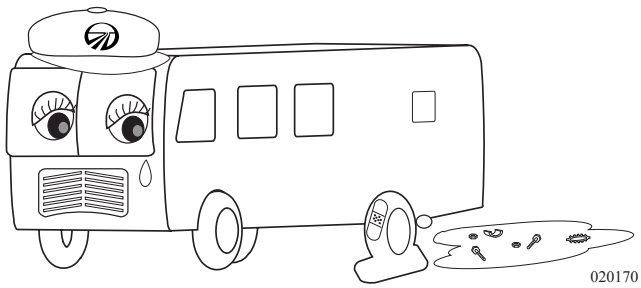
- Secure and fasten the bi-fold and pocket doors. Lock the shower door.
- Close roof vents and windows.
- Secure all loose, heavy or sharp objects in case of a sudden stop.
- Close all cabinet doors and drawers.
- Turn off interior lights.
- Disengage the water pump.
- Check the fuel level gauge and all other dash gauges for operation and correct level indications.

Departure Checklist:

- Check items in storage bays to make sure shifting or damage of items will not occur.
- Look around, above and under the motorhome for obstructions. Check for debris stuck between the rear dual tires.
- Walk around the motorhome and camp area checking for forgotten items.
- Outside compartment doors should be closed and locked.
- Check operation of all exterior lights, headlamp, taillamp, brake and clearance lights.
- Carefully pull forward out of the campsite. If necessary, clean the site and check for forgotten items.
- Secure and lock the entry door for travel.

EMERGENCY ROADSIDE PROCEDURES

If an emergency situation occurs, use the appropriate braking technique and pull off the roadway a safe distance from traffic (if possible). Set the parking brake and turn on the hazard warning flashers, especially when parked alongside traffic lanes. In the event of an emergency stop due to a mechanical breakdown or other motorhome related problems, contact the manufacturer's **Customer Support** (**1-877-466-6226**) or an emergency service provider.


020170

Road flares or reflective warning signs should be displayed if the motorhome is alongside of the road for any length of time. Guidelines for placing the warning triangles depend upon the road characteristics and visibility. For example: The standard placement is 10 feet, 100 feet and 200 feet from the rear of the motorhome when on a divided highway or one-way road. On a two-way road, with traffic traveling both directions, the same placement would also be required at the front of the motorhome. Roads with curves and hills may require the placement of the last/furthest triangle to be 500 feet behind the motorhome in order to safely warn approaching traffic.

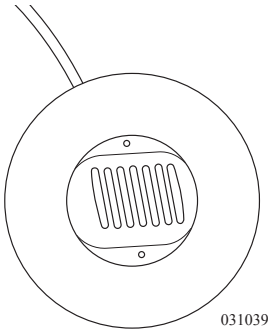
INFORMATION:
In the event of a roadside emergency relating to a Cummins engine, contact the nearest Cummins Center at 1-800-DIESELS (800-343-7357).

INFORMATION:
For a roadside emergency relating to a Detroit Engine, contact Detroit Diesel Customer Assistance at 1-800-445-1980 (US and Canada).

OnStar® (Optional)

OnStar® combines existing technology with a sophisticated Global Positioning System (GPS) to track motorhome location. OnStar® services provide travel aids that range from helping to find a destination to arranging for motorhome roadside assistance. In an emergency situation, OnStar® can utilize vast resources to summon state or local emergency assistance.

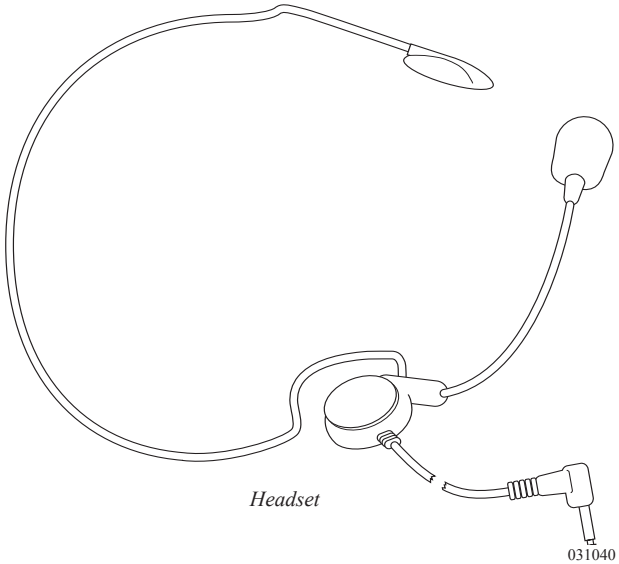
In the event of motorhome breakdown, subscribers can contact an advisor at the call center. Concerns involving interior operations that do not impede travel should be made directly to the Monaco Coach Corporation Customer Service Department.



Microphone

Prior to contacting OnStar®, the motorhome must be registered with Monaco Coach Corporation. A service contract to activate the service can be acquired by either pushing the blue OnStar® button located in the motorhome cockpit, or by calling 800-ONSTAR7.

Motorhome components comprising the OnStar® system include a microphone, three-button interface with volume control, and a jack for use of hands-free headset communication.



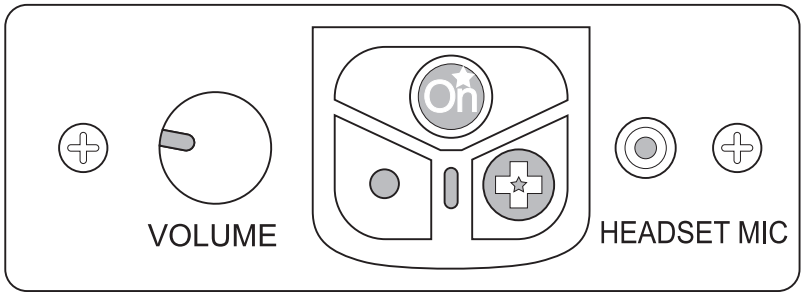
Headset

Operation:

OnStar® operates using the motorhome electrical system powered by the house batteries. If the house battery cut-off switch is turned off, or the batteries are dead, damaged or disconnected, the OnStar® system will not function.

Three Button Keypad:

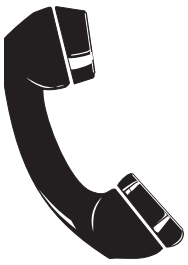
- The **blue On** button connects directly to the OnStar® center.
- The primary function of the **red** emergency button is to summon emergency assistance by alerting OnStar® of a priority call. The operator will inquire of the nature of the emergency. If there is no response, the OnStar® operator will GPS the vehicle location and summon immediate emergency assistance. **OnStar® will not determine if medical help is necessary, regardless of the subscriber description of symptoms.**
- The **white** button is used to answer and disconnect calls to the OnStar® call center, and to operate the optional Personal Calling and Virtual Advisor features. For more information on Personal Calling and Virtual Advisor, contact the OnStar® call center.



031038

Three-Button Interface

In Case of Flat Tire



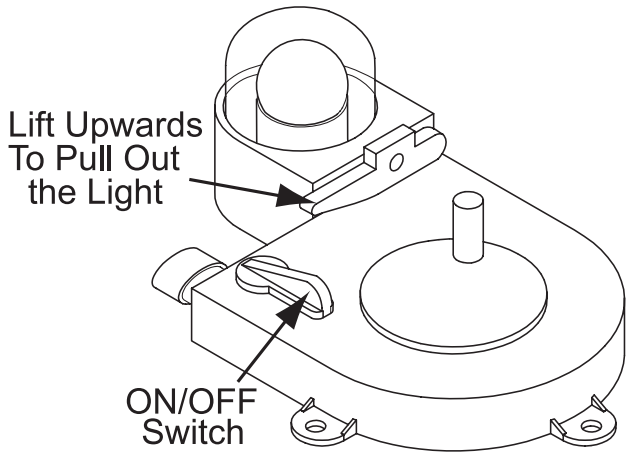
070175

In the event of a flat tire, it is recommended to call for roadside assistance. The size and weight of the motorhome and its tires require proper equipment to change the tire. A professional service technician will have the equipment and training needed to repair or replace the tire. In the case of sudden tire failure, avoid heavy braking. Hold the steering wheel firmly and gradually decrease speed. Slowly move to a safe off-road place, which should be a firm level spot. Turn the ignition off and turn the hazard flasher system ON. Save the old tire for possible warranty coverage.

INFORMATION:
***Goodyear* emergency service number is 877-484-7376.**

Light - Retractable

A retractable light is installed for use in places of limited lighting, such as outside access to the rear engine compartment, and roadside electrical compartments.



To Use the Retractable Light:

1. Activate the light by moving the Cargo Light switch (located directly inside the entry door) to the ON position. Turn on the switch on the light.
2. The light is on an 18' retractable reel cord. To operate, lift the lever and pull the light out.
3. A magnetic base attached to the light enables you to securely position the light for hands free operation.
4. To rewind, crank the handle in the retract direction. When fully retracted, push down on the lever handle to keep the light locked into place.
5. To replace bulb, push down on the clear plastic cover and twist.

Running Out of Fuel

When the motorhome runs out of fuel, air will enter the fuel lines and fuel system components of the engine. Diesel engines are sensitive to air in the fuel system. If the engine has stalled due to low fuel, it will be necessary to prime the fuel system to restart the engine. Several gallons of fuel will be necessary in the tank before attempting to prime the fuel system.

CAUTION:
The engine will sputter for a short period before it stops running due to a low fuel condition. Pull off the road on a firm level surface a safe distance away from traffic. Steering may become stiff if the engine stops running.

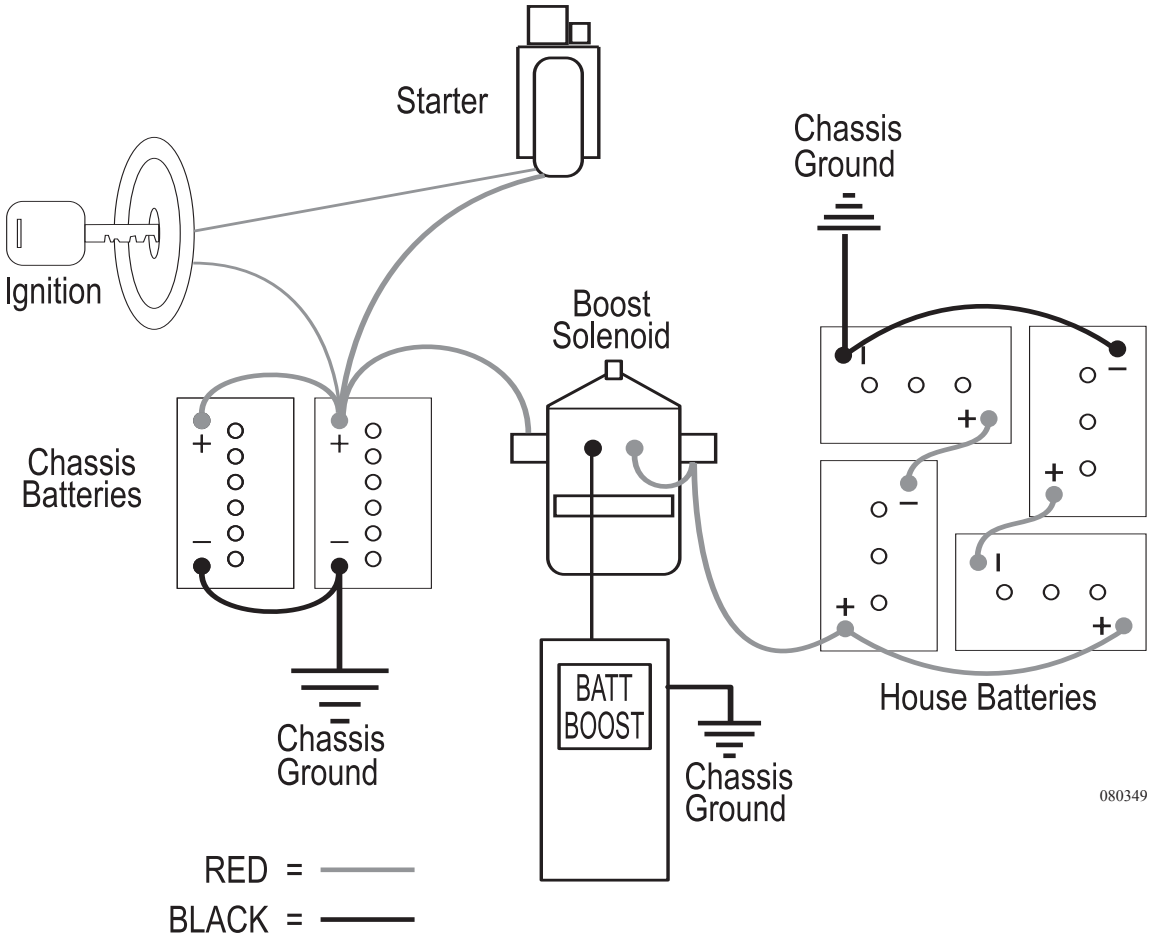
To Prime the Fuel System:

1. Add 30 gallons of fuel to the empty tank, possibly more if the motorhome is parked on an angle.
2. Follow the instructions "To Prime the Fuel System" located in the *Fuel System/Fuel Filters* of *Section 10*.

A weak or discharged battery will not supply the amount of CCA (Cold Cranking Amps) necessary to initiate the required voltage to start the engine. If the engine fails to crank, or cranks slowly due to a weak chassis battery, there are electrical back-up systems in place that may increase chassis battery voltage.

Jump Starting Using the Battery Boost Switch:

The Battery Boost switch, located on the dash, engages a heavy-duty solenoid to electrically connect the house batteries to the engine battery in the event the engine will not crank or cranks slowly. The solenoid is designed for short-term high current intermittent use. Engaging the boost solenoid for an extended period will damage the solenoid.

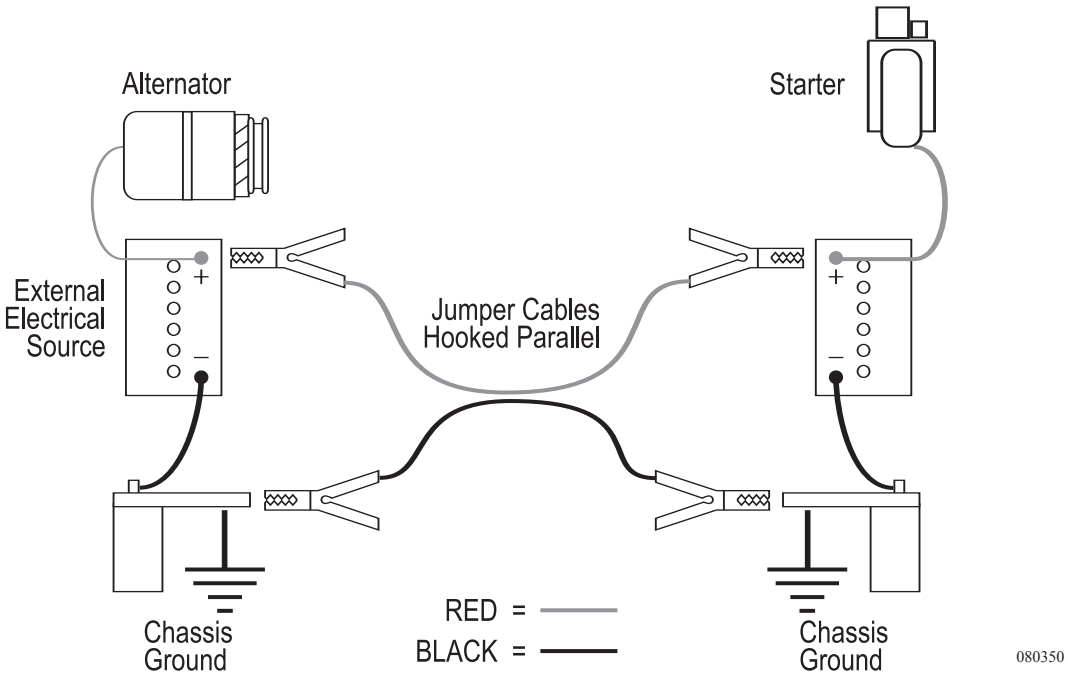


- With the ignition key off, press and hold the Battery Boost switch for ten seconds. After ten seconds, continue to hold the switch down and turn on the ignition. Observe the battery volt gauge on the dash, it should read at least 12 Volts. If voltage is sufficient, try to start the engine.
- If the engine fails to crank, or does not crank fast enough, discontinue the attempt. Continued attempts will only diminish any remaining surface charge in the chassis battery and end future alternative attempts.

- Next, start the generator. This may require using the Battery Boost switch for the generator to start from the engine battery. Once the generator is operating, the electrical combination of the generator, inverter and battery maintainer will charge the batteries.
- Allow the generator to run approximately ½ hour before attempting to start the engine.
- After ½ hour of generator operation, leave the generator on and hold down the Battery Boost switch for one minute. Release the switch for one minute, then press the switch again for one minute. Alternate this cycle three to five times to avoid overheating the Boost solenoid.
- Next, hold the switch down and turn the ignition on. The battery voltage gauge on the dash should indicate at least 12 Volts. If voltage is sufficient with the Boost switch held down, try to start the engine.
- If the engine fails to crank, or fails to crank quickly, the chassis battery may be depleted and the motorhome will require jump-starting or an external charger hooked to the chassis battery. When using jumper cables to start the engine, the cables must connect in a parallel configuration. That is positive (+) to positive (+) and negative battery (-) to negative chassis (-). Always connect the positive (+) before connecting the negative (-). To prevent arcing when disconnecting the cables, disconnect the negative (-) before disconnecting the positive (+).

WARNING:
Batteries can emit explosive gas. Always ventilate the battery compartment prior to any work or service to the batteries. Extinguish all smoking material and keep all open flame and spark producing devices away from battery area.

CAUTION:
A large amount of electrical current is required to jump-start an engine. The sizes of the battery, alternator and jumper cables supplying the "jump" are current limiting factors. Voltage fluctuations that occur during a jump-start procedure can damage sensitive electronic equipment and charging systems. Wait a sufficient amount of time for a surface charge to build before attempting to crank an engine when using a jump-start procedure. If uncertain about performing a jump-start procedure, contact a professional. Damage and personal injury can occur if this procedure is not performed correctly.



Jump Starting using an external source:

1. When using an external electrical source to connect to the chassis battery, turn the main battery disconnect switches **OFF** prior to hooking up the jumper cables.
2. Hook up the cables then wait several minutes to allow a surface charge to build in the chassis battery before attempting to start the engine.
3. Turn **ON** the battery disconnect switches and attempt to start the engine. **DO NOT crank the engine more than a few seconds**.
4. After the engine has started disconnect the cables. Disconnect the negative (-) cables before disconnecting the positive (+) cables to prevent arcing.
5. If the engine does not crank, or cranks slowly, **DO NOT CONTINUE**. Extensive damage, fire or injury can occur. Obtain help from a qualified technician.

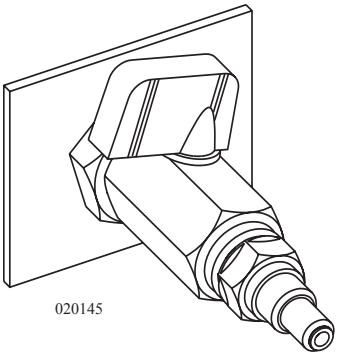
WARNING:

The gas around the battery can explode if exposed to flames, sparks or other sources of ignition, resulting in injury or vehicle damage. Batteries contain sulfuric acid that can burn skin, eyes and clothing. Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery. Connect only to the chassis, away from the battery.

CAUTION:

The charging system on the towed vehicle does not supply the amperage necessary to jump-start the motorhome. Voltage sensitive equipment on the towed vehicle can be damaged, leaving the towed vehicle disabled. If a jump-start is necessary, it is recommended to call Roadside Assistance. They will have the equipment necessary to jump-start the motorhome.

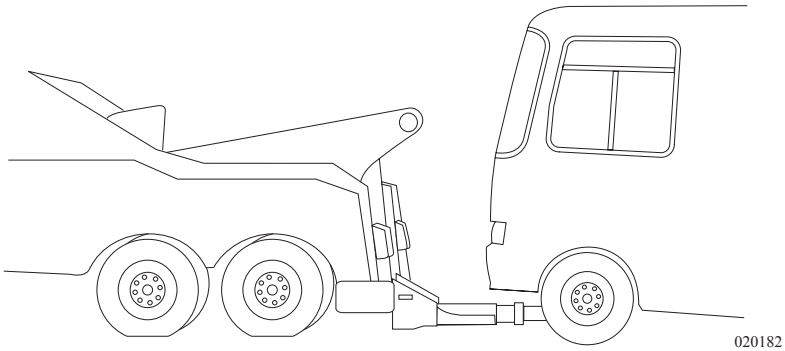
TOWING PROCEDURES

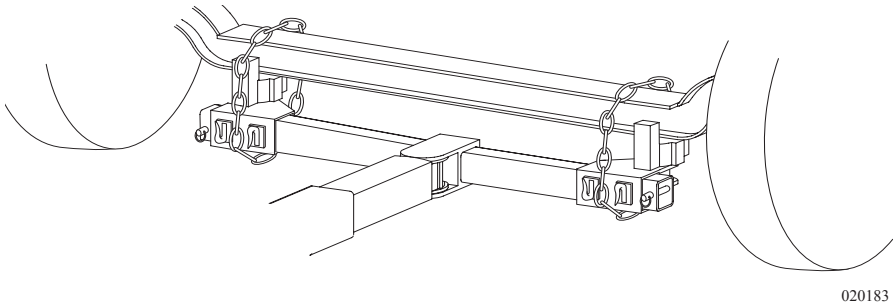


Air Nipple: Used by towing personnel only. Nipple located in generator compartment.

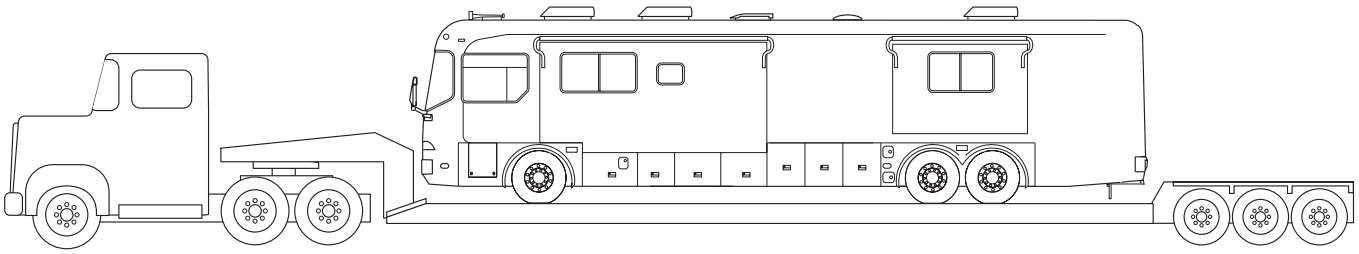
If calling a towing company for service, it is recommended to use a lowboy/landall type of trailer. If a tow truck is used it needs to have a support arm that goes under the motorhome and secures to the front axle. Inform the tow company of the axle weights and total weight of the motorhome. Other important information is the length of the motorhome, number of passengers and milepost location. Two tow trucks may be necessary. One to tow the motorhome and the other to tow a trailer or the tow vehicle if it is not operational.

The towing company may need to locate the air nipple to release the air brakes (air brakes only). The air nipple is located in the generator compartment and should be used by towing personnel only. Generally, if the motorhome ever needs to be towed, use the following instructions:





- Secure any loose or protruding parts if the motorhome is damaged.
- **Inspect** the points of attachment on a disabled motorhome. If attachment points are damaged, select other attachment points at a substantial frame structural member.
- Never allow anyone to go under a motorhome while it is being lifted by towing equipment unless the disabled motorhome is adequately supported by safety stands.
- Do not tow the motorhome from the rear. Towing from the rear will severely overload the front tires and suspension possibly resulting in tire and/or front suspension failure. Rear frame extensions are not designed to support weight loads imposed by lifting the motorhome from the rear.



020228

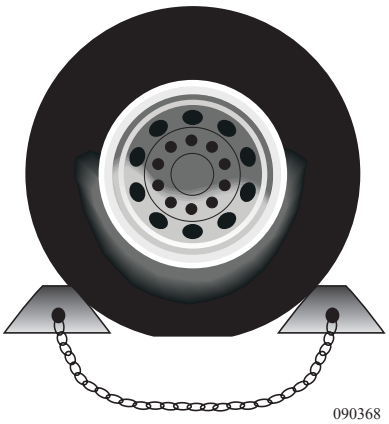
- If the rear wheels are disabled, place the motorhome on a flat bed trailer, or use a heavy duty dolly under the rear wheels and tow the motorhome from the front.
- **The drive shaft must be removed to prevent damage to the transmission.** Secure end caps to prevent losing or contaminating the needle bearings.
- The mud flap may need to be removed to prevent damage due to limited ground clearance.
- When towing a motorhome equipped with the HWH Air-Leveling System, the ignition MUST be left in the ON position and the Travel indicator lamp on the HWH panel must be lit for the air suspension to operate. If the ignition system is not functioning, or if chassis voltage is below specification, the motorhome must be placed on a lowboy/landall trailer to prevent suspension damage.

WARNING:
In case the motorhome requires towing, ensure all precautions are followed. The drive shaft must be disconnected and the mud flap may need to be removed. The manufacturer WILL NOT cover damage to the motorhome caused by a towing company.

Brake - Disabling Parking Brake

The park/emergency brakes apply to the drive axle only. The brakes can be manually released if the air system will not build sufficient air pressure to release them. This emergency procedure is to be used by trained technicians or towing personnel to move the motorhome to a safe location or repair facility.

WARNING:
Only trained personnel should perform this procedure.



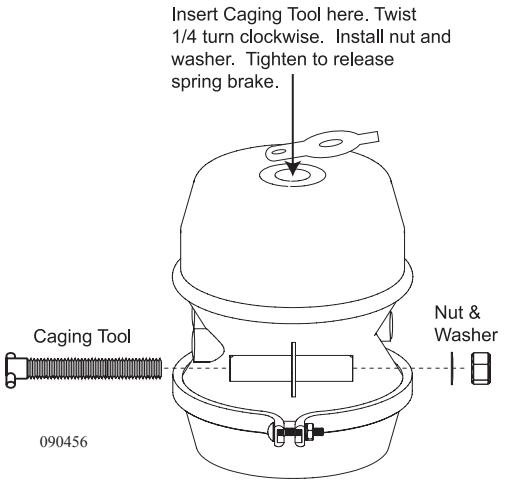
090368

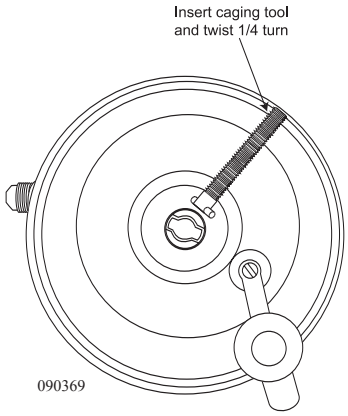
Properly chocked wheel.

Drum Brakes:

- Place wheel chocks firmly against the wheel before performing this procedure.
- Remove the plug from the center of rear brake chamber on the drive axle.
- Remove the caging tool from its holder on the brake chamber and insert the tool into hole. Turn clockwise to engage.
- Screw nut and washer onto caging tool. Use a wrench to tighten the nut, compressing the internal spring to release the brake.
- Repeat procedure for the other side.
- After towing, or when air pressure is again available, loosen the nut and remove the tool. Return the caging tool to its original location and replace the plug.
- Repeat for the other side.

WARNING:
Failure to securely chock the wheels can result in the motorhome rolling when the spring brakes are released. Severe injury or death can occur.





Drive Axle Brake Chamber

TIRES

Tires designed for the motorhome are a very technical and engineered product. Since the tire is the only contact the motorhome has with road surface, it is critical that proper tire pressures be maintained. Improper tire pressure will lead to abnormal wear or sudden tire failure. The motorhome must be weighed fully loaded before proper tire inflation pressures can be determined. The following information concerning tires and weighing the motorhome are set in the order in which the process is performed or experienced.

The tire performs additional functions of traction for moving stopping and steering, as well as providing a cushion for the motorhome. Modern tire technology blends a unique mix of chemistry, physics and engineering to provide a high degree of comfort, performance, efficiency, reliability and safety. To obtain the maximum wear and best service from tires, it is helpful to understand the components and functions of the tire.

Tire Components:

Tread: Provides traction and cornering grip.

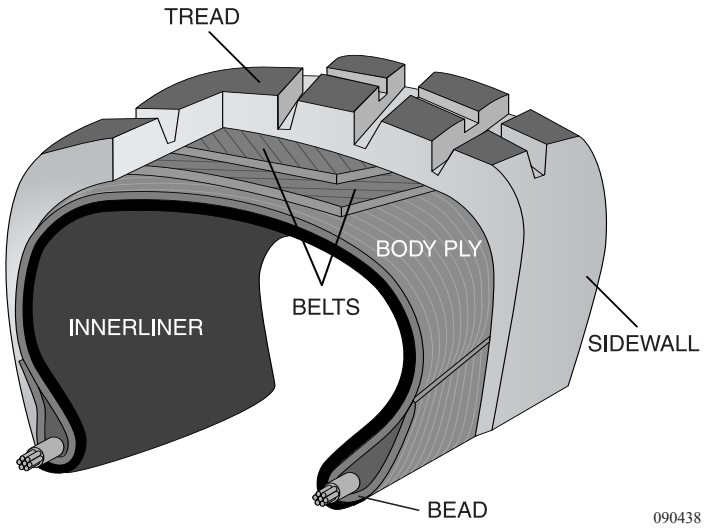
Belts: Stabilize and strengthen the tread.

Sidewall: Protects the side of the tire from road and curb damage.

Body Ply: Gives the tire strength and flexibility.

Bead: Assures an air-tight fit with the wheel.

Inner Liner: Keeps air inside the tire.



Importance of Air Pressure

The most important factor in maximizing the life of the tires is maintaining proper inflation. Driving on any tire that does not have the correct inflation pressure for the load of the motorhome is dangerous and may cause premature wear, tire damage and/or loss of control of the motorhome.

An under-inflated tire will build up excessive heat that may go beyond the design limits of the rubber and radial cords and could result in sudden failure. An under-inflated tire will also cause poor motorhome handling, rapid and/or irregular tire wear and an increase in rolling resistance that results in a decreased fuel economy.

An over-inflated tire will reduce the tire's footprint/contact patch with the road, thus reducing traction, braking capacity and handling of the motorhome. Over-inflation of a tire for the load will result in a harsh ride, uneven tire wear and is susceptible to impact damage.

Maintaining correct tire inflation pressure for each loaded wheel position on the motorhome is of the utmost importance and must be a part of regular motorhome maintenance.

WARNING:

Driving on a tire that is under-inflated can exceed the design limits of the tire and may damage the sidewall. A damaged sidewall can burst upon inflation resulting in serious damage, injury or death. Aged tires are also susceptible to sidewall damage.

Tire Pressure Inflation Guideline

Federal law requires that the specifications for the tire's maximum load rating be molded into the sidewall of the tire. The amount of air pressure to use is dependent on the weight of the motorhome when fully loaded. The tire chart (Section 10) indicates the weights that can be properly supported by varying air pressures. Decreasing air pressure decreases load carrying capacity.

Always comply with the tire manufacturer's recommended pressure inflation guideline. The actual weight of the motorhome can vary significantly depending on how it is loaded. For optimum tire wear, ride and handling always comply with the manufacturer guideline. A tire inflation chart listing proper inflation pressure for different loads can be found in this section.

The tires of the motorhome are inflated to pressure(s) appropriate for the actual weight on each axle in the unloaded, shipped condition. When the motorhome is loaded, check and adjust the inflation pressure on each tire as needed.

Always inflate tires to the pressure indicated in the tire chart for the load carried by the tire. **DO NOT OVERINFLATE OR UNDERINFLATE THE TIRES**.

The Gross Axle Weight Rating (**GAWR**) of the axles listed on the federal certification label attached to the motorhome is the maximum allowable loaded weight on an axle.

When the actual loaded weight of the motorhome and the weight on each axle is unknown, follow the recommended tire inflation pressure(s) listed on the federal certification label. When loading a motorhome never exceed the motorhome's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (**GVWR**) or the GAWR for each axle.

Contact the tire manufacturer for further information concerning proper tire pressure inflation and other tire issues.

Tire Chart - Goodyear

Understanding the Inflation Table:

The tire size is on the left margin of the table. Determine the **Single** inflation reading or **Dual** inflation reading, denoted with a **D** or **S** on the Table. **Single** is for the front axle and tag axle (if equipped). **Dual** is for the drive axle.

Find the corresponding PSI at the top columns to see the corresponding maximum weight capacity for that PSI.

NOTE:
Every load range has a maximum rating as well as a minimum rating. Do not exceed those ratings.

Rated load capacities are listed for individual tires in a **Dual** or **Single** position.

TIRE SIZE	MAX Speed Rating (MPH)	Dual (D) Single (S)	INFLATION PRESSURE PSI												
			65	70	75	80	85	90	95	100	105	110	115	120	125
8R19.5	75	D S	2350 2410	2460 2540	2570 2680	2680 2800	2780 2930	2880 3060	2980 3170	3070 3280	3160 3400	**3375(F)** **3500(F)**			
225/70R19.5	75	D S		2720 2895	2860 3040	3000 3195	3115 3315	3245 3450	**3415(F)** **3640(F)**						
245/70R19.5	75	D S		3415 3640	3515 3740	3655 3890	**3875(F)** **4080(F)**	3940 4190	4075 4335	**4375(G)** **4545(G)**					
265/70R19.5	75	D S				3750 3970	3930 4180	4095 4355	4300 4540	4405 4685	4560 4850	4805 5070	4860 5170	**5070(G)** **5355(G)**	
9R22.5	65	D S	3120 3190	3270 3370	3410 3560	3550 3730	3690 3890	3820 4050	**3950(F)** 4210	4350	**4500(F)**				
10R22.5	65	D S	3690 3770	3870 4000	4040 4210	4200 4410	4375 4610	4520 4790	4670 4970	**4875(F)** **5150(F)**	4970 5320	5110 5490	**5250(G)** **5680(G)**		
11R22.5	75	D S				4760 4990	4950 5220	5120 5430	5300 5640	5470 5840	**5750(G)** **6175(G)**	**5800(H)** 6240	6430	**6610(H)**	
12R22.5	65	D S				5190 5450	5390 5690	5590 5920	5780 6140	5960 6370	6150 6590	6320 6790	6500 7010	**6750(H)** **7390(H)**	
245/75R22.5	75	D S		3260 3470	3425 3645	3640 3860	3740 3980	3890 4140	4080 4300	4190 4455	4335 4610	**4410(G)** **4675(G)**			
255/70R22.5	75	D S		3585 3815	3765 4005	3970 4190	4110 4370	4275 4550	4410 4675	4455 4895	4610 5065	4675 5205	**5070(H)** **5510(H)**		
265/75R22.5	75	D S			4040 4070	4205 4255	4370 4440	4525 4620	4685 4800	**4805(G)** 4975	5150	**5205(G)**			
275/70R22.5	75	D S					4535 4885	4750 5080	4960 5305	5165 5530	5370 5750	5575 5965	5775 6185	5975 6400	**6175(H)** **6610(H)**
275/80R22.5	75	D S					4855 5265	5080 5515	5305 5755	5525 6000	5745 6235	5965 6475	6180 6710	**6395(H)** **6940(H)**	
295/75R22.5	75	D S			4690 4725	4885 4945	5070 5155	5260 5370	5440 5510	**5675(G)** 5780	5800 5980	**6005(H)** **6175(G)**	6370	**6610(H)**	
295/80R22.5	75	D S				4855 5480	5100 5750	5335 6020	5570 6285	5805 6550	6035 6810	6265 7070	6490 7320	6720 7580	**6940(H)** **7830(H)**
315/80R22.5	75	D S					5840 6415	6070 6670	6395 6940	6540 7190	6770 7440	6940 7610	7210 7920	**7610(J)** **8270(J)**	7390 8820
285/75R24.5	75	D S			4740 4770	4930 4990	5205 5210	5310 5420	5495 5675	**5675(G)** 5835	6040	**6175(G)**			

The motorhome manufacturer is not the author of this chart and makes no representation or warranty concerning the accuracy of the information disclosed by the chart. Monaco is not responsible for the accuracy of the information disclosed or for any errors within the Tire Inflation Chart.

Inspecting & Pressure

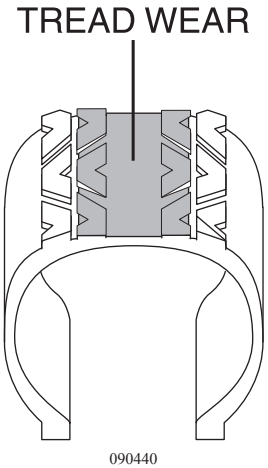
Check tire pressure regularly. A sharp object can lodge in a tire and create a slow leak. The object will eventually be detected on a front tire, but may go unnoticed on one of the rear duals to result in one tire carrying the weight intended for two. Exceeding weight limits the tire is designed to carry can cause it to fail (in most cases only a few miles) resulting in two flat tires on the same axle and the same side. The flat tire can also generate enough heat by friction for the tire to ignite.

Check the tire pressure every two weeks or at least once a month, and always before a major trip. Check the tire pressure every "drive" morning on both long and short trips (driving a day or less). Check the tire pressure before leaving on a trip and again before starting the trip home. Check the tire pressure before storing the motorhome for any length of time. More importantly, check the tire pressure when removing the motorhome from storage.

Check the tire pressure when the tires are "cold" and have not been driven for more than one mile. The rated load capacity for cold inflation pressure is based on ambient temperature. If you must check the tires when they are warm or hot, allow for a slight increase in air pressure. The pressure should be within a couple of pounds of each other on the same axle. Never let air out of a hot tire.

When checking the inflation pressure, use a high-quality truck tire air gauge with an angle dual head. This type of pressure gauge can check the pressure of the inner dual wheel that has the valve stem pointing outward and the outer wheel that has the valve stem pointing inward. Nothing should restrict the ability to easily check tire air pressure daily when traveling in the motorhome. Use valve stem caps with a positive seal to prevent air escaping from the valve stem. If there are extension hoses on the valve stem, make sure they are good quality reinforced stainless steel braid. Attach hoses securely to the outer wheel.

Optimum tire performance is achieved at proper inflation pressure for the load carried. Do not mix tires of different tread patterns on the same axle. The difference in traction could cause rear end gear fight and mechanical damage to the drive train. Never mix tires of a different size or construction on the same axle.



Example of Overinflation
More wear in center.

Higher than recommended pressure can cause:

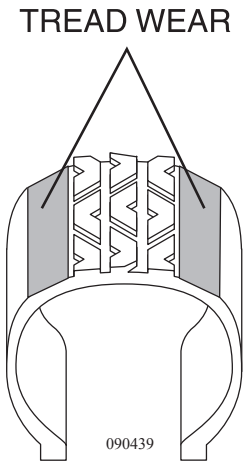
- Hard ride.
- Tire bruising or carcass damage.
- Rapid tread wear in the center of the tire.

WARNING:

Improperly inflated tires can effect handling or cause sudden tire failure possibly resulting in loss of vehicle control of the mtorhome. Always use an accurate tire pressure gauge when checking tire pressure.

Lower than recommended pressure can cause:

- Tire squeal on turns.
- Separations.
- Rapid and uneven wear on the edges of the tread.
- Circumferential breaks.
- Tire container may bruise or rupture.
- Higher risk of road hazard.
- Tire cord breakage.
- Loss of casing durability.
- Excessive tire temperature.
- High fuel consumption.
- Reduced handling quality.



Example of Underinflation
More wear on edges.

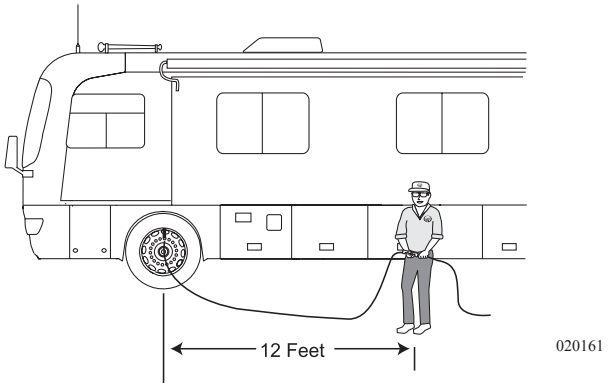
WARNING:
A slow leak may go unnoticed on one of the dual tires. This can cause the good tire paired with it to fail due to exceeding the load limits it is designed to carry. Tires with damaged sidewalls can burst upon inflation. A flat or nearly flat tire can also generate enough heat from friction to ignite.

Unequal tire pressures on same axle can cause:

- Uneven braking, swerve upon acceleration.
- Steering lead, torque steer.
- Reduced handling quality.

WARNING:
For safety purposes clear the area of people and pets during tire inflation. Inflate tires using a remote inflation device.

NOTE:
An air coupling is located in the LP-Gas tank compartment. This Type C fitting can be used to add air to the tires. Detailed information about this fitting is located in Section 10.



Air Pressure Checklist

1. When inspecting the tires, confirm the tires are cool before increasing or reducing air pressure. Even driving a short distance can heat up tires.

NOTE:
If the motorhome must be driven a distance to get air, check and record the tire pressure first and add the recorded calculation when reaching the pump. It is normal for tires to heat up and the air pressure inside to go up as driven. Never "bleed" or reduce air pressure when tires are hot.

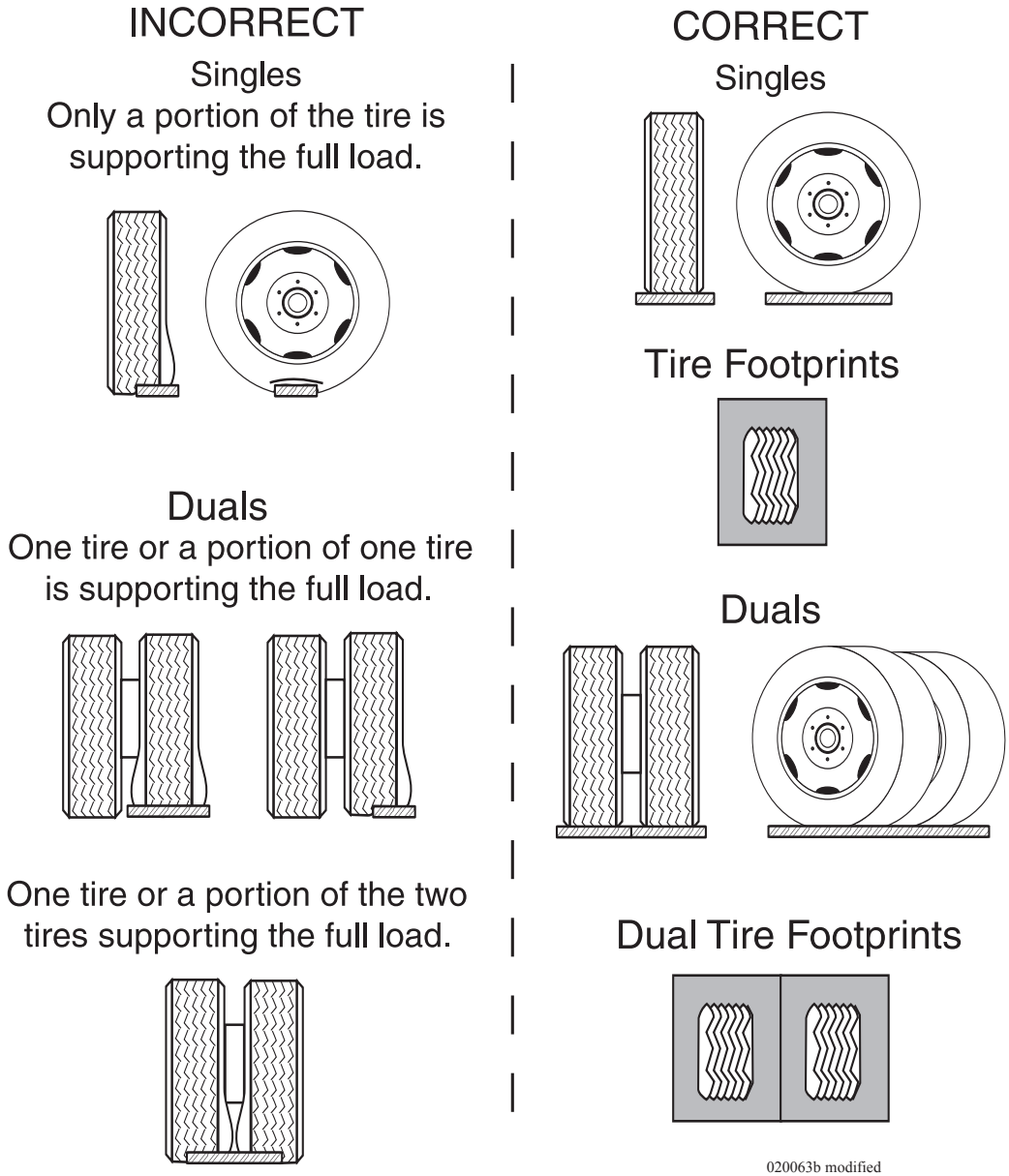
2. Remove the cap from the valve on one tire.
3. Firmly press a tire gauge onto the valve and record reading.
4. Add air to achieve recommended air pressure.
5. If the tire is over filled, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the center of the valve, then recheck the pressure with the tire gauge.
6. Replace the valve cap.
7. Repeat with each tire.
8. Visually **inspect** the tires to make sure there are no nails, or other objects embedded that could poke a hole in the tire and cause an air leak.
9. Check the sidewalls to make sure there are no gouges, cuts, bulges, or other irregularities.

NOTE:
Air pressure in a tire goes up (in warm weather) or down (in cold weather) 1 to 2 pounds for every 10 degrees of temperature change.

Extreme caution must be taken to ensure that the tires are fully supported when placing blocks under the tires. The load on the tire should be evenly distributed on the support block. In the case of dual tires, distribute the load evenly on blocks for both tires. If not properly supported, the steel cables in the sidewall of the tires may be damaged and could lead to premature fatigue of the sidewall.

CAUTION:
Supporting the tires prevents damage to the sidewall of the tires and does not prevent tire roll.

Tire "Support" Methods



Tire Vibration

Sudden tire failure is often preceded by tire vibration. Symptoms that can cause tire failure are a bulge in the sidewall or swelling in the tire carcass. Striking an object or large hole in the road surface can damage a tire. Inspect the tires periodically thereafter as rotational forces can continue to stress damaged areas and later manifest in tire failure. If an unusual vibration begins, or a bulge is noticed in the sidewall, have the tires evaluated by a qualified professional as soon as possible.

Tire Rotation

Tire rotation can increase the useful life of the tires by achieving uniform wear on all of the tires. Have the tire manufacturer determine the rotation pattern. The first tire rotation is the most important in determining which rotation pattern to use. Any unusual or unique wear patterns, or indications of uneven wear that may have developed, should be evaluated for possible tire rotation. Misalignment, imbalance or other mechanical problems may exist and will need to be corrected prior to rotation.

Tread

To prevent skidding and hydroplaning, replace tires when the tread is worn down to 4/32 of an inch on the front, and 2/32 of an inch on the rear. Questions regarding tread wear should be directed to the tire manufacturer.

Built in tread wear indicators, or "wear bars" which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread, will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to one-sixteenth of an inch. When "wear bars" are noticed, the tire should be replaced.

Visually check the tires for signs of uneven wear. Signs of irregular tread wear are usually exhibited by low or unusually smooth areas on the tire surface. Consult the tire manufacturer as soon as possible.

WARNING:
In many instances the life of the tires on the motorhome is not determined by mileage but by age. Tires are subject to weathering. Weathering cracks run in circumference with the tire. Though the sidewall of the tire may look fine and be structurally sound, weathering can occur inside the well of the tread, therefore replacement may be determined not by mileage but age. Have the tire manufacturer inspect the tires for age weathering.

Rubber tires age faster when not in use. A cool, dry, sealed garage is the preferred method of storage. Tires stored outside in the element may prematurely age. Placing a barrier (i.e. cardboard, plastic or plywood) between the tire and the ground surface will help to protect the tires during outside storage. Outlined below are additional steps that can be taken to reduce the aging effects of tires during long periods of non-use.

NOTE:
If the motorhome is stored with weight on the tires they should be inflated to the maximum inflation pressure as indicated on the Federal Identification Tag.

- Thoroughly clean the tires.
- Unload the motorhome so there is minimum weight on the tires.
- Ensure the surface is reasonably level, firm, clean and has good drainage.
- Move the motorhome every three months to prevent cracking in bulge areas, as well as flat spotting from prolonged sidewall strain and tread deflection.
- Cover the tires to block direct sunlight and ultraviolet rays.

The type of surface the motorhome is parked upon will have an affect on how much moisture accumulation occurs on the chassis and flooring.

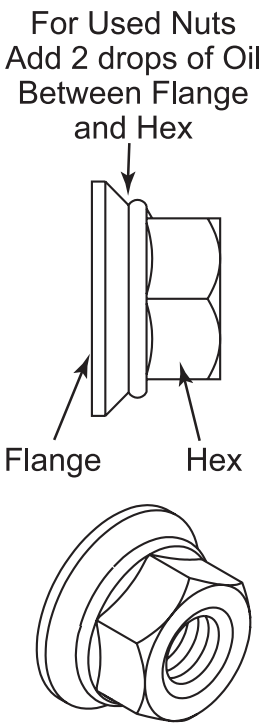
- Gravel covered parking areas still allow moisture to evaporate from the ground, through the gravel and to the underside of the motorhome.
- Sealed concrete pads allow better ventilation under the motorhome.
- Storage buildings with sealed concrete floors or heated storage facilities greatly reduce the amount of moisture accumulation and protect the motorhome from moisture damage.
- Wet, oily, or greasy surfaces; highly reflective surfaces, such as sand or snow; and heat absorbent surfaces, such as black asphalt, should be avoided.

Before removing the motorhome from long-term storage thoroughly **inspect** each of the tires. This means a close examination of each tire's tread area and air pressure. If the pressure check indicates the tires have lost air during storage, inflate them to the correct pressure for the current load before putting the motorhome into service.

WHEEL MOUNTING

Hub Piloted Mounting:

- Before using flange nuts that have already been used in service, apply two drops of oil at one point between the flange and hex. This will allow parts to rotate freely and provide the proper clamping force when tightened. Use any common lubricant typically used for fasteners. Examples are motor oil and general purpose lubricating oils. Excessive lubricant is not desirable, and will not improve nut torquing performance. Excessive lubricant makes the nuts hard to handle, attracts dirt, and may cause unsightly appearance to the wheel. Only used nuts require lubrication.
- Flange nuts generate higher clamping force.Always use grade eight studs with hub mount wheels.
- Before installing the wheels, lubricate the hub pilot pads with a drop of oil to prevent galling. Do not lubricate any other wheel or hub surface.
- For a hub with intermittent pilot pads, position a pad at the twelve o'clock position to center the wheel and reduce runout.



Flange Nut:
Front and side view.

NOTE:
Loosen and tighten lug nuts in a star pattern sequence. Sequence tighten to 50 ft. lbs. first, then sequence tighten to 500 lbs. Overtightening can cause distortion.

WARNING:
Never use wheels or lug nuts different than the original equipment as this could damage the wheel or the mounting system. Damage to the wheel or mounting system could cause a wheel to come off while the recreational vehicle is in motion.

Front Wheels:

Slide the front wheel over the studs. Use caution to avoid damaging stud threads. Snug the nuts in sequence. When all nuts have been seated, tighten the nuts to 500 ft. lbs. in sequence (as shown in the illustration below).

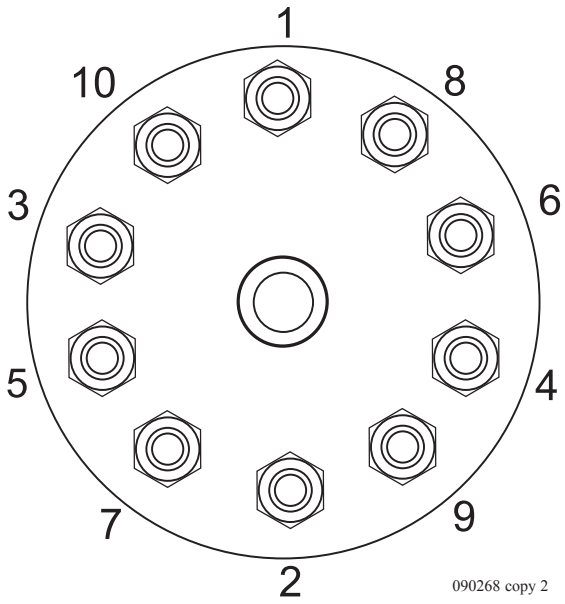
Dual Rear Wheels:

Slide the inner dual wheel over the studs. Use caution to avoid damaging threads. Align the handholds for valve access and slide the outer dual wheel over the studs, again using caution to avoid damaging the stud threads. When all nuts are seated, tighten the nuts to 500 ft. lbs. in sequence (as shown in the illustration below).

The hub mount wheels use two-piece flange cap nuts for both front and rear applications. No inner cap nuts are required.

Torque the Nuts Properly:

- Tighten the wheel nuts to the recommended lug nut torque. Do not over tighten.
- Maintain the nut torque at the recommended level through planned periodic checks or at 10,000 miles intervals, whichever comes first.
- If air wrenches are used they must be periodically calibrated for the proper torque output. Use a torque wrench to check the air wrench output and adjust the line pressure for the correct torque.



Nut Tightening Sequence

WEIGHING THE MOTORHOME

Proper weight distribution, load management and operating within established limitations will aide in safe and enjoyable travel. The information contained in this publication outlines guidelines and provides worksheets for weighing procedures.

Proper weight distribution and load management is an individual responsibility. In order to correctly manage load and weight distribution, more than one weight measurement will be required. Each wheel position must be weighed to accurately determine the weight placed on each wheel position for proper weight computations. The entire process of weigh management begins with the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating as listed on the Federal Certification Label. **This weight cannot be exceeded.**

CAUTION:
Most States limit the amount of weight carried by any single axle position. It is the responsibility of the operator to know the legal weight limit of the State in which they travel.

Weight Terms

Numerous Federal, State and local governments mandate weight limits. Understanding the terminology and performing proper weighing procedure will help eliminate confusion. It is important to understand there are two reasons to weigh the motorhome. One to find out the **Cargo Carrying Capacity (CCC)** and the other to ensure no axle is overloaded.

The **Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)** of the axles is listed on the federal certification label attached to the motorhome. This is the maximum allowable loaded weight on a particular axle. This label is generally located to the rear of the driver's seat, on the wall.

When the actual loaded weight of the motorhome, and the weight on each axle is unknown, follow the recommended tire inflation pressure(s) listed on the federal certification label. When loading a motorhome never exceed the motorhome's **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)** or the **GAWR** for each axle.

NOTE:
Contact the tire manufacturer for further information concerning proper tire pressure inflation and other tire issues.

The **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)** and **Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)** Listed on the Federal Certification Label attached to the motorhome details the chassis manufacturer's and/or the RV manufacturer's total vehicle maximum weight rating and per axle weight rating.

The **GVWR** is the maximum total weight for which the motorhome is rated - including passengers, fluids and cargo. The **GAWR** is the maximum weight for which a single axle is designed. The tires, wheels, axle, motorhome frame and/or other components of the motorhome may limit these per axle and total maximum weight ratings.

The Federal Certification Label is a guide in knowing the maximum loaded axle weight rating **GAWR**, and subsequently the correct tire inflation pressure for that weight. Every recreational vehicle, even of the same make and model, will vary in actual loaded axle weights because of different options and personal loads.

While the actual loaded axle weight should be below the **GAWR**, the motorhome must be weighed in a loaded condition to determine actual weight. Separately weigh the front axle, rear axle and tag axle, if equipped. It is possible for a motorhome to be within the **GVWR** yet overloaded on one axle. It is even possible for one wheel position to be overloaded, even though the **GAWR** has not been exceeded. For this reason it will be necessary to weigh each wheel position of the motorhome to give a clear indication of exactly how the weight of the motorhome is distributed.

Instructions and diagrams are presented on the following pages. When the total weight and the weight on each axle is known, the tire load data chart in this manual will show the correct cold inflation pressure per tire for each axle.

There are two important factors to consider when loading the motorhome: **total weight** and **balance**. When loading heavy objects keep them as low as possible, preferably on the floor or below in storage compartments. Load weight must be distributed as evenly as possible.

The following is an explanation of commonly used weight abbreviations:

- **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR):** Maximum permissible weight of this motorhome. **GVWR** is equal to or greater than the sum of **UVW** plus **CCC**.
- **Unloaded Vehicle Weight (UVW):** Weight of this motorhome as built at factory with full fuel, engine oil and coolants. **UVW** does not include cargo, fresh water, LP-Gas, occupants or dealer installed accessories.
- **Cargo Carrying Capacity (CCC):** Equal to **GVWR** minus each of the following: **UVW**, full fresh potable water weight (including water heater), full LP-Gas weight, and **SCWR**. Tongue weight of towed vehicle and dealer installed equipment will reduce **CCC**.
- **Gross Combination Weight Rating (GCWR):** The maximum allowable loaded weight of this motorhome and any towed trailer or towed vehicle.
- **Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR):** Load-carrying capacity specified by manufacturer of a single axle system, as measured at tire ground interfaces.
- **Sleeping Capacity Weight Rating (SCWR):** The manufacturer's designated number of sleeping positions multiplied by 154 pounds.

Tire Pressure:

A motorhome may weigh slightly heavier on one side. Tire inflation pressure of the heavier side tires determine the inflation pressure for all tire(s) on that axle due to the weight transfer that occurs when cornering.

Improperly inflated tires, or an incorrectly loaded suspension, can result in poor fuel economy, poor handling and over-stressed chassis components. How the motorhome is loaded will influence tire inflation pressure and the load carried by each axle. This is why each wheel position must be weighed. Motorhome axle configuration and floor plan styles will require different weighing procedures.

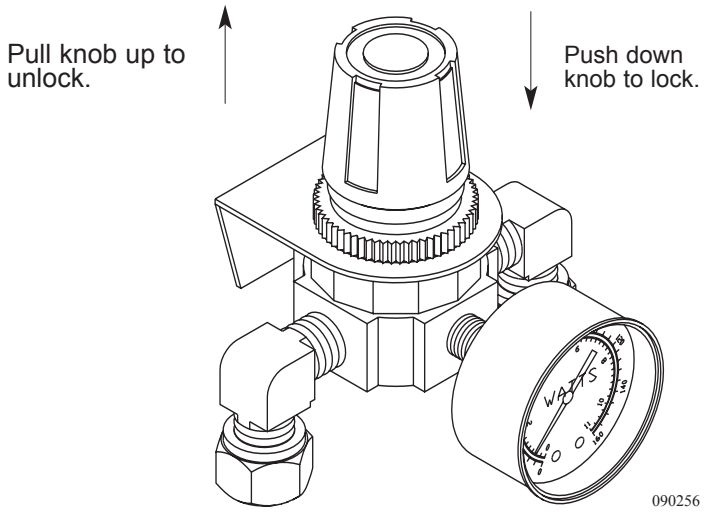
NOTE:
When weighing a motorhome, each tire on any axle must be inflated to the same pressure. The wheel position carrying the most weight will determine the tire inflation pressure for each tire of that particular axle.

Tag Axle Motorhome (Roadmaster Chassis):

Motorhomes equipped with a tag axle will require adjustment to the air pressure regulator for the tag axle to maintain proper axle weight distribution ratios. The adjustable regulator and gauge package are located in the engine compartment on the driver side. The regulator is designed to control the amount of air pressure in the tag axle air bags. Increasing the regulator pressure gauge reading will increase the amount of air pressure in the tag axle air bags, and downward force of the tag axle. Applying downward force to the tag axle decreases the weight carried by the drive axle.

Tag Axle Regulator Adjustment:

The pressure regulator adjustment knob has a positive lock. Pull up on the knob to unlock; push down on the knob to lock. Turn the knob clockwise to increase air pressure; turn the knob counterclockwise to decrease air pressure. Decreasing regulator air pressure will release excess air through the regulator discharge port. Air pressure stabilization procedures will be performed each time an increase or decrease of air pressure to the regulator is made, equalizing the regulator to hold a constant air pressure setting.



Tag Axle Regulator: Located in the Roadside Rear Engine Compartment.

To perform the stabilization procedure:

- Start the motorhome and allow the air system to reach a full charge, indicated by the release of air from the air dryer.
- Raise the tag axle using the tag axle switch on the shift panel. Allow approximately 20 seconds for the system to discharge air from the tag axle air bags.
- Lower the tag axle. The regulator will hold the new air pressure setting.
- Push down on the regulator adjustment knob to lock the setting.

When increasing the air pressure setting allow approximately a two-pound pressure increase before the stabilization process. Example: If the desired setting is 30 psi, slowly rotate the regulator adjustment knob clockwise to 28 psi. Perform the stabilization procedure. Regulator setting will stabilize to approximately 30 psi. When decreasing the air pressure setting rotate the regulator adjustment knob counterclockwise, allowing the excess air to be discharged, and then perform the stabilization procedure.

Scales:

Certified public scales are located in moving and storage lots, farm supplies with grain elevators, gravel pits, recycling companies and large commercial truck stops. To locate a nearby public scale access, check the local area telephone book yellow pages under Scales-Public or Weighers. A nominal fee may be charged, but this is money wisely spent.

Weight scale types and weighing methods determine the procedure used to calculate proper tire inflation pressure and axle loading. Several types of scales are in use today. A platform scale will allow the entire motorhome to fit on the scale to read the GVW in one scale recording. A segmented platform scale is designed to weight one axle at a time. A single axle scale weighs one axle at a time. Some scales read only one wheel position at a time due to physical size. Several scale readings may be required to determine the GAW or GVW total. Each wheel position requires weighing, referred to as a six-point weigh, to accurately determine the correct tire inflation pressure.

NOTE:
The most accurate method to determine proper tire pressure is six-point weighing. Each wheel position must be weighed independently. Weighing the entire axle will not accurately determine the total weight carried by that wheel position. When calculating the drive axle dual tire pressure using a independent corner weigh method, divide the total weight by two to determine the weight carried by each tire. Each wheel position must be weighed and recorded.

When weighing, the scales and the motorhome must be level to obtain an accurate scale reading. Even when an axle is not physically on the scale, a definite lean in the motorhome will produce inaccurate scale readings.

Weight Label

MODEL YEAR: _____ **MAKE:** _____ **MODEL:** _____

UNIT NO. _____ **CHASSIS VIN:** _____

		LBS.	KGS.
GVWR	(Gross Vehicle Weight Rating) is the maximum permissible weight of this fully loaded motorhome	_____	_____
UVW	(Unloaded Vehicle Weight) is the weight of this Motorhome as manufactured at the factory with full fuel, engine oil and coolants.....	_____	_____
SCWR	(Sleeping Capacity Weight Rating) is the manufacturer's designated number of sleeping positions multiplied by 154 pounds (70 kilograms)	_____	_____
CCC	(Cargo Carrying Capacity) is the GVWR minus each of the following: UVW, full fresh (potable) water weight (including water heater), full LP-Gas weight and SCWR (*1).....	_____	_____
GCWR	(Gross Combination Weight Rating) is the maximum allowable combined weight of this motorhome and the towable product. (*1).....	_____	_____
	FACTORY INSTALLED OPTIONS are options installed at the factory but do not include dealer installed after market equipment...	_____	_____

CARGO CARRYING CAPACITY (CCC) COMPUTATION

GVWR	_____	_____
minus UVW	_____	_____
minus fresh water (*2) weight of ___ gallons @ 8.3 lbs./gal	_____	_____
minus LP-Gas weight of ___ gallons@ 4.2 lbs./gal	_____	_____
minus SCWR of ___ persons @ 154 lbs./person.....	_____	_____
CCC for this motorhome (*3)	_____	_____

WARNING: CONSULT OWNER MANUAL(S) FOR SPECIFIC WEIGHING INSTRUCTIONS AND TOWING GUIDELINES INCLUDING AUXILIARY BRAKE REQUIREMENTS FOR ANY TOWED TRAILER OR TOWED VEHICLE.

Factory installed options do not include dealer installed after market equipment.

WARNING:DO NOT EXCEED THE GVWR, GCWR AND/OR GAWR AFTER LOADING YOUR MOTORHOME WITH WATER, FUEL, PASSENGERS AND CARGO. GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating) means the maximum permissible load weight a specific axle is designed to carry. See Federal Certification Label for disclosure of The GAWR for each axle.

(*1) Towing capacity is limited by GCWR; your vehicle's towing capacity is the difference between the GCWR and the actual vehicle weight; including all water, fuel, passengers, and cargo. Consult you Owner's Manual for further towing information.

(*2) Your motorhome's fresh water tank and water heater taken together determine the gross fresh water capacity. Your usuable fresh water capacity, however, may be less.

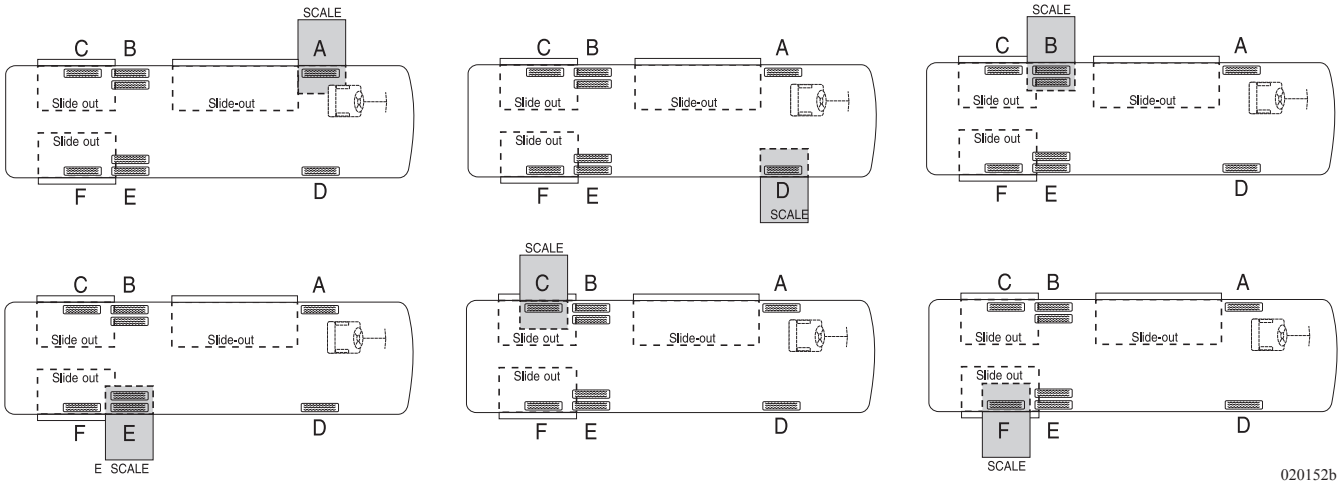
(*3) Dealer installed equipment and towed vehicle tongue weight will reduce CCC.

100179D

EXAMPLE

The motorhome must be weighed fully loaded to obtain accurate scale readings and to determine the proper tire pressure. All slide rooms must be in the retracted position.

- Record the Front Axle **Gross Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR)** and divide it by two.
  Example: Front Axle **GAWR** as listed on the Vehicle Certification Label is 13,000 lbs.
  Using chart below, record 6,500 lbs. on Scale A and D, line 1.
- Weigh the driver side front corner (Scale A) and record weight on chart Scale A, line 2.
  Example: 5,000 lbs.
- Weigh the passenger side front corner (Scale D) and record weight on chart Scale D, line 2.
  Example: 4,000 lbs.
- Record the Rear Axle **Gross Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR)** and divide it by two.
  Example: Rear Axle **GAWR** as listed on the Vehicle Certification Label is 20,000 lbs.
  Using chart below, record 10,000 lbs. on Scale B and E, line 1.
- Weigh the driver side rear corner (Scale B) and record weight on chart Scale B, line 2.
  Example: 7,100 lbs.
- Weigh the passenger side rear corner (Scale E) and record weight on chart Scale E, line 2.
  Example: 6,900 lbs.



Six-point Weighing Example Chart

- Take the Tag Axle Gross Axle Weight Rating (**GAWR**) and divide it by two. Example: Tag axle **GAWR** taken from the Vehicle Certification Label is 10,000 lbs. Using the Six-Point Weighing Example Chart (on preceding page), record 5,000 lbs. on Scale C and F, line 1.
- Weigh the driver side rear corner (Scale C) and record weight on chart Scale C, line 2. Example: 4,500 lbs.
- Weigh the passenger side rear corner (Scale F) and record weight on chart Scale F, line 2. Example: 4,000 lbs.
- Add chart Scale C and F, lines 1, for the **Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)** and record on chart under Totals. Example: 10,000 lbs.
- Add chart Scale C and F, line 2 for actual **Gross Axle Weight (GAW)** and record on chart under Totals. Example: 8,500 lbs.
- Actual **Gross Axle Weight (GAW)**. Example: 8,500 lbs., is not to exceed **Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)**. Example: 10,000 lbs.
- If necessary, adjust the tag axle regulator to compensate for payload carried by the tag, drive and front axles.
- Perform the regulator stabilization procedure.

NOTE:
Adjustments made to the Tag Axle Regulator will require repeating the weighing procedures.

- If necessary, adjust the payload so the **GAWR** is not exceeded. Total combined weights must not exceed the **GVWR**.
- Refer to the Tire Chart in this section (the example tire size is 295/80R22.5). Use the highest actual weight, Scale A or D, line 2. Example 5,000 lbs.; Scale B or E, line 2. Example 7,100 lbs.; Scale C or F, line 2. Example 4,500 lbs. Determine the proper tire pressure for each axle. Front axle tire pressure would be 115 psi, Rear axle tire pressure would be 85 psi, and Tag axle tires would be 80 psi using the Load Inflation chart.

WARNING:
Improperly inflated or overloaded tires can cause a blowout. An overloaded axle can cause a component failure of the suspension system. Tire blowout or broken suspension components can lead to loss of vehicle control resulting in property damage, personal injury or death.

CAUTION:
If actual weight carried by any tire is below the tire chart weight specification minimum tire pressure the minimum inflation pressure must be maintained. Tire pressure below the minimum inflation pressure can overheat and damage the tire casing leading to premature tire failure or blowout.

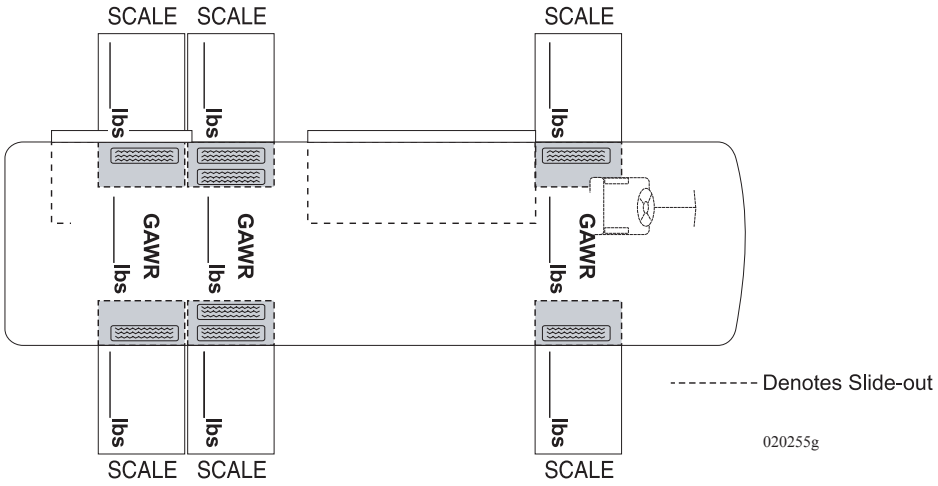
Load and Inflation Tables:

The Load and Inflation Table will help determine correct inflation for the motorhome tires after properly weighing the motorhome. All pressures are rated at a cold PSI. Cold conditions are defined as early in the morning before the day's ambient temperature, sun's radiant heat or the heat generated while driving have caused the tire pressure to temporarily increase. This means that the pressure should be checked early and when the motorhome has not been driven more than one mile. The check interval should be in the morning, before the "drive" trip and every morning on extended trips. A quality truck tire gauge with a multiple angle airhead is needed to ensure access to both dual wheel positions of the drive axle. Ensure the valve cap is replaced on the stem after the inflation is checked. This guarantees the valve core will remain free of dirt and foreign material. Material lodged between the valve core and internal stem can cause slow leaks resulting in tire failure.

	ROADSIDE		CURBSIDE		TOTAL AXLE WEIGHT	GROSS AXLE WEIGHT RATING GAWR	GAWR Minus Total Axle Weight
FRONT AXLE	1. 6,500	+	6,500	=	13,000		
	2.(A) 5,000		(D) 4,000		9,000	13,000	4,000
DRIVE AXLE	1. 10,000	+	10,000	=	20,000		
	2.(B) 7,100		(E) 6,900		+ 14,000	+ 20,000	6,000
TAG AXLE	1. 5,000	+	5,000	=	10,000		
	2.(C) 4,500		(F) 4,000		+ 8,500	+ 10,000	1,500
TAG AXLE REGULATOR	SETTING @ 24 psi		Total Axle Weight		= 31,500 UVW	= 43,000 GVWR	= 11,500 CCC

NOTE:

All measurements used should be with a full fuel tank and nobody in the motorhome.



Cargo Carrying Capacity:

When weighing the motorhome it is important to understand that each motorhome, even of the same model year, floorplan and length will weigh different due to options and accessories. **The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), Gross Combination Weight Rating (GCWR) and/or Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) must not be exceeded.**

GVWR of the vehicle limits the weight of the entire load combination, regardless of the water, LP-Gas, passengers and cargo weight.

It is important to understand that the weighing process is performed in two phases. First, by determining the **Cargo Carrying Capacity (CCC)**; and second, to ensure the **GVWR** is not exceeded when adjusting tire pressures. The weighing process should start by recording the **GVWR** from the Federal Weight Label, then weighing the motorhome unloaded, without passengers and with a full fuel tank. Engine and transmission fluid levels must be full. This is known as the **Unloaded Vehicle Weight (UVW)**. Once this weight has been recorded it can be subtracted from the **GVWR**.

GVWR 35,000 - UVW 20,000 = A 15,000

Next, begin to calculate the **Cargo Carrying Capacity (CCC)**.

Fresh water weight and LP-Gas weight can now be subtracted from the remaining total line A.

- Water weight is the number of gallons multiplied by 8.3.
- LP-Gas weight is the number of gallons multiplied by 4.2.

A 10-gallon water heater with a 40-gallon fresh tank would total 50 gallons times 8.3, or 415 pounds.

A 30-gallon LP-Gas tank will have 24 gallons of LP-Gas due to the 80% valve. This would mean 24 gallons multiplied by 4.2, or 100.8 pounds.

A 15,000 - 415 = B 14,585

B 14,585 - 100.8 = C 14,484.2

Next, calculate the **Sleep Capacity Weight Rating (SCWR)** the manufacturer's designated number of sleeping positions for the motorhome multiplied by 154 pounds.

The 154 pounds (70kg) is the average weight established by the US Federal Government and Transport Canada, and is used to arrive at **Cargo Carrying Capacity (CCC)**. However, actual sleep capacity weight may be greater. The SCWR is not intended to limit the sleeping capacity to a specified weight.

Example: If the manufacturer has designated the motorhome sleeping position at 4 (616 pounds) and there are four people who weight 200, 200, 178 and 138 pounds, totaling 716 pounds, that doesn't mean the sleeping capacity is reduced to three individuals, but rather the **CCC** is reduced by 100 pounds due to the actual passenger weight.

C 14,484.2 - SCWR 716 = CCC 13,768.2

Cargo Carrying Capacity (CCC) is how much cargo the motorhome can carry. However, tongue weight of a towed vehicle will further reduce this amount.

Now the motorhome can be fully loaded and weighed to ensure **GVWR** is not exceeded. Once the motorhome is fully loaded it is ready to be weighed to obtain an accurate scale reading and determine the proper tire pressure. All slide rooms must be in the retracted position when weighing the motorhome. The motorhome must remain as level as possible on the scale, even when an axle or side is not physically on the scale.

- Each wheel position must be weighed to accurately determine the weight carried at each wheel position.
- Refer to the previous examples on how to weigh each wheel position. Each wheel position weight must be weighed and recorded to determine proper tire inflation.
- Wheel position weights are not to exceed **Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)** and **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)** as printed on the Motorhome Vehicle Certification Label.
- Compare wheel position weights with weight ratings on the label. If wheel position weights exceed maximum specifications, items will need to be removed until rating weight is within specification.

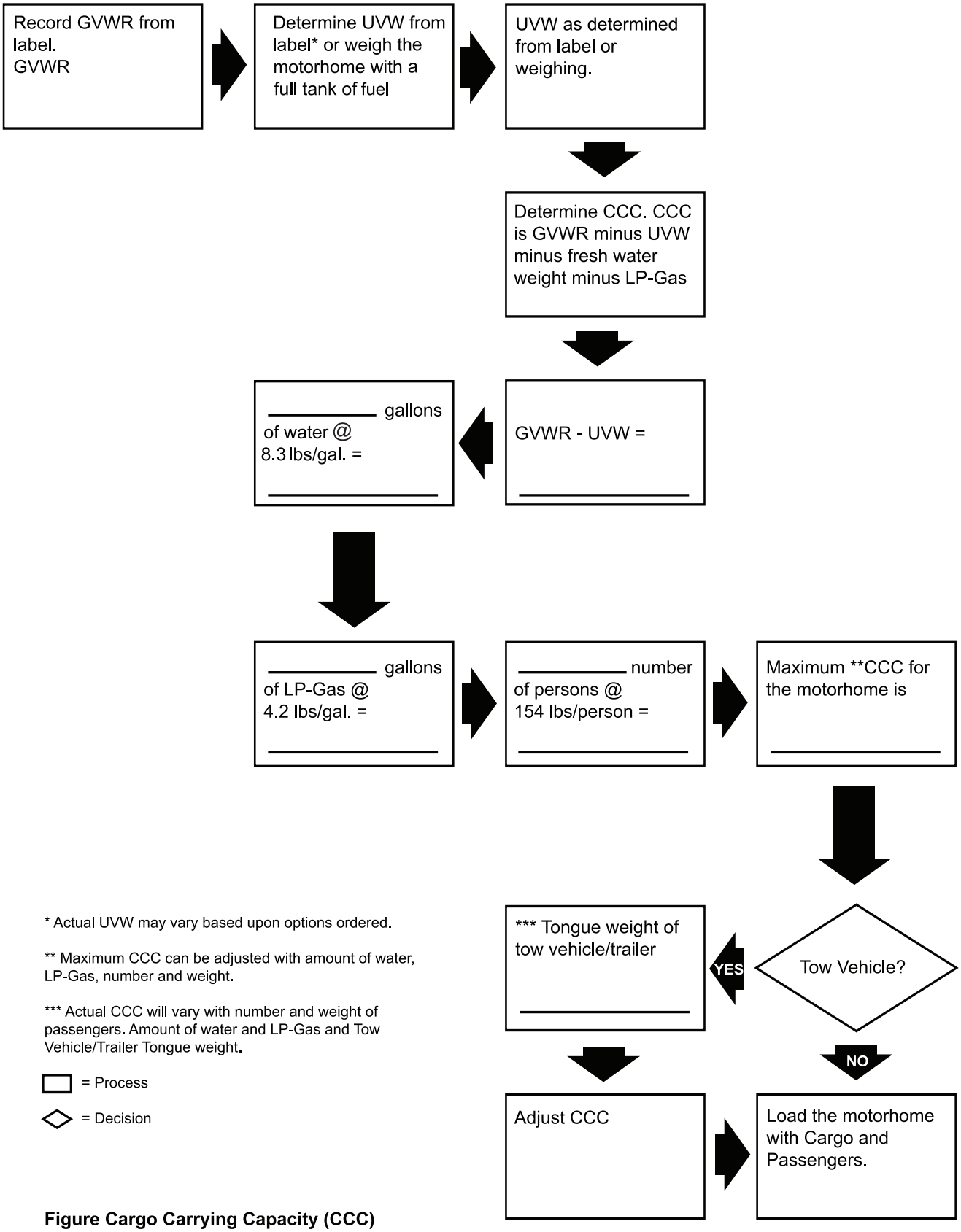


Figure Cargo Carrying Capacity (CCC)

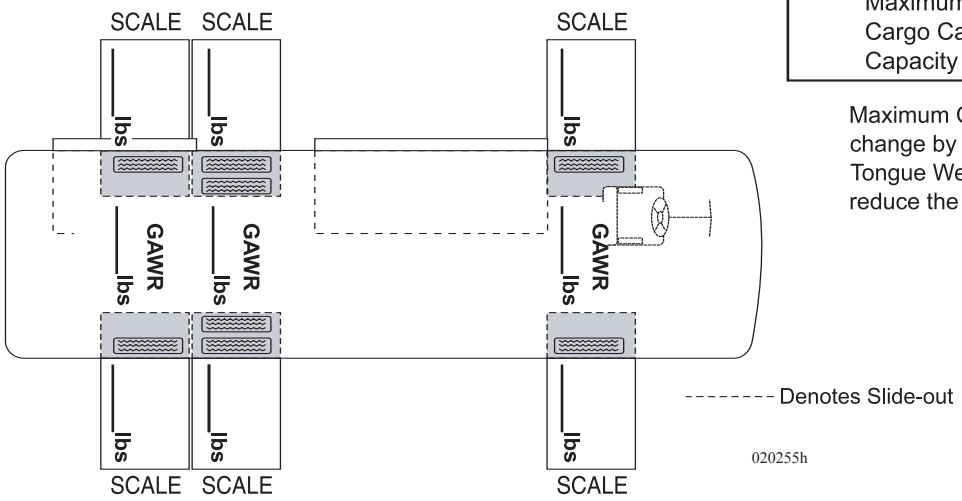
020254

	ROADSIDE		CURBSIDE		TOTAL AXLE WEIGHT	GROSS AXLE WEIGHT RATING GAWR	GAWR Minus Total Axle Weight
FRONT AXLE	1. 6,500	+	6,500	=	13,000		
	2.(A) 5,000		(D) 4,000		9,000	13,000	4,000
DRIVE AXLE	1. 10,000	+	10,000	=	20,000		
	2.(B) 7,100		(E) 6,900		+ 14,000	+ 20,000	6,000
TAG AXLE	1. 5,000	+	5,000	=	10,000		
	2.(C) 4,500		(F) 4,000		+ 8,500	+ 10,000	1,500
TAG AXLE REGULATOR	SETTING @ 24 psi		Total Axle Weight		= 31,500 UVW	= 43,000 GVWR	= 11,500 CCC

NOTE:
All measurements used should be with a full fuel tank and nobody in the motorhome.

	FORMULA	UVW 31,500 CAPACITY		CCC 11,500
FRESH WATER	Subtract Gallon @ 8.3 lbs/gal	100 X 8.3 = 830	-	10,670
WATER HEATER	Subtract Gallon @ 8.3 lbs/gal	10 X 8.3 = 83	-	10,587
LP-GAS	Subtract Gallon @ 4.2 lbs/gal	40 X 4.2 = 168	-	10,419
SLEEP CARRYING WEIGHT RATING	Subtract Persons @ 154 lbs/person	5 X 154 = 770	-	9,649
		Maximum Cargo Carrying Capacity CCC		9,649

Maximum Cargo Carrying Capacity will change by varying any of the capacities. Tongue Weight of a towed vehicle will reduce the Cargo Carrying Capacity (CCC).

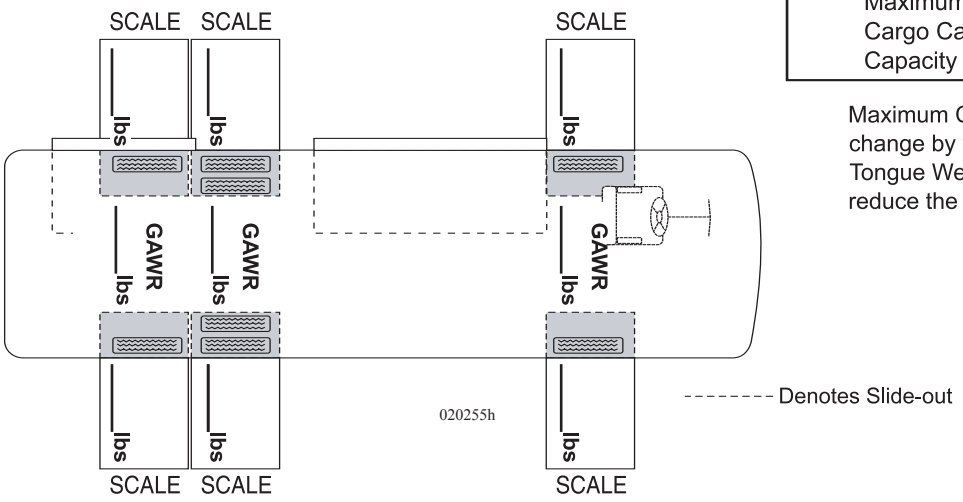


	ROADSIDE		CURBSIDE		TOTAL AXLE WEIGHT	GROSS AXLE WEIGHT RATING GAWR	GAWR Minus Total Axle Weight
FRONT AXLE	1. 2.(A)	+	(D)	=			
DRIVE AXLE	1. 2.(B)	+	(E)	=	+ +	+	
TAG AXLE	1. 2.(C)	+	(F)	=	+ +	+	
TAG AXLE REGULATOR	SETTING @_____ psi		Total Axle Weight		= UVW	= GVWR	= CCC

NOTE:
All measurements used should be with a full fuel tank and nobody in the motorhome.

	FORMULA	UVW CAPACITY		CCC
FRESH WATER	Subtract Gallon @ 8.3 lbs/gal	X 8.3 =	-	
WATER HEATER	Subtract Gallon @ 8.3 lbs/gal	X 8.3 =	-	
LP-GAS	Subtract Gallon @ 4.2 lbs/gal	X 4.2 =	-	
SLEEP CARRYING WEIGHT RATING	Subtract Persons @ 154 lbs/person	X 154 =	-	
		Maximum Cargo Carrying Capacity CCC		

Maximum Cargo Carrying Capacity will change by varying any of the capacities. Tongue Weight of a towed vehicle will reduce the Cargo Carrying Capacity (CCC).



WEIGHT RECORD SHEET:

DATE: _____

PLACE: _____

FRONT: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

REAR: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

TAG: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

= _____
TOTAL GROSS VEHICLE WEIGHT

DATE: _____

PLACE: _____

FRONT: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

REAR: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

TAG: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

= _____
TOTAL GROSS VEHICLE WEIGHT

DATE: _____

PLACE: _____

FRONT: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

REAR: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

TAG: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

= _____
TOTAL GROSS VEHICLE WEIGHT

DATE: _____

PLACE: _____

FRONT: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

REAR: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

TAG: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

= _____
TOTAL GROSS VEHICLE WEIGHT

DATE: _____

PLACE: _____

FRONT: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

REAR: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

TAG: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

= _____
TOTAL GROSS VEHICLE WEIGHT

DATE: _____

PLACE: _____

FRONT: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

REAR: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

TAG: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

= _____
TOTAL GROSS VEHICLE WEIGHT

020262

020263

WEIGHT RECORD SHEET:

DATE: _____

PLACE: _____

FRONT: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

REAR: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

TAG: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

= _____
TOTAL GROSS VEHICLE WEIGHT

DATE: _____

PLACE: _____

FRONT: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

REAR: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

TAG: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

= _____
TOTAL GROSS VEHICLE WEIGHT

DATE: _____

PLACE: _____

FRONT: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

REAR: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

TAG: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

= _____
TOTAL GROSS VEHICLE WEIGHT

DATE: _____

PLACE: _____

FRONT: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

REAR: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

TAG: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

= _____
TOTAL GROSS VEHICLE WEIGHT

DATE: _____

PLACE: _____

FRONT: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

REAR: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

TAG: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

= _____
TOTAL GROSS VEHICLE WEIGHT

DATE: _____

PLACE: _____

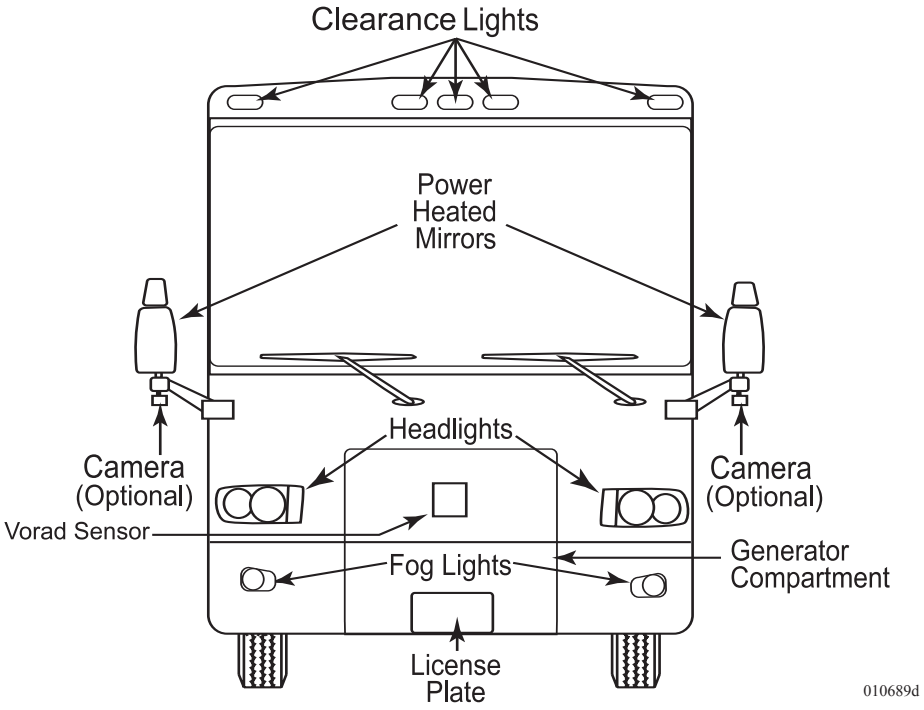
FRONT: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

REAR: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

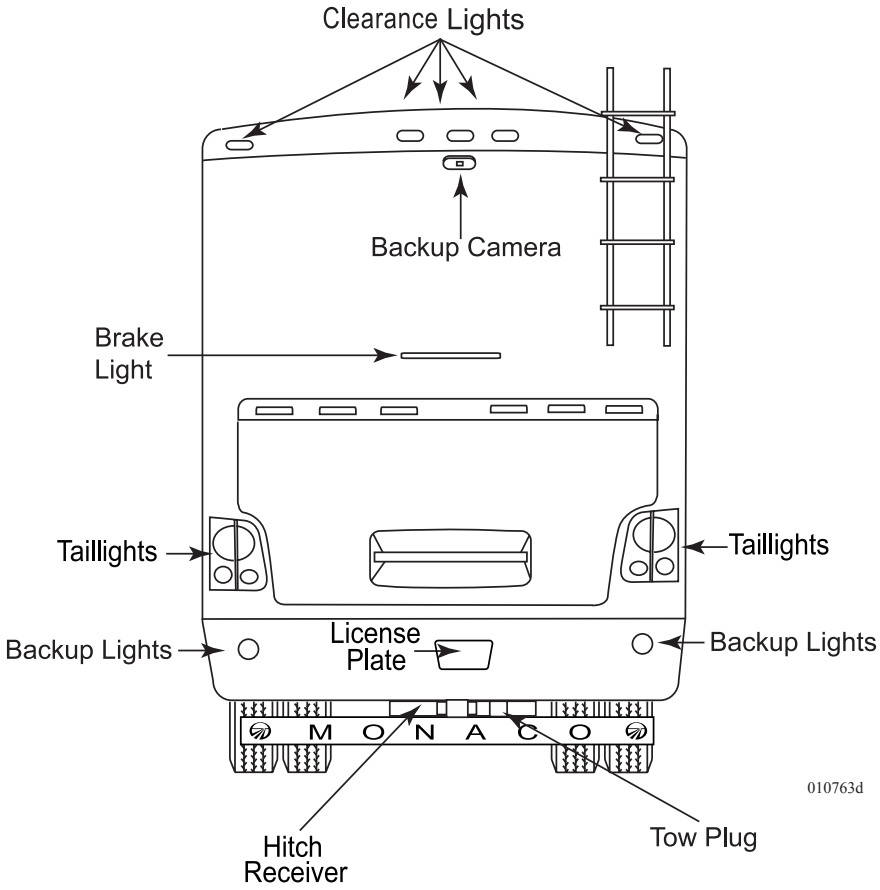
TAG: _____ + _____ = _____
LEFT RIGHT TOTAL

= _____
TOTAL GROSS VEHICLE WEIGHT

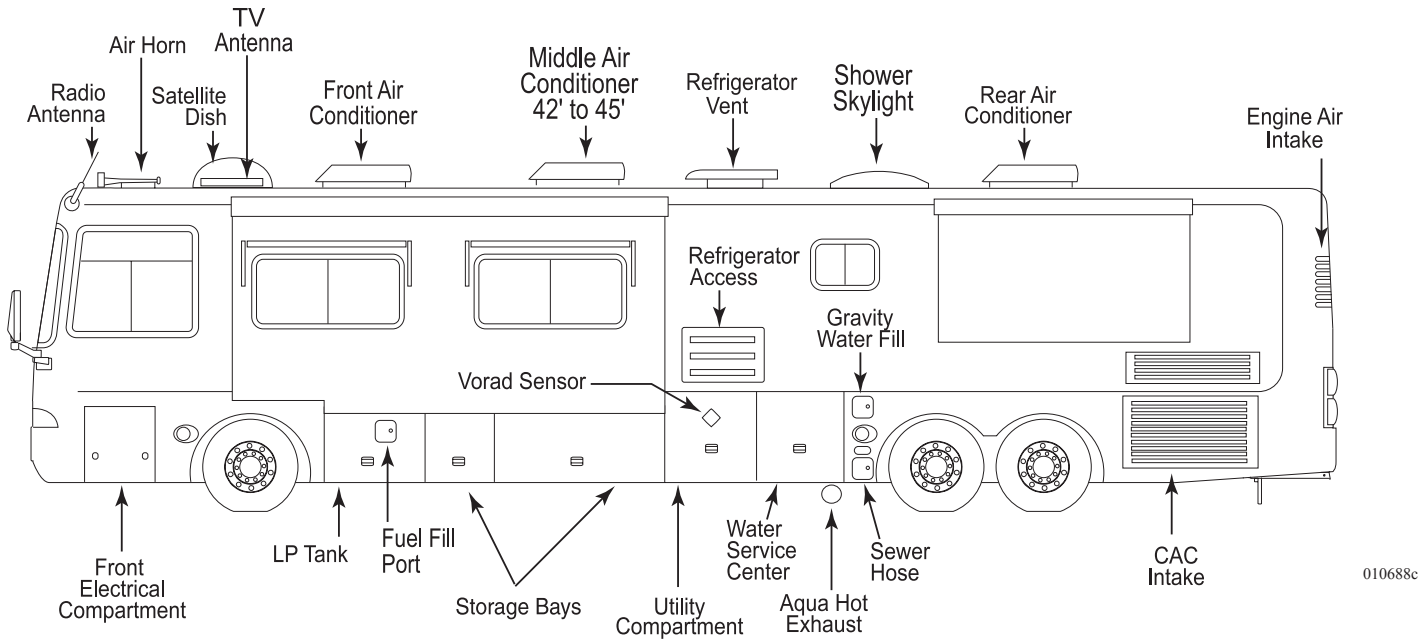
020262


Clearance Lights
Power
Heated
Mirrors
Headlights
Camera
(Optional)
Camera
(Optional)
Vorad Sensor
Fog Lights
Generator
Compartment
License
Plate
010689d

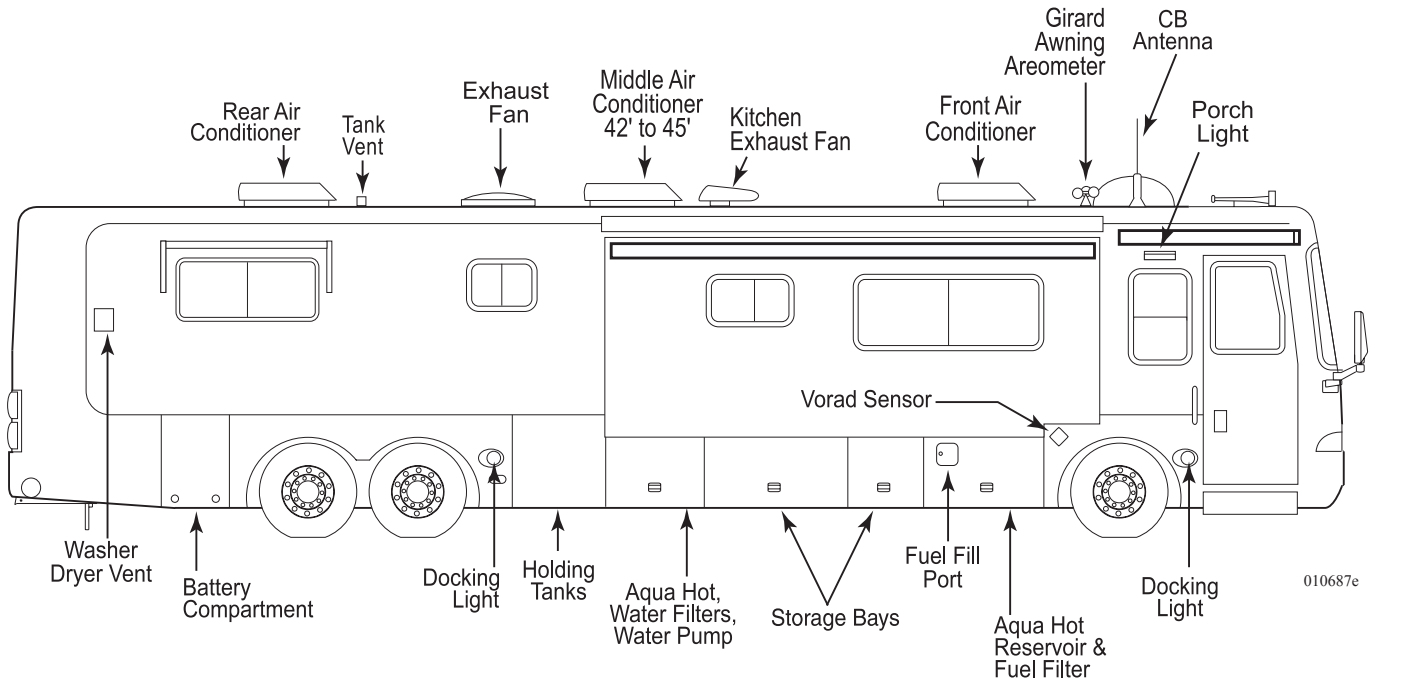
Rear


Clearance Lights
Backup Camera
Brake
Light
Taillights
Taillights
Backup Lights
License
Plate
Backup Lights
M O N A C O
010763d
Hitch
Receiver
Tow Plug

Roadside



Curbside



The "Viper" security system requires the battery to be changed in the Key Fob once a year. If the Key Fob battery is weak, transmission range will decrease and the green LED indicator will dim. The two Key Fobs are programmed to the receiver using a computer based "Learn Routine" to dictate how the system operates. The Standard Key Fob configuration is set at installation. An authorized dealer can customize the Key Fob configuration.

020249

Key Fob Configuration:

AUX **Aux Button -** Controls the silent mode function and bay door locks.

Lock Button - Controls the arming function.

Green LED - Indicates power at the Key Fob.

Unlock Button - Controls the disarming function.

Horn Button - Controls the panic function.

To Arm the System:

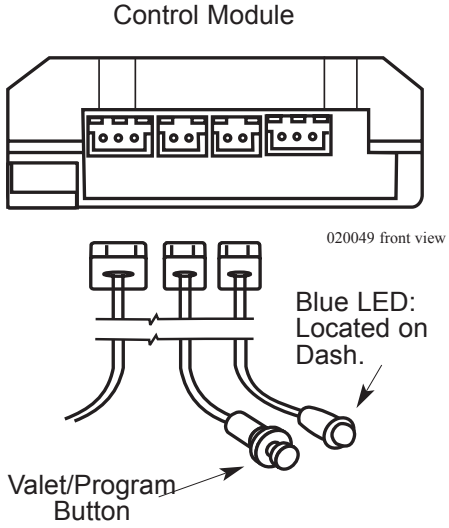
• Press the **LOCK** button on the Key Fob for one second.

The system will "chirp" once. The parking lights flash once. The entry door and selected bay doors will lock. The **blue** LED system status light flashes once per second indicating the system is armed and properly functioning.

If the system chirps once after locking the doors, this is a "Bypass Notification." The system is armed; however, one or more system zones are "open." The **blue** LED will flash in groups that indicate which system zones are open.

When Armed:

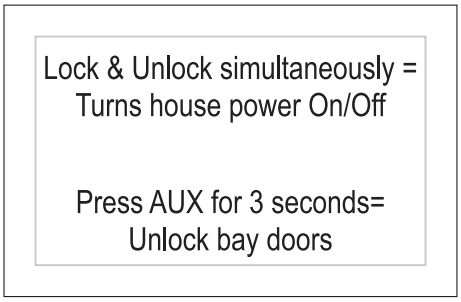
• The System will use a "Warn Away" chirp signal. A light impact will cause the siren to chirp.
• A continuous light impact or a heavy impact will sound the alarm.
• Opening the entry door, selected bay doors or a bedroom window will cause the siren to chirp for three seconds, followed by a continuous alarm.



Valet/Program button & Blue LED status light.

To Disarm:

• Press the **UNLOCK** button on the Key Fob for one second.



The parking lights flash twice and the alarm chirps twice. The entry door unlocks. When the system chirps four or five times during disarming, the red LED will blink the code for a zone that has been tampered with.

House Battery Cut-off:

Battery Cut-off can be turned on or off from the Key Fob.

• Simultaneously press the lock and unlock buttons. This will turn the battery cut-off on or off.

NOTE:

The roof air conditioner will not function if battery cut-off power is off.

Panic Mode:

Press the **HORN** button for one second. The siren will sound and the parking lights will flash for the programmed duration. The Panic Mode can be exited at any time by pressing the **HORN** button again.

Silent Mode:

Prior to arming or disarming the system, the confirmation chirp(s) can be temporarily turned **OFF**. Press the **AUX** button for less than one second prior to arming or disarming the system. The system will either arm or disarm silently. The chirp will be silenced only once each arm or disarm cycle.

Press and hold the **AUX** button for three seconds to unlock the bay doors. The entry door will remain locked.

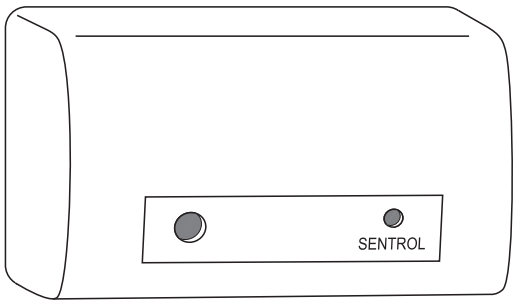
NOTE:

A Warn Away chirp will not sound when the system is armed in Silent Mode. A heavy impact or opening the entry door will sound a continuous alarm.

Sound and Window Sensors:

Two sound sensors are used to detect impact noises (repetitive or single heavy impact) and glass breakage. Sound sensors are located in the galley and in the bedroom. Window sensors are located on the bedroom windows only. These sensors detect window screen movement. If the screen is opened more than ½ inch, the alarm will sound if the security system is activated.

Each sensor is equipped with a pair of replaceable batteries. Test sound and window sensors monthly for proper operation.



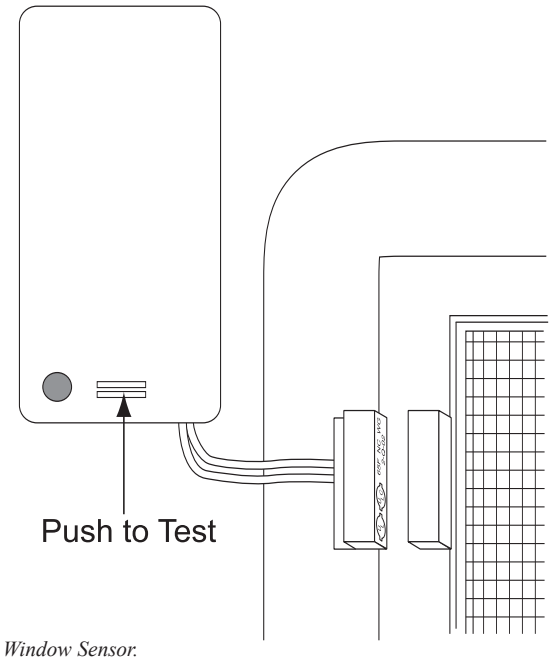
Sound Sensor. 020248

To Test Sound Sensor:

- Clap hands loudly next to sensor. LED should briefly illuminate twice.

To Test Window Sensor:

- Momentarily press on housing next to LED to briefly illuminate.



Window Sensor. 020247

Valet Mode:

This feature is useful in servicing, washing or storing the vehicle. The **Valet Mode** will not allow the system to sound an alarm. While in **Valet Mode** the Key Fob will lock and unlock the doors. The LED status light is a solid glow in the **Valet Mode**. There are two ways to access the **Valet Mode**: With the **Key Fob** or the **Valet/Program** button.

Entering Valet Mode with Key Fob:

1. Open the entry door.
2. Press the **LOCK** button.
3. Press the **UNLOCK** button.
4. Press the **LOCK** button again.
5. Ensure the LED is a steady glow.

Entering Valet Mode with Valet/Program Button:

1. Turn the ignition **ON**.
2. Turn the ignition **OFF**.
3. Access Valet/Program button on main dash panel near ignition. Press and hold the **Valet/Program** button ten seconds and release.
4. Ensure the LED is a steady glow.

Multi-Level Security Arming:

This feature applies to one arming cycle only. The selection of active or bypassed sensor inputs can be set when arming. Press the **LOCK** button within five seconds after arming. Each time the **LOCK** button is pressed additional zones are bypassed. Reset the system to monitor all zones by turning the ignition key on.

NOTE:
Press the lock repeatedly to bypass Zones. The system will appear to be non-functional. Reset the Zones using the ignition.

Table of Zones:

- Zone One is Pin Switches.
- Zone Two is Warn Away.
- Zone Three is Entry Door.
- Zone Four is Bay Doors.
- Zone Five is Ignition.

Quick Reference Guide:

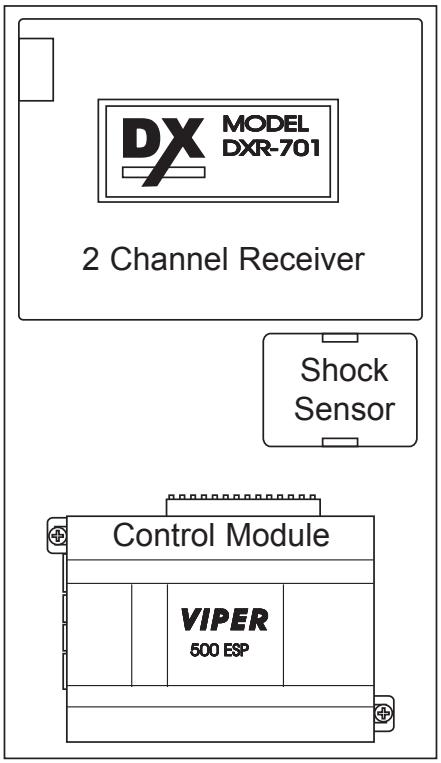
- **LOCK** - Arms or activates the system.
- **UNLOCK** - Disarms or deactivates the system.
- **LOCK** - While driving will arm the system.
- Ignition **ON** and the **Valet** button pressed disarms without the Key Fob.
- Ignition **ON**, then **OFF**, then pressing the **Valet** button for ten seconds, enters or exits the **Valet Mode**.
- Press and hold the **HORN** button for one second to enter **Panic Mode**.
- Press the **HORN** button to exit the **Panic Mode**.
- Press the **AUX** button for **Silent Mode** Activation.
- **LOCK** and **UNLOCK** simultaneously turns Battery Cut-off on and off.
- Hold **AUX** down for three seconds to unlock bay doors.

Tips:

- Remember the location of the Valet/Program button.
- Know the number of Valet/Program button pulses for disarming.
- A 24 hour support number is located on the back of the Key Fob.
- The headlights will only flash when using the Key Fob.
- The range of the remote Key Fob is approximately 1,200 feet.

Troubleshooting:

- Valet/Program is not responding - Ensure the button is plugged into the blue port of the receiver.
- Red Status LED does not work - Ensure the LED is plugged into the correct socket.
- Shock Sensor will not trigger alarm - Ensure the Nuisance Prevention Circuitry system has not triggered.
- System has no power - Ensure the 15 Amp fuse (front run panel) is not blown.
- System is not responding to remote - Ensure the Valet mode is not entered.



Viper Assembly Panel:
Located under the Dash Pod.

020048

Changing the Programming - Entering the Learn Routine:

The following information is provided for changing the programming features and should only be used by an authorized service center.

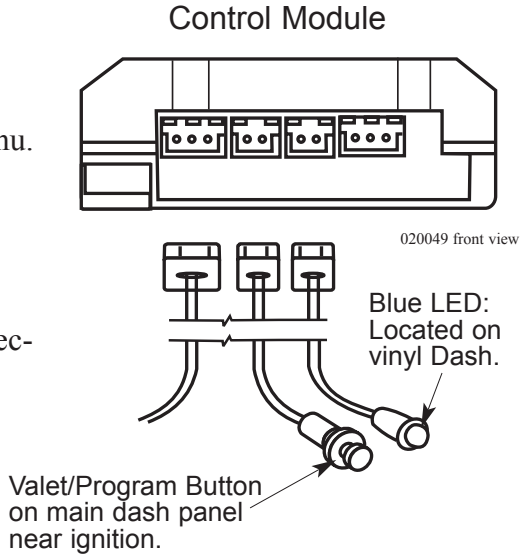
1. Open the door.
2. Turn ignition ON, then OFF.
3. For menu selection: Press and hold the Valet/Program button.
4. Select a feature.
5. Program a feature.
6. Release the Valet/Program button.

When the feature is programmed:

- Other features can be programmed within the same menu.
- Another menu can be accessed.
- The learn routine can be exited.

To access another feature in the same menu:

- Press the **Valet/Program** button the number of times necessary to advance to the desired feature.
- Press the **Valet/Program** button and **HOLD**.



Valet/Program button & blue LED status light.

Selecting another menu:

- Press and hold the **Valet/Program** button.
- The system will advance. Chirp is audible to access menu after three seconds.

Exiting the Learn Routine:

This can be done in one of four ways:

1. Close the door.
2. Switch ignition ON.
3. Do not respond for longer than 15 seconds.
4. Press the **Valet/Program** button an excessive number of times.

System Feature Menu:

The system features are broken into two separate menus that can be accessed for customization by an authorized dealer.

NOTE:
***Bold indicates the factory default settings.**

Basic Features - Menu One:

Active/Passive Arming: Select ***ACTIVE**. When active arming is selected, the system will only arm with the Key Fob. Passive arming allows automatic arming after the door is closed.

Chirp ON/OFF: Select ***Chirp ON**. Allows control of the chirp which confirms arming or disarming.

Ignition Controlled Door Locks ON/OFF: Select ***ON**. When turned on the doors will lock three seconds after the ignition is turned ON and unlock when the ignition is turned OFF.

Active/Passive Locking: *Active selected. Active locking means the doors will not lock when the system is passively armed. Passive locking means the doors will lock when the system is passively armed.

Panic with the Ignition ON: Turned ***OFF**. Many states prohibit a siren from sounding in a moving vehicle. This feature is designed to comply with those laws and regulations.

Door Lock Pulse Duration: *.8

Forced Passive Arming ON/OFF: Forced Passive Arming ***OFF**. Forced Passive Arming will occur one hour after the ignition is turned OFF. Engaging this feature will force passive arming, even if a zone is left open or invalid.

Automatic Engine Disable (AED) ON/OFF: *Not wired.

Armed While Driving/Vehicle Recovery System (VRS): Turned ***OFF**.

Code Hopping ON/OFF: Turn ***ON**. This enables a mathematical formula to change the code each time the Key Fob and receiver communicate.

Advance Features - Menu Two:
Siren/Horn Honk: *Continuous.

Siren Duration 30/60 Seconds: *180 seconds.

Nuisance Prevention Circuitry (NPC) ON/OFF: With ***OFF** selected. This enables the system to indefinitely respond to repeated triggers on the sensor inputs. When a zone triggers three times in one hour, it may be necessary to switch to ON to bypass that zone for one hour. That time period will determine if that zone can trigger the system. If that zone triggers in the hour it will reset the one hour timer. If that zone does not trigger in the hour, the zone will become active and allow the system to trigger again.

Progressive Door Trigger ON/OFF: *ON.

Valet Pulse Count 1 to 5 Pulses: *ONE. This is the number of times the Valet/Program button must be pressed before disarming the system.

Door Trigger Error Chirp ON/OFF: *ON.

Ignition Controlled Dome light Supervision ON/OFF: *Not wired.

Double Pulse Unlock ON/OFF: *OFF.

Channel 3 Validity/Latched: Latched Rest with Ignition/30 Second.

Timed/Second Unlock Output: *ON AUX Channel 3.

NOTE:
***Bold indicates the factory default settings.**

SMOKE DETECTOR

Statistics show that most fire casualties are not caused by direct flame, but by less visible smoke (products of combustion). The smoke detector responds to both visible and invisible products of combustion. The smoke detector will automatically return from alarm to normal state when the reason for activation, the presence of smoke, is completely removed. Fires are commonly caused by smoking in bed, leaving children unattended or using flammable cleaning fluids. Please be safety conscious and avoid unnecessary risk.

WARNING:
There is no way to insure against injury or loss of life in a fire; however, the smoke detector is intended to help reduce the risk of tragedy. Additional smoke detectors may help to reduce the risk. Proper use and care of the smoke detector could save lives.

Operation

When a 9 Volt DC battery is correctly connected, the smoke alarm is operating. The LED will flash every minute showing the battery is supplying power. A load alarm will sound when a production of combustion is sensed.

NOTE:
The unit will not operate without a battery. A battery flag will pop up preventing the unit from being installed to the mounting bracket without a battery. Carbon zinc batteries average a service life of one year. Alkaline batteries average a service life of one to two years.

Testing

Simply press the test button on the smoke alarm cover for approximately three seconds. The alarm will sound if all electronic circuitry, horn and battery are working properly. The smoke alarm should be tested at least once a week when the motorhome is in use, prior to each trip and when the motorhome has been in storage. When testing the smoke alarm it is advised to stand at arm's length.

CAUTION:
Never use an open flame to test the smoke alarm. You may ignite and set fire to the alarm and to the motorhome.

Maintenance

There are some simple steps to perform in order to keep the smoke alarm working properly:

- Test the smoke alarm once a week.
- Keep a supply of 9 Volt DC batteries on hand.
- Vacuum the slots in the cover and sides with a soft brush attachment every month. Test the smoke alarm once the unit has been vacuumed.
- The smoke alarm will beep once a minute when a low battery condition exists to signify battery must be immediately replaced.

Troubleshooting

If the alarm does not sound when the test button is pushed, or with a smoke test, try the following:

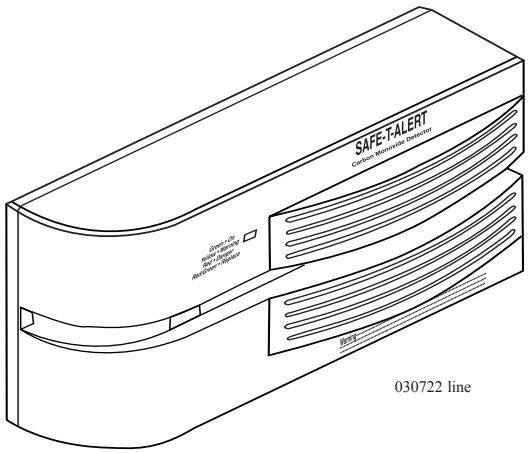
- **Inspect** for obvious damage.
- Check for the recommended battery type.
- Check the battery for proper connection or replace the battery if needed.
- Gently vacuum as recommended.

If these procedures do not correct the problem, do not attempt repairs. If the smoke alarm is within the warranty period and the terms indicate the nature of the problem, return the unit to your dealer. Smoke detectors beyond the warranty period cannot be economically repaired.

CARBON MONOXIDE DETECTOR

American National Standards Institute **(ANSI) A119.2 - Fire & Life Safety 3-4.6 Carbon Monoxide Detectors** states *" All RVs equipped with an internal combustion engine or designed with features to accommodate future installation of an internal combustion engine and truck campers shall be equipped with a listed CO detector installed in accordance with its listing."*

The motorhome is equipped with such a Carbon Monoxide detector. Everyone is at risk with Carbon Monoxide poisoning. Carbon Monoxide (CO) is a colorless, odorless and tasteless gas that binds with hemoglobin reducing the body's ability to absorb and carry oxygen to vital organs. Even low levels of CO have been known to cause brain and other vital organ damage in unborn infants, with no effect on the mother.



Located in the Bedroom

When removed from exposure, the symptoms dissipate as Carbon Monoxide is expelled through the lungs. Level of contamination in the body reduces at half-life increments at approximately four-hour intervals. Treatment with Oxygen will quicken recovery time.

In cases of mild exposure, the symptoms may include: a slight headache, nausea, vomiting and fatigue. Some consider this a "Flu-like Symptom." Symptoms for medium exposure may include a severe throbbing headache, drowsiness, confusion and fast heart rate. Extreme exposure can result in unconsciousness, convulsions, cardio-respiratory failure and death. Young children and household pets may be the first affected. Other highly sensitive people would include the elderly and people with lung or heart disease or anemia.

The CO detector is designed to detect the toxic CO Gas resulting from incomplete combustion of any fuel. This can be gasoline, propane, natural gas, oil, charcoal or wood. Anything that burns fuel such as engines, generators, furnaces, gas stoves or water heaters, produce CO gas. Consequently, it is uncommon for household smoke from cigarettes or normal cooking to cause the alarm to sound.

CAUTION:
Activation of this device indicates the presence of carbon monoxide (CO), which can be fatal. A concentration of above 100 PPM will cause a warning condition. Individuals with medical problems may consider using detection devices with lower carbon monoxide alarming capabilities. Prolonged exposure to the horn at a close distance may be harmful to hearing.

The CO detector is wired to both the house and chassis batteries to allow reliable and continuous protection by alerting the build up of potentially dangerous levels of CO. Once the unit is powered, it will run through a brief warm-up and self check prior to monitoring for CO gas. There are no switches that can accidentally be turned off.

WARNING:
If there is constant beeping and the red light is flashing, CO gas has been detected. Shut off appliances, coach engine, and water heater. Evacuate the motorhome and call the fire department. Have any problems corrected before restarting any appliances or the coach.

Operation

The detector is equipped with a self-cleaning CO sensor and requires a ten minute initial warm-up period to clean the sensor element and achieve stabilization. During the warm-up period, the **green** power light will flash **ON** and **OFF**. The **green** power light should be lit when the power is on. If the light is not lit, turn off the power and check all wire connections. If the power is on and the connections are correct, but the indicator still does not light, the detector should be returned for service. **Do not attempt to fix the detector.**

The indicator light displays a specific color to monitor along with a matching sound pattern:

Indicator Lights and Sound Patterns:

- **ON** or normal condition is indicated by **green**. The CO detector has power and is sensing air for the presence of CO gas. The alarm horn will not sound.
- Flashing **red** indicates low CO alarm condition along with **four** beeps then **OFF** for 5 seconds. The alarm horn will sound and can be reset by the **TEST/RESET** button. The CO detector has detected the presence of 70 ppm.
- Steady **red** indicates a **CO ALARM** condition. The detector has sensed the presence of levels over 100 ppm of Carbon Monoxide. The alarm horn will sound continuously until the **RESET** switch is reset.
- Alternating **red** and **green** indicates a malfunction alarm.

Alarm

When the alarm sounds have the detector and the motorhome checked by an authorized service technician as soon as possible. Never disconnect a CO detector to silence an annoying alarm. Evacuate the motorhome immediately when the **red** light is lit and the alarm sounds. Do a head count to check that all persons are accounted for. Call the nearest fire department and ask them to determine the source of the Carbon Monoxide. Do not re-enter the motorhome until it has been aired out and the problem corrected.

Potential Sources of CO when operating the motorhome:

- Engine Exhaust
- Portable Space Heaters
- Gas Stoves and Ovens
- Defective Engine Exhaust System
- Nearby Motorhomes
- Portable Grills
- Camp Fires
- Generator Exhaust
- Portable Generators

Testing

Test Procedures:

Test the Carbon Monoxide detector operation after the motorhome has been in storage, before each trip and at least once a week during use. Test the alarm by holding the **TEST/RESET** button in until the alarm sounds. The alarm will sound four beeps and the indicator lamp goes steady **red**. Six seconds later the alarm will again beep four times and the indicator light goes steady **green**.

Peak Level Memory:

The CO detector has the capability to remember the level of Carbon Monoxide that activated the alarm. Press the **TEST/RESET** button for less than one second and observe the visual and audible signals.

- One beep and a **green** flash indicate memory is clear.
- Two beeps and two **red** flashes indicate less than 100 ppm.
- Three beeps and three **red** flashes indicate less than 200 ppm.
- Four beeps and four **red** flashes indicate greater than 200 ppm.

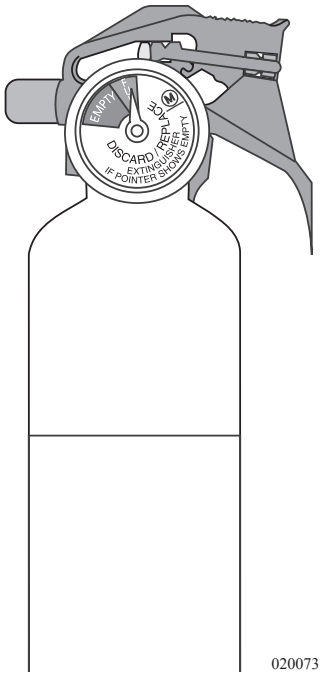
NOTE:
Memory is erased when power is disconnected for 15 seconds.

Cleaning & Maintenance

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust or any other buildup on the detector. Do not wash. Wipe the detector with a damp cloth and dry with a towel. Do not open the detector for cleaning. Do not paint the detector. It is recommend that the Carbon Monoxide detector be replaced every 10 years.

The CO detector has **NO** user service parts. If there is a problem with the detector refer to an authorized service center. **DO NOT REMOVE POWER**.

INSPECT:
Check the CO detector weekly and at the beginning and end of each trip.



020073

The fire extinguisher in the motorhome is located near the main entrance door. Please read the operating instructions that are printed on the fire extinguisher. If there is any doubt on how to operate the fire extinguisher practice using it. Be sure to replace or recharge the extinguisher immediately after use.

Inspect the fire extinguisher at least once a month. Do so more frequently if the extinguisher is exposed to weather or possible tampering. Do not test the extinguisher by partially discharging. Internal pressure will escape and the fire extinguisher will need to be replaced.

Use the PASS word!

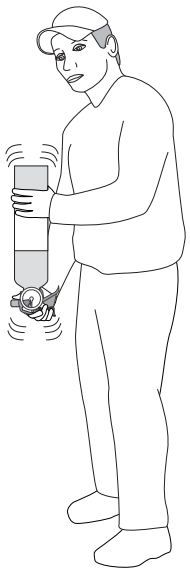
Pull the pin to unlock the extinguisher.

Aim at the base (bottom) of the fire and stand 6 to 10 feet away.

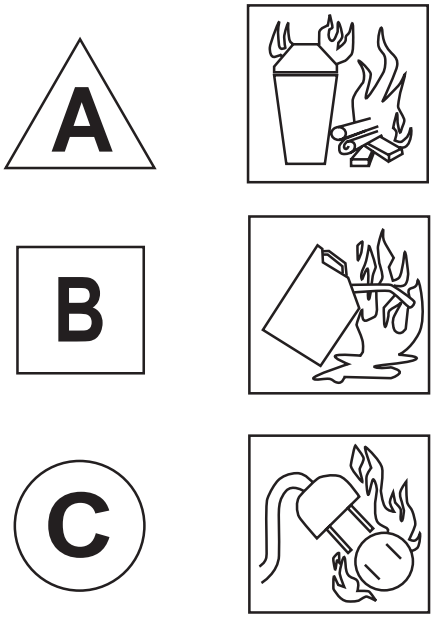
Squeeze the lever to discharge the agent.

Sweep the spray from left to right until totally extinguished.

WARNING:
Road vibration will cause extinguisher powder to compact and may cause extinguisher malfunction. Invert and shake extinguisher monthly.


020261

There are three classes of fire to be concerned with in a motorhome. Any fire can fall into more than one class; a fire that involves both burning paper and kitchen grease would be a Class AB fire.



Classes of Fire:

A - Fire that are fueled by materials that leave a residue when they burn: paper, wood, cloth, rubber, and certain plastics.

B - Fire that involve flammable liquids and gases: gasoline, paint thinner, kitchen grease, propane and acetylene.

C - Fires that involve energized electrical wiring or equipment. If electricity to the equipment is turned off, a class C fire becomes one of the other two class fires.

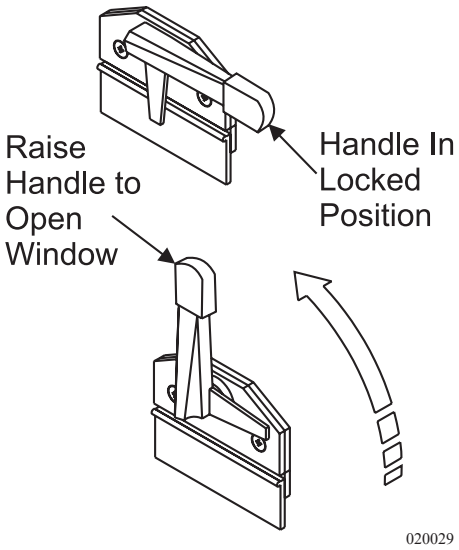
100209

ESCAPE (EGRESS) WINDOW

The Egress window, designated for use as an emergency exit, is identified inside of the motorhome by a red locking handle and Exit label. To open, lift the red handle and push outward. Pull closed and lower handles to lock the Egress window.

Hinges along the outside window top identify the Egress window on the motorhome exterior.

The glass slider in the Egress window operates the same as all other windows in the motorhome. Occasionally open and close the Egress window to prevent the rubber seal from sticking.



Egress Window Handle

NOTES

NOTES

The Executive 2005

Exterior & Interior Care

Section 3

EXTERIOR CARE 123
- Corrosion 123
- Washing 123
- Drying 124
- Waxing 124
- Tire Care 125
- Wheels - Aluminum 126
- Bright Metal 126

EXTERIOR MAINTENANCE 127
- Fiberglass 127
- Roof Care & Seal Inspections 127

INTERIOR CARE 129
- Cockpit 129

FABRICS 130
- Fabric Cleaning Codes 130
- Fabric Specifications Charts 132
- Vinyl 139
- Leather 141
- Ultratech 141

FLOORS 142
- Carpet Cleaning 142
- Tile Floors 143
- Laminate Floor (OPT) 145

SHOWER 146

CEILING 146

WALL COVERINGS 147

WOOD CARE 148

COUNTERTOPS 150
- Solid Surface 150

STAINLESS STEEL SURFACE 151

WINDOWS 151
- Condensation 151

WINDOW TREATMENTS 152
- Mini Blinds 152
- Day/Night Shades 152

MOLD & MILDEW 153

PEST CONTROL 155

STORAGE 158
- Short Term 158
- Long Term 159
- Winter Storage Checklist 161
- Removal from Storage 162

The most common cause of corrosion to the motorhome exterior is accumulation of road salts, grime and dirt. These elements, combined with moisture, may possibly cause early component failure. The undercarriage, around wheel openings and the radiator charge air cooler package require periodic cleaning to prevent component failure caused from corrosive materials collected from roadways. If the motorhome is driven in areas where road salts are used it should be washed at least once a week. Otherwise, it is recommended to hose off the undercarriage area at least once a month to help minimize the corrosion process. High pressure washers or steam cleaners are the most effective way of cleaning off the underside and inside wheel openings. **Avoid directly spraying the painted surface with a high-pressure washer**.

CAUTION:
Exercise caution when cleaning the radiator charge air cooler package. Damage to the fins can result when using a high pressure washer or steam cleaner. Nozzle discharge pressure can exceed 1800 psi. Avoid using high pressure steam cleaners on the exterior paint surfaces. Remove all spattered washing debris from the exterior paint surfaces as soon as possible.

Washing

Periodic cleaning will help to preserve the paint finish. The motorhome is painted with a "base coat, clear coat system." Clear coat is a polyurethane-based material which brings out the shine and luster to the base coat paint. Care should be used when washing the motorhome. Use only mild detergents or preferred specifically designed automotive detergents. Avoid using abrasive cleansers or laundry detergents that will scratch the clear coat and leave a soap film. Use a soft cloth to wash the paint finish. Avoid using brushes as they can scratch the surface and damage the paint. Before washing the motorhome, remove most of the accumulated dirt and "road wash" behind wheel openings, below the windshield and on the rear of the motorhome. If build up is excessive, run water over a soft cotton cloth while gently wiping the surface in one direction. This will help float away the "build-up" from the clear coat. Avoid back and forth or circular motions as this may act like sandpaper, scratching the clear coat and leaving a haze or "swirl marks." After removing the heavy build-up, use the mixed detergent solution to wash the motorhome. Start washing at the top of the motorhome working towards the bottom. If possible, wash the motorhome in a shaded area when the exterior is not hot to the touch. If necessary, turn the motorhome around to keep the area being washed in the shade. Try not to allow the detergent to dry onto the clear coat surface. Use plenty of water when rinsing the surface to remove all detergent residue.

Drying

Drying chamois cloths come in natural and synthetic materials. Either type is acceptable as long as the surface is clean. Soak the chamois in clean water, then wring it dry. Remove the water from the surface, starting at the top and working towards the bottom, using a downward "S" pattern. Wring out the chamois as needed. Using a chamois cloth to remove the rinse water is not necessary, but the effort can be worthwhile.

Waxing

To wax or not to wax? This is a good question. There are many schools of thought on this issue. The two most common thoughts are:

- The clear coat needs to "breathe." A layer of wax will seal the clear coat not allowing it to breathe, possibly leading to failure of the clear coat.
- If the surface is not waxed, what is protecting the surface from the environment (road salts, acid rain, road tar, ultraviolet light)?

It is recommended to wax the motorhome twice a year: spring and fall. Many types of protective barriers are available today that may be applied to the clear coat: glazes, waxes, polishes, rubbing compounds or combinations of these products.

NOTE:
Use a grease and wax remover before applying another coat of wax. Chemicals can become trapped between layers of wax, possibly damaging the paint finish.

INFORMATION:
When selecting a product for use follow the product manufacturer's recommended application instructions.

Types of Products:

Glazes - Glazes are generally used to fill very fine scratches in the clear coat, being applied either by hand or by using a polisher with a special pad.

Waxes - Waxes come in many types of chemical make-up. The popular Carnauba wax is a natural occurring wax from the leaves or fronds of the Carnauba palm tree. Mineral waxes have a paraffin base. There are also other topical application products which contain silicone.

Polishes - Polishes usually contain a combination of wax based substances with an abrasive, getting the two for one idea. These products can be too abrasive for clear coats and are not recommended for use.

Rubbing Compounds - These types of products are generally applied by using a buffer. The use of rubbing compounds should be left to professionals as undesired results can quickly occur. These types of products are generally used to correct or flatten a surface by removing high spots or small amounts of material.

When selecting a product the container should be marked, "safe for clear coats" or "clear coat safe." Carefully follow the application instructions when using a product. Upon first use of a product, try it on a "small test spot" in an inconspicuous area in case an undesired reaction occurs.

Observe the test area from different angles checking for hazing or swirl marks. If an abnormal reaction to the finish occurs, discontinue product use and consult the product manufacturer. If the product is a paste, do not allow dried paste to be baked on by the sun. Remove paste shortly after drying. Clean, dry, 100% cotton cloths or cotton baby diapers are best suited for the removal of dried paste. Turn the cloth often. Use a separate clean cloth to buff. The surface should feel "slick" when rubbing the cloth lightly over it. Avoid repeated wax applications which can cause wax to build up. Some very fine scratches or swirl marks may be removed by an application of a glaze. These types of glazes fill the scratches or swirl marks.

The motorhome has a large surface area. Washing and waxing may not be completed in one afternoon. Select sections to wax until the motorhome is complete. If the task seems overwhelming, have an automotive detailer perform the task.

Tire Care

Road oil will cause deterioration of the rubber. Dirt build-up can hold chemicals in the air, next to the tire, to also cause deterioration.

Proper care and methods in cleaning must be used to obtain the maximum service years out of the tires. Use a soft brush and a mild detergent to clean the tires. If a dressing product is used to "protect" the tires from aging, use extra care and caution. Tire dressings that contain petroleum products or alcohol may cause deterioration or cracking.

In many cases it is not the dressing that causes a problem but the chemical reaction that subsequently occurs. When these same dressing products are used on a passenger car tire that is replaced every three to four years, it is rare to see a major problem. However, in most cases recreational vehicle tires may last longer due to limited annual mileage and exposure.

Wheels - Aluminum

Outside:

Road soils, grime and brake dust trap moisture which can cause corrosion over a period of time. Clean frequently with high pressure water. The use of mild detergent will speed up the cleaning process. Wipe dry to avoid water spots. Do not clean the polished surface of the wheel with abrasives, abrasive brushes, steel wool, scouring pads, synthetic cleaning pads or strong chemicals such as acids or lye-based products. A secondary hand washing with a soft cloth may be required to remove some stubborn road films. Allow wheels that are extremely hot to cool before spraying with cold water.

NOTE:
DO NOT use the Alcoa Aluminum Care System on Accu-Shield wheels at any time during their service life.

Inside:

If the tires are removed, inspect and clean the entire rim. Air used to fill the tire may contain moisture and can cause the areas of the wheel under the tire to severely corrode. Using a brush, remove any foreign materials from the tire side of the rim. Lubricate the rim and tire bead with a non-water-based lubricant before mounting the tire and ensure the inside of tire is dry before installing.

WARNING:
DO NOT use a flammable solution to coat the inside of the rim. This can lead to an explosion during tire inflation or in subsequent operation of the motorhome.

Bright Metal

All chrome and stainless steel should be washed and cleaned each time the motorhome is washed. Use only automotive approved non-abrasive cleaners and polishes on exterior bright work. Do not use rubbing compounds. Do not use abrasive cleaners or compounds to clean the mirrors.

NOTE:
When using chemicals to remove road tars, use only automotive type products that are recommended for use on painted surfaces and fiberglass. Observe the warning recommendations and directions printed on the container of any agent being used.

EXTERIOR MAINTENANCE

The motorhome is subject to a great deal of outside conditions. When parked, the motorhome is exposed to extreme temperatures, humidity, ultraviolet rays, acid rain and other organic environmental conditions. While in operation the motorhome is subject to twisting and flexing caused by rough roads, potholes and winding mountain roads. Maintenance is necessary to keep the exterior looking nice and to keep in proper working order.

Fiberglass

Inspect the fiberglass exterior. Periodic inspection may reveal that flexing of the fiberglass exterior has created imperfections in the surface commonly known as "spider" or "hairline" cracks. A crack that has opened up to reveal of weave of cloth threatens the integrity of the fiberglass. If the exterior exhibits signs of damage, prevent moisture penetration, particularly in freezing climates. Cover the area using plastic sheeting or tape, and have the damaged fiberglass repaired as soon as possible.

Roof Care & Seal Inspections

Periodic resealing of the joints and seams is necessary to prevent the entrance of moisture into the motorhome. Enough emphasis cannot be placed on this issue. Extreme damage from a water leak can rapidly occur. Never leave the vehicle unattended with a slide room extended. If the motorhome is to be stored outdoors during the winter months, perform a full interior inspection for water leaks every two weeks.

Extensive sealing has been done at the factory, but the normal twisting and flexing that occurs while traveling may compromise a seal or a seam. Inspect all joints and seams at least twice each year, and replace caulking as necessary. Special attention should be directed toward the roof air condition seals, ceiling and plumbing vents, skylights, roof mounted antennas, windows, door molding, clearance lights and beltline molding.

Specific sealant products, available at most RV supply outlets, should be used in most areas for which they are designed. Listed below are some common sealants and the areas in for which they are designed.

INSPECT:
All joints and seams should be inspected at least twice a year and recalked as necessary.

WARNING:
Some products may contain hazardous materials which require special handling. Read labels carefully. Follow all product manufacturer safety requirements.

Sealant Types

Acryl-R:
Used on all roof openings such as vents, skylights, roof-mounted antennas and ladder roof mounts. Sealant should be applied only where equipment bases meet the roof. Acryl-R is generally available in a caulking tube. Two colors are available - white and silver. Silver is used on items mounted on the forward painted area of the roof. White is used at all other points. Remove old sealant that is not adhered. Sealant that is secured need not be removed. Dirty or damp surface areas will compromise sealant effectiveness. Thoroughly clean and dry the surface area before applying new sealant. Lay masking tape around the area to be sealed to stop sealant from spreading beyond the desired area. Using a caulking gun, apply new sealant as needed, working the caulking gun in a manner that will cause the sealant to fully adhere to the applied area. Allow adequate cure time. Roof air conditioners use a closed cell foam base gasket and do not require sealant. The roof air conditioners should be regularly inspected for tightness at the four mounting bolts, one located in each interior corner of the air conditioner roof opening. Torque specification is 40 to 50 in/lbs. The base gasket should be compressed to approximately one-half inch.

Acrylic Sealants (geocel 2300):
Used where items are sealed under a painted surface such as the metal corners of slide out rooms. The material is specially formulated to allow paint adhesion.

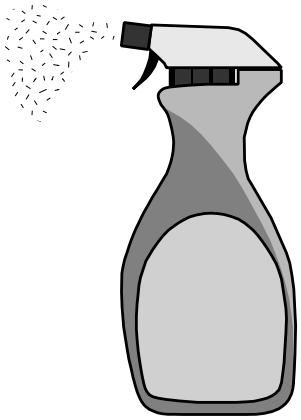
Black Urethane:
Used for sealing windshields, not designed to fill holes or other imperfections. Black Urethane is available in a tube that applies similar to silicone. Clean up using solvents such as paint thinner. Gloves are required when using this hazardous material.

Silicone:
Primarily used on the sidewalls around windows, doors, handles, beltline molding, latches and bases of surface mounted items such as clearance lights. Old peeling sealant should be removed with nylon sticks or equivalent. Metal utensils can scratch the painted surface. Avoid lacquer thinners or ketone based solvents as these chemicals can damage painted surfaces. Confirm that surface is clean and dry before a new application. Cut the tube at an angle with the smallest usable opening. Avoid a heavy bead. A little goes a long way.
Use finger at a 45° angle on beaded surface to smooth out product. Do not moisten finger, use a disposable latex glove. Keep rags or paper towels handy for clean up. Use care when applying silicone. Plan ahead before starting a bead, look for obstacles that may impede application.

Spray Foam:
This product is used as a sealant where a hole has been made for items such as water lines or wires that are coming through a floor opening.

The cockpit area dashboard is a molded fiberglass vinyl wrapped pod. The instrument panel is comprised of various gauges and switches. The dashboard and instrument panel each have different cleaning requirements. Clean the vinyl wrapped dash pod following the instructions under *Vinyl Care* in this section. In the event a blemish or small cut occurs in the vinyl, contact a professional upholstery repair service.

Clean the plastic or Plexiglas instrument panels using a cloth dampened in a mild soap and water solution. Dry using a separate cotton cloth. Plastic polish products that will help to brighten the appearance of plastic or Plexiglas instrument panels are Novus Plastic Care®; a three-part system; Meguires®; and Johnson Paste Wax®, which will require extensive buffing and rubbing.



070200

Glass lens gauges can be cleaned using glass cleaner. Spray cleaning on the cloth, not directly onto the lens, to prevent over spray or runoff .

CAUTION:
Most glass cleaning products are volatile to plastics; extreme care must be used to prevent the glass cleaners from contacting the plastic, making the plastic brittle and dulling the finish.

TIP:
To determine if the lens is glass or plastic, simply tap the lens with a fingernail. Plastic lens will have a dull hollow sound whereas glass will have a clear ping.

FABRICS

If a fabric is abused, it can be damaged. Special care needs to be taken when the motorhome is exposed to a very humid climate for an extended period of time. Cover all upholstery and make sure window coverings are down to protect fabrics from sun damage.

Protect the fabric from any unnecessary exposure to moisture. Frequently used items require more attention than those items not regularly used.

Guidelines for Cleaning Upholstery Fabrics:

- Water-based cleaners are not recommended.
- If a spill does occur, blot the soiled area. Do not rub it.
- Some solvents may have an adverse reaction on a specific backing of the upholstery fabric and are not recommended.
- To prevent overall soiling, frequent vacuuming or light brushing are recommended to remove dust and grime.
- Clean spots using a mild water-free solvent or dry cleaning product.
- Clean only in a well ventilated area and avoid any product containing carbon tetrachloride or other toxic materials.
- Use a professional furniture cleaning service for overall cleaning.

Fabric Cleaning Codes

The codes listed below detail cleaning instructions recommended by the fabric manufacturing industry. Refer to the fabric charts, located on the following pages, for particular fabrics and follow the recommended cleaning code.

If a spill occurs, blot the moisture as quickly as possible. **Do not** use soap and hot water as this may set a stain. Clean the spot as soon as possible.

"W" - Clean this fabric with the foam only of a water-based cleaning agent to remove the overall soil. Many household cleaning solvents are harmful to the color and life of a fabric. Cleaning only by a professional furniture cleaning service is recommended. To prevent overall soil, frequent vacuuming or light brushing to remove dust and grime is recommended.

"S" - Clean this fabric with pure solvents (petroleum distillate-based products such as Energine, Carbona, Renuzit, or similar products may be used) in a well ventilated room. Cleaning only by a professional furniture cleaning service is recommended.

CAUTION:
Use of water-based or detergent-based solvent cleaners may cause excessive shrinking. Water stains may become permanent and unable to be removed with solvent cleaning agents. Avoid products containing Carbon Tetrachloride as it is highly toxic. To help prevent overall soiling, frequent vacuuming or light brushing to remove dust and grime is recommended.

"S/W" - Clean this fabric with the foam only of a water-based cleaning agent or with a pure solvent in a well ventilated room (petroleum distillate-based products such as Energine, Carbona, Renuzit, or similar products may be used). Cleaning only by a professional furniture cleaning service is recommended. To help prevent overall soiling, frequent vacuuming or light brushing to remove dust and grime is suggested.

"P" - The article is resistant against perchlorethene, cleaning benzine (spirit), white spirit, R-11 and R-13.

"Dry Clean Only" - Cleaning only by a professional dry cleaner or furniture cleaning service is recommended for this fabric.

"X" - Vacuum only. A non-metallic brush may be used.

***Machine Washing for 100% Polyester:**

"Wash Cycle" - Use synthetic setting and high water level with mild agitation. A mild soap or detergent in water not to exceed 160º F. No bleach or fabric softener.

"Drying" - Use low temperatures, a synthetic setting of 85º F to 90º F maximum should be used. Do not exceed three to five minutes time on the synthetic cycle. If washed at 160º F, the maximum temperature which can be used to dry is 140º F. Hang or fold immediately after drying.

"Finishing" - If necessary, press as following:
- Iron on low setting (275° F) with damp cloth or steam iron using a dry press cloth.
- Grid Head press for short intervals with minimum steam. Do not lock the head.
- Flat bed press dampened drapery using cloth covering.
- Avoid prolonged contact with heat.

Fabric Specifications Charts

COLOR/PATTERN	APPLICATION	CONTENT	CODE
City Scape .30c			
Tumbleweed Palomino	DR/Pass Chairs, J-Lounge, Recliner	Leather	Leather
Brisa 303-3915 Putty	Dash Insert, D/P Chair Insert	100% Polyurathane Blend w/ 100% Rayon Backing	Ultraleather
Johnson Cream	Windshield Drape	100% Polyester	Dry Clean
Palomino	Main Dash Color	Vinyl	Vinyl
Tumbleweed Palomino	Vinyl Accents		
Tip Top - W UL 15462A DNT (pattern up roll)	Sofa, Dinette Booth Seat, LR Pillows	74% Rayon, 26% Polyester	S
Tumbleweed Black	Euro - Recliner	Leather	Leather
Cacique - H Rum	FSD, LR Pillows, Dinette Booth Back, LR / BR Valance	51% Rayon, 10% Cotton, 20% Polyester, 12% Wool, 7% Filament Rayon	S
West End Cobblestone	LR / BR Lambrequin, LR & BR Pillows, BR Desk Chair		
Sensuede 1139 Cremini	LR Val, BR Pillows	88% Polyester, 12% Polyurethane	S - Dry Clean
46004 18P3191 Antique	Bedspread, BR Pillows, Bedskirt	100% Cotton	P
19147-8	BR Accent, LR Pillow	70% Cotton, 30% Viscose	S
Sensuede 1150 Ebony	BR Pillows, Bedspread Accent, Bedskirt, LR / BR Lam	88% Polyester, 12% Polyurethane	S - Dry Clean
Sensuede 1040 Oxblood	BR Pillows, BR Lam, Bedspread Accent	88% Polyester, 12% Polyurethane	S - Dry Clean
19917-8	Pillow	65% Acrylic, 35% Olefin	S
FRL-1468 1" Loop Fringe	Decorative Trim - Fringe		
CD-1468 Boucle Cord	Decorataive Trim - Cord		
Hamilton Ivory	Main Ceiling		
Clear	Celing Accent "A"		
Shelburn Buff Crystal	Celing Accent "B"		
1139 Cremini	Celing Accent "C"		
Sensuede Ebony	Celing Accent "D"		

Fresco .31c			
Tumbleweed Palomino	DR/Pass Chairs, J-Lounge, Recliner	Leather	Leather
Brisa 303-3915 Putty	DR/Pass Chair Insert, Dash Insert	100% Polyurathane Blend w/ 100% Rayon Backing	Ultraleather
Johnson Cream	Windshield Drape	100% Polyester	Dry Clean
Palomino	Main Dash color	Vinyl	Vinyl
Tumbleweed Palomino	Vinyl Accents		
J1017 Pattern Fresco 6 Onyx	Sofa, Dinette Booth Seat, LR Pillows	37% Viscose, 32% Cotton, 31% Polyester	S
Tumblweed Black	Euro Recliner	Leather	Leather
Planetary - H Coin	FSD, Dinette Booth Back, LR Valance Top, LR Pillows	41% Polyester, 38% Rayon, 14% Acrylic	S
19757-816	Living Room Pillows	57% Viscose, 40% Polyacrylic, 3% Polyester	S
Explore Barley	LR / BR Lambrequin, LR Pillows, BR desk chair	75% Polyester, 25% Acrylic	S
Shinto Barley	Bedspread, BR Lamb, Bedskirt, BR Pillow	100% Silk	S
REC20512F Sensasolide Mink	BR Pillows, LR / BR Lamb, Bedskirt, Bedspread Accent	100% Polyester	Dry Clean
FRL-1469 1" Loop Firnge	Decorative Trim - Fringe		
CD-1469 Boucle Cord	Decorative Trim - Cord		
Hamilton Ivory	Main Ceiling		
Clear	Ceiling Accent "A"		
Shelburn Buff Crystal	Ceiling Accent "B"		
9065 Latte	Ceiling Accent "C"		
Sensuede Ebony	Ceiling Accent "D"		
Palomino	Leather / Vinyl for Furniture, Recliner	Leather	Leather
Brisa 303-3915 Putty	Leather for Furniture Insert	100% Polyurathane Blend w/ 100% Rayon Backing	

Thistle .32c			
Tumbleweed Milkweed	DR/Pass Chairs, J-Lounge, Recliner	Leather	Leather
Ultratech 7000 327-3986 Briarwood	DR/Pass Chair Insert, Dash Insert	100% Polyurethane facing 100% reinforced Rayon backing	
Johnson Cream	Windshield	100% Polyester	Dry Clean
Milkweed	Main Dash Color	Vinyl	Vinyl
Tumbleweed Milkweed	Vinyl Accents		
K39214V1 0660V	Sofa, LR Lamb, Din Booth Seat, LR Pillow, BR desk chair	60% Acrylic, 40% Polyester	S
Tumbleweed Milkweed	Euro Recliner, 3-Phase Recliner	Leather	Leather
Havana - H Mint	FSD, Dinette Booth Back, LR Pillows, LR Lam	50% Polyester, 32% Rayon, 18% Acrylic	S
97C0001 Thistle	LR / BR Lambrequin, BR Pillows, Bedskirt, Bedspread Accent	100% Polyester	S
REC20526R Sensasolide Taupe	LR Pillows, LR Lambrequin	100% Polyester	Dry Clean
Glasgal Silk G125 color Aspen	Bedspread, Bedskirt, BR Lam, BR Pillow	100% Silk	S
Variation 2240-200	BR Pillows, BR Lam, Bedspread Accent		
FRL-1467 1" Loop Fringe	Decorative Trim - Fringe		
CD-1467 Boucle Cord	Decorataive Trim - Cord		
Hamilton Ivory	Main Ceiling		
Clear	Ceiling Accent "A"		
Shelburn Buff Crystal	Ceiling Accent "B"		
Sensuede 8301 Oatmeal	Celiling Accent "C"		
Sensuede Frond	Ceiling Accent "D"		
Tumbleweed Milkweed	Leather for Furniture	Leather	Leather

KONA COAST .918			
Kilimanjaro	DR/Pass Chairs	Leather	Leather
Ultratech 7000 col 327-3989 Briarwood	DR/Pass Chair Insert	100% Polyurethane facing 100% reinforced Rayon backing	
Johnson Cream	Windshield	100% Polyester	Dry Clean
Kilimanjaro	Main Dash Color	Vinyl	Vinyl
Kilimanjaro	Vinyl Accents		
K37942DJ Color 249D	Sofa, LR Lambrequin, Dinette Booth Seat	74% Rayon, 22% Cotton, 4% Polyester	S
Kilimanjaro	Recliner	Leather	Leather
RVAA Tumbleweed Black	Leather - Euro Recliner Only	Leather	Leather
Zeta Color 152	Club Chair	89% Polyester, 11% Rayon	Dry Clean
Notissima Chic	LR Pillow, FSD, Din. Booth Back, LR Val, BR desk chair	73% Cotton, 27% Polyester	Dry Clean
Ramazzoti Ebony	LR Pillow, Chair Pillow, LR Val Accent	73% Cotton, 27% Polyester	Dry Clean
Sensuede 531 Black	Bedspread, LR/BR Val, LR/BR Pillow	88% Polyester, 12% Polyurethane	S - Dry Clean
Sensuede 1040 Oxblood	LR Pillow	88% Polyester, 12% Polyurethane	S - Dry Clean
FRL-1479	Decorataive Trim - Fringe		
CD-1479	Decorative Trim - Cord		
Hamilton Ivory	Main Ceiling		
Clear	Ceiling Accent "A"		
Shelburn Buff Crystal	Ceiling Accent "B"		
Sensuede Cloud	Ceiling Accent "C"		
Sensuede Ebony	Ceiling Accent "D"		
Sensuede Cement 1011	LR Lamb, BR Lamb	88% Polyester, 12% Polyurethane	S - Dry Clean

Ralph Lauren Fabrics (Optional Package)

COLOR/PATTERN	APPLICATION	CONTENT	CODE
LANDSDOWN .45b			
Passport Sand	Driver / Passenger Chairs		
Palomino	Dash Vinyl		Vinyl
Johnson Cream	Windshield Drape	100% Polyester	Dry Clean
Hewitt Herringbone Brown LCF-18585F	Sofa, LR Pillows, LR Lambrequin	100% Cotton	Dry Clean
Africana Dark Brown	Sofa Accent, Recliner Accent, J-Lounge Accent		
Amalfi Dark Brown	Sofa Acnt, Recliner Seat Back, J-Lounge, D/P Seat Welt		
Terrazo Color 3 Walnut	FSD	60% Cotton, 40% Polyester	Dry Clean
Landsdown Brown LFY-11975F	LR Pillow	75% Cotton, 25% Wool	Dry Clean
Houndstooth Cranberry LCF 14646F	LR Pillows		
Kathleen Courtyard Floral Burgundy	Bedspread, BR Lambrequin, BR Pillow	57% Linen, 43% Cotton	Dry Clean
Palace Color 17 Cider	Bedspread Accent / BR Lambrequin, BR Pillow	39% Spun Viscose, 35% Wool, 22% Polyester, 4% Nylon	Dry Clean
Glengariff Plaid Loden	Bedroom Pillow	100% Wool	Dry Clean
Vociferous 6 Lion	Bedskirt, BR Pillow	57% Polyester, 43% Silk	Dry Clean
Fremont Stripe Burgundy LFY-20621-F	BR Pillow, LR Pillow	100% Wool	Dry Clean
Hamilton Ivory	Main Ceiling		
Sensuede 505 Biscuit	Ceiling Accent	88% Polyester, 12% Polyurethane	S - Dry Clean
Sensuede 505 Latte	Ceiling Accent	88% Polyester, 12% Polyurethane	S - Dry Clean
Sensuede 0009 Cordovan	Ceiling Accent	88% Polyester, 12% Polyurethane	S - Dry Clean
FRB-1171 2" Brush Fringe Polo	Decorative Fringe 2" - LR / BR Pillow		
CD-1171- 4-ply Cord w/ tab Polo	Decorative Cord - LR / BR Pillow, Bedspread	48% Acrylic, 43% Polyester, 9% Rayon	S
BU-1171 4" Bullion Fringe	4" Boullion Fringe - LR / BR Pillow	55% Acrylic, 33% Polyester, 12% Rayon	S
RST-1171 1 1/4" Rosette w/3" tassel	Decor Tassel Button - LR Lamb, BR Lamb, BR Pillow		

Londonderry .46b			
Tumbleweed Milkweed	DR/Pass Chairs	Leather	Leather
Milkweed	Dash	Vinyl	Vinyl
Johnson Cream	Winshield Drape	100% Polyester	Dry Clean
Tumbleweed Milkweed	Vinyl Accents		
Chelsea Windowpane Harvest LFY19566F	Sofa	100% Linen	Dry Clean
Amalfi Dark Brown	J-Lounge, Recliner, Sofa Welt		
Sport Mahogany REC20623F	Headboard		
Rustic Teju - Brown	FSD, LR Pillow		
Dragonwell Damask Chocolate LFY19428F	LR Val, Optional Cloth J-Lounge, LR Pillow	79% Cotton, 21% Silk	Dry Clean
Mackay Metallic Chamois LFY20662F	LR Pillow	100% Silk	Dry Clean
Grassmere Silk Champagne LFY 20810F	BR Accent, BR Lamb, Pillow Shams, BR Pillow	100% Silk	Dry Clean
Banana Leaf Coffee LCF18802F	Bedspread, BR Lamb, Pillow Shams, BR Pillow	75% Cotton, 25% Linen	Dry Clean
Rourke Rib Tan LFY20724F	BR Lambrequin	100% Cotton	Dry Clean
Runyon Plaid Olive LFY18150F	BR Pillow	100% Wool	Dry Clean
Hamilton Ivory	Main Ceiling		
Sensuede 505 Biscuit	Ceiling Accent	88% Polyester, 12% Polyurethane	S - Dry Clean
Sensuede 9065 Latte	Ceiling Accent	88% Polyester, 12% Polyurethane	S - Dry Clean
Sport Mahogany REC20623F	Ceiling Accent		
CD-1303-B Bisque	Decorative Cord - Living Area	59% Acrylic, 20% Olefin, 10% Rayon, 9% Vinyl, 2% Polyester	S
CD-1297-A Brown	Decorative Cord - Bedroom	41% Olefin, 34% Polyester, 20% Acrylic, 5% Vinyl	S
BTN-1303 Bisque	Decorative Buttons - Living Area	72% Acrylic, 18% Rayon, 10% Vinyl	S
BTN-1297 Brown	Decorative Buttons - Bedroom	41% Olefin, 34% Polyester, 25% Acrylic	S
TSFR-1303 Bisque	Tassel Fringe - Living Area	69% Acrylic, 26% Rayon, 5% Polyester	S
TSFR-1297 Brown	Tassel Fringe- Bedroom		

Churchill (Limited Edition) .47b			
Amalfi Camel	Driver / Passenger Chairs		
Palomino	Dash	Vinyl	Vinyl
Johnson Cream	Windshield Drape	100% Polyester	Dry Clean
Bronson Geometric Navy LFY-20601F	Sofa, LR Pillow	100% Linen	Dry Clean
Sonoma Camel	J-Lounge, Recliner, Opt. Sofa		
Dotcom Color 18 Sumac	FSD, LR / BR Val, BR Pillow, BR Desk Chair	40% Cotton, 34% Polyester, 20% Acrylic, 6% Spun Viscose	
Stapleton Plaid - Navy LFY-21921F	LR Pillows	100% Cotton	Dry Clean
Valiant Belting Red LFY-21901F	LR Pillows	100% Cotton	Dry Clean
Belair Diamond Quilting - Navy LFY-21715	Bedspread, BR Lambrequin	100% Cotton	Dry Clean
Edwards Jacquard Navy LFY-21723F	Bedspread Accent, BR Pillow	100% Lambswool	Dry Clean
Jardinieve Flora Scarlet LFY-14810F	BR Pillow	100% Cotton	Dry Clean
Hamilton Ivory	Main Ceiling		
Sensuede 505 Biscuit	Ceiling	88% Polyester, 12% Polyurethane	S - Dry Clean
Sensuede 1141 Loam	Ceiling	88% Polyester, 12% Polyurethane	S - Dry Clean
Sensuede 9065 Latte	Ceiling	88% Polyester, 12% Polyurethane	S - Dry Clean
FRL-1186 2" Loop Fringe Equestrian	Decorative Fringe - LR / BR Pillow		
CD-1186 1/2" 4-ply Cord w/tab Equestrian	Decorative Cord - LR / BR Lamb, LR / BR Pillow	36% Olefin, 32% Acrylic, 18% Polyester, 9% Rayon, 5% Vinyl	S
BTNX-1186 1 1/2" Button Equestrian	Decorative Button - BR Pillow	58% Acrylic, 24% Polyester, 12% Spun Rayon, 6% Polypropylene	S
BU-1186	Decorative Bullion Fringe - LR / BR Pillow	22% Olefin, 42% Acrylic, 25% Polyester, 11% Cotton	S

Several areas of the motorhome, such as the dash, ceiling and items of furniture, may be covered in vinyl. The care and cleaning of these areas are as follows:

Normal Cleaning:

Most common stains can be cleaned using warm soapy water and a clear water rinse. Moderate scrubbing with a medium bristle brush will help to loosen soil from the depression of embossed surfaces. For stubborn stains use the following commercially available mild detergents in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions: *Mr. Clean* or *Fantastik*.

Full strength rubbing alcohol or mineral spirits may be tried cautiously as a last resort on very stubborn stains if the above suggestions do not work.

Indiscriminate use of any solvent, or solvent containing cleaner, can severely damage or discolor the vinyl. Stains may become permanent if they are not immediately removed.

NOTE:
Detergents should never be used on a regular or repeated basis for normal cleaning.

CAUTION:
Powdered cleaners containing abrasives, steel wool and industrial strength cleaners are not recommended for vinyl.

Bird Excreta & Vomit Stains:

Sponge the area with soapy water containing a diluted bleach until the stain is removed. Rinse thoroughly with clean water.

Urine Stains:

Sponge with soapy water containing a small amount of household ammonia. Rinse thoroughly with clean water.

Surface Mildew:

Wash with diluted bleach and use a soft brush for stubborn growth. Rinse repeatedly with clear, cold water.

Ballpoint Ink:

Wipe the stain immediately with rubbing alcohol in a well ventilated area.

Oil-Base Paint:
Use turpentine in a well ventilated area to remove any fresh paint. Dried paint must be moistened using a semi-solid, gel-type stripper. The softened paint can be gently scraped away. Rinse with soap and water.

CAUTION:
Lacquer solvent will cause immediate irreparable damage to the vinyl. Do not use wax on vinyl upholstery as it will cause premature embrittlement and cracking. Dilute chlorine bleach before using. Never use full strength bleach.

CAUTION:
Paint strippers will remove the print pattern and damage the vinyl if it comes in direct contact.

WARNING:
If flammable solvents such as alcohol, turpentine or varsol are used for cleaning, use only small quantities while in a well-ventilated area. Exercise proper caution by notifying any persons in the area. Keep away from any ignition source. Always wear protective gloves.

Latex Paint:
Fresh paint can be wiped off with a damp cloth. Hot soapy water will normally remove dried latex.

Tar or Asphalt:
Remove immediately. Prolonged contact will result in a permanent stain. Use a cloth lightly dampened with mineral spirits and rub the stain gently, working from the outer edge of the stain toward the center to prevent spreading. Rinse with soap and water.

Crayon, Mustard or Ketchup:
Sponge with mild soap and water. For stubborn stains that have set, use a cloth soaked in diluted mild detergent with gentle rubbing. Any remaining stain should be washed with diluted bleach. Rinse repeatedly with cold water.

Chewing Gum:
Scrape off as much gum as possible using a dull knife. Rub the gum with an ice cube to harden and for easier removal. In a well ventilated area, use a cloth saturated with mineral spirits and gently rub the remaining gum. Rinse thoroughly with clean water.

Lipstick, Grease, Oil, Make-Up or Shoe Polish:
Apply a small amount of mineral spirits with a cloth. Rub gently. Be careful not to spread the stain by smearing beyond the original source. Remove shoe polish immediately as it contains a dye which will cause permanent staining. Rinse thoroughly with clean water.

Candy, Ice Cream, Coffee, Tea, Fruit Stains, Liquor, Wine, Tanning Lotion or Soft Drinks:
Loose material should be gently scraped with a dull knife. Use lukewarm water and sponge repeatedly. Any soiled area that remains after drying should be gently rubbed with a cloth, dampened with a mild detergent solution. Rinse thoroughly with clean water.

Blood or Plant Residue:
Rub out any spots using a clean cloth, soaked in cool water. If stubborn spots remain, use household ammonia and rinse repeatedly with a clean, wet cloth. Do not use hot water or soap suds as this will set the stain.

TIP:
Vinyl requires periodic cleaning to maintain its appearance and to prevent the buildup of dirt and contaminant that may permanently stain or reduce the life of the vinyl if left untreated. Frequency of cleaning and procedures used depend upon the amount of use and the environmental conditions in which the vinyl is subjected. Tears or holes in the vinyl can be temporarily covered with clear "office" tape to prevent further damage. Repairs should be made by a professional upholstery shop. Commercial repair products may contain lacquers and cause the vinyl to become brittle and more difficult to repair.

Leather

Spots & Spills:
Absorb excess liquid immediately with a clean cloth or sponge. Use water only if necessary. Do not use a cleaning product. If water is used, clean the entire area where the spot occurred. An example would be the entire seat cushion or the entire arm. Allow to air dry. Do not dry the wet areas with hair dryers, etc.

Stubborn Spots and Stains:
Use lukewarm water and a mild soap to work up a thin layer of suds on a piece of cheesecloth. Scrub the surface. Rinse with a piece of clean, damp cheesecloth. Allow to air dry. Do not use saddle soap, cleaning solvents, furniture polish, oils, varnish, abrasive cleaners, soaps or ammonia water.

NOTE:
These are recommended or suggested methods of cleaning. The manufacturer is not responsible for damage incurred while cleaning. Always test the cleaning method in an inconspicuous area first before applying to the entire area.

Ultratech

Spots and Spills:
Use a mild detergent (Lux or Ivory) for regular cleaning, spots and spills. For spills absorb excess liquid immediately with a clean cloth or sponge. Clean the entire area with water and a mild detergent. Allow to air dry or dry quickly with warm setting of hair dryer. Disinfect with 5:1 non-chlorinated bleach solution.

Stubborn Spots and Stains:
Use a mild solvent (Afta) with a clean cloth or sponge. Wipe with damp cloth and let dry.

FLOORS - *Carpet Cleaning*

Cleaning Solutions:

A. Dry Cleaning Fluid: A nonflammable spot removal liquid, available in grocery and hardware stores.

B. Nail Polish Remover: Any acetate, which often has a banana fragrance. Do not use if it contains acetone.

C. Detergent Solution: Mix two cups of cold water and 1/8 teaspoon mild liquid detergent (no lanolin, non-bleach).

D. Warm Water: Lukewarm tap water.

E. Vinegar Solution: One cup white vinegar to one cup water.

F. Ammonia Solution: One tablespoon household ammonia to one cup water.

G. Stain Removal Kit: Available from retail carpet stores or professional cleaners.

H. Call Professional: Additional suggestions, special cleaning chemicals or the ability to patch the area may be available.

I. Permanent Change: Due to the nature of the stain, there may be color loss. The carpet has been permanently dyed or the carpet yarns have been permanently damaged.

NOTE:
While the recommended cleaning agents have proven to be effective, some stains may become permanent.

Use the solution specified in order from 1-8 until stain is removed.	A DRY CLEANING FLUID	B NAIL POLISH REMOVER	C DETERGENT SOLUTION	D WARM WATER	E VINEGAR SOLUTION	F AMMONIA SOLUTION	G STAIN REMOVAL KIT	H CALL PROFESSIONAL	I PERMANENT CHANGE
SPOTS									
Acid				2		1		3	*
Acne Medication		1		2	5	4	3	6	*
Alcoholic Beverage			1	4	3	2			*
Ammonia				2	1				*
Bleach		1	2					3	*
Blood		1	3		2	4			
Candle Wax	1					2			
Cement & Glue	2	1	3		5	4	6		*
Chalk		1	2						
Charcoal		1	2						
Chewing Gum	1								
Coffee			1	3	2		4	5	*
Cosmetics		2	1	3	6	5	4	7	*
Crayon	1		2	3					
Drain/Toilet Cleaner			2	1	3			4	*
Dye	1		2		4	3	5	6	*
Food			1	4	3	2	5	6	*
Fungicides, Insecticides, Pesticides	1		2	5	4	3	6	*	
Furniture Polish (Water Based)			1	4	3	2	5	6	*
Furniture Polish (Solvent Based)	2	1	3	6	5	4	7	8	*
Furniture Stain	2	1	3	6	5	4	7	8	*
Graphite		1	2						
Grease	1	2	3				4	5	*
Ink	2	1	3	6	5	4	7	8	*
Iodine	1		2	5	4	3	6	7	*
Lipstick	2	1	3	6	5	4	7	8	*
Medicine	2	1	3	6	5	4	7	8	*
Merthiolate			1	4	3	2	5	6	*
Nail Polish	2	1	3				4	5	*
Oil	1		2	4		3		5	*
Paint	2	1	3				4	5	*
Plant Food			1	4	3	2	5	6	*
Rust			2	3	1		4	5	*
Shoe Polish	2	1	3	5		4	6	7	*
Soft Drinks			1	4	3	2	5	6	*
Soot	1		2	3				4	*
Tar	1						2	3	*
Toothpaste			1						
Urine			1		2		3	4	*
Vomit			1	4	3	2	5	6	*

* While recommended cleaning agents are effective, some stains may become permanent.

Spot Removal Procedures:

- Act quickly when anything is dropped or spilled. Remove spots before they dry.
- Blot liquids with a clean, white absorbent cloth or paper towel.
- For semi-solids, scoop up with a rounded spoon.
- For solids, break up and vacuum out as much as possible.
- Pretest the spot removal agent in an inconspicuous area to make certain it will not damage the carpet dyes.
- Apply a small amount of the cleaning solution recommended for the particular spot. Do not scrub. Work from the edges of the spot to the center. Blot thoroughly. Repeat until spot is removed.
- Follow steps on the Carpet Spot Removal Guide.
- After each application, absorb as much as possible before proceeding to the next step.
- Absorb remaining moisture with layers of white paper towels, weighted down with a non-staining glass or ceramic object.
- When completely dry, vacuum or brush the pile to restore texture.
- If the spot is not completely removed, contact a professional carpet cleaner.

Tile Floors

Tile floors vary in porosity and surface irregularities. Regular maintenance is important to keep the tile in the motorhome looking showroom new. Once the slide-out has been extended, keep the tile floor clean to prevent dirt from scratching the tiles prior to retracting the slide-out.

NOTE:
Tile is ceramic and will chip and break easily. Avoid dropping heavy or sharp objects on the tile.

Cleaning Tile:

Use a damp sponge mop or a cloth to clean tile. If moderate staining occurs, cleaning with a window cleaner such as Windex should do the job. A mild solution of hot water and all-purpose cleaner for tile floors, walls and countertops can also be used. Rinse well with clear water and dry with a soft cloth to prevent streaking. Avoid cleaning tile with soap. Soap forms a film to dull the luster. Soap also promotes the growth of mildew and bacteria. Do not use powdered cleaners on unglazed tile floors. Undissolved powder will dull the surface. Grout sealers are available that protect the porous surfaces. If a sealer is used, follow the sealant manufacturer guideline for application. Never use sealers on unglazed tile. With the exception of terra cotta, which may be oiled or waxed, tile does not need to be polished or buffed to maintain its finish.

Grout:

The grout used is a two part concrete mix. It is normal for this type of grout to develop surface cracks over time. In motorhome application, due to the constant flexing of the flooring, this process may accelerate. If the grout requires cleaning, scrub with a plastic brush. Do not use steel wool as small particles may remain and produce unsightly stains.

NOTE:
Before using any solution to clean the tile, check the manufacturer's warning label to ensure the safety of the product. If there is any doubt, apply several test patches of the solution in an inconspicuous place to determine product suitability.

Sealing the Tile:

Apply sealant to the tile floor and grout to prevent discoloring from soils and spills. One pint of 511 Impregnator sealer is provided with the motorhome, which is sufficient to seal the floor. Follow the application instructions carefully.

NOTE:
It is recommended to test a small amount of sealant on an inconspicuous area before applying to the entire floor. Avoid getting sealant onto surfaces other than the flooring.

070182

To Apply:

1. Extend slide room(s) and clean floor. Allow floor and grout to thoroughly dry.
2. Working from rear towards doorway, apply sealant direct from container onto a cloth towel or broom handle applicator. Grout sealant applicators are available at large hardware stores.
3. Apply only enough sealant to wet surface. Do not allow sealant to puddle in grout lines. Extra care should be used to make sure all grout has been sealed. Only one application is necessary.
4. Allow five hours to dry. Sealant will fully cure in 72 hours.

NOTE:
If a spill occurs before sealant has cured, it may be necessary to clean and additionally treat area with sealant as needed.

CAUTION:
Product contains petroleum distillate. Open windows, vents and doors to provide adequate airflow during application.

Laminate Floor (Optional)

Laminate flooring used in the motorhome provides style, durability and ease of maintenance. This high-pressure laminated flooring is designed to be incorporated as a floating floor.

Laminate flooring is constructed of three main material components. The surface, similar to many countertops, contains aluminum oxide particles to form an extremely hard, durable outer layer. The carrier, or core layer, is constructed from high density fiberboard. A tongue and groove design provides a tighter bond. The backer or bottom layer is also made of laminate for strength.

Cleaning and Maintenance:

For everyday cleaning, vacuum the floor to remove dirt and debris. It is recommended to occasionally mop the floor using a cotton string mop and a minimal amount of water. Use a mixture of soap-free household cleaner (either vinegar or ammonia work well) and water for a more thorough cleaning.

- Wipe away stains with a damp cloth.
- Stains caused by inks or paints may require a cloth moistened with acetone (nail polish remover).
- Stains caused by gum or tar should be allowed to harden completely, then gently scraped away.
- Felt protectors on the bottom of furniture and floor mats can preserve the beauty and appearance of the flooring.

CAUTION:
Abrasive cleaners and scouring pads can scratch and damage the flooring. Never wax, sand or apply lacquer to laminate flooring.

NOTE:
Contact Wilsonart at (800) 433-3222 to address any unusual or unique problems concerning the laminate flooring.

SHOWER

Showers are susceptible to soap build-up and should be cleaned weekly to ease the task. To control mildew growth, spray the shower with household chlorine bleach. Allow it to stand for five minutes, then rinse with clear water. Clean the glass shower doors with window cleaner on a weekly basis to maintain shine. If water spots cannot be removed from glass, rub lightly with the flat edge of a razor blade to remove deposits.

To prevent excessive moisture and a continual growth of mildew, use the shower only with adequate ventilation. The sealant in a regularly used shower should be replaced once a year. To replace sealant, remove the old sealant using a sharp non-metallic instrument. Apply a new sealant, which can be found at most recreational vehicle supply stores.

CEILING

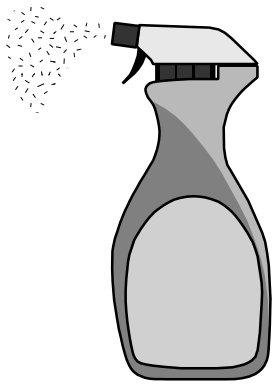
The ceiling of the motorhome can be a variety of materials or fabrics:

Hardwood Vinyl and Decorated Paneling:
Certain cleaning agents will affect the surface on both printed and unprinted vinyl. Use only a mild, non-abrasive detergent and warm water with a soft cloth or sponge to clean. Do not use bleach, alcohol, oil-based spray cleaners or cleaning agents that contain solvents, citrus oil or harsh chemicals.

Decorative Ceiling Mirror:
Household cleaners, ammoniated detergents or glass cleaners may be used on A-Look Decorative Metals. Use a glass cleaner applied to a soft cloth to clean.

Suede Fabric:
Restore suede surfaces using a soft brush. Remove dust from the suede fabric using the soft brush attachment of a vacuum.

Time is very important when removing substance from wall coverings that are solvent based or contain color. Do not use abrasive cleaners containing chlorine bleach or solvents. *Fidelity* and *Jolie* brands are recommended. Always begin with a mild detergent or soap and warm water. To remove normal dirt, clean with a soft sponge. Rinse and wipe dry.



070200

Care for the Tower Wall Covering:

Remove ordinary stains with mild soap and warm water. Sponge on. Rinse well and dry with a soft cloth. **For special cleaning problems:** To remove ball point pen, blood, lipstick, etc., use a sponge or soft bristle brush and *Formula 409*, *Fantastik* or a similar product. Rinse well and dry. Finish cleaning by applying full strength isopropyl alcohol with a sponge or soft brush. Rinse well and dry.

Care for the Satinesque Wall Covering:

Stains must be removed quickly to minimize the reaction on the wall covering, especially if the stain is solvent-based or pigmented. Examples: nail polish, oil, shampoo, lacquer, enamel, paint, ink and lipstick.

Begin cleaning the stain with a mild soap-based detergent; and if necessary, move to a stronger cleaner such as household bleach, liquid household cleaners or rubbing alcohol. Before applying a stronger cleaner, test the cleaning agent on a small inconspicuous portion of the wallcovering to ensure the cleaner does not affect the color or gloss of the wall covering.

Stain Removal Procedures for Specific Stain Types:

Normal Dirt - Remove normal dirt using a mild soap or detergent and warm water. Allow it to soak for a few minutes then rub briskly with a cloth or sponge.

Nail Polish, Shellac or Lacquer - Remove liquid using a dry cloth. Use care not to spread the stain. Quickly clean the remaining stain with rubbing alcohol. Rinse with clean water.

Ink - Remove immediately by wiping with a cloth dampened in rubbing alcohol. Rinse with clean water.

Chewing Gum- Rub with an ice cube to cool and harden. Gently pull off the bulk of the gum. Remove remaining gum with rubbing alcohol.

Pencil - Erase as much of the pencil mark as possible. Wipe remaining marks with rubbing alcohol.

Blood, Feces or Urine - Remove these staining substances as quickly as possible. Wash the stained area with a strong soap. If the stain does not disappear, rinse the soapy area thoroughly with clean water. Mix a solution of 50% water and 50% household bleach. Clean the stained area with the bleach solution. Rinse with clean water.

WOOD CARE

For general cleaning, regularly wipe wood surfaces using a soft cloth lightly dampened with clear warm water, and thoroughly dry to prevent streaking. For stubborn stains, use a clean cloth dampened with a solution of mild non-alkaline soap (dishwashing liquid) and water and rinse. Dry thoroughly, buffing in the direction of the wood grain. Never use abrasive cleaners, scouring pads or powdered cleansers. Polishing products used on the solid wood surface depends on individual preference. Always follow product instructions.

Excessive dampness, dryness, heat, or cold can damage solid wood finishes. Sunlight can change the color or age the wood. Never allow moisture or spills to stand, always blot dry immediately. Solvents, alcohol, nail polish and polish removers, as well as harsh cleaners, should not be used on finished wood surfaces.

Minor damage to solid wood surfaces can be repaired quickly and effectively with a bit of hard work, some careful attention to details, and most importantly, the right materials. However, any wood repair or finishing job is best left for a professionally trained individual.

NOTE:
It is important to inform the service technician of any products used for the care and cleaning in the event of wood repairs.

Sanding and Sandpaper:

The following table is a general guide, but this may vary from wood type to type. The key to sanding is using the right sandpaper for the repair that is needed. Always sand with the grain.

GRIT	Common	Common
80-120	Medium	Smoothing the surface, removing small marks.
150-180	Fine	Final sanding prior to finishing.
220-240	Very Fine Extra Fine	Sanding between coats of sealing.
280-320	Super Fine	Removing dust spots or mark between finish coats.
360-600		Sanding finish to remove luster or surface blemishes.

Steel Wool:

Abrasive material composed of long steel fibers of varying degrees of fineness that are matted together. Coarser grades are used to remove paint and other finishes; the finer grades for polishing or smoothing a finished surface.

Nail Holes and Small Cracks:

Fill nail holes and small cracks with wood putty or dough for unstained woods prior to any sanding. Stained finishes require filling holes and cracks after the stain has been applied. Putty should match the stain closely in color.

TIP:
A little sawdust and wood glue can be used to make putty for end grains.

Fixing scratches in stained woodwork:

"Quick and simple" rarely describes repairs to stained wood finishes. However, a few tricks can be tried. When scratches appear lighter than the surrounding dark-stained woodwork, it usually means either that the scratch goes through the stain into the wood or that the varnish is flaking off.

Dents:

Small dents may be repaired by using steam. To raise a small dent, place a damp cloth over the area and hold a medium-hot iron on it. The steam causes the wood fibers to swell back into place. It may be necessary to repeat this process until the dented area is level with the surface. Allow the area to dry.

Restoring the clear finish:

Check the scratches carefully. If flaking varnish is visible with dark-stained wood underneath, only the clear finish may need to be restored. Rub the loose varnish with fine steel wool or fine synthetic steel wool until you have removed the flaking varnish and slightly roughened a small area of the finish surrounding the scratch. With the tip of a rag, a small brush, or even a cotton swab, apply a thin coat of wipe-on finish. Apply finish to the damaged area only. Several coats may be needed to hide the scratch.

Re-staining the wood:

If bare wood is visible at the bottom of the scratch, the wood will need to be re-stained. To remove damaged varnish, lightly roughen a small area around the scratch with sandpaper, steel wool or synthetic steel wool. Find a stain that is a shade lighter than the wood finish. Stain the bare wood with a very small amount of stain on a rag, brush or cotton swab. If the color is too light, apply several coats. Rub away excess stain with a dry rag. If the wood becomes too dark, use a rag moistened in mineral sprits to lighten the wood. Select a lighter color stain and continue.

Several companies have simplified this repair process by designing oil-based wood stain into marker-like containers to rub on to the scratch. Start with a stain color that is lighter than the original finish, because torn and scratched wood fibers will absorb stain and darken quickly. A second coat can always be applied if the color of the first coat is too light. Once the color is blended, patch the clear finish as described above and apply a wipe-on finish.

Scratches and Nicks:

Professional woodworkers use certain procedures on scratches and nicks for easy repair. Light scratches will often disappear when carefully rubbed with furniture polish or paste wax. Deeper scratches can be hidden by carefully rubbing with a piece of oily nutmeat such as Brazil nut, black walnut or pecan. Be careful to rub the nutmeat directly into the scratch to avoid darkening of the surrounding wood. Color the scratch with brown coloring crayon or liquid shoe dye (especially good on walnut). Always test a procedure on an inconspicuous area on the wood to ensure no damages to the finish occurs.

Staining the scratch with iodine:

Mahogany - Use new iodine.

Brown or Cherry Mahogany - Use iodine that has turned dark brown.

Maple - Dilute one part iodine with one part denatured alcohol.

Commercial scratch removers, or stick wax to match the wood finish, can also be used. After the scratch has been hidden, polish or wax the entire area. Deep scratches should be repaired and finished by a professional.

COUNTERTOPS - *Solid Surface*

Guidelines to maintain the countertop surface:

Routine Care:

The motorhome solid surface countertops and sinks have a matte/satin finish. Soapy water or ammonia-based cleaners will remove most dirt and stains from all tops and bowls. Individual techniques may be used to remove different stains. Follow the recommendations below.

Cleaning the Countertops:

- **Most dirt and stains -** Use soapy water or ammonia-based cleaner.
- **Water marks -** Wipe with damp cloth and towel dry.
- **Difficult stains -** Use soft scrub and a Grey *Scotchbrite* Pad.
- **Disinfecting -** Occasionally wipe surface with diluted household bleach (one part water and one part bleach).

Cleaning the Solid Surfaces Sink:

Occasionally clean by using *Soft Scrub Liquid Cleanser* and a Grey *Scotchbrite* pad. Scrub the sink, rinse and towel dry.

Removing Cuts and Scratches:

Solid Surface countertops are completely renewable. Use the following instructions to remove minor cuts and scratches.

- Sand with 180 grit sandpaper, followed by 320 grit, until the scratch is gone.
- Restore the finish using a Grey *Scotchbrite* pad. Never sand hard in one small area. Feather out lightly to blend restoration.

Preventing Heat Damage:

Hot pans and heat-generating appliances, such as frying pans or crockpots, can damage the surface. To prevent heat damage, always use a hot pad or a trivet with rubber feet to protect the surface.

Other Important Tips:

Avoid using strong chemicals on the Solid Surface such as paint removers or oven cleaners. If these chemicals come in contact with the Solid Surface, quickly wash with water. Avoid contact with nail polish or nail polish remover. If contact is made, quickly wash with water.

NOTE:
Do not cut directly on the solid surface. When pouring boiling water into the Solid Surface sink, run cold water to prevent damage.

STAINLESS STEEL SURFACE

Clean stainless steel once a week. Always apply stainless steel cleaner/polish with a nonabrasive cloth or sponge, working with, not across, the grain. Do not use steel wool, wire brushes or abrasive sponge pads. Cleaners containing chloride are not recommended. If used, rinse surface immediately to prevent corrosion. Allowing water to evaporate will form water deposits. To avoid this, it is important to use a dabbing action to dry, not an abrasive or rubbing action. Cleaning with a damp sponge and drying should keep surface looking beautiful.

WINDOWS

Water Spots:

Glass will develop water spots if not properly cleaned. Water spots are magnified when the glass has a reflective finish. Use a squeegee immediately after washing to reduce water spotting. To remove stubborn water stains from reflective glass we recommend *Cerium Oxide Polishing Compound*, made by C.R. Lawrence, available at most glass shops.

Condensation

Condensation occurs from water vapor present in the air. More vapor is added by breathing, bathing, cooking, etc. and collects wherever there is available air space. When the temperature reaches the dew point, the water vapor in the air condenses and changes to liquid form.

Controlling Moisture Condensation:

Reduce or eliminate interior moisture condensation during cold weather by using the following steps:

- Partially open the roof vents and windows so that outside air can circulate into the interior. Increase the ventilation when large numbers of people are in the motorhome. Even in raining or snowing conditions the air outside will be far drier than the interior air.
- Install a dehumidifier. Continuous use of a dehumidifier is effective in removing excess moisture from interior air. Using a dehumidifier is not a cure-all, however, it will reduce the amount of outside air needed for ventilation.
- Run the range vent fan when cooking and the bath vent fan (or open the bath vent) when bathing, to reduce water vapor. Avoid excessive boiling or use of steam producing hot water.
- Do not heat the motorhome interior with the range or oven. Heating with the range or oven increases the risk of toxic fumes and depletes oxygen. Open flames also add moisture to the interior air and increase condensation.
- In very cold weather, leave cabinet and closet doors partially open. Air flow will warm and ventilate the interior storage compartments and exterior walls to reduce or eliminate condensation and prevent the possibility of ice formations.

WINDOW TREATMENTS - *Mini blinds*

Dusting:
Regular dusting will maintain the appearance of the mini-blinds. Keep aluminum blinds looking their best by periodically wiping them with a soft cloth or a dusting mitt. By tilting the slats down, not quite closed, most of the top surface of each slat can be cleaned. Blinds may be cleaned while hanging in place using this method.

Vacuuming:
For deeper cleaning, vacuum gently with a soft brush attachment of a vacuum cleaner.

Compressed Air or Hair Dryer (non-heat setting):
Blow dust off each slat. Dust will be air-borne using this method so ventilate the motorhome.

Spot-Cleaning:
Spot-clean shades and blinds using a soft cloth or a moistened sponge with lukewarm water. Add mild detergent, if needed. Blot gently to avoid creasing. In a dusty environment, the blinds may need to be cleaned regularly using a sponge or dampened soft cloth. Use warm (not hot) water and a mild detergent. The mild detergent cannot contain abrasives. Rinse the blinds using a clean cloth and water to prevent water spots. Place a towel directly under the blinds to absorb water that might drip down.

Ultrasonic cleaning:
Professional ultrasonic cleaning may be preferred.

Day/Night Shades

Guidelines for care and maintainence of polyester blended day/night shades:

- Leave Day-Night shades in the **UP** position when not in use to help the shades hold their shape.
- String tension for the shades should be equal. The tension can be adjusted if the shades will not remain up.

Dusting:
Vacuum with a brush attachment, or use a dusting tool, on a regular basis.

Cleaning:
A dry foam cleaner may be used for soil and dirt removal. Follow all directions on the container or a cleaning solution of ¼ ounce clear liquid soap to 8 ounces water.

NOTE:
Do not use colored liquid soap as a stain may appear when fabric dries.

What is Mold?

Mold is a type of fungus that occurs naturally in the environment. Mold spreads by means of microscopic spores borne on the wind, and is found everywhere life can be supported. Motorhome construction is not, and cannot be, designed to exclude mold spores. If the conditions are right, mold can grow in the motorhome. Most people are familiar with mold growth in the form of bread mold, and mildew that may grow on bathroom tile. Mold spores, as they grow, can leave a musty odor, discolor fabrics, stain surfaces, and cause considerable damage.

What Does Mold Need to Grow?

Mold requires a food source to grow. Grease films contain nutrients to cultivate mold spores. Soil on items such as fabrics and furniture may also supply nutrients for mold growth. Synthetic fabrics, such as acetate, polyester, acrylic and nylon, are mildew resistant, but soil on the surface of these fabrics are susceptible to mold.

Temperate climate and moisture help to cultivate mold growth. Moisture in the motorhome can result from unattended spills, leaks, overflows, and condensation. Moisture allowed to remain on a growth medium can develop mold within 24 to 48 hours. Minimizing moisture inside of the motorhome can reduce or eliminate favorable mold growth conditions. Good housekeeping and regular maintenance are essential in the effort to prevent or eliminate mold growth.

Consequences of Mold:

All mold is not necessarily harmful, but certain strains of mold have been shown to cause, in susceptible persons, allergic reactions, including skin irritation, watery eyes, runny noise, coughing, sneezing, congestion, sore throat and headache. Individuals with suppressed immune systems may risk infections. Some experts contend that mold causes serious symptoms and disease which may even be life threatening. However, experts disagree about the level of mold exposure that may cause health problems, and about the exact nature and extent of the health problems that may be caused by mold. Moreover, the Center for Disease Control states that a casual link between the presence of toxic mold and serious health conditions has not been proven.

Standards or threshold limit values for concentration of mold or mold spores have not been set. Currently, there are no EPA regulations or standards for airborne mold contaminants. There is simply no practical way to eliminate all mold and mold spores in the indoor environment. For example, studies have shown that ozone cleaners are not effective at killing airborne mold or surface mold contamination.

Controlling Mold Growth:
There are several steps that can be taken to reduce or eliminate the possibility of mold growth.

Guidelines to Reduce or Eliminate Mold Growth:
- Check for signs of mold prior to bringing items in the motorhome. Potted plants (roots and soil), furnishings, or stored clothing and bedding material, as well as many other household goods, may already contain mold growth.
- Regular vacuuming and cleaning will help reduce mold levels. Mild bleach solutions and most tile cleaners are effective in eliminating or preventing mold growth.
- Indoor humidity can be reduced by 30 to 60% when venting clothes dryers to the outdoors. Ventilate the kitchen and bathroom by opening windows, using exhaust fans or a combination of both. Operating the air conditioning will remove excess moisture in the air, and help facilitate evaporation of water from wet surfaces.
- Promptly clean up spills, condensation and other sources of moisture. Thoroughly dry any wet surfaces or material. Do not let water pool or stand in the motorhome. Promptly replace materials that cannot be thoroughly dried.
- Inspect for leaks on a regular basis. Look for discolorations or wet spots. Repair leaks promptly. Inspect condensation pans (refrigerators and air conditioners) for mold growth. Take notice of musty odors, and any visible signs of mold.
- Should mold develop, thoroughly clean the affected area with a mild solution of bleach. First, test to see if the affected material or surface is color safe. Should mold growth be severe, call on the services of a qualified professional cleaner.
- If mold cannot be removed from an item, properly disposed of it.

Whether or not a motorhome owner experiences mold growth depends largely on how the motorhome is managed and maintained. As a manufacturer, our responsibility is limited to things that we can control. As explained in the written warranty, we will repair or replace defects in the construction (defects defined as a failure to comply with reasonable standards of motorhome construction) for the Limited Warranty coverage period provided. **THE MANUFACTURER WILL NOT BE RESPONSIBLE FOR ANY DAMAGES CAUSED BY MOLD THAT MAY BE THE CONSEQUENCE OF OR ASSOCIATED WITH DEFECTS IN THE CONSTRUCTION.**

Regardless of the area one lives in or travels to, it is safe in stating there will be pests waiting. These pests are not only annoying; they can pose a health risk and create serious damage to the motorhome.

- Common pests include insects such as ants, cockroaches, termites, flies, pantry pests and wasps as well as wildlife such as rodents, raccoons, bats, birds and snakes. It is important to remember that pests are searching for food, water and a place to live. Eliminating any one of those elements will help control the pest infestation. Take immediate steps to remove pests as soon as their presence is detected.

Steps to take to help control pests:

- Reduce the clutter inside the motorhome and storage bays. All storage items, particularly food (including pet food), should be kept in tightly sealed containers. Seal all cracks and holes, and insure that window, door and vent screens are securely in place.
- Routinely clean the motorhome, including storage bays. Wipe down the water bay. Promptly remove all crumbs from areas where food is regularly prepared and eaten. Garbage should be placed in a sealed container and removed to an outside receptacle daily. Only put out pet food that will be immediately eaten.
- Keep foods such as flour, cereal, spaghetti and pet food in re-sealable containers with tight lids.
- Sweep and vacuum often (especially in eating areas) to help eliminate a food source for pests.
- Seal cracks, crevices, and gaps around doors and windows. Ensure all windows and doors are screened and that the screens fit snug in the frames.
- Many pests need moisture to successfully live and reproduce. Limit their access to water or moisture sources by sealing any cracks and leaks in pipes and faucets. Reduce moisture in the motorhome by controlling condensation, immediately wiping up spills and promptly repairing leaks. Be extra alert around areas that attract rodents and insects, including the sewer hose, fresh water hose, bay doors and items that may be leaning against the outside of the motorhome, such as fishing poles and golf clubs.
- When the motorhome is stored outdoors, clear the surrounding area of all rodent friendly hiding places - shrubs, trees and clutter. Completely seal the underside of the motorhome. Wire mesh will work well to prevent points of entry, but beware of blocking necessary air vents. Prior to operating the motorhome after storage, remove all insect and animal nests that may have developed around vents, engine compartments, the exhaust pipe and in the wheel wells.

Rodents:

Rodents may chew through wires or build nests in components of the motorhome. Signs of rodent infestation include droppings, shredded material or chewed furniture fabrics and vinyl. Rodents like to build nests with wire insulation, and are commonly attracted to the outside coating of 120 Volt AC wiring more than 12 DC Volt wiring.

NOTE:
Although the back cap of the motorhome is well sealed, rodents are capable of chewing through the foam insulation and that area should be routinely inspected.

If there are signs of rodent infestation around the motorhome, place traps or poisons in suspected areas. Keep the traps and poisons safely away from pets and children. Cheese is not the best bait for a rodent trap. Use peanut butter or chocolate in small amounts. Place the bait on the trigger of the trap to induce the rodent to climb onto the trigger to reach the bait. Rodents do not limit invasion to unused vehicles.

Insects:

Eliminate insects when signs of infestation appear. If you are unable to identify the type of insect, purchase sticky traps from the hardware store and place the tape where the insects have been seen. Once a sample is caught, seek assistance in identifying the insect to determine what will be required to remove the infestation.

Regularly inspect the exterior of the motorhome for signs of a budding wasp nest, and promptly destroy small nests before they become too large.

Spiders can be in any structure. Immediately remove spider webs. Some types of spiders like to nest on top of the diesel tank and around the diesel hoses. Dispense of spiders using a vacuum. Use care to capture the spider and egg sacs. Throw the vacuum bag away in a sealed bag.

Fruit flies invade the motorhome by attaching to fresh fruits and vegetables. Determine what food items are generating the flies and discard that item in an outdoor trash receptacle. Fruit flies can be eliminated with a homemade trap. Pour a few ounces of vinegar into a cup and cover the cup with plastic wrap. Secure the wrap with tape or a rubber band and poke a ¼" hole in the plastic. Place the trap in the area where fruit flies are present.

Ants live in colonies. Only a fraction of the ant colony will leave to seek food. Spraying pesticides will only kill the ants that are away from the colony. To eliminate all ants, the colony must be destroyed. Keep ants away from the sewer hose by spraying the hose ends with a soap and water solution.

Fleas can be removed by properly treating pets with a veterinarian approved treatment and by thoroughly cleaning the motorhome. Vacuum vinyl areas and tile floors to remove dust, flea larva and flea eggs. Follow by thoroughly washing those areas with soap and water. Carpets must be vacuumed and treated with a residual flea control product labeled safe for indoor carpet and furniture use. Perform the cleaning treatment daily for three days to ensure that all fleas have encountered the treatment.

Flying outdoor insects are attracted to bright light. Yellow porch light covers on the motorhome work to discourage insect invasion. During nighttime hours insects will be attracted to docking lights, or other bright exterior lighting.

If the presence of moths is detected inside of the motorhome, usually by holes appearing in material, clean the affected clothing and all other items stored in the same area. Follow by completely cleaning the closet, dresser or storage area. If cracks are detected, seal the cracks and treat the area with a properly labeled indoor pest control product.

Birds:

Even birds can be considered pests, particularly when the motorhome is parked in the flight path of a flock. Bird droppings are hard to remove and will leave stains. Prevent permanent staining to the motorhome roof by regularly cleaning the surface to remove all bird droppings.

Damage from Pest:

Lizards have been known to crawl into the inverter and short out the circuit board. Lizards can be captured using glue traps. To remove the lizard from the trap, dissolve the glue with vegetable oil and release it outside and well away from the motorhome. A scorpion will glow blue-green in UV light. If the presence of scorpions in the motorhome is suspected, investigate with an UV black light during the nighttime hours.

Best sources of information about common household pests:

The Internet is a great place to find information about common pests, however, the information is not always correct. The National Pest Management Association website can be useful resource about common pest. Another good source for information are colleges and universities with entomology departments (entomology is the study of insects).

Electronic pest control devices can be costly and most likely will not work on all types of rodents and insects. When calling on the services of a professional to combat pest infestation, call a reputable business that is licensed in handling pesticides. Check references. Explain that you are seeking assistance for a motorhome, as treatments may differ from standard household jobs.

If a pest problem is suspected in the motorhome, consider professional pest control help. The following guidelines can be used for selecting a pest control service.

- Seek referrals from those who have used pest control services. Inquire about the type of pest problem encountered and if they were satisfied with the service.
- Membership in the national, state or local pest control associations is a good indicator that the company has access to modern technical information and is committed to further education.
- Reach a complete understanding with the company before work starts; find out what the pest is, how the problem will be treated, how long the period of treatment will be, and what results can be expected.
- Be sure to understand what is guaranteed and what is not.

STORAGE
Short Term

Short term storage is defined as storing the motorhome for a period of thirty days or less. Properly preparing the motorhome during periods of short term storage will make bringing the motorhome out of storage a much easier process. Winterize the plumbing system if the motorhome is stored in winter months, or if stored when temperatures are below 32º F.

Checklist-Short Term Storage

- Retract the slide rooms. Do not store the motorhome with slide rooms extended.
- Shut off all appliances. Close the primary LP-Gas valve.
- Remove all articles from refrigerator/freezer and clean thoroughly. Prop doors open to prevent mildew.
- Holding tanks should be drained and fresh water system winterized with potable antifreeze or winterize the plumbing system using air pressure.
- Retract and secure all awnings.
- Turn **OFF** the interior house power.
- Cancel the Automatic Generator Start program.
- Batteries should be stored fully charged. Batteries stored in a discharged state will readily freeze.
- If possible, park the motorhome so that the batteries are accessible for charging or changing without having to move the motorhome.
- If available, leave the motorhome hooked to shore power. Leave the main battery disconnect switches **ON**.
- Careful placement of a small heat source in the interior will help control moisture. Desiccate filter systems will help remove interior moisture.
- If AC power is not available, turn the chassis battery disconnect switch **OFF**.
- If possible, store the motorhome inside a storage building.

- If stored outside, inspect all seams and seals bi-monthly for possible leakage.
- Store the motorhome with a full fuel tank to minimize moisture condensing at top of fuel tank.
- Vents and windows should be closed to prevent wind driven rain entrance.
- Tires should be stored at maximum inflation pressure.
- A full interior **inspection** for water leaks should be made bi-monthly. Be sure to check behind all cabinet doors and drawers.

Long Term

Long term storage of the motorhome can be defined as leaving a motorhome unattended for a period of thirty days or more. A motorhome requires protection from the elements just as a house or a car would. When left out in the environment without proper storage or maintenance, a motorhome, house or car is vulnerable to the moisture and oxidation processes inherent in the environment.

NOTE:
The natural process of moisture in the air condensing will occur with temperature changes of 30º F or more in one day. Humidity readings of 60% or greater will allow the accumulated moisture to remain for extended periods of time.

If the motorhome is stored in a location where AC power is not available:

- Turn off all the appliances.
- Turn off the interior battery disconnect switch.
- If possible, situate the motorhome so the batteries remain accessible. This allows a battery to be charged or replaced without moving the motorhome.
- Charge the batteries to a full state of charge.
- Cancel the Automatic Generator Start program.
- Turn the main battery disconnects **OFF**.
- When stored outside, use the Aladdin™ system to make a quick reference check of the battery voltage while the motorhome is in storage. If the motorhome is stored outside, solar panels may offset the parasitic loads. Preventative measures should be used if the voltage readings are low. Removing the motorhome from storage or moving the motorhome in case of an emergency will be a much easier process.

NOTE:
Batteries in a low state of charge will readily freeze. Freezing will damage the battery.

If AC power is available:

The chassis battery disconnect switch will remain **ON**. The inverter will charge both house and engine battery banks. A 30 Amp shore power service will be more than adequate.

CAUTION:
A 20 Amp service using light duty extension cords and the required adapters create serious voltage losses. Line voltage loss and the resistance at each electrical connection is a hazardous combination and should be avoided. Damage to sensitive electronic equipment may result!

Type of surface to park and store the motorhome on:

- Parking the motorhome on a grass surface, with the tires supported by blocks, is a perfect situation for moisture to accumulate.
- A graveled parking area still allows moisture to evaporate from the ground, through the gravel and to the underside of the motorhome.
- Concrete pads seal the surface allowing better ventilation under the motorhome.
- Storage buildings with concrete floors, or heated storage facilities, greatly reduce the amount of moisture accumulation and protects the motorhome from moisture damage.

If the motorhome is stored outdoors:

- The interior should be heated to help prevent mold and mildew growth. Moisture removing desiccate filter systems are available from hardware and RV supply stores. Place the filter system inside the motorhome to reduce interior moisture condensation or humidity.
- Proper winterization of the fresh water system will prevent potential damage in extreme cold.
- Ultraviolet radiation affects soft goods and rubber products such as privacy curtains, window shades and tires. These items should be protected. Store Day/Night Shades in the **Up** position.
- Cardboard templates can be made for the windows to protect the interior from exposure to direct sunlight.
- Tire covers are available to protect the sidewall of the tires from cracking. Make sure tires in storage contain the correct air pressure to prevent damaged caused by underinflation.
- Regularly washing the exterior to help control moss accumulation. Waxing the motorhome twice a year will augment these substances.

Inspect the motorhome:

- Perform a full interior **inspection** for water leaks every two weeks while the motorhome is in storage. Check inside all cabinets for signs of dampness or leaks. **Inspect** the ceiling areas around roof vents or other roof openings.
- The roof and sidewall seams should be **inspected** and cleaned at least twice a year. **Inspect** for exterior sealant gaps of all roof seams, vents, skylights, roof air conditioners and windows.

Fuel:

Storing the motorhome with a full tank of fuel will minimize moisture condensing at the top of the tank. Diesel fuel is an organic material which will develop a microbe growth (black slime). Fuel stabilizers may be added to control microbe growth and degrading of the fuel. Consult the engine manufacturer owner's manual or a distributor for further detailed information on fuel stabilizers and additives.

Brakes:

Brakes suffer from non-use during periods of storage. The bare metal machined surfaces of brake drums or rotors have only a light coating of dust from the brake lining friction material. The brake dust is the only thing protecting the bare metal surfaces from rusting. Only regular brake applications dry the moisture preventing rust on brake drum or rotor surfaces. During periods of non-use, oxygen and moisture oxidize the machined surfaces. Only occasional use keeps these surfaces from oxidizing. Rusty brake drum or rotor surfaces permeate the brake lining upon the first few applications, reducing the friction action of the linings.

Engine:

Internal combustion engines need to be "exercised" on a regular basis to ensure an adequate supply of lubricating oil coats the cylinder walls and piston rings. Valve and valve seat surfaces also suffer from non-use. Some valves will remain open depending at which part of the combustion cycle the engine has stopped. The heat and cold of the day allows moisture to accumulate through the exhaust system. Start the generator at least once a month.

Electric Motors:

Electric motors in the motorhome should be occasionally operated to help lubricate and keep surfaces rotating freely. These items include the roof air conditioners, dash fans, dash blower motor, Aqua-Hot motors, heat exchangers and powered roof vents.

Winter Storage Checklist

- **Plumbing Lines** - Drain and protect. (See *Winterizing* - Section 6)
- **Fresh Water Tank -** Drain.
- **Body -** Clean and wax. Oil locks and hinges. Repair roof seams as needed.
- **Countertop and Cabinets -** Wash with mild soap and water.
- **Curtains -** Remove and clean according to care specifications.
- **Windows -** Cover windows by pulling blinds, closing shades or using a separate cover such as a sheet.
- **Holding Tank -** Drain and rinse. Close valves.

LUBRICATION:

Add a small amount of antifreeze to waste holding tanks to keep valves and gaskets lubricated.

- **Drain Traps** - Pour RV antifreeze down all drains.

- **Refrigerator -** Clean and leave both doors propped open. Cover the exterior panels and roof vents.

- **Batteries -** Add distilled water and recharge if needed. If necessary, disconnect the cables, remove the batteries and store them in a cool dry place. Check and recharge as needed.

- **Air Conditioner -** Remove the air filters. Clean or replace.

- **Roof -** Keep clear of snow accumulation or damage may occur.

- **Interior/Exterior -** Storing under cover or indoors helps extend interior and exterior life.

- **Fuel Tank -** Diesel fuel tank should be full of fuel.

Removal from Storage

If the motorhome was properly and carefully prepared for storage, removing from storage will not be difficult. The following checklist pertains to items or areas which should be checked before operating or moving the motorhome. If the motorhome was not properly winterized, extensive freeze damage or other serious deterioration may have occurred. Consult a dealer or an authorized service center for advice.

- Thoroughly **inspect** the outside of motorhome. Look for animal nests in the wheel wells or in other out of the way places.
- Remove all appliance flue vent covers, ceiling vent covers and air conditioning covers. Be sure the refrigerator openings are free of debris, insect nests, webs, etc.
- Open all doors and compartments. Check for animal or insect intrusion, water damage or other types of damage which may have occurred.
- Check the state of charge of the batteries. If necessary fill the cells with distilled water only and charge as necessary. Inspect the cable ends and terminals. They should be clean and free of corrosion.
- Check all the chassis fluid levels: engine oil, engine coolant, hydraulic fluid reservoir, transmission oil and rear axle oil.
- Start the engine, allowing it to reach operating temperature. Ensure the engine instruments are indicating proper readings.
- While the engine is running check the operation of headlights, taillights, turn signals, back-up lights, license plate light and emergency flasher. Operate the dash air conditioner. If the air conditioner does not work, or the compressor makes unusual noises, have the system checked by a qualified air conditioner technician.
- Shut the engine down. Adjust or add fluids as necessary. **Inspect** the engine for fluid leaks. Look under the motorhome for fluid leaks.
- Drain, sanitize and flush the fresh water system as outlined in the ***Water Systems - Section 6***. **Inspect** the sewer drain hose and connections for leaks. Replace if necessary.

- Operate all faucets and fixtures in the fresh water system. Run a sufficient amount of fresh water through all the water lines and faucets to thoroughly purge any potable antifreeze from the fresh water system.

NOTE:
Discard at least the first two trays of ice from the icemaker to ensure the ice does not contain traces of antifreeze or other contaminates.

- Open cabinet doors and drawers. Inspect for water leaks at joints or fittings. Repair as necessary.
- Operate all 12 Volt DC lights and accessories. If something does not work there may be a bad 12 Volt circuit breaker or blown fuse.
- Install new batteries in battery operated safety detectors or devices. Test the carbon monoxide, LP-Gas and smoke detectors for proper operation.
- Check that the monitor panel is properly functioning.
- Inspect the 120 Volt AC electrical system which includes the power cord, inverter/converter, all outlets and exposed wiring.

NOTE:
Prepare the generator for operation following the instructions in the Generator Manual.

- Start and run the generator.
- Confirm that the batteries are charging. Operate the 120 Volt AC appliances and air conditioners. If an electrical item or appliance is not properly functioning, contact the dealer or an authorized service center to have it evaluated.
- Have a qualified technician **inspect** the LP-Gas system and perform an LP-Gas leak test. The leak test should also include an LP-Gas regulator adjustment (if needed). The test can also verify if the regulator is faulty and should be replaced. Have the LP-Gas tank inspected.
- Operate each LP-Gas appliance. Observe all burner/pilot flames for proper color and size.
- **Inspect** and clean the interior.
- Check the sealant around all roof and body seams and windows. Reseal if necessary.
- **Lubricate** all the exterior locks, hinges and latches with a graphite lubricant.
- Check the windshield wiper blade condition. Check the wiper/washer operation.
- Wash and wax the exterior. Check the body for scratches or other damage; touch up or repair as necessary. Flush the underside thoroughly.
- Run through the operational checks for steering, brakes, engine and transmission. Operate the motorhome slowly during these checks to allow sufficient circulation of fluids and resetting of the components.
- If desired, have the dealer or repair center double-check preparation to make necessary adjustments and/or correct defects.

NOTES

The Executive 2005

Appliances
Section 4

APPLIANCES - INTRODUCTION 167
REFRIGERATOR - NORCOLD 167
Operation Specifics 168
Control Panel 169
Icemaker 170
Refrigerator Alarm 171
Cooling Unit Fans 171
Doors 171
Storage Procedures 172
Interior Light 172
Service 173
Air in Propane Gas Supply Lines 173
REFRIGERATOR - RESIDENTIAL (OPT) 173
WATER DISPENSER - HOT 176
MICROWAVE/CONVECTION OVEN 178
Setting the Clock 179
Cleaning the Microwave/Convection Oven 179
AUTOMATIC APPLIANCE SELECTOR 182
COOKTOP - LP-GAS 182
Cleaning & Care 184
COOKTOP - ALL ELECTRIC (OPT) 184
WALL THERMOSTAT 185
AIR CONDITIONING - ROOF 186
Operations 186
Heat Pump 187
Return Air Filters 188
Auto Temp Start 188
AQUA-HOT 190
Troubleshooting 192
Bay Thermosat 193
Coolant Tank 193
Fuel Filter/Water Separator 194
Aqua-Hot Overall View 195
ELECTRIC BASEBOARD HEATER (OPT) 196
WASHER-DRYER PREPARED 197
WASHER-DRYER 198
Test Procedure 199
Washer-Dryer Maintenance 200
Winterizing the Washer-Dryer 201
DISHWASHER (OPT) 202

APPLIANCES - INTRODUCTION

This section covers operation and care of various appliances found in the motorhome: a refrigerator, cooktop range, microwave, Aqua-Hot, roof air conditioner and optional appliances. These appliances operate on AC or DC current, LP-Gas or a combination of the three.

INFORMATION:
Detailed information with CAUTION or WARNING instructions for the various appliances, other than what is found in this section, can be found in the manufacturer's manuals.

WARNING:
Before entering any type of refueling station turn off all LP-Gas operated appliances. Most LP-Gas appliances used in recreational vehicles are vented to the outside. When parked close to a gasoline pump it is possible for fuel vapors to enter this type of appliance and ignite, resulting in an explosion or fire.

WARNING:
Carbon monoxide gas may cause nausea, fainting or death. Operating an LP-Gas appliance with inadequate ventilation or partial blockage of the flue can result in carbon monoxide poisoning. Do not store flammable liquids such as lighter fluid, gasoline or propane in the outside refrigerator compartment.

NOTE:
Features and options vary with floorplans.

REFRIGERATOR - NORCOLD

The motorhome refrigerant is heated to circulate and vaporize using gravity. To ensure longevity and proper operation of the refrigerator, follow the specific guidelines in the refrigerator manual. With proper care and maintenance, the refrigerator should provide years of trouble-free service.

INFORMATION:
Refer to the refrigerator manual for detailed operating and maintenance instructions.

NOTE:
To reduce the possibility of food spoilage, keep the interior box temperature at or below 54º F. The refrigerator will consume more energy to maintain low temperature, especially in hot, humid climates. Lower temperature may also lead to quicker frost build-up.

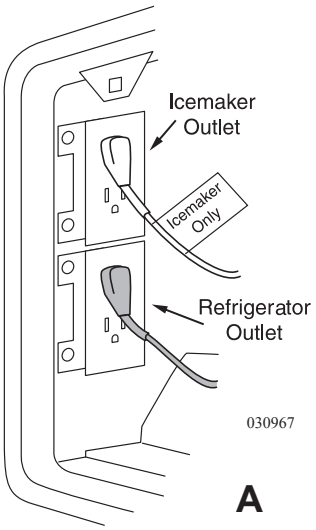
Operation Specifics

- The refrigerator operates from LP-Gas or 120 Volts AC electric.
- DC Voltage must be no higher than 15.4 Volts DC or lower than 10.5 Volts DC.
- AC voltage must be no higher than 132 Volts AC or lower than 108 Volts AC.

CAUTION:
Operate refrigerator only when level. Level the refrigerator, (from front view) within 3º side-to-side and 6º front-to-back, using a torpedo or bulls eye (fence post) level. Place the level on the freezer plate. The level should be within the circle by a half of a bubble. Generally, this is within comfortable living conditions.

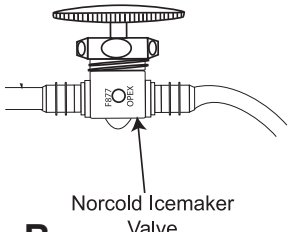
NOTE:
Operating the refrigerator "off level" separates chemicals, causing them to crystallize and block the circulation action of the cooling unit. Damage is cumulative and irreversible.

WARNING:
Do not use the refrigerator if there is an ammonia smell inside or outside of the refrigerator, or if a yellowish substance appears inside or at the outside access compartment. This can be an indication of a refrigerant leak. Contact an authorized repair facility.

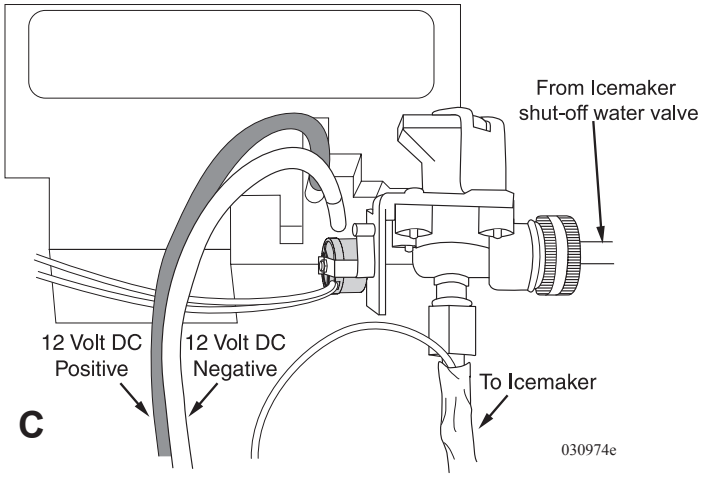


A

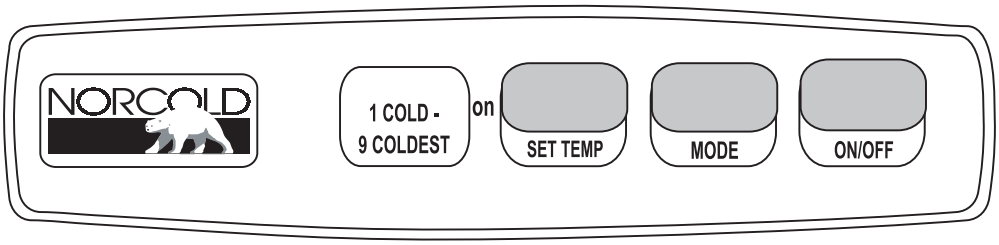
For the refrigerator to operate:
- The house batteries must be fully charged.
- The primary LP-Gas valve must be on, or an AC source must be available.
- **Figure A:** The refrigerator 120 Volt AC cord(s) must be plugged in (located outside behind refrigerator access door).
- **Figure B:** The icemaker shut-off valve, located in the exterior refer access, must be opened if the refrigerator is equipped with an icemaker.
- **Figure C:** If the controls do not light up, check the house batteries charge status or see if the 12 Volt DC wires are plugged into the refrigerator's circuit board (located outside behind refrigerator access door).



B



C



The Refrigerator Control Panel requires 12 Volt DC to operate. 030864

• **ON/OFF** Button - Turns the refrigerator on or off.
- Push the **ON/OFF** button to start the refrigerator in Auto mode.
- Push and hold the **ON/OFF** button for two seconds to shut it off.

• **LED Display** - This screen is used for mode, temperature and fault code display.

• **MODE** Button - Controls the operation mode of the refrigerator.
- Push and hold the **MODE** button to select between Automatic AU, AC or LP operation.

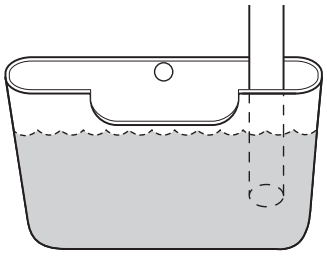
• **SET TEMP** Button - Adjusts the temperature.
- To adjust push and hold the **SET TEMP** button.
- Number "9" is the coldest setting.

Manual Mode:
When one of the two manual modes is selected:
1. **AC** = The refrigerator is operating on AC electric.
2. **LP** = The refrigerator is operating on LP-Gas.

Automatic Mode (AV):
This feature selects AC over LP-Gas operation. If AC discontinues the alarm sounds and the refrigerator switches to LP-Gas operation. If the refrigerator fails to light, the alarm sounds and a code displays.

• Press and hold the **MODE** button until **AU** displays. Release the button.
• Press and hold the **TEMP SET** button until the desired temperature displays. Release button.
• In **AUTO** mode, AU/AC or AU/LP will alternate 3 times when a mode has changed.

If the LP-Gas does not ignite within 30 seconds, the control changes to a different energy source or the gas safety valve closes and “NO” “FL**”** displays. Turn the refrigerator off then back on. If the gas does not ignite after several attempts consult a dealer or authorized Norcold service center.

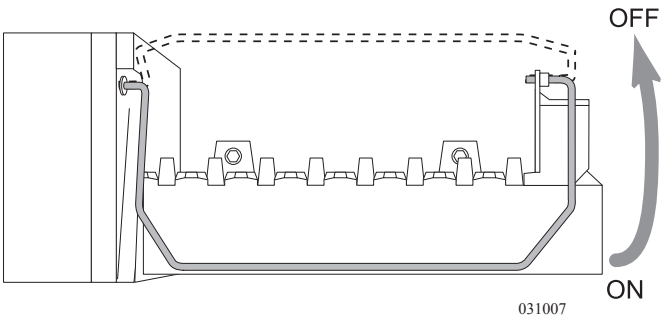


Drip Pan: Located behind the outside access.

Tips:

- Cool items first, if possible, before putting them into the refrigerator.
- Keep the doors shut. Know what you want before opening the doors.
- Allow the refrigerator 24 hours of operation before actual use to help get a "head start" with the refrigeration process.
- A box of open baking soda will help absorb food odors.
- Refrigerator icing can be slowed in high humidity if the end of the drain tube is submersed in drip pan.

Icemaker



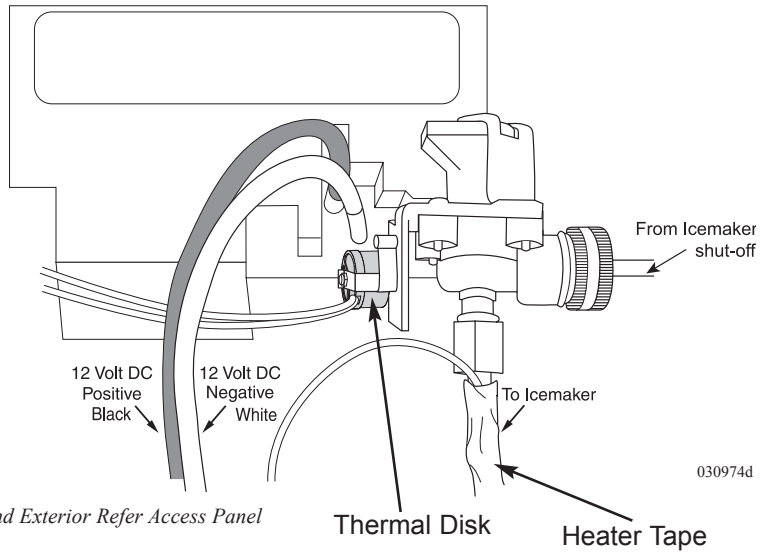
The icemaker requires 120 Volts AC to operate. Only after the freezer reaches freezing temperature will the icemaker function. City water or the water pump must be on and the valve for the water supply line to the icemaker must be on.

- Pull the metal arm (bail) down to turn the icemaker on.
- Push the arm up to turn the icemaker off.

NOTE:
If the icemaker is in operation while the motorhome is in motion, water may spill out of the ice tray. Raise the icemaker arm to stop ice production while in transit. Do not use the first one or two trays of ice if the refrigerator has been in storage. Ice cubes may have contaminates. Do not operate the icemaker without water pressure supplied to the refrigerator as this can damage the icemaker assembly.

Water Line Heater:

A thermal disc supplies voltage to heater tape when ambient temperature is less then 38° F (+/- 4°) and shuts off at temperature greater than 48° F (+/- 5°). The water line heater is only for the line from the solenoid to the icemaker. The line from the icemaker shut-off valve to the water valve is not protected.



Behind Exterior Refer Access Panel

Refrigerator Alarm

The refrigerator uses an audible alarm that will sound for the following reasons:

1. DC or AC voltage is higher or lower than allowed.
2. Refrigerator is set to Auto and 120 Volts AC is discontinued.
3. The refrigerator fails to light on LP-Gas or fails to light after a period of operation.
4. Door is open longer than two minutes.
5. The circuit board detects a failure. The control panel will display a code.

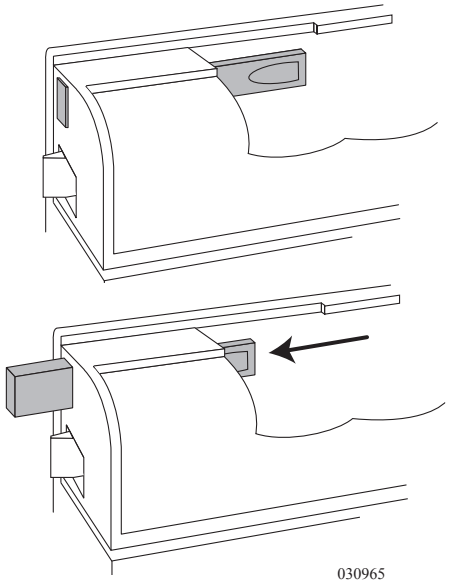
NOTE:
If the alarm sounds, note the code in the LED display and turn the refrigerator off to silence the alarm.

INFORMATION:
Refer to the manufacturer's manual for the list of codes and their meanings.

WARNING:
Make sure all flames are extinguished and the LP-Gas valve is off before refueling. LP-Gas and gasoline are highly flammable which can ignite, resulting in an explosion, fire or death. Many states have passed laws regarding having the LP-Gas valve open while traveling. Know the laws for the particular state in which you are traveling.

Cooling Unit Fans

The cooling unit is equipped with a pair of cooling fans that pass air across the cooling unit. These fans start automatically and are audible when in operation.



Storage Feature

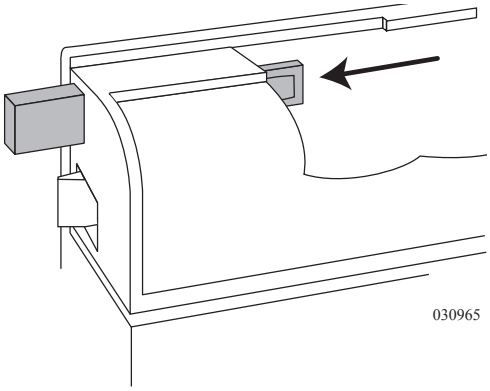
Doors

The refrigerator doors use a positive latch that secures the door with a "click" to prevent the door from opening during travel. The doors use a heating element located in the flapper on the left door. The heating element activates when operating the refrigerator in any mode to help prevent moisture accumulation in high humidity conditions.

In storage, a completely sealed refrigerator is a perfect environment for mold and bacteria to grow. When storing the motorhome, reduce odor from mold and bacteria in the refrigerator by using the door storage feature to lock the doors partially open.

To engage the storage feature, partially open doors and slide tab into the cut-out of the strike plate.

Storage Procedures



Storage Feature:

- Turn the refrigerator off and remove all items. Leave the drip tray under the cooling fins.
- Shorten defrost time by using trays of warm water. Do not use a heating gun, hair dryer or sharp objects to remove frost as these can damage the interior or cooling unit.
- Wash the interior using mild spray cleaners or a solution of liquid dish detergent and warm water. Do not use scouring pads or abrasive cleaners as these can damage the interior finish.
- Rinse with a solution of baking soda and water. Dry with a clean cloth.
- Lock the doors open.

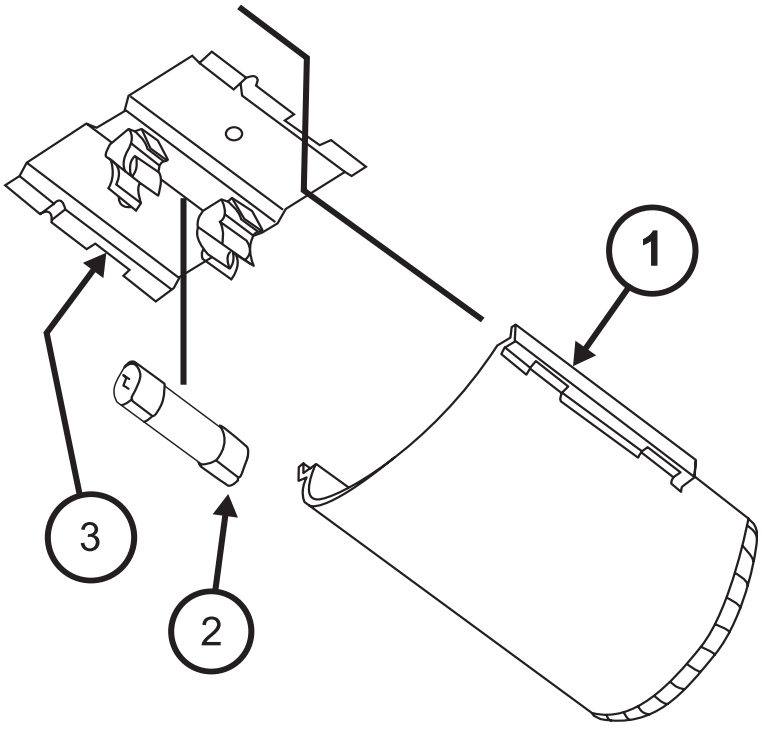
CAUTION:
When defrosting, do not use a hot air blower. Permanent damage could result to plastic parts. Do not use a knife, ice pick or any other sharp instrument to remove ice from the freezer as they can puncture the system.

Interior Light

The interior light is located at the top of the fresh food compartment. When the door is open the light will illuminate.

Bulb Replacement:

1. Remove the light cover by pulling it toward the front of the refrigerator.
2. Remove the light bulb from the holder.
3. Install a GE#214-2 replacement bulb and install the cover.



Service

The LP-Gas function of the refrigerator and LP-Gas pressure will require annual service. Over time, the BTU rating of the flame can change, affecting the refrigerator's performance. Ambient temperature, high humidity and altitude above 5,500 feet can affect performance and function. If possible, switch mode operation to AC while at a higher altitude.

Air in Propane Gas Supply Lines

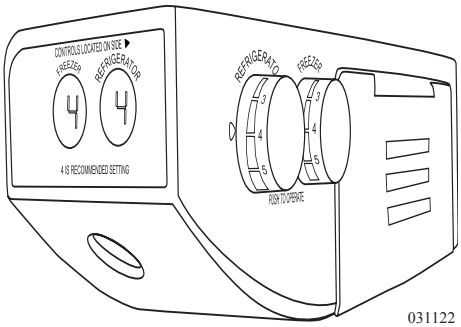
For safety reasons, the refrigerator will attempt to ignite on propane gas within a specified amount of time. When starting the refrigerator for the first time after storage, or after servicing the gas supply system, propane gas supply lines may contain air. Due to the air in the gas supply lines, the refrigerator may not ignite on propane gas within the specified amount of time. Follow the procedure on how to remove air from the LP-Gas supply lines.

To remove the air from the propane gas supply lines:

- Make sure the primary LP-Gas valve and any other necessary valves are open.
- Try lighting the cooktop burners first to quickly purge air from the main distribution line.
- Push the ON/OFF button to turn the refrigerator on.
- Press the MODE button until the refrigerator indicates LP. The refrigerator will start a 30 second trial for ignition during which the gas safety valve opens and the igniter sparks.
- If the refrigerator fails to light, indicated by NO FL (No Flame), turn the refrigerator off then back on and set to LP mode. If after the third attempt the refrigerator fails to light, stop and consult your local dealer or an authorized Norcold Service Center.

REFRIGERATOR - RESIDENTIAL *(Optional)*

The refrigerator operates from shore power, the generator or the inverter. Thermostat controls for the refrigerator and freezer temperature are located inside the refrigerator. There are seven temperature settings for the refrigerator and freezer. The recommended setting is 4. The freezer door has a water dispenser and ice cube dispenser. Ice can be dispensed as crushed or cubed. An infrared sensor prevents dispenser operation with the freezer door open.



Controls

NOTE:
The refrigerator operates using a compressor, not from LP-Gas.

Tips:

- If possible, cool items first before putting them into the refrigerator.
- Keep the doors shut. Think about what you want before opening the doors.
- Allow the refrigerator 24 hours of operation before actual use to help it get a "head start" with the refrigeration process.
- A box of open baking soda will help absorb food odors. Wipe up any spilled soda.
- When dry camping use the inverter to supply AC power to the refrigerator. The refrigerator draws 6.5 Amps AC or 72 Amps DC from the batteries. It is recommended to use the Automatic Generator Start system. Due to the actual state of charge of the batteries, the amount of time the refrigerator will run from the inverter will vary depending on the state of charge of the house batteries.

While Traveling:

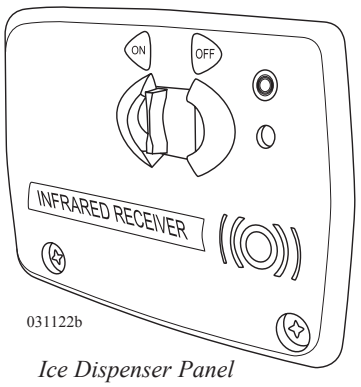
The refrigerator may be operated while the motorhome is traveling in order to keep the refrigerator contents cold. The electrical combination of the engine alternator and the inverter will supply the power necessary to operate the refrigerator on 120 Volts AC.

Refrigerator Operation from Inverter While Traveling:

To enable this feature:

1. Turn the inverter ON.
2. Turn the refrigerator ON.

NOTE:
It is advisable to acquire a refrigerator thermometer. Keep the interior box temperature at or below 54º F to reduce the possibility of food spoilage.



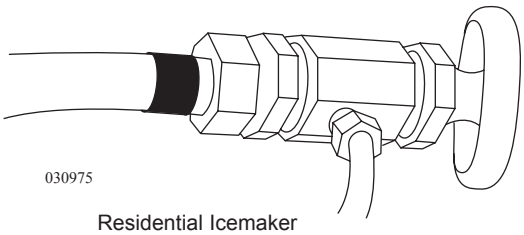
Ice Dispenser Panel

Icemaker:

The icemaker operates on 120 Volts AC and will function only after the freezer reaches freezing temperature. When the freezer door is open, the infrared signal is interrupted and shuts off the ice dispenser.

To Operate the Icemaker:

- Hook to city water or turn on the water pump. The valve for the water supply line to the icemaker must be open. The valve is located in the power cord reel bay.
- Slide the icemaker switch in the freezer compartment to ON. The icemaker sensors will automatically stop ice production.
- Manually turn the icemaker off by sliding the icemaker switch to OFF to prevent water from spilling out of the ice tray while the motorhome is in transit.



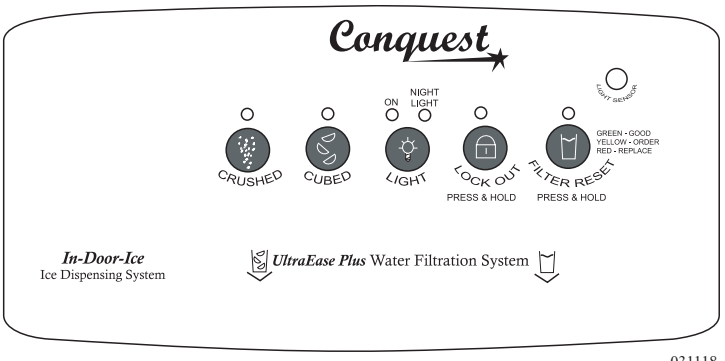
Residential Icemaker
Water Shut-Off Valve

NOTE:
Do not use the first one or two trays of ice if the refrigerator has been in storage. Ice cubes may have contaminates. Do not operate the icemaker without water pressure supplied to the refrigerator. Damage to the icemaker assembly may occur.

Water Filters:

The motorhome uses a 2 stage water filtration system, as well as a built-in water filter for the icemaker. The LED, located on the outside keypad of the refrigerator, indicates when the internal filter should be changed.

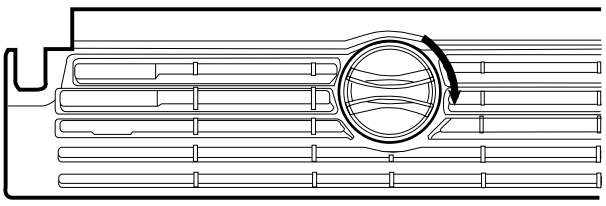
- **Green** = GOOD
- **Yellow** = ORDER
- **Red** = REPLACE



031118

Ice Panel - Conquest

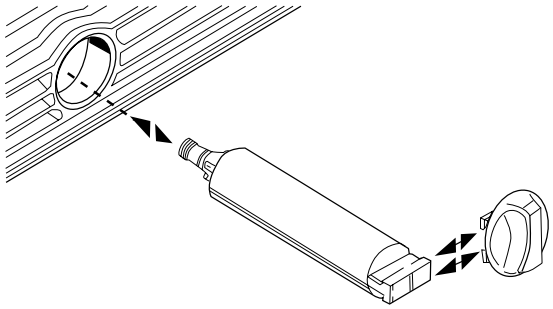
After filter replacement, reset filter indicator lamp by pressing and holding the filter reset button until light turns off. Release button and indicator lamp will stay green.



Lower Grill

To Replace the Filter:

- Turn off water supply to the motorhome.
- Rotate knob (located below freezer door) counterclockwise 90º.
- Remove knob/filter assembly by pulling assembly out and away.
- Remove knob from filter. Do not discard knob.
- Attach knob to end of new filter.
- Insert knob/filter assembly into base. Align knob vertical.
- Push firmly to seat O-rings on filter and rotate knob 90º clockwise.



031115

INFORMATION:

Replacement water filters may be obtained from Whirlpool at 800-442-9991.

Changing the Light Bulbs:

The refrigerator control panel, crisper and freezer light bulbs are 40 watt appliances bulbs. The ice dispenser bulb is 10 watts. Always replace the bulb with the same size, wattage and shape.

Storage:

- Turn the refrigerator off and remove all items. Wipe the interior using only cotton cloth and a mild detergent. Do not use scouring pads, window cleaners or an abrasive cleanser as these can damage the interior finish.
- The refrigerator doors are a magnetic lock and seal type doors. When storing the motorhome, position the doors partially open to help reduce odor from mold and bacteria. A completely closed up refrigerator in storage is a perfect habitat for molds and bacteria to grow.

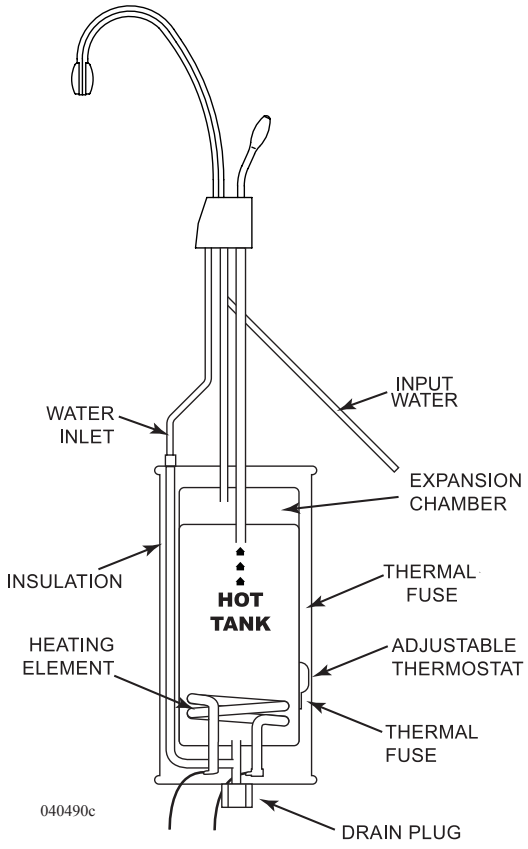
NOTE:

Consult the refrigerator owner's manual for more details.

WATER DISPENSER - HOT

A compact tank, mounted under the sink, uses 120 Volt AC and draws 6.5 amps to electrically heat water to the temperature of 190° F (88° C). A thermostat is installed to maintain the water temperature. The hot water dispenser system is vented to prevent tank pressurization.

WARNING:
To minimize the possibility of fire DO NOT store flammable items such as rags, paper or aerosol cans near the mounted tank. DO NOT store or use gasoline or other flammable vapors and liquids in the vicinity of this unit.



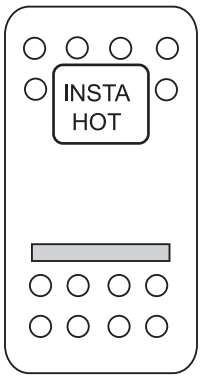
WARNING:
DO NOT remove or alter the thermal safety fuse. If the thermal fuse is open, contact an authorized service center. To prevent electrical shock turn the power switch OFF and disconnect the power cord before removing the access cover to adjust or service the thermostat.

Operation:

Turn the Insta Hot switch to the ON position. It takes approximately 10 to 15 minutes for the water to reach 190° F (88° C). **Use caution: steam or hot water may spurt from the faucet without turning it on.** After 10 to 15 minutes, turn the faucet on for about 20 seconds to release steam that may have built up in the hot water tank. Allow the water in the tank to reheat. Repeat this step one or two times. When a steady stream is dispensed, the hot water is ready for use. To shut off the system, turn the switch to the **OFF** position.

Temperature Adjustment:

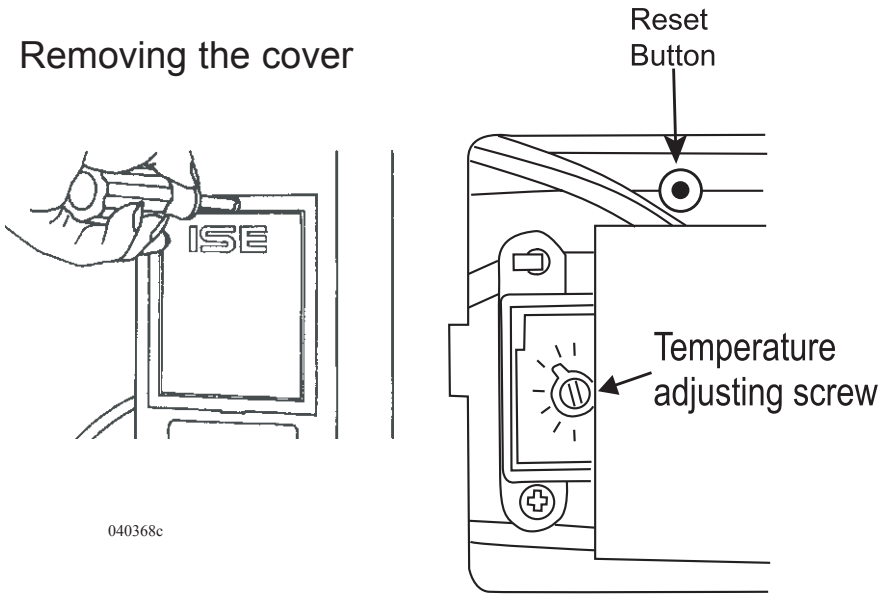
If the steam continues or the water boils, adjust the temperature as follows:



080433c

- Turn the galley switch labeled Insta-Hot to OFF and unplug the power cord.
- Remove the screw and access cover.
- Insert a screwdriver in the slot of the thermostat adjusting screw. Turn the screw clockwise ½ notch to increase the water temperature; counterclockwise ½ notch to decrease the water temperature.
- Reinstall the access cover, reconnect the electric power and turn on the galley switch.
- Draw three or four cups of water and allow unit to reheat.
- Repeat the procedure until desired temperature is reached.

CAUTION:
Do not allow the water to boil.



040368c

Thermal Cut-Out:

Should the Insta-Hot stop or fail to heat water, it may be a result of the thermal cut-out tripping. Open the access panel to reset the thermal cut out button.

Cleaning Hot Water Dispenser:

Use only mild cleaners to clean the dispenser spout and plastic components. Use of cleaning agents containing acids, alkalies and organic solvents will result in the deterioration of plastic components.

Draining the Insta-Hot Tank:

Drain the Insta-Hot tank before storage, or if interior temperature drops below freezing.

To Drain:

- Place a large pan or dish under the tank in the galley under the sink to catch leaks. Note that the Insta-Hot tank holds approximately ¾ gallon.
- Remove the drain plug.

WARNING:
Use care when operating this unit. DO NOT allow children to operate this unit. The tank is a non-pressure tank. DO NOT modify this system. DO NOT close the vent tube or connect other types of faucets or valves to the tank. Use only the faucet supplied. DO NOT allow the water to boil. The water and steam dispensed can instantly cause scalds or burns.

MICROWAVE/CONVECTION OVEN

The microwave/convection oven operates from 120 Volt AC supplied by shore power, the generator or the inverter.

Operation Tips:

- Check the type of cookware being used to see if it is microwave or oven safe depending on the type of cooking being done. Gold paint or glaze may contain a trace amount of gold which is electrically conductive and not compatible for microwave. Hand painted china commonly contains traces of metal.
- The glass tray and roller guide must always be in place during cooking.
- Ensure the door is firmly closed before use.
- If the control pad is not lit, plug another electrical appliance into the same outlet to verify 120 Volt AC power is present. If the test item works, contact an appliance repair facility to have the microwave/ convection oven checked.
- Steam accumulating inside or around the outside of the oven door may occur when the microwave/convection oven is operated under high humidity conditions and in no way indicates a malfunction of the unit. Wipe away steam using a soft cloth.

Microwave/Convection Oven Facts:

One of the most useful documents for the microwave/convection oven is the operations manual, located in the owner's information file box. Read it carefully and keep it for reference.

A properly functioning microwave/convection oven presents no hazard with ordinary use. Safety features should be kept in good condition. Never attempt to bypass safety interlocks or allow debris or residue to accumulate on the door or oven face. If the oven is damaged, discontinue use.

Oven adjustments or repairs should be made by qualified service personnel. Check the microwave/convection oven owner's manual for maintenance tips and other information. Remember to register the microwave/convection oven with the manufacturer.

NOTE:
If the ventilation fan has started automatically from a heated cooktop it can not be manually turned off.

NOTE:
When dry camping, minimize using the inverter to operate the microwave/convection oven due to the high rate of battery consumption.

NOTE:
The microwave/convection oven is for food preparation only. Do not use the microwave/convection oven to dry clothes, newspapers, shoes or other items.

Setting the Clock

To Set Clock:

- Press the **STOP/CLEAR** pad.
- Press the **CLOCK** pad.
- Enter correct time in sequence using the number pads.
- Press the **CLOCK** pad to begin time.

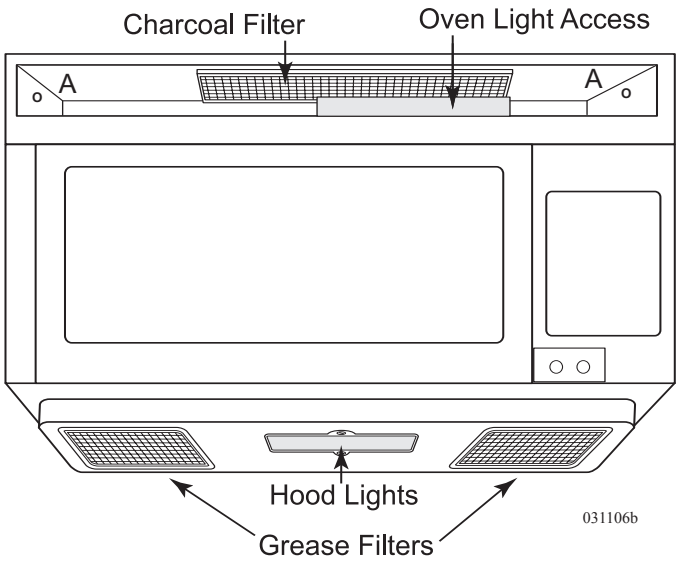
NOTE:
The clock is a 12 hour clock only.

Cleaning the Microwave/Convection Oven

The exterior of the microwave/convection oven is plastic and metal. The interior is metal. Do not clean with scouring pads, harsh or abrasive cleaners, chemical cleaners or petroleum based thinners that can damage the finish. Use mild soap and water with a damp cloth or paper towel to remove stains or spills. When cleaning the touch pad, open the door to prevent accidental operation. Use mild soap and water with a soft cloth. Avoid using excess amounts of water on the touch pad. The turntable plate and oven racks are dishwasher safe.

Charcoal Filter:

Depending on use the charcoal filter should be replaced every 6 to 12 months. Use the following procedure to remove the louvers to replace the charcoal filter and oven light.



1. Remove power to the microwave/convection oven.
2. Remove the screws (A) securing the louver.
3. Insert a flat edge screwdriver over each tab pressing downward and move the louver away from the microwave.
4. Remove and replace the charcoal filter ensuring the filter is positioned on the supporting tabs.
5. Replace louver and mounting screws.

Oven Light:

1. Remove the louver as indicated above.
2. Slide the metal light cover forward and lift upwards.
3. Remove the light bulb and replace only with an equivalent watt bulb. **DO NOT EXCEED 30 WATTS**.
4. Replace light cover, louver and mounting screws.

Hood Light:

1. Remove power to the microwave/convection oven.
2. Remove the screw securing the light cover.
3. Remove the light bulb and replace only with an equivalent watt bulb. **DO NOT EXCEED 30 WATTS.**
4. Close the cover and re-secure with screw.

CAUTION:
Light cover may be hot. Do not touch glass with lamp ON. Never use the light for prolonged periods, such as a night light.

Grease Filters:

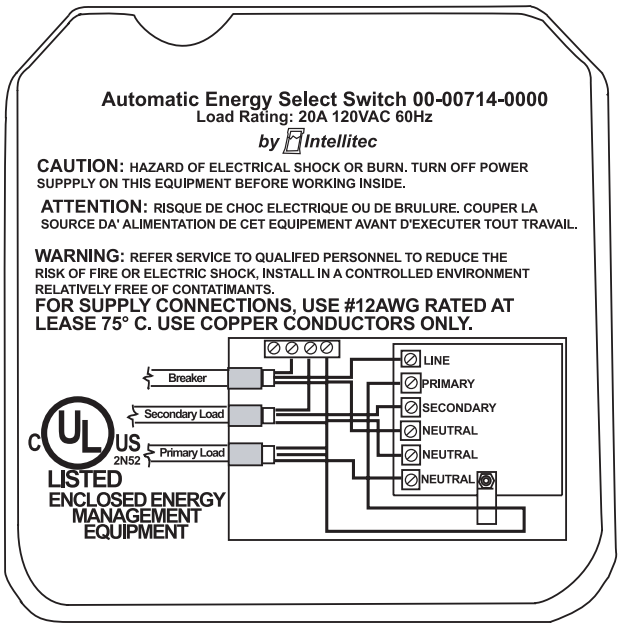
Operating the microwave/convection oven without the grease filters in place can damage the unit. Grease filters should be cleaned at least one a month. To remove the filters, use the pull-tab to slide the filter to the end of the opening and tip down. Soak the filters in the sink or in a dishpan filled with hot water and detergent.

- Do not use ammonia or other alkali-based products that may darken the filter material.
- Agitate the filter. Use a scrub brush to remove caked on grease.
- Rinse the filter thoroughly and shake dry. Place the filter back into the opening, tip upward and slide filter to the end of the opening. Lock in place. Be careful not to kink or warp the filter upon installation.

Cleaning Tips:

- Turn the oven off before cleaning.
- Cover food while cooking to keep food spattering to a minimum.
- Clean up all spills or spatters before they dry. Wipe up food spatters or spilled liquids with a damp cloth. Mild detergent may be used for stubborn spills. Do not use harsh detergent or abrasive cleaner.
- It is occasionally necessary to remove the glass tray for cleaning. Wash the tray in warm, sudsy water or in a dishwasher.
- The roller guide and oven cavity floor should be cleaned regularly to avoid excessive noise. Wipe the bottom surface of the oven with mild detergent water or window cleaner and then dry. The roller guide may be washed in mild sudsy water.
- Food odors may linger inside oven. To help eliminate odors, combine the juice and the peel from one lemon, several whole cloves and 8 oz. of water into a two cup bowl. Place in oven on high power; bring to a boil for several minutes. Let cool in the oven for several minutes.
- Clean the outside oven surface with soap and water. Wipe away any residue using a damp cloth. Dry with a soft cloth. To prevent damage to the operating parts inside the oven, do not allow water to seep into the ventilation openings.
- If the control panel becomes wet, clean with a soft, dry cloth. Do not use harsh detergents or abrasive when cleaning the control panel.

AUTOMATIC APPLIANCE SELECTOR



031108

The Automatic Appliance Selector limits the possibility of shore power overload by allowing only the priority appliance to operate. The system uses automatic switching relays to control AC power to the appliances hooked to Automatic Appliance Selector.

The appliances are listed in the order in which they are controlled by the Automatic Appliance Selector.

Standard:
1. Washer-Dryer
2. Bedroom Roof Air Conditioner

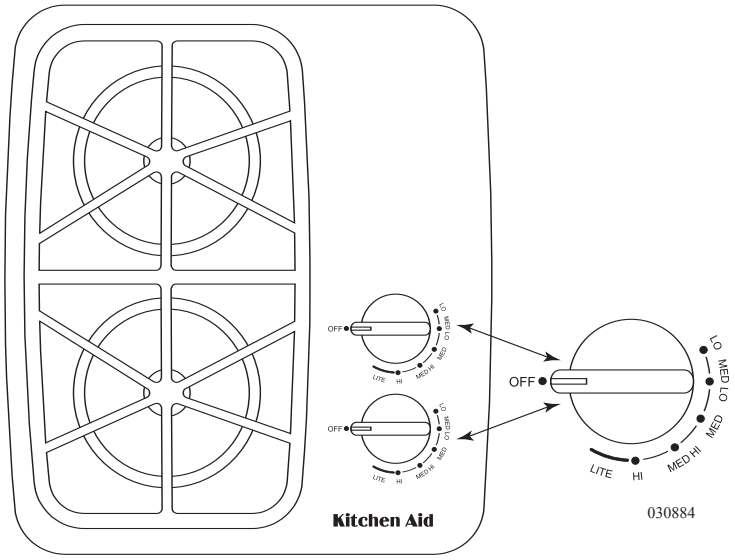
All Electric:
1. 120 Volt AC Cooktop (All Electric)
2. Washer-Dryer
3. Bedroom Roof Air Conditioner

The priority appliance is the cooktop. When the cooktop is operating, the washer-dryer and bedroom roof air conditioner will not operate until the cooktop is turned off. The bedroom roof air conditioner will not operate unless the washer-dryer and cooktop are off. Likewise, the washer-dryer will be automatically turned off if the cooktop is turned on. The bedroom roof air conditioner will be turned off if the washer-dryer is turned on.

NOTE:
Only one of the following can be used at a time: Bedroom A/C, Washer-Dryer, or Cooktop. This is due to the automatic appliance selector limiting the use of appliances according to priority, to prevent electrical overload.

COOKTOP - LP-GAS

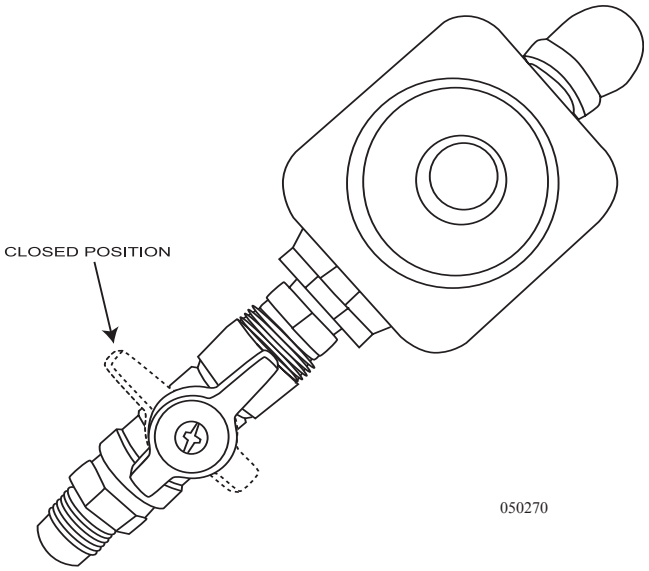
The cooktop uses an electric ignition system that requires 12 Volt DC to operate. The cooktop should be used for cooking purposes only, not as a heating source. When the burner valve is opened the fuel source flows through the valve into the mixture tube. The fuel passes by a hole or venturi in the mixture tube, which draws air in with the fuel for a proper fuel/air ratio. The flame should have a blue appearance with a lighter blue defined flame at the burner head. A yellow flame or yellow flame tips indicate a rich fuel mixture, which can leave a black color or carbon on the bottom of the cookware.



030884

The cooktop operates under the following conditions:

- The battery cut-off switch is on and the batteries are charged.
- The primary LP-Gas valve on the LP tank is open.
- The LP-Gas valve in the cabinet under the cooktop (located next to the regulator) must be open.



Valve (located under cooktop) shown in OPEN position.

Using the Cooktop:

1. Place the cookware on the burner grate over the desired surface burner.
2. Open the burner valve by applying a downward pressure on the knob and rotating counterclockwise from the **OFF** position to **LITE**.
3. When the burner lights, rotate knob to the desired flame setting. In the event of a power outage or igniter failure, the cooktop can be lit manually.

Surface Burners:

Surface burners have an independent heat ratings of 6,000 and 12,000 BTUs. The lower BTU burner (located next to the control knobs) can be used for smaller cookware. The higher BTU burner should be used for larger cookware.

The flames at the surface burners should have an even appearance at the burner base. Uneven flames may indicate the need to clean the burners.

Control Knobs:

- Press down knob and rotate to **LITE** to activate electric spark to light the burner.
- **HI -** Used to start the cooking process and bring liquids to a boil quickly.
- **MED HI -** Used to hold a boil in liquids.
- **MED -** Used for gravy and large quantities of vegetables.
- **MED LO -** Used to keep food cooking at a reduced heat after starting from higher settings.
- **LO -** Used to keep food warm or simmer.

WARNING:

Do not leave burners unattended during cooking. Do not leave burner valve(s) open while burner(s) are not lit. LP-Gas is heavier than air and will settle on the floor and "hide" in corners. If you smell gas, extinguish all open flames. Open all windows and doors. Do not touch any electrical switches. They may cause a spark that can ignite. Evacuate the motorhome and shut off the primary LP-Gas valve. Liquid propane is highly volatile, highly explosive and extremely dangerous. Explosion, fire, property damage, injury or death can result. Contact a qualified service center to have the problem correctly diagnosed and repaired before resuming operation.

Cooktop Tips:

- A yellow flame is an indicator of incorrect fuel/air ratio. Lowered BTU output and carbon build up can occur.
- When cooking at an altitude above 5,000 feet, the flame may change appearance and the flame BTU output will be lowered. Allow extra cooking time.
- Do not allow the tips of the flame to extend beyond pan or pot edge. When this occurs, heat is wasted and possibility of injury increases.
- Cooking time can be reduced if the least amount of liquid is used. The choice of cookware selected can make a big difference.
- Additional information can be found in the "*Cooktop Use and Care Guide*" located in the Information File Box.

Cleaning & Care

Regularly wipe down the cooktop with a soft cloth and a warm detergent solution to keep it clean. Do not clean the cooktop with abrasive or harsh cleaners such as steel wool, bleach, ammonia or oven cleaner.

Use a dry paper towel or cloth to wipe up spatters or spills when the cooktop surface is still slightly warm. To avoid accidental burns, **do not** clean the cooktop when it is hot to touch. Do not allow food to bake on. Clean the surface burner grate and caps using the same guidelines as the cooktop surface.

Porcelain Enamel:

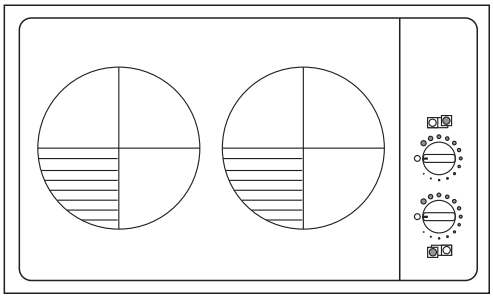
Sharp blows, radical surface temperature changes, etc., will cause enamel to chip or crack. Some foods, such as vinegar, lemon juice, tomatoes and milk, contain acids that can dull the finish of the enamel. To avoid dulling the finish, wipe up the spill before it is baked on. Steel wool and course, gritty cleanser will scratch or mar the surface. Use gentle kitchen cleanser powder or grease cleaner. For further information on care and maintenance of the porcelain, call "*Hopes Cultured Marble Polish*" at 800-325-4026.

COOKTOP - ALL ELECTRIC *(Optional)*

The electric cooktop operates from 120 Volts AC supplied from either shore power or the generator. The washer-dryer and bedroom A/C will not operate until the cooktop is turned off.

To Operate the Cooktop:

- Hook to shore power or start the generator.
- Push down and rotate knob to the desired heat setting.
- Red indicator lamp glows when a knob is on.



030890

NOTE:
Only one of the following can be used at a time: Bedroom A/C, Washer-Dryer, or Cooktop. This is due to the automatic appliance selector limiting the use of appliances according to priority, to prevent electrical overload.

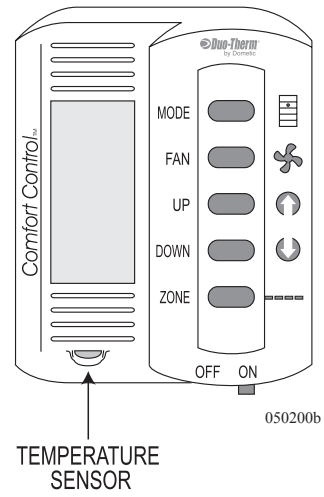
Comfort Controls to operate the **HVAC** (**H**eating, **V**entilation and **Air C**onditioning systems) are located in the living room and in the bedroom.

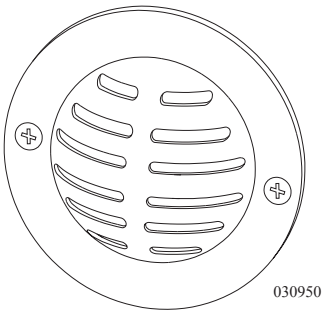
The living room Comfort Control operates the front roof air conditioner functions, and the Aqua-Hot living room heat exchangers. The bedroom Comfort Control operates the rear roof air conditioner, mid-roof air conditioner and the Aqua-hot bathroom and bedroom heat exchangers. Both Comfort Controls use a liquid crystal display to show the current mode status.

The HVAC system provides five different functions: **Off**, **Fan**, **Cool**, **Heat Pump** and **Furnace** that are selected by pressing the **Mode** button.

Fan controls blower speed of the roof air conditioner. Three speeds are available - low, medium and high. Selecting fan speed **Auto** adjusts the fan speed automatically, based on temperature set point and actual temperature in a selected zone. When **Auto Fan** is selected in Cool or Heat mode, blower speed is limited to low or high.

The motorhome is divided into three operating zones: front, middle and rear. The selected Zone will flash. Control individual zone temperatures using the **UP** or **DOWN** buttons.





Remote Temperature Sensor

Living Room = Zone One
Middle = Zone Two
Bedroom = Zone Three

NOTE:
The bedroom is designated Zone One at the Bedroom Comfort Control.

NOTE:
The Comfort Control must be ON to operate any HVAC function. Do not select conflicting modes of operation. One zone cannot be on Cool while another zone is set to Furnace.

NOTE:
The motorhome will not heat or cool faster by selecting a very high or very low temperature setting.

NOTE:
Only one of the following can be used at a time: Bedroom A/C, Washer-Dryer, or Cooktop. This is due to the automatic appliance selector limiting the use of appliances according to priority, to prevent electrical overload.

AIR CONDITIONING - ROOF

The roof air conditioners operate from 120 Volts AC supplied by shore power or the generator. 12 Volt DC is required to operate wall thermostat.

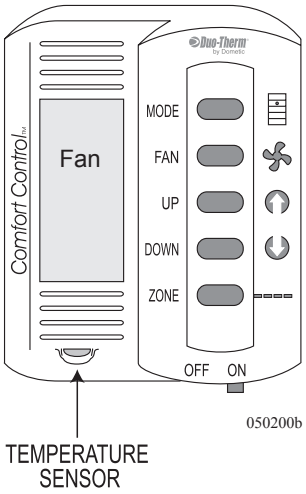
NOTE:
The air conditioning system freezes moisture in the air. It is recommended to set the blower fan speed to high when operating in high humidity.

NOTE:
There are ambient air temperature limitations in Heat Pump mode. The roof air conditioner will not operate in Heat Pump mode with ambient temperatures of 30º F and below.

Operations

The roof air conditioner will operate only when the following needs are met:

- 120 Volts AC, from either shore power or the generator, is supplied.
- The interior house power is **ON** and the house batteries are charged.



Fan Operation:

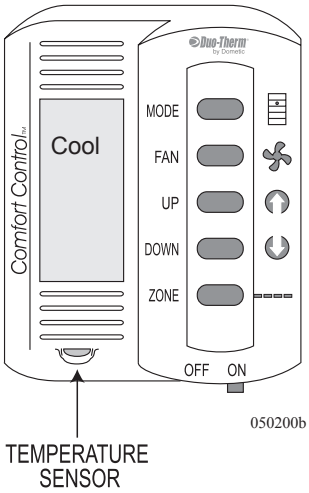
Circulates interior air by using the roof air conditioner blower. The fan speed controls the roof air conditioner blower speed in the following modes: **Fan**, **Cool** or **Heat Pump**.

- Press the **MODE** button repeatedly until **Fan** is displayed.
- Press the **FAN** button to select the desired fan speed.

Air Conditioner Operation:

The living room comfort control operates the front roof air conditioner functions.

- Press the **MODE** button repeatedly until **Cool** is displayed.
- Set desired fan speed by pressing the **FAN** button.
- Set desired cooling temperature by pressing the **UP** or **DOWN** buttons.

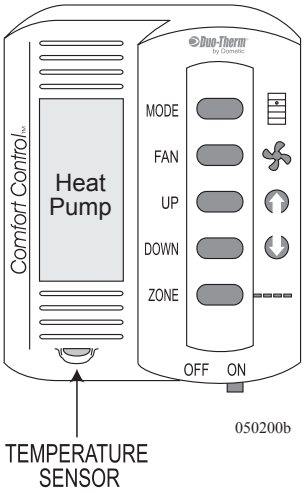


The Bedroom comfort control will operate rear roof air conditioner functions and (if equipped) the center roof air conditioner.

- Press the **MODE** button repeatedly until **Cool** is displayed.
- Press the **ZONE** button to alternate between Zone One and Zone Two. Zone One controls the bedroom roof air conditioner and Zone Two controls the center roof air conditioner.
- Set desired fan speed by pressing the **FAN** button.
- Press the **UP** or **DOWN** buttons to set desired cooling temperature.

NOTE:
The compressor will engage approximately two minutes after blower motor activation. This prevents accidental compressor activation against high pressure.

Heat Pump



Heat Pump mode offers heat by using the air conditioner as a heat source. The air conditioning principle is reversed, supplying heated air to the ceiling registers instead of refrigerated air. There are ambient temperature limitations of the Heat Pump mode.

NOTE:
The roof air conditioner will not operate in Heat Pump mode with ambient temperatures at or below 30º F.

Aux Heat Mode:

The Aqua-Hot needs to be on when the Aux Heat cycle begins. Turn on the Aqua-Hot diesel burner or electric element. The exchanger blowers automatically begin operation in the Auxiliary Heat mode.

If the Heat Pump mode is selected at or below 30° F., or if operating in Heat Pump mode and temperature drops to 30º F., the air conditioner will stop Heat Pump operation and **Aux Heat** will be displayed. The Aqua-Hot will be selected as the auxiliary heat source and will begin operation. The Aqua-hot will remain the primary heat source until ambient temperature rises above 42º F. When ambient temperature is between 30 and 42º F., a defrost cycle is initiated approximately every 40 minutes of compressor operation. The blower motor will stop for five minutes and **Defrost** will be displayed. After the defrost cycle the heat pump operation will resume.

The Aqua-Hot the diesel burner or electric element will need to be turned on. The exchanger blowers will automatically begin operation.

Heat Pump Operation:

- Turn **ON** the interior house power.
- Slide the **ON/OFF** switch to the **ON** position.
- Press the **MODE** button repeatedly until **Heat Pump** is displayed.
- Set desired fan speed by pressing the **FAN** button.
- Press the **UP** or **DOWN** buttons to set desired heating temperature.

Return Air Filters

Frequently clean the return air filters. The filters are located inside the A/C behind the intake vent covers. Access filters by lowering the decorative ceiling panel using a ratchet and a 7/16" socket with an extension. The panel is secured with hinges on the curb side and bolts on the road side. The living room panel is heavy. Remove the two end bolts first. Remove the center bolt while holding panel in place and gently lower panel. The filters are secured in place with screws. Operating the air conditioner without the return air filters in place may plug the evaporator core with dirt and substantially affect the performance of the air conditioner.

NOTE:
To prevent scratching the mirrored surface when accessing filters, place a protective barrier, such as a cotton towel, between the mirrored surface and work area of any tools.

To Clean:

- Wash filters in warm soapy water. Do not use solvents.
- Rinse filters thoroughly with fresh water. Allow them to dry.
- Install filters and secure the intake vent covers.

Auto Temp Start

The Auto Temp Start (ATS) system will automatically engage the generator when interior temperatures rise to a temperature set point programmed into the ATS Control Module to provide 120 Volt AC power to the roof air conditioners. This feature is useful when high temperatures are expected and the motorhome is not hooked to shore power.

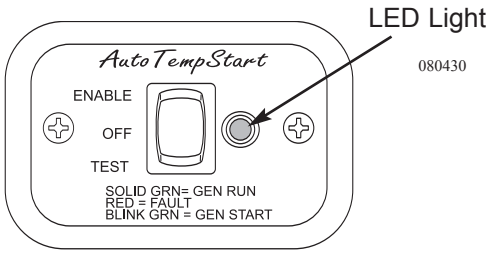
ATS Control Module Features:

- Adjustable temperature start between 65° and 85° F.
- Adjustable generator run time between one and five hours.
- Test button to confirm generator start up.

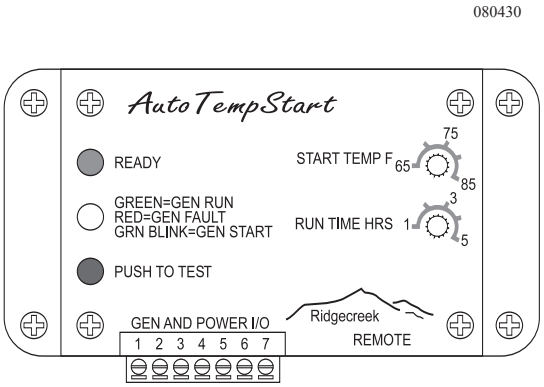
The temperature setting on the ATS Control Module senses interior temperature, and when a preset temperature is reached, the generator engages to operate the roof A/C in order to maintain preferred interior temperature. Time setting on the ATS Control Module determines how long the generator will run before the ATS system disengages the generator.

To Enable the System:

- Set the desired interior temperature on the ATS Control Module. Run time is preset at two hours. Push the ATS remote switch to Enable.
- Turn on interior house power using the battery cut-off switch at the entry door.
- Set Comfort Control mode(s) to Cool. Set the temperature on one Comfort Control identical to the ATS Control Module temperature, and additional A/C Comfort Control settings a few degrees higher. This will permit one air conditioner to maintain desired temperatures, until it becomes necessary for additional A/C units to engage.



ATS Remote located on the Wall Panel.



The control module is located adjacent to inverter.

When interior temperature rises to the preset temperature on the ATS Control Module, the generator will engage to supply 120 Volt AC power to the roof air conditioners. Once the present Run Time is reached, the generator will disengage. In the event that weather conditions have prevented interior temperatures from reaching the desired level, the ATS system will engage the generator for a subsequent timed cycle. This on/off procedure will continue until the interior temperature drops below the ATS Control Module set point, or the system is turned off.

NOTE:
The ATS system does not affect manually starting or stopping the generator or the RC7 GS automatic generator start program.

To Test the System:

The ATS system should be tested after changing settings, or when the motorhome is removed from storage. To test the system, press and hold the switch to the **Test** position on the remote for two seconds, or press and hold the **Test** button on the Control Module for two seconds. The status lamp will flash **green**, and the generator will engage for approximately one minute, to signify that the system is in working order.

Error:

The LED located on the Remote and on the Control Module will illuminate **red** to indicate a system error.

Reset by turning the system to off. Confirm that the **green** power indicator lamp on the Control Module is illuminated. If so, turn the system to **Enable**.

If the error remains, turn the system off. Disconnect the 7-pin connector at the ATS Control Module. Turn the system to **Enable**. Reinstall the 7-pin connector at the ATS Control Module.

If the error indicator still illuminates, test the Control Module. Unplug the remote cable (phone line) at the Control Module. Push and hold the **Test** button. If the generator engages, the problem may lie in the ATS remote. Discontinue ATS system use, and have the system serviced.

AQUA-HOT

Specially designed for use in motorhomes, the Aqua-Hot is an appliance combining a water heater with a furnace. A 50,000 BTU diesel fired burner and a 1650 Watt AC element work to heat a 50/50 solution of antifreeze to approximately 200º F. The heated antifreeze solution circulates through heat exchangers located throughout the motorhome to provide interior heat, as well as an almost endless supply of hot water. An additional pump circulates engine.

CAUTION:
If not properly and thoroughly rinsed, bleach or other concentrated chlorine bearing chemicals can cause failure to the copper tubing inside the Aqua-Hot domestic Water Loop.

The rating for the Aqua-Hot copper tubing is for fresh water and winterizing solutions only. Periodic flushing with common household chemicals, including bleach, has little or no effect on the heating system when properly rinsed with fresh water. Failure of copper tubing, especially soft or flexible copper, may result if materials other than water or winterizing solutions are allowed to reside inside the piping for extended periods as during storage or other periods of non-use. The most common cause for failure is due to an extended exposure to chlorine, solutions containing chlorine (i.e. bleach) or hydrochloric acid.

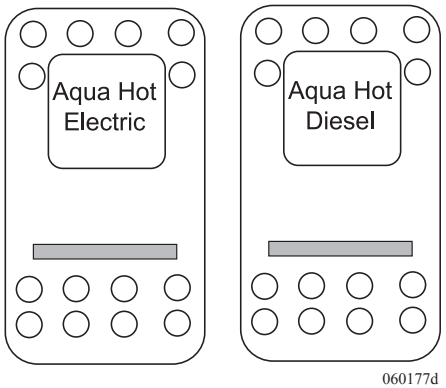
NOTE:
The Aqua-Hot must be turned ON before using any heat feature.

Diesel Burner:

The diesel burner will consume approximately ½ gallon of diesel fuel for each hour of continuous burner operation. The diesel burner is rated at 12 Volt DC/ 65 Watts. Circulating pumps rated at 12 Volt DC/ 12 Watts each. The diesel-fired burner has a fast recovery rate. To heat the Aqua-Hot from the diesel burner, turn the switch to the **ON** position. The switch will illuminate when the Aqua-Hot is on. Allow 20 to 30 minutes for the Aqua-Hot to reach operating temperature before operating heat exchangers or using hot water.

Electric Heat Element:

The electric element works well if plugged into 50 Amp service. When plugging into less than 50 Amp service, exercise care not to overload the electric service provided. When the switch is turned on a relay closes in the 120 Volt AC panel sending power to the electric element in the Aqua-Hot. The rate of recovery of the electric element is slower than the diesel burner. Allow two to three hours for the Aqua-Hot to reach operating temperature when operating from the electric element.



060177d

Interior Heat Exchangers:

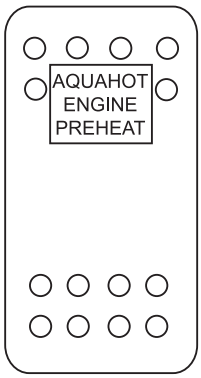
The heat exchangers are small radiators with 12 Volt DC blower motors. Current consumption is approximately ½ Amp per large heat exchanger. The small heat exchanger used in the private bath and the holding tank bay is ¼ Amp.

Engine Preheat:

The Aqua-Hot system has an engine preheat feature to aid engine starting in cold weather. Inside the Aqua-Hot are an engine coolant loop and pump. The Aqua-Hot will heat the engine coolant. The internal engine pump will circulate heated coolant through the engine.

To Use the System:

- Turn the Aqua-Hot Diesel switch, at the kitchen switch panel, to the **ON** position.
- Turn the Aqua-Hot Engine preheat switch, at the center dash console, to the **ON** position to activate the engine pump inside the Aqua-Hot. The time required to preheat the engine varies with ambient temperature. Allow at least three hours of engine pre-heat time.



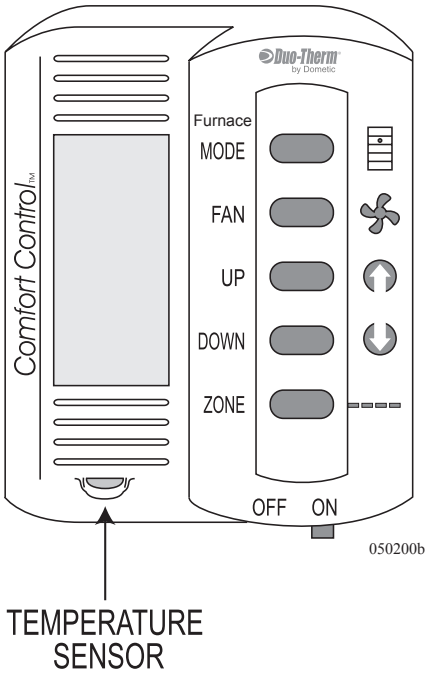
080342b

Engine Heat Exchange System:

When traveling, the water pump on the engine circulates heated engine coolant through the Aqua-Hot. Through convection, heat transfers to the Aqua-Hot coolant, providing hot water and interior heating. Use the Comfort Control to operate the heat exchangers.

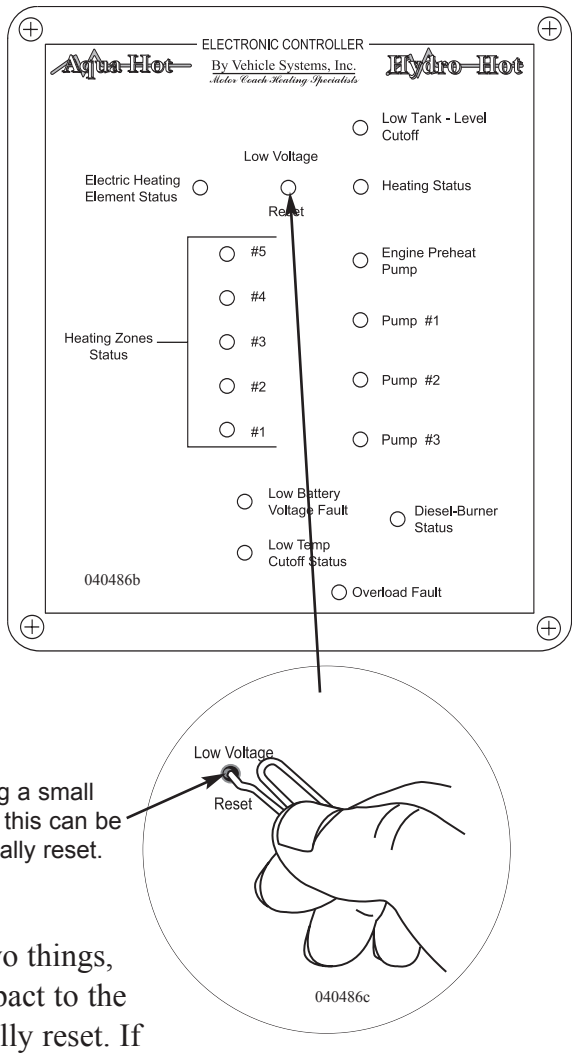
To Use the System:

- Turn on the interior house power.
- Set the Comfort Controls to Furnace.
- Select the desired Zone and Temperature.



050200b

Troubleshooting



If the operating conditions have been met, a heating source is selected and the Aqua-Hot doesn't appear to be working there are some quick checks that can be made to determine the problem. Located in a curb side compartment near the Aqua-Hot unit is the Electronic Controller. Depending on the floor plan this can be a hard panel to view straight on and an indication may be overlooked. A quick glance of the panel can show the fault location. Any **RED** light indicates a fault condition. Understanding the light indications and what they mean are important in diagnosing the system.

The most critical lamp would be the Heating Status **LED**. When this lamp is off no heat is being supplied to the heat tank. A **GREEN** indication means one or both of the heat sources are heating the tank. The heating element indicator is **GREEN** whenever AC Power is being supplied. A **RED** lamp here indicates an overload or a short circuit condition in the DC powered electrical circuits. A service technician should investigate this.

The **LOW TANK LEVEL CUT OFF** lamp indicates one of two things, there is a low liquid level in the heat tank or there was a strong impact to the unit. Whenever this occurs the electronic controller must be manually reset. If the power has been disconnected for an extended period of time this may generate a **LOW TANK LEVEL CUT OFF** indication. Again this would require the electronic controller to be manually reset. This condition could be related to a **LOW BATTERY VOLTAGE FAULT**. If 12 Volts DC drops below 10.5 Volt DC the system will not operate. Once proper operating voltage is restored a **LOW BATTERY VOLTAGE FAULT** will reset automatically. Remember; look to see if a **LOW TANK LEVEL CUT OFF** was generated.

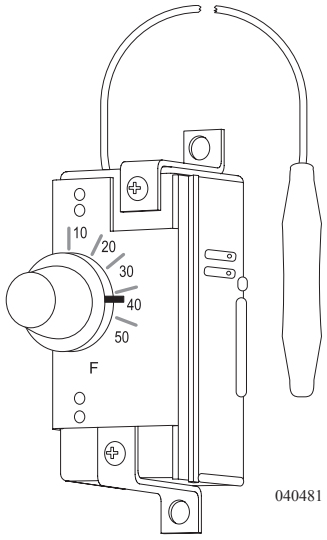
Another indicator that is probably the most misunderstood indication of all is the **LOW TEMPERATURE CUTOFF STATUS**. A **GREEN** indication means heat is available for interior heat. When this lamp is **OFF**, a continuous demand for domestic hot water is being used.

Heating the interior of the motorhome requires the comfort control to be turned on and set to furnace. When there is a call for heat the system will activate the circulation pumps. The fan speed selector switches will have power applied to them and will be audible when turned **ON**.

Bay Thermostat

During cold weather, locate the bay thermostat next to the Plumbing Manifold. This thermostat controls the heat exchanger for the holding tank bay heat. Adjust the thermostat between 40 to 50° F. To help prevent freezing of the water system.

NOTE:
Turn the Aqua-Hot ON when heating the bay.



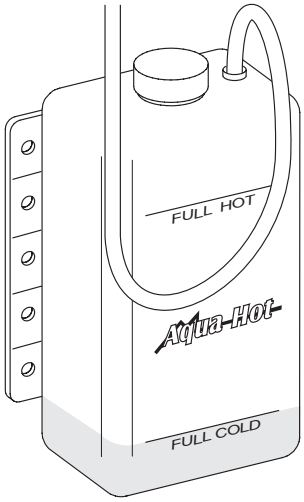
Bay thermostat located next to Plumbing Manifold

Coolant Tank

Monthly:

Check the Aqua-Hot 50/50 solution of water and antifreeze to ensure its proper level. Visually inspect the coolant level in the expansion tank when Aqua-Hot is at operating temperature. Adding solution to the expansion tank when the unit is cold will result in a solution overflow when the Aqua-Hot attains normal operating temperature. The expansion tank is located behind the fuel door.

CAUTION:
Use only a non-toxic propylene glycol based boiler antifreeze. For more information, contact Vehicle Systems at 1-800-685-4298.



Coolant Overflow Tank: Located in the Fuel Bay.

Annually:

Have the Aqua-Hot tuned up yearly. A tune up consists of a fuel nozzle and fuel filter replacement, as well as a thorough cleaning of the combustion chamber. This simple tune up will keep the Aqua-Hot running smoothly throughout the year, as well as allow service personnel to inspect for additional wear of other components. Signs that the Aqua-Hot may need servicing are continuous white exhaust smoke or poor ignition start up. When in operation, the Aqua-Hot should have a smooth, high-pitched whine. Loud growls or other abnormal noise indicate service or repair is required.

CAUTION:
Before cleaning or servicing disconnect all power supplies.

INFORMATION:
For more details about the Aqua-Hot system, see the Owner's Information Packet.

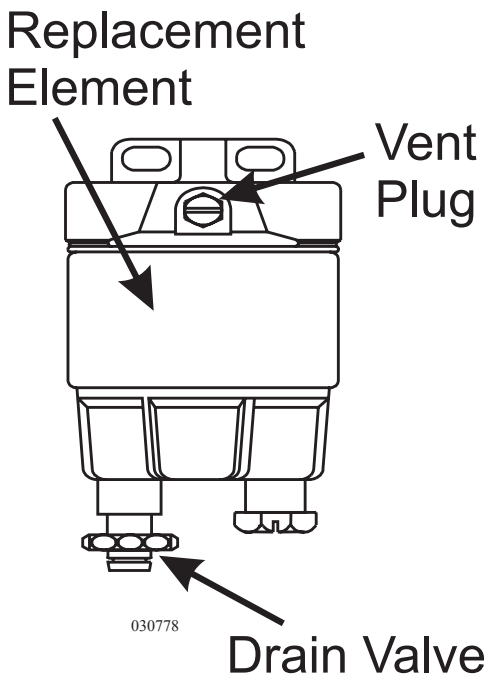
Fuel Filter/Water Separator

Aqua-Hot Fuel Filter:
The filter is located on the curbside of motorhome behind the fuel access door.

Draining the Collection Bowl:
Water is heavier than fuel and will settle to the bottom of a fuel bowl, making it appear different in color. In high humidity environment, check the collection bowl more often. With the engine and the Aqua-Hot off, open the drain to evacuate any contaminant, then close it.

Element Replacement:
Contamination levels in the fuel determine the frequency of element replacement. Fuel flow to the Aqua-Hot becomes restricted as the element gradually plugs up with contaminates, resulting in noticeable heating loss and/or hard starting. If this occurs, change the element as soon as possible.

As a guideline, change the element every 500 hours, annually or at first indication of heat loss, whichever occurs first. Always carry an extra replacement element as one tank of contaminated fuel can plug a fuel filter. Replacement filters must have a 10-micron rating.



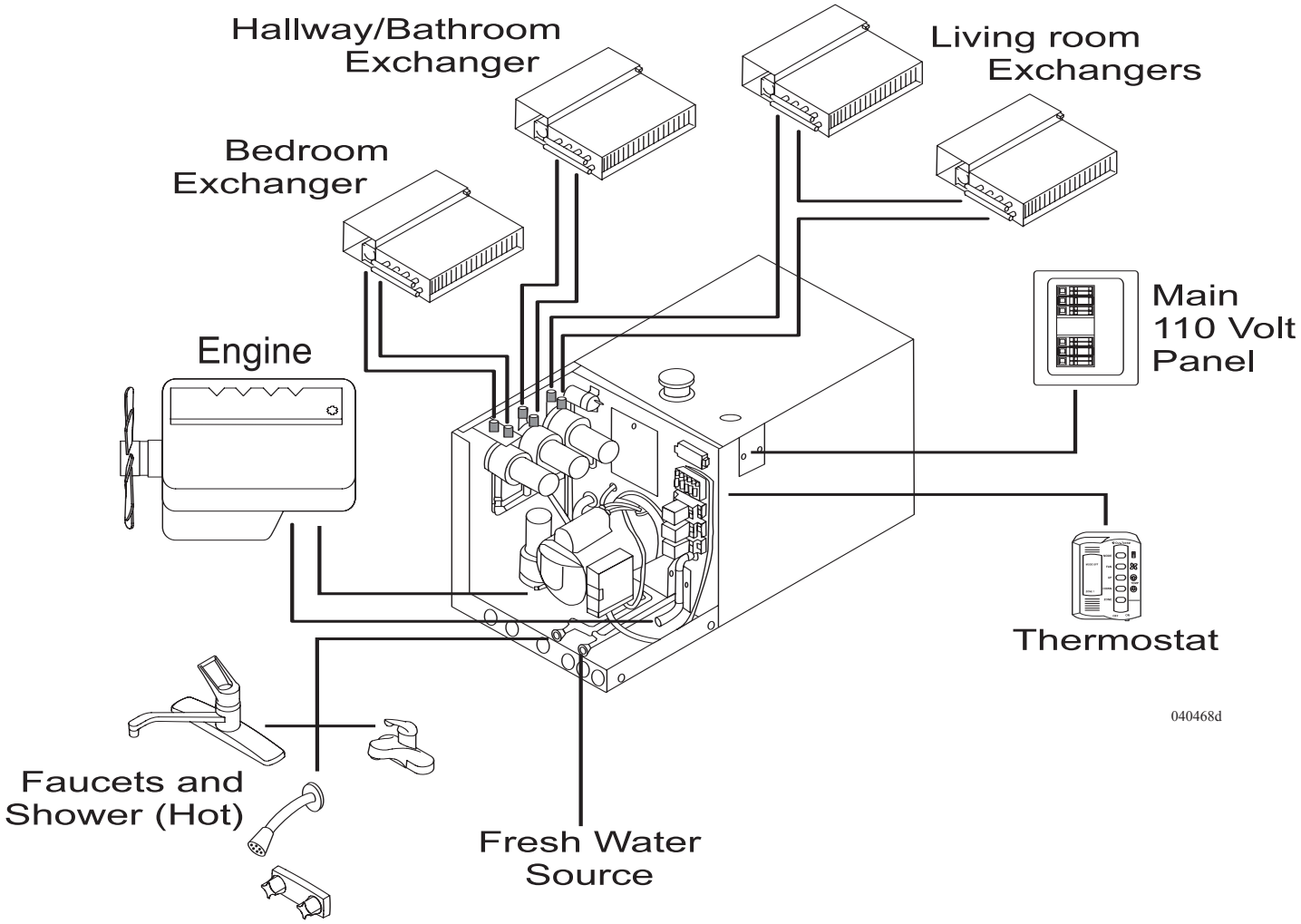
Racor filter - Aqua-Hot R2TRA000T ten micron.

To Replace the Element:
- Open the drain valve to drain the filter unit.
- Spin bowl/element from head and remove element.
- Coat new seals with motor oil and install the new element.
- Prime bowl/element with clean fuel.
- Spin bowl/element onto head and tighten firmly by hand.
- Start Aqua-Hot and check fuel filter for leaks.

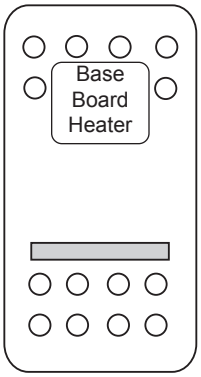
NOTE:
After replacing filter, it ma take several cycles to purge air from system when attempting to start the Aqua-Hot.

General Layout:

An understanding of the general layout of the Aqua-Hot system will help in operating and troubleshooting the system.



ELECTRIC BASEBOARD HEATER *(Optional)*



080433

The baseboard heater operates from 120 Volts AC supplied by shore power or the generator. An adjustable thermostat and remote switch controls the operation of the heater.

To Operate the Heater:

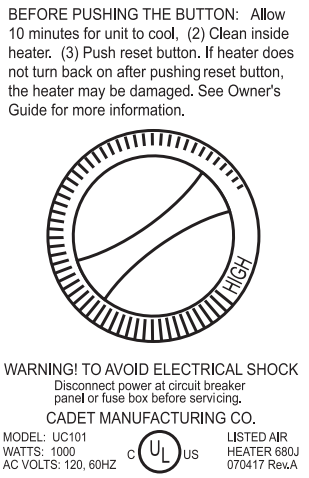
- Hook to shore power or start the generator.
- Adjust thermostat to desired setting.
- Turn on the Heater switch.

NOTE:
The heater is rated at 1000 watts or 8.8 Amps. Use care when hooked to anything less than 50 Amp service.

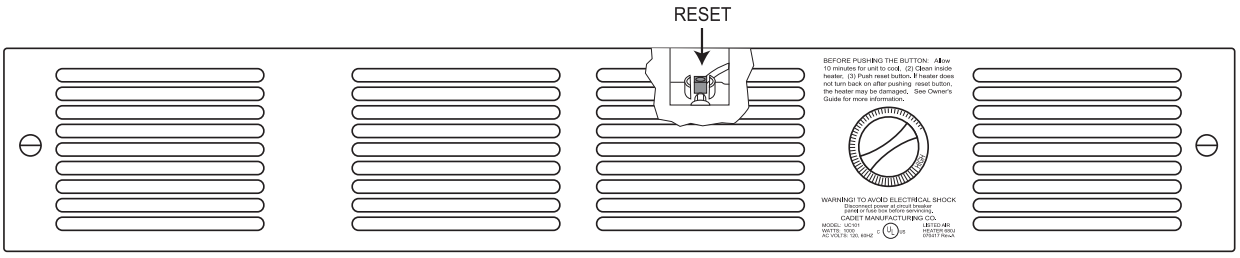
TIP:
If heater operation discontinues or fails to operate, check the power supply. If the heater still does not operate, the Temperature Overload Switch may be tripped.

To Reset the Overload Switch:

- Turn off power supply.
- Remove grille to access the **Overload** switch.
- Using a pencil or small screwdriver, press the red **Reset** button down.



030940



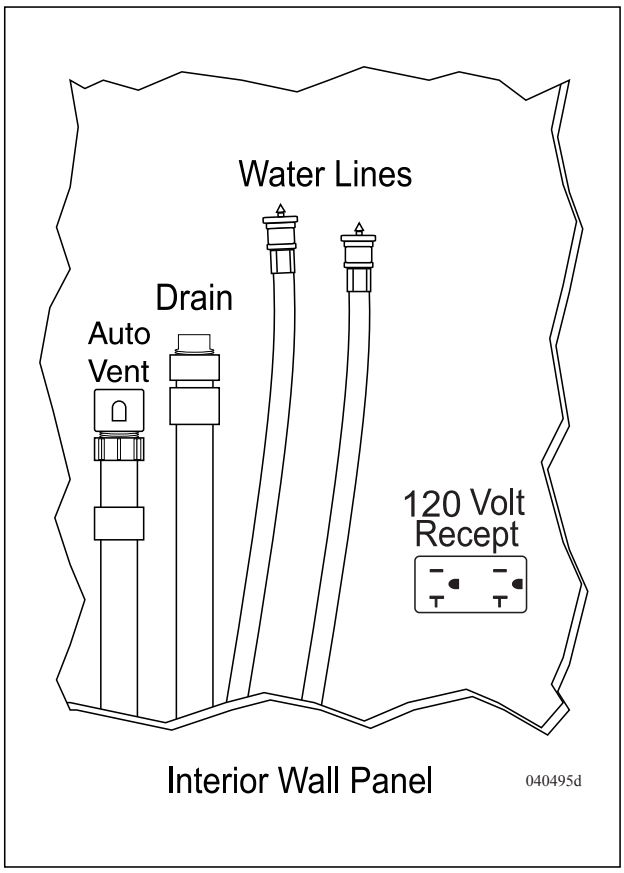
030939

If the motorhome was not ordered with an optional washer-dryer, it will have a washer-dryer preparation package installed from the factory. The washer-dryer "prep" package includes the following items:

1. Color coded water supply lines. A red line for hot; a blue line for cold.
2. A 1½" waste water drain line with threaded cap, P-trap, and an automatic vent cap. This will drain the waste water into the grey water holding tank.
3. A 120 AC Volt receptacle located in the compartment.

NOTE:
Sidewall dryer vents are not part of the prep package. If a sidewall vent is to be installed, properly seal vent to sidewall.

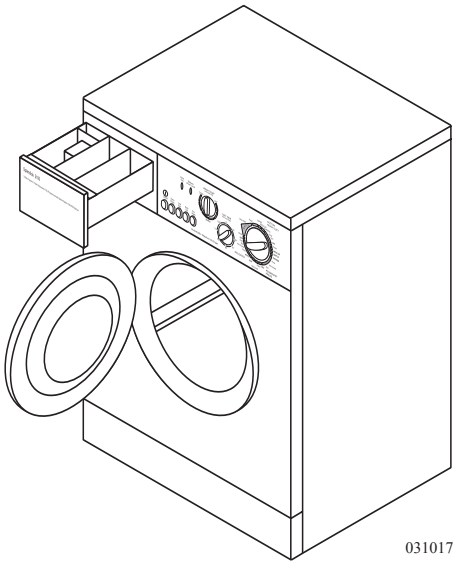
If a washer-dryer is to be installed at a later date, follow all the manufacturer installation instructions. Listed here are further instructions which should be adhered to for safe and reliable operation:



Location of specified parts may vary within wall panel depending on floor plan and model.

- Do not connect the clothes dryer exhaust duct to any other duct, vent or chimney.
- Do not terminate the exhaust duct beneath the motorhome.
- Use proper length fastener when attaching exhaust vent to exterior sidewall. Stainless steel fastener are best suited for this as they will not rust.
- If the cabinet or closet in which a washer-dryer is installed does not have vented louvered doors, the manufacturer's installation instructions may require installation of vented doors or vents to be installed in the doors. This is for sufficient circulation of air.

WASHER-DRYER



The automatic washer-dryer is front loading with an extra large door opening for easier access. Several wash and dry programs are available along with variable water temperature settings.

- Always have the door open when selecting and moving the setting switch. This will keep the contacts from arcing. Then shut the door for operation.
- The washer-dryer operates on 120 Volt AC from shore power or the generator.
- The washer-dryer will use approximately 12 to 20 gallons of water per wash cycle.

NOTE:
Only one of the following can be used at a time: Bedroom A/C, Washer-Dryer, or Cooktop (on all electric models) due to the automatic appliance selector limiting use of appliances according to priority to prevent electrical overload.

INFORMATION:
The washer-dryer has many features. Refer to the manufacturer's manual in the owner's information file for detailed operating instructions.

WARNING:
Open a window or vent while operating the dryer. The washer-dryer can create negative air pressure inside the motorhome that can accumulate Carbon Monoxide or LP-Gas while operating fuel-burning appliances.

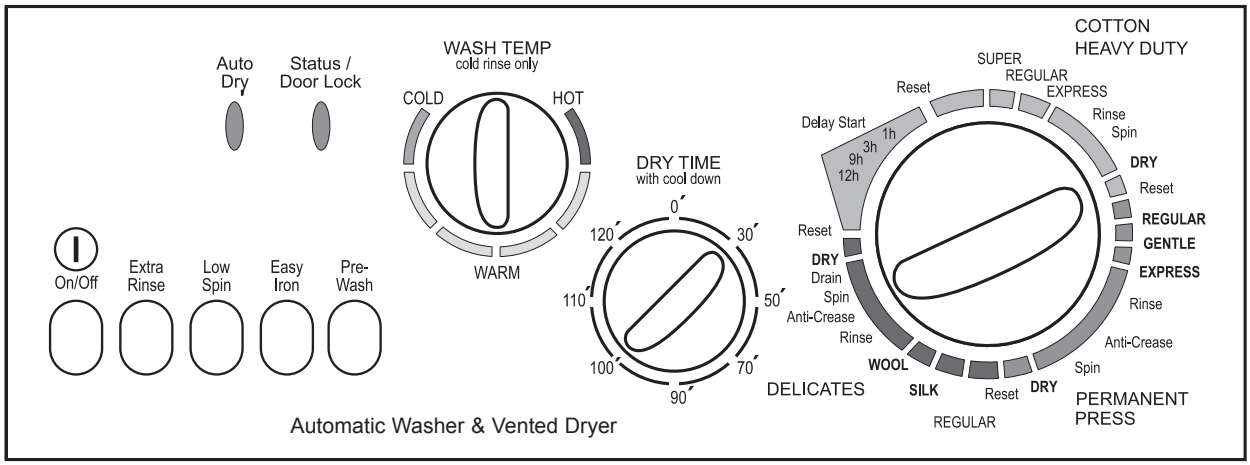
CAUTION:
Do not use the washer-dryer while traveling. Suspension movement, combined with the weight of the drum while in the wash cycle, can damage the internal components of the washer-dryer.

Before using the washer for the first time, after winter storage or a long period of non-use, conduct a simple test procedure to verify that all the hardware and electronic components are functioning. Wipe the interior and exterior of the washer-dryer with a damp cloth to remove dust that has accumulated.

NOTE:
Perform this test before putting the washer-dryer in use for the first time or after the winter months. This will clear the water lines and drum of winterization antifreeze.

Test Procedure Requirements:

- Make sure water lines are secure and water valves are open.
- Hook to city water or turn on the water pump.
- Hook to shore power or start the generator.



031017c

To Conduct the Test Procedure:

1. Set the selector knob to **Reset**.
2. Set the **Dry Timer** knob to 30 minutes. Push the **On/Off** button to **On**. Wait five seconds. The **Auto Dry** light should be on and the **Status** light flashes fast then slow.
3. Set the selector knob to a wash cycle. Set **Wash Temp** knob to **Warm**. Water should flow into washer and the drum should rotate both directions.
4. Set the selector knob to **Reset**. Wait five seconds.
5. Set the selector knob to **Spin**. Water should drain and the drum rotation should speed up.
6. Set the selector knob to **Reset**. Wait five seconds.
7. Set the selector knob to **Dry**. Dryer fan should begin and the drum should rotate both directions.
8. Set the selector knob to **Reset**. Wait five seconds.
9. Set the **Dry Time** knob to zero. The **Auto Dry** light should go off.

10. The door will unlock in two minutes or less. The **Status** light flashes fast then slow. The door should now open.
11. Push the **On/Off** button to **Out** (Off) position. The **Status** light should be off.

WARNING:
Do not wash or dry articles that have previously been cleaned, washed, soaked or spotted with gasoline, dry cleaning solvents or other flammable or vaporous substances that could ignite or explode. Do not add gasoline, dry cleaning solvents or other flammable or explosive substances to the wash water.

CAUTION:
Do not use heat to dry articles containing foam rubber or similar textured, rubber-like materials.

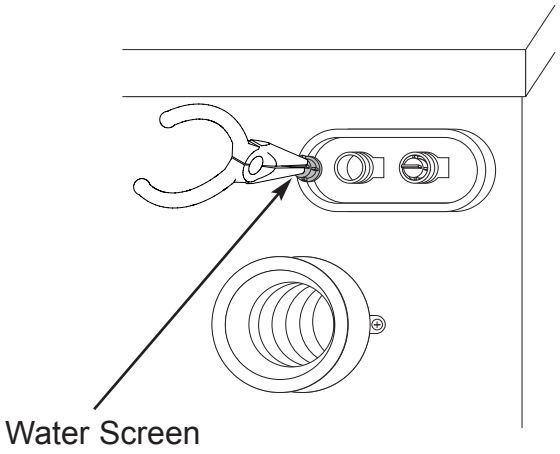
To begin a wash load:
- Sort and pre-treat clothes.
- Add the measured amount of detergent suggested by the package directions (maximum two tablespoons).
- Load the laundry loosely into the washer. Close the washer door.
- Turn the Wash Temperature knob to the desired temperature setting.
- Choose the desired washing cycle option using the Selector knob.
- Load wash tray with detergent.
- Turn the power ON.
- After the cycle is complete, wait two minutes for the door lock to release before attempting to open the door.

Washer-Dryer Maintenance

Occasionally wipe the exterior cabinet of the washer-dryer with a damp cloth or sponge. Wipe dry with a soft cloth. Do not use polish on plastic trim. In areas of hard water, detergent can accumulate in the drum. Obtain a packaged water softener. Add quantity as specified by the manufacturer directly to the drum. Run the washer through a complete cycle using hot water. Repeat the process if necessary. Remove hard water deposits using only cleaners labeled as washer safe. Wipe the inside of the washer-dryer door with a soft cloth to remove moisture. Periodically apply a thin coat of paste wax to the inner door, especially to the area that is immediately next to the door window. This will protect the door finish from laundry spills and discoloration.

If water flow to the washer-dryer is reduced, the Hot and Cold water inlet screens may be clogged. Remove water pressure and undo water lines at the back of the washer-dryer. Use tweezers or pliers to remove screens from fittings. Clean and install screens and water lines. Hook to city water or turn on the water pump. Check for water leaks before using the washer-dryer.

NOTE:
Should the washer-dryer need removal for service, care should be taken as the washer-dryer weighs approximately 170 lbs. Proper accommodations should be made to avoid risk of injury or damage to the cabinetry.



0310176b

Winterizing the Washer-Dryer

To Winterize the Washer Dryer with Air Pressure:

1. Hook an airline (regulated to 45 psi or less) to the water inlet of the motorhome.
2. Rotate Selector knob to a wash position with the Wash Temp setting on Warm. Press the power button to On. Air pressure will clear the Hot and Cold water lines.
3. After water lines are clear, rotate Selector knob to Spin. Allow the pump to drain the drum.
4. Set Selector knob to Reset and Timer to zero. The door will unlock in two minutes or less. Open door and pour in ¼ gallon of RV antifreeze.
5. Set Selector knob to Spin. The pump will prime with antifreeze. Set selector knob to Reset and turn the power off.

To Winterize the Washer Dryer Using RV Antifreeze:

Two methods of introducing antifreeze to the water system can be used. Add antifreeze directly to the water tank or use a separate container of antifreeze with water line hooked to the intake side of the water pump.

1. Turn on the Water Pump. Rotate Selector knob to a wash position with the Wash Temp setting on Warm. Press the power button to On. Allow antifreeze to enter the drum.
2. After water lines are filled with antifreeze, rotate Selector knob to Spin. Allow the pump to drain the drum.
3. Set Selector knob to reset and Timer to zero. The door will unlock in two minutes or less. Turn the power off.
4. Any remaining liquid should contain a sufficient amount of antifreeze to be protected from freezing.

NOTE:
After winter, perform a Test Procedure before washing or drying any laundry to make sure all antifreeze has purged.

DISHWASHER (*Optional)*

The dishwasher requires an averaging of 2.4 gallons for a standard wash cycle. Variable water pressure, specific temperatures (up to 165° F) and a flexible racking system are some of the features.

The dishwasher compartment has the capacity to hold:

7 dinner plates	7 soup bowls
7 place settings of cutlery	7 dessert plates
7 saucers	7 cups

Requirements for Dishwasher Operation:

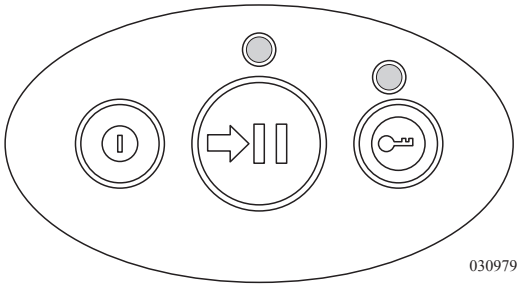
- Power requirement is 120 Volts AC 15 Amp supplied by shore power or the generator.
- Hook to city water or turn on the water pump. Inlet water pressure is 4.3 psi (minimum) to 120 psi (maximum).
- The motorhome must be level.

To Operate the Dishwasher:

1. Remove all scraps of food and load dishes. Wash water comes from the spray arm. As the arm rotates, wash water will be provided to all areas. Care needs to be taken when loading the dishes to ensure there is sufficient space for the water to reach all areas.
2. Located inside the dishwasher dispenser are two compartments; **Pre-wash** and **Main wash**. The Pre-wash markings are in one teaspoon increments. Main wash compartment markings are in two teaspoon increments.

NOTE:
Use only powdered detergent. Liquid and Tablets are not recommended for use. It is highly recommended to regularly use a liquid rinse agent for best drying results. The rinse agent dispenser is located inside the dishwasher holding approximately 1.7 fluid ounces of rinse agent.

3. Press the **Power Button** to turn the dishwasher on and off. If the Power button is pressed in mid cycle, the wash program will end and water will pump out. Opening the door will automatically power up for 30 seconds ONLY.
4. Select the desired wash program. Standard programs are Heavy, Normal, Fast, Delicate and Rinse.


030979

Power Button

030980

5. Ensure the drain filter is flush with the filter plate and the spray arm can easily rotate.
6. Close the dishwasher and press the **START/PAUSE** button to begin wash program. To pause, press the **START/PAUSE** button and wait for three beeps prior to opening. Simply press the **START/PAUSE** button to restart.
7. Six beeps indicates the end of the wash program. The drying fan will continue to run for a set time or until the door is opened.

NOTE:
It is normal for some water to remain in the drain filter area after the wash program is complete.

NOTE:
In the event the dishwasher is operating and a power outage occurs, the dishwasher will stop and may not open at this time. When power is restored, the dishwasher will resume the wash program.

Preparing the Dishwasher for Storage:

If the dishwasher is not used for an extended period, it is recommended to ensure the baskets are empty. Clean and dry the inside compartment. Leave the door ajar to allow air circulation. Shut off both power and water supplies to the dishwasher.

INFORMATION:
For Winterization of Dishwasher, refer to the Dishwasher Manufacturer owner's manual.

NOTES

The Executive 2005

Equipment
Section 5

EQUIPMENT - INTRODUCTION....207
ENTRY STEP....207
Operation....207
Tips....208
Stepwell....209
Stepwell Cover....209
ENTRY DOOR....211
Air Seal....211
Latch Adjustments....212
Screen Door....212
Door Bell....213
KEYLESS ENTRY....214
Keyless Entry Code Programming....215
Key Fob....216
Bay Doors - Unlock....216
SLIDE-OUT OPERATION....217
Main Room Slide-out....218
Bedroom Slide-out....221
Manual Override - Electric Bedroom Slide-out....222
Wardrobe Slide-out....223
Slide-out Cover....223
Window Awnings - Manual Carefree....224
Care & Maintenance - Carefree....225
Storm Precautions....226
Patio Awning - Girard....226
Four-Channel Remote (OPT)....229
Window Awning - Girard (OPT)....229
Door Awning - Girard....229
Care & Maintenance - Girard....230
FANS....230
Exhaust Fan....230
Bathroom Fan....231
PRIVACY DRAPERY ELECTRIC (OPT)....232
POWER SUNVISOR....233
DOOR - SLIDING....233
SEAT CONTROLS....234
Swivel Seats....235
SOFA BED CONVERSION....235
DINETTE BED CONVERSION (OPT)....236
AIR MATTRESS BED....236
Troubleshooting....238
STORAGE - UNDER BED....239
SUPER SLIDE (OPT)....239
POWER SUPER SLIDE (OPT)....240
RADIO-BEDROOM....241
LADDER - REAR....242
CITIZEN BAND (CB) RADIO....243
CELL PHONE ANTENNA....244
KENWOOD RECEIVER-MONITOR....244
Kenwood GPS Navigation....245
ALADDIN™ SYSTEM....246
Operations....246
System Options....248
Compass Calibration....248
SATELLITE RADIO (OPT)....249
TV & ENTERTAINMENT COMPONENTS....249
Television (Front) Lockout Feature....250
Connections - Cable TV, Computer & Telephone....250
Television Inputs....250
Television - Ceiling Mounted (OPT)....250
Antenna Boost....251
TV Antenna....251
Television/Entertainment System - Front....252
Television/Entertainment System - Bedroom....255
SATELLITE SYSTEM (OPT)....256
Satellite Receiver....256
Tracvision System (OPT)....257
Operation....257
“Instant On” Operation....258
In-Motion System (OPT)....259
UNIVERSAL REMOTE....260
BEDROOM PANEL....263

EQUIPMENT - INTRODUCTION

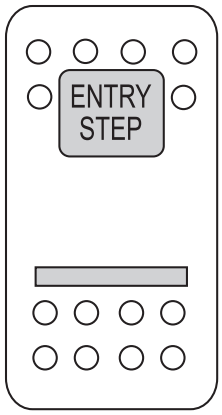
This section covers the basic operation and care of various types of equipment found in the motorhome, most of which are provided for entertainment and comfort. More detailed information about specific equipment may be found in that particular manufacturer's manual. Optional equipment will also be discussed in this section which may not apply to all motorhomes.

INFORMATION:
Detailed information with CAUTION or WARNING instructions for the various electronics, other than what is provided in this section, can be found in the manufacturer's manual.

ENTRY STEP - *Operation*

The entry step includes the exterior electric entry step, which features retractable steps, automatic retraction with the ignition key in the RUN position and a last out feature. Located, just inside the entry door, is the step switch. The switch has a bar light indicator which, when illuminated, indicates the circuit is active.

NOTE:
When dry camping, turn the Entry Step switch off to prevent unnecessary step actuation and draining of the chassis batteries.



080433

Operating the Entry Step:

1. With the entrance door open, turn the step switch on.
2. Close the door. The step should retract and lock in the **IN** position.
3. Open the door. The step should extend and lock in the **OUT** position. The step will retract when the door is closed.
4. The step is equipped with a power switch. When the switch is turned off, the step should remain in the extended position with the door closed. Close the door and turn on the ignition switch. The step will retract for travel.
5. With the power switch off, the step extended, the entrance door closed and the ignition turned on, the ignition override system will engage to automatically retract the step.
6. Turn the ignition off and open the door. The step will extend and lock in the **OUT** position. This is the "last out" feature. When the ignition is on the step will always activate with door movement, regardless of the power switch position.

CAUTION:
High curbs can impede step operation. Use care when parked on side streets.

Tips

If the step fails to operate:

- Verify that the step switch is ON.
- Check the main power supply for the step: a 20 Amp fuse located at the rear run box on the R4 circuit board.
- A magnetic door jam switch is used to control step operation. Use a separate magnet to apply a "trigger" to the door jam switch. Rotate test magnet to align polarity field.
- A 5 Amp ATO blade fuse is used to illuminate the **STEP OUT** dash warning light. The fuse is located at the front run box.

CAUTION:
If the Step Out warning indicator lamp is illuminated while the motorhome is in motion, the entry step is either partially or fully extended. Repair the step as soon as possible to avoid serious damage to the entry step or motorhome.

Lubrication:

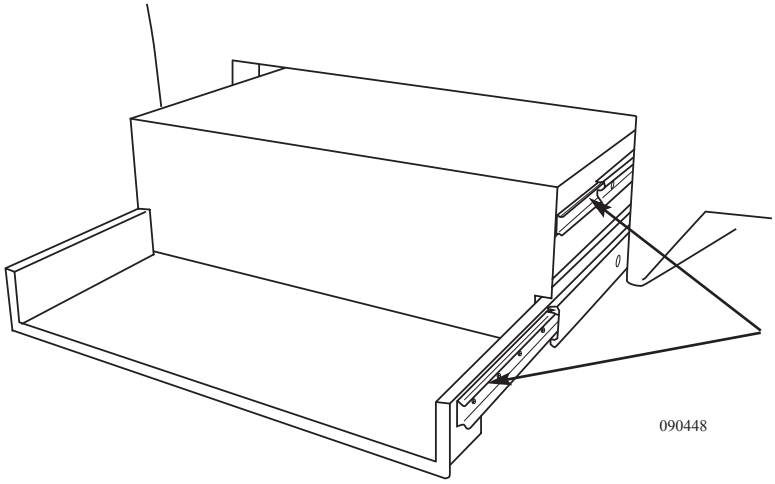
Keeping the step clean is essential for smooth and reliable operation. Before applying a dry spray lubricant or graphite on the slide mechanisms, thoroughly clean the step using a pressure washer or a stiff nylon bristle-brush and automotive detergent. Allow the step to thoroughly dry.

CAUTION:
Keep fingers, clothing and other hardware away from moving components.

NOTE:
Clean and lubricate step more frequently in adverse weather conditions. Mud, snow, road salts and sand quickly breaks down lubricant and corrodes painted surfaces.

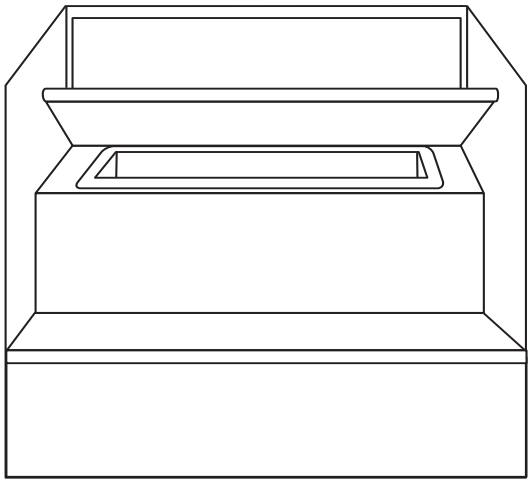
NOTE:
Only use a dry spray lubricant or graphite on the slide mechanisms. Do not use Kwik Lube spray lubricant. The slide mechanisms will become clogged with road grime accumulation.

- Lubricate points with graphite or a dry spray lubricant.
- Work step several times, allowing lubricant to work into surfaces.
- Repeat as necessary.
- Remove excess lubricant.



Stepwell

The stepwell incorporates two small lamps for lighting, a storage compartment with removable tray and a sliding stepwell cover. The uppermost step of the stepwell has a compartment with a removable tray to store frequently used items such as, gloves (for refueling), tire pressure gauge, flashlight or outside slippers.



090344

Stepwell Cover

An electrically operated air valve controls an air cylinder to extend and retract the stepwell cover. The air valve will direct the air pressure to either side of the dual action air cylinder, moving the stepwell cover in or out. The stepwell cover will not operate without sufficient air pressure in the system (approximately 60 psi).

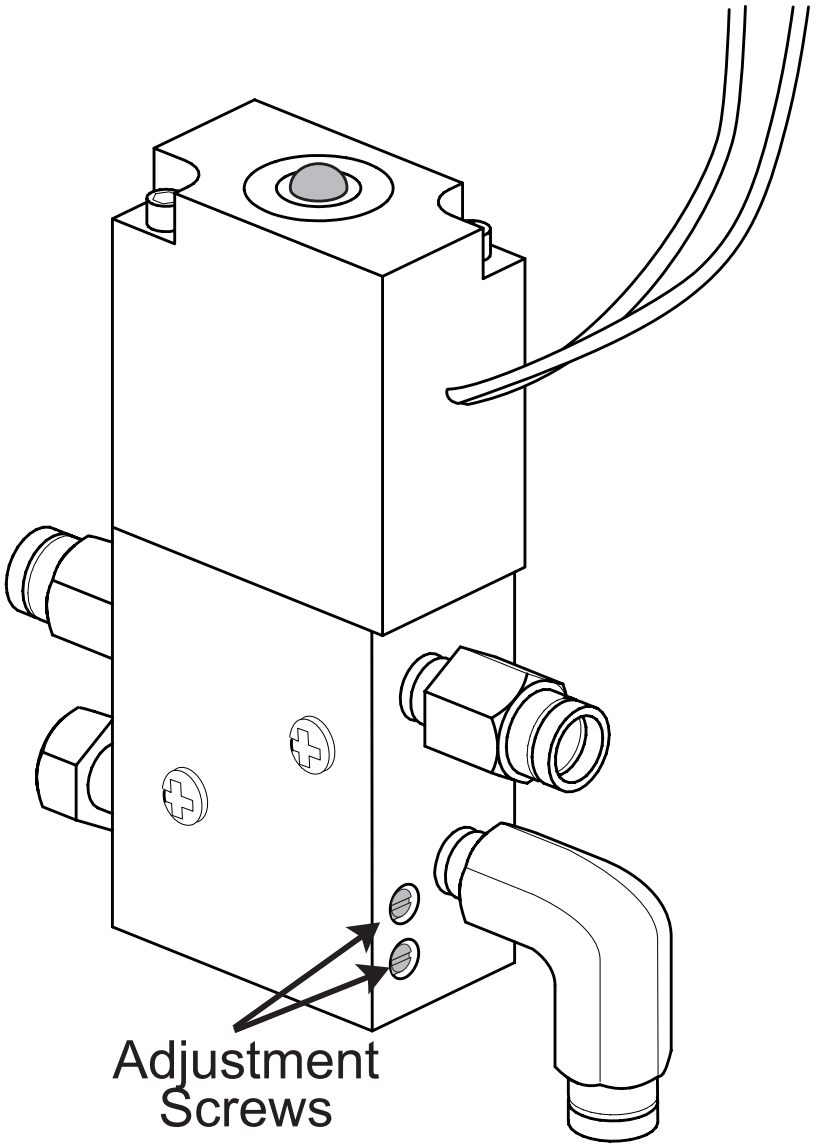
CAUTION:
The stepwell cover is under air pressure. When operating the stepwell cover, make sure there are no pets, shoes or other obstructions in the stepwell area. Do not operate the stepwell cover while standing in the stepwell area.

Adjustments:

The air solenoid is located in the front of the motorhome, behind the generator door mounted to the firewall. The easiest way to identify the location is have someone operate the stepwell cover with the generator door open and listen for the release of air.

The air solenoid has two adjustment screws to regulate air flow to either side of the air cylinder. Adjusting the screws will affect the speed in which the air cylinder moves in or out: Clockwise adjustment to decrease air flow and counterclockwise adjustment to increase air flow. For proper stepwell cover operation it is recommended that adjustments be performed by a qualified service person.

<u>WARNING:</u>
When adjusting the stepwell cover clear the stepwell area of obstructions, pets or persons. Do not adjust the stepwell cover while stepwell area is occupied.



Air Solenoid

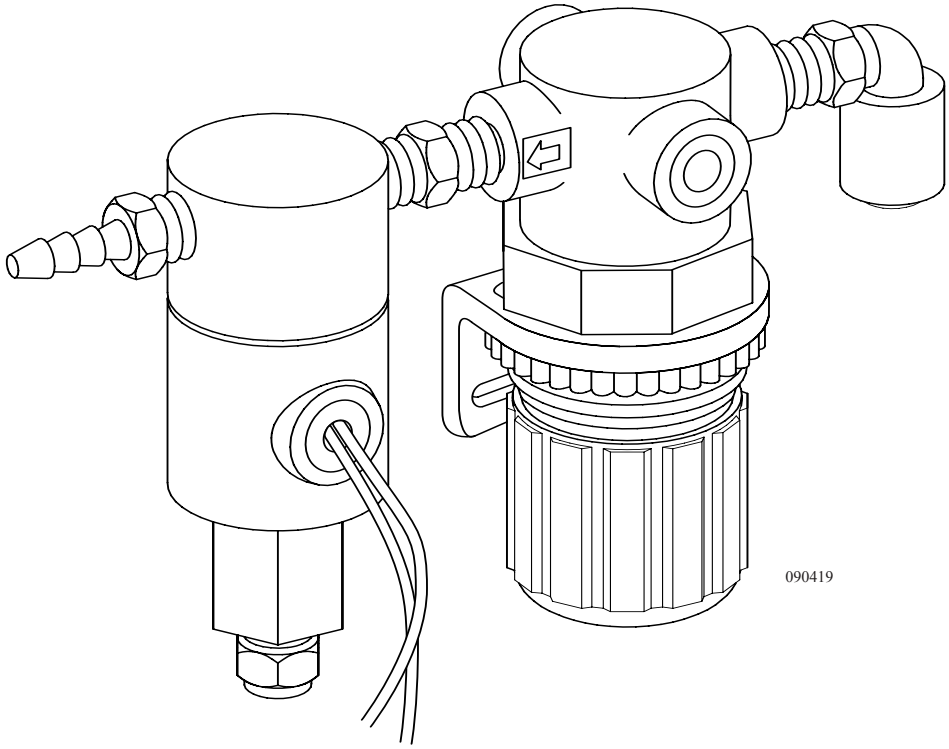
The entry door incorporates three separate seals to eliminate wind noise during travel. The door uses two separate locks for safety and security: the door handle and a dead bolt. The door handle incorporates a primary and secondary latching system used to ensure secure and safe latching. Adjustments can be made to help maintain entry door performance.

Air Seal

The entry door is equipped with a one-piece air seal to reduce wind and road noise.

- The seal automatically inflates when the engine is running and the transmission shift selector is placed in Drive.
- The entry door seal will inflate to approximately 3 to 4 psi.
- The pressure regulator control valve is located behind the front cap on the left side of the generator.
- When the transmission is placed in neutral, the entry door seal will deflate.

CAUTION:
If the pressure regulator should require adjustment, do not exceed 5 psi. Damage to the seal may occur.



Door Seal Regulator

Latch Adjustments

Adjusting the Entry Door Latch:

- Determine which bolt needs adjustment.
- Slowly close the entry door observing the latch and strike bolt alignment. Do not attempt to latch if alignment is off. If the alignment is correct, allow the latch to catch in the first (primary) position only.
- The latch should move to the second position with just slight pressure applied to the entry door. Upper and lower latches should be evenly timed. Press on the entry door to see if there is further movement of the door.
- The handle should operate with little effort to open the entry door. Excessive amounts of pressure indicate the bolts are set too far back.
- With a 5/8" inch box wrench or socket, loosen the movable strike bolt. Make all adjustments in small increments. Tighten the bolt firmly after making adjustments. The bolts should have slight up and down movement for vibration control in travel.
- Test the operation of the dead bolt lock to ensure proper function.
- Apply **silicone** weekly to the entry door rubber gaskets to prevent squeaking while the motorhome is traveling. Use a one inch sponge paint brush, sprayed with silicone, for easy application.

CAUTION:
When operating the entry door ensure the dead bolt latch is fully in the unlock position prior to closing the entry door. Failure to do so can result in damage to the dead bolt and/or entry door.

Screen Door

Changing the Glass in the Screen Door:

- The screen slider is *Lexan* and can be bowed for removal and replacement.
- Replace with new *Lexan* and reverse the procedure.

Adjusting the Screen Door For Up and Down Location:

- Loosen the chrome bolts on the hinge side of the screen door: Four on the top and four on the bottom.
- Slots in the steel hinge allow for up and down movement.
- Eight Allen type screws (four on the top hinge and four on the bottom hinge) adjust the screen door to fit. The hinge should fit tightly to the trim of the door when the screen door is latched and the door is open.

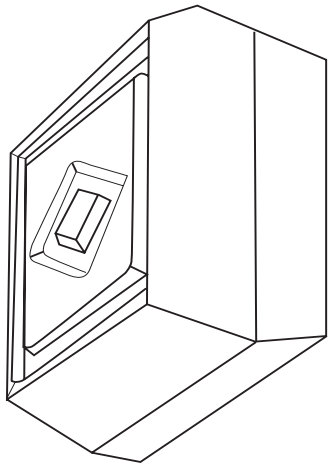
Removing the Screen:

- The top half of the screen door is removable to allow clear viewing through the entry door glass while traveling.
- To remove the top half of the screen door for travel, rotate clips and remove the screen.
- To store the screen for travel, use the clips provided on the bottom half of the screen door.

Door Bell

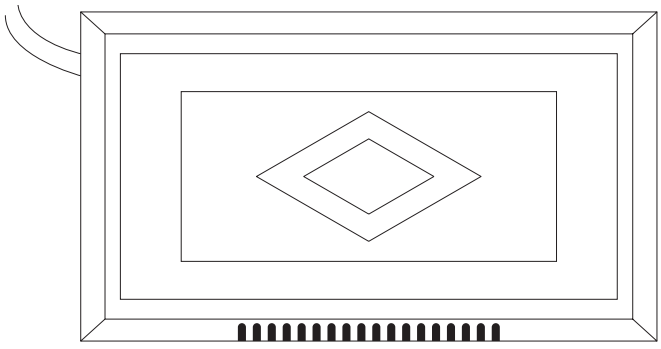
The door bell button is located next to the entry door on the outside of the motorhome.

The two-tone door bell chime is located in the vanity cabinet just under the sink. A momentary switch completes the 12 Volt DC circuit, activating electromagnets to pull a plunger down against a measured resonant metal plate and compress a coil spring. When the electromagnet releases, the spring forces the plunger up against another resonant metal plate with a different tone.

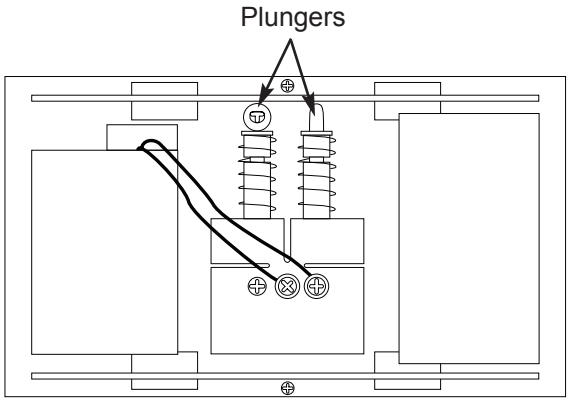


Exterior Door Bell Button

Door bell chime: Located in Vanity Cabinet.



Face-plate. 031081



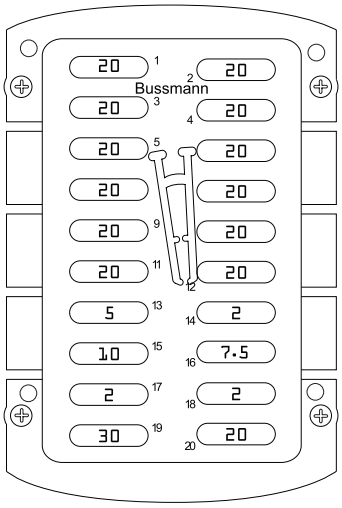
Face-plate removed. 031081b

NOTE:
If the chimes seem sluggish, the plungers can be cleaned with compressed air. Never oil chime plungers.

If the chime fails to work, check the 20 Amp fuse in the bedroom domestic fuse panel. If the fuse immediately blows again, there may be a short in that circuit, and consulting a technician is recommended.

Items on the circuit include:

- Hall Lights
- Bath Ceiling Light
- Vanity Lights
- Door Bell
- Baseboard Heater (Optional)



060232

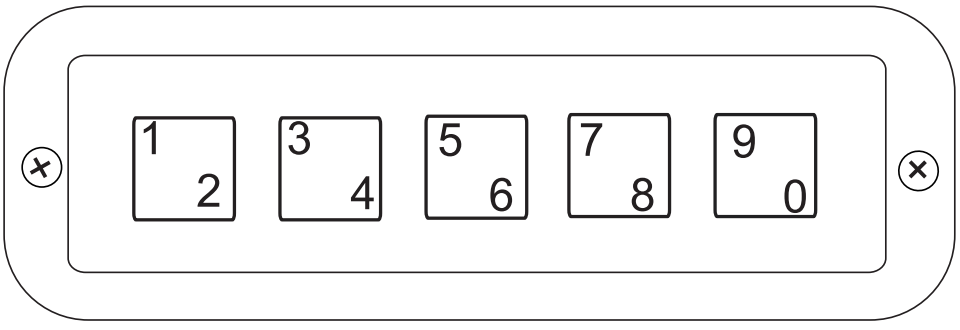
Bedroom Domestic Fuse Panel

KEYLESS ENTRY

Entry and bay door locks can be operated using the touch keypad located adjacent to the entry door. Three lock codes are pre-assigned and are unavailable for future use as unlock codes.

- **555 -** Locks entry door and bay doors if connected.
- **557 -** Locks entry door and bay doors if connected.
- **559 -** Locks entry door and bay doors if connected and arms keypad (flashes momentarily once every 15 seconds).

NOTE:
Due to preassigned codes, number(s) 5/6 cannot be used at the beginning of a new unlock code.



030883B

Unlock codes should be personalized upon receiving the motorhome. Unlock codes have two categories: **Master** and **Optional codes**. Master code enables motorhome entry and auxiliary control. Deleting, adding or changing of Optional codes are performed at the Master code level.

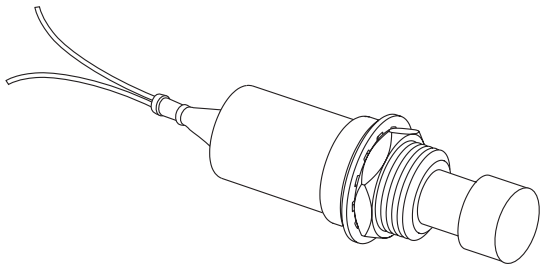
INFORMATION:
Consult the system owner's manual for further information.

- To lock: Shut the door. Enter one of the three lock codes to lock the entry door and bay doors, if connected.
- To unlock: Enter Factory Default Master code or a three to eight digit personalized Unlock code, if programmed.

Keyless Entry Code Programming

All motorhomes equipped with the keyless entry are shipped from the factory with default settings. It is recommended the unlock code be personalized for security purposes.

To Program a Personal Number:

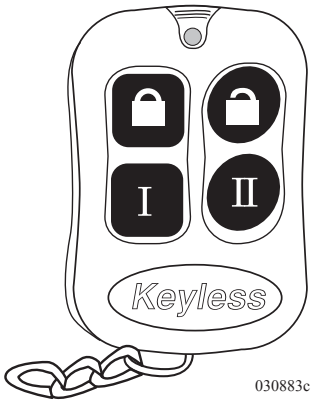

030907

1. Located under the co-pilot cup holder is the Programming Switch, identified by a small black button with 22-gauge wires connected: **Yellow** is power - **Black** is ground.
2. Press the Programming Switch until four (4) rapid beeps are audible.
3. To open the memory for accepting the personalized Master Code, enter **1119** on the keypad at the entry door.
4. Enter the new 3 to 8 digit master unlock code within five seconds.
5. Wait five seconds for two (2) rapid beeps.
6. Test the new Unlock Code.
7. If the code was not accepted, repeat the procedure.

WARNING:
Ensure possession of entry door keys prior to testing new personal code.

NOTE:
These instructions are for motorhomes equipped with "keyless entry" only.

Key Fob



030883c

Keyless Entry Key Fob:

The motorhome is equipped with a Key Fob to unlock and lock the entry door and the bay doors.

- Upper left button on the Key Fob is used to lock the entry door.
- Upper right button is used to unlock the entry door.
- Bottom left button is used to unlock and lock the bay doors.
- Bottom right button is not assigned.

NOTE:
The key fob operation distance is approximately within 50 feet of the motorhome. If the door locking mechanism is not audible, the marker lights will flash when the doors are unlocked or locked.

NOTE:
During any service work, it is recommended all key fobs be left with the motorhome for thorough testing and check procedure.

If a Key Fob fails to respond, confirm battery power. If the battery has power, the Key Fob may need to be authorized.

To Authorize a Key Fob:

- Locate the keyless entry receiver box behind the instrument cluster.
- Turn the ignition switch to the **ON** position.
- Locate the program button (red).
- Situate Key Fobs within reach.
- Hold down the program button for five (5) seconds.
- While holding down the program button, press the Lock button on the Fob.
- Release the program button.
- Turn the ignition switch off.
- Test the remote Key Fob.
- Repeat the above steps for additional Key Fobs.

NOTE:
If the motorhome is factory equipped with an optional security system, the security system remote will lock or unlock the entry door and bay doors when the system is armed or disarmed. However, if the entry door is locked and armed with the security Key Fob, it must be unlocked with the security Key Fob to disarm the security system. Using the keypad to unlock will not disarm the system.

Bay Doors - Unlock

The keyless entry system can be used to unlock selected bay doors.

To unlock the bay doors using the keyless entry system:

- Enter the programmed **unlock** code. The entry door will unlock.
- Within five seconds of the first sequence of numbers entered, press the number **9**.

SLIDE-OUT OPERATION

Slide-out rooms operate by electric switches controlling hydraulic cylinders. Slide-out room operation uses safety features to prevent mechanical damage or physical harm. Slide-out room(s) will not operate until all safety requirements are met.

Guidelines to ensure long life of Slide-out system:

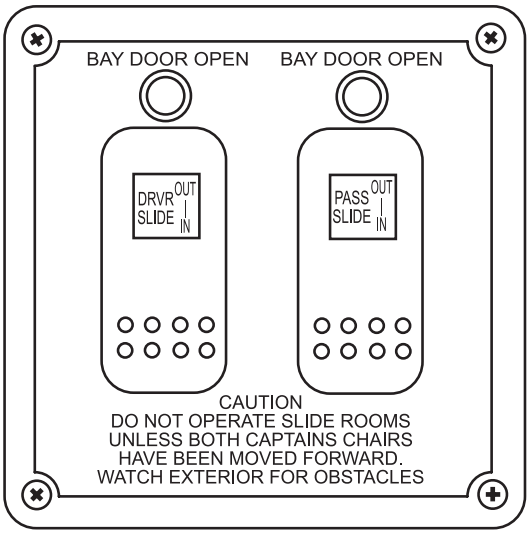
- **Inspect** the roof of the Slide-out for debris such as pine needles, dirt, leaves, sticks, etc. Any debris left on the top may cause damage to the seals during retraction. If debris is present, wash with soap and water, then rinse.
- When the room is out, visually **inspect** the wipe seal for dirt or other foreign material and for tears.
- In the event the Slide-out room leaks, fully retract the room. If necessary, tape the exterior opening closed with duct tape until repairs to the motorhome can be completed.
- Open a window or vent to equalize pressure during Slide-out operation.

NOTE:
Do not use petroleum based products on the Slide-out seal. Petroleum based products can damage the paint and will cause premature aging of the rubber seal.

WARNING:
Move the driver seat forward before activating the Slide-out room. The outside area must be clear of obstructions that can restrict Slide-out room operation. Ensure there is five or more feet of clear space outside the Slide-out room prior to extending the room or damage to the Slide-out, the motorhome or property can occur. When retracting the Slide-out room, ensure there is sufficient clearance inside the motorhome. Never move the motorhome with any Slide-out room extended.

CAUTION:
Continuous operation of the Slide-out room can drain the batteries and damage the motor by overheating.

Main Room Slide-out



060194c

To Extend the Slide-out Room:

- Move the driver seat forward.
- Confirm that there is enough clearance outside the motorhome for the Slide-out room to extend.
- Ensure the ignition key is in the **OFF** position.
- The park brake must be applied.
- Storage bay doors under the Slide-out must be closed.
- Confirm the house batteries are fully charged.
- Ensure all people, pets and objects are clear of the Slide-out room path.
- The control switch for the Slide-out room is at the overhead compartment on the curbside of the motorhome.
- Press and hold the Slide-out room switch in the **OUT** position. Release the switch to stop room movement.
- Release the Slide-out switch when the room is fully extended (a change in motor sound indicates extension). The Slide-out drive motor will not stop automatically; the switch must be released.

NOTE:
Perform the Slide-out room operation with the air suspension system full. Extensive damage could occur to the Slide-out room and awning when extending the Slide-out room in snow, sleet, ice or freezing rain. In such conditions, if the Slide-out room is extended, clear the awning and ensure free movement prior to operating the Slide-out room.

CAUTION:
Dirt and grit trapped under the Slide-out room could result in damage to the floor. Continuous operation of the Slide-out could cause a drain on the house batteries and damage to the Slide-out motor by overheating.

To Retract the Slide-out Room:

- Check for sufficient clearance inside the motorhome before retracting the Slide-out room.
- Clean the floor to ensure there is no dirt or grit that could result in floor damage during operation.
- Move the driver seat forward.
- Inspect the exterior to ensure all bay doors are closed and there are no sags in the awning material.
- Remove any debris from the top of the Slide-out room.
- Prior to retracting the Slide-out room, start the motorhome. Allow the air bags to fully inflate to normal travel height.
- Retract the leveling system or prepare the air leveling system for travel prior to operating the Slide-out.
- Turn the ignition switch **OFF**. The Slide-out room will not operate with the engine running.

- Confirm the house batteries are fully charged.
- The park brake must be applied.
- Ensure all people, pets and objects are clear of the Slide-out room path.
- Press and hold the switch in the **IN** position. The Slide-out room will move slowly in. The motor will change tone when the Slide-out room is fully retracted.
- Release the switch.

NOTE:
Be sure you have sufficient clearance on the inside of the motorhome (driver seat, etc.) before you retract the Slide-out room. If the motorhome has a ceramic tile floor ensure the floor is clean before you retract the Slide-out room. Trapped dirt or grit under the Slide-out room can scratch the floor surface. Never move the motorhome with the Slide-out room extended.

CAUTION:
Rain water can pool on the Slide-out awning. The added weight will cause the awning to sag. Upon retracting the room, material can become caught in between the top of slide room and the opening in the motorhome. It will be necessary to retract the room in small increments allowing the water time to run off.

Manual Override Hydraulic - Emergency Procedures:

If the Slide-out room does not operate it is possible a safety feature may be engaged to prevent room operation.

Check these items if the Slide-out room does not respond from the switch:

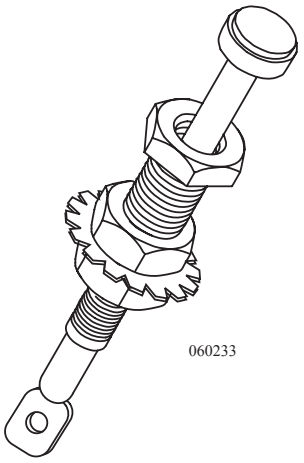
- Is the ignition key **OFF**?
- Is the park brake applied?
- Are all bay doors under the Slide-out room shut, bay door indicator lamp off at Slide-out switch?

Slide-out room does not respond and the hydraulic pump does not operate after checking all safety requirements:

- One of the bay doors below the Slide-out may have a faulty electrical connection at a safety switch (grounded) or one of the safety switches is out of adjustment.
- Ensure all electrical connections at the switch are good.
- All safety switches must be pushed in by the bay door when it closes.

Pump motor operates but the room does not move:

- Check the two fuses adjacent to the hydraulic pump. If the fuses test good and the room does not operate, it is possible to manually retract a single galley slide. Dual galley Slide-outs use different hydraulic components. Several people (as many as eight) are needed to push in the room.
- It may be necessary to contact a repair facility to have the problem diagnosed.

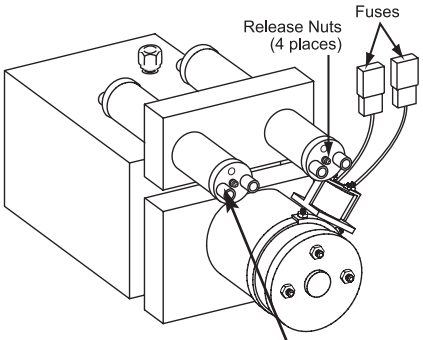


Bay Door Safety Switch

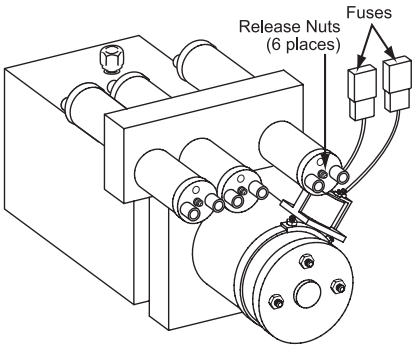
To Move Slide-out Room Manually:

1. Retract the motorhome leveling jacks (see *Leveling Jacks*).
2. Access the Slide-out room hydraulic pump in the generator compartment on the curbside.
3. Use the ¼" Nut Driver on the end of the reservoir cap, to turn the release nuts on the solenoids counterclockwise. Do Not exceed 4 ½ revolutions, as damage to the solenoids may result. The room may move slightly when valves are opened and internal pressure is released. The reservoir cap can be used at a ¼" nut driver. Remove cap from top of tank.
4. Line up equal distance along the outside wall. Do not push on the flange.
5. In synchronized movements, push the room in with repeated attempts.
6. Close the release nuts when the room is fully retracted.

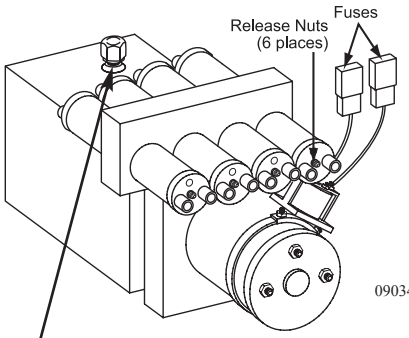
NOTE:
The Slide-out room is heavy and will require several people to push the room into position. When the Slide-out room is in the fully retracted position, tighten the release nuts to hold the room in place. Do not over tighten.



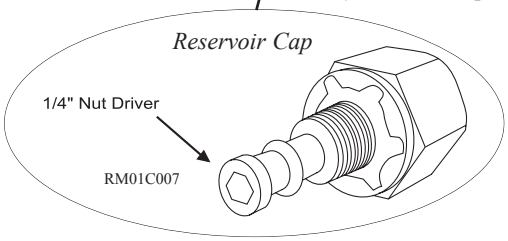
Hydraulic Pump w/ 1 hydraulic slide

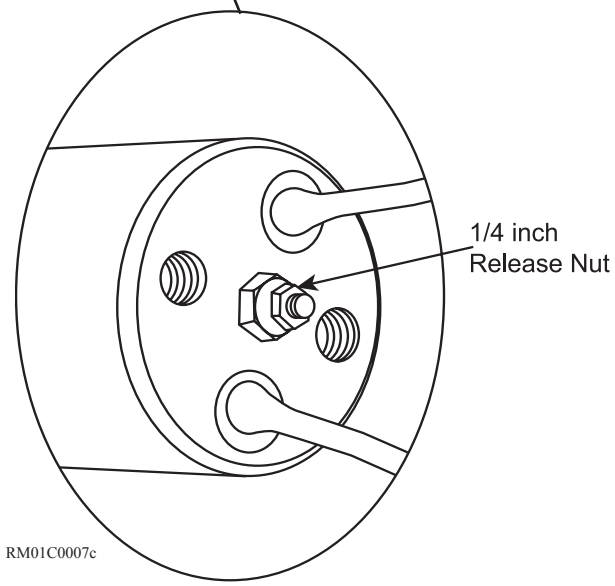


Hydraulic Pump w/ 2 hydraulic slide



Hydraulic Pump w/ 3 hydraulic slide

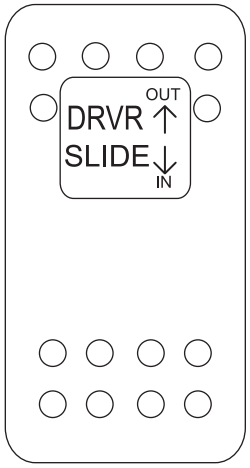




Release Nut

Bedroom Slide-out-Extending:

The bedroom Slide-out operates electrically using safety features to prevent mechanical damage or physical harm. Prior to moving the Slide-out, firmly latch cabinet doors located adjacent to the Slide-out. Damage to the door or fascia can occur.



080306c

To Extend the Bedroom Slide-out:

- Confirm that there is at least five feet of clearance outside the motorhome for the Slide-out room to extend.
- Ensure the ignition key is in the **OFF** position.
- Confirm the house batteries are fully charged.
- The battery cut-off switch must be on.
- Locate the control switch for the Slide-out, usually on the vanity cabinet.
- Ensure all people, pets and objects are clear of the Slide-out room path.
- Press and hold the Slide-out room switch in the **OUT** position.
- Release the Slide-out switch when the room is fully extended (a change in motor sound indicates full extension). The Slide-out drive motor will not stop automatically; the switch must be released.

WARNING:
Firmly latch all cabinet doors adjacent to the bedroom Slide-out before extending or retracting the room. Damage to doors or fascia can occur.

CAUTION:
Dirt and grit trapped under the slide could result in damage to the floor. Continuous operation of the Slide-out could cause a drain on the house batteries and damage to the motor from overheating.

NOTE:
Do not leave the Slide-out extended during severe weather. Conditions such as high winds or heavy rain may cause damage.

NOTE:
Perform the Slide-out room operation with the air suspension system full. Extensive damage could occur to the Slide-out room and awning when extending the Slide-out room in snow, sleet, ice or freezing rain conditions. In such conditions, if the Slide-out room is extended, clear the awning and ensure free movement prior to operating the Slide-out room.

To Retract the Bedroom Slide-out:

- Check for sufficient clearance inside the motorhome before retracting the Slide-out room.
- Clear the floor to ensure there are no objects that could result in floor or Slide-out damage during retraction.
- Remove any debris from the top of the Slide-out room.
- Prior to retracting the Slide-out room, start the motorhome. Allow the air bags to fully inflate to normal travel height.
- Retract the leveling system or prepare the air leveling system for travel prior to operating the Slide-out.
- Turn the ignition switch **OFF**. The Slide-out room will not operate with the engine running.
- Confirm the house batteries are fully charged.
- Interior house power must be on.
- Locate the control switch for the Slide-out, usually on the vanity cabinet.
- Ensure all people, pets and objects are clear of the Slide-out room path.
- Press and hold the switch in the **IN** position. The Slide-out room will move slowly in. The motor will change tone when the Slide-out is fully retracted.
- Release the switch.

CAUTION:
Continuous operation of the Slide-out can drain the battery and damage the Slide-out motor by overheating. Never move the motorhome without having the Slide-out retracted.

Manual Override - Electric Bedroom Slide-out

If the Slide-out room does not respond from the switch, check that all the safety features are in place.

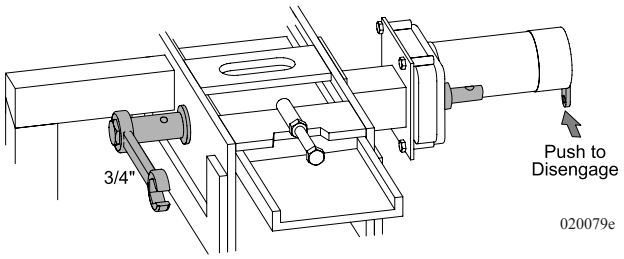
- Ignition key is **OFF**.
- Interior house power is on.
- House batteries are fully charged.

If the Slide-out room will not operate after verifying safety features, it will be necessary to manually retract the Slide-out.

WARNING:
Do not work on the Slide-out system unless the battery is disconnected. Make sure the floor is clean before retracting the Slide-out room.

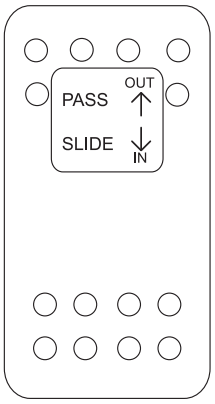
To manually override the Slide-out room:

1. Lift the mattress to gain access to the Slide-out motor inspection panel.
2. Remove the panel screws to access the motor and mechanism.
3. If the battery power to the Slide-out motor needs disconnecting, mark the wire color and location.
4. Remove tie-strap securing brake lever in the Engage position. Move brake lever to Disengage.
5. Use a ¾" wrench or socket on drive shaft to retract the room.
6. After room is retracted, place brake lever to Engage.
7. Take the motorhome to an authorized dealer for service.



Mechanism located under the bed access cover.

Wardrobe Slide-out



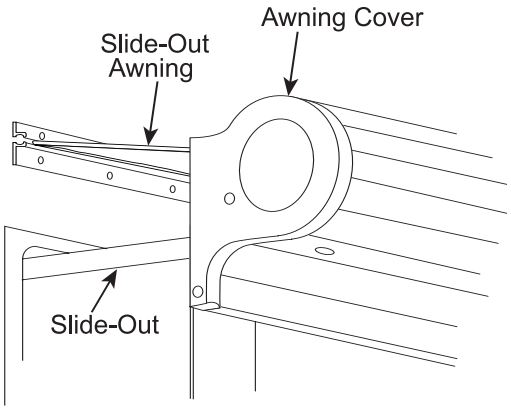
The wardrobe Slide-out is a hydraulic lateral arm Slide-out that extends and retracts by using dual-action hydraulic cylinders mounted inside mechanical hardware attached at each end of the room.

If the Slide-out will not operate with the switch follow the trouble shooting procedures in the Main Room Slide-out section of this manual. To Move the Slide-out room manually follow the same procedure used to manually retract the Main Room Slide-out.

Slide-out Cover

The Slide-out cover automatically reacts to Slide-out direction. A fixed edge of the Slide-out cover is installed into an awning rail, mounted just above the Slide-out. A spring-loaded roller with special brackets mounts to the Slide-out. In a hard rain, the cover helps prevent water from penetrating the seal of the Slide-out.

The Slide-out cover will automatically reach full extension when the Slide-out room is fully extended.



NOTE:
Water may pool on top of the extended cover. Water is removed when the cover retracts.

The Slide-out cover automatically rolls up into the travel position when the Slide-out room is completely retracted.

NOTE:
When retracting the Slide-out, stop the room approximately halfway. Confirm that the fabric is rolling properly before fully retracting the Slide-out.

CAUTION:
The slide room and Slide-out awning should be retracted during heavy wind, rain or snow to prevent damage to the awning or motorhome. Wind can drive rain under the Slide-out awning and into the motorhome.

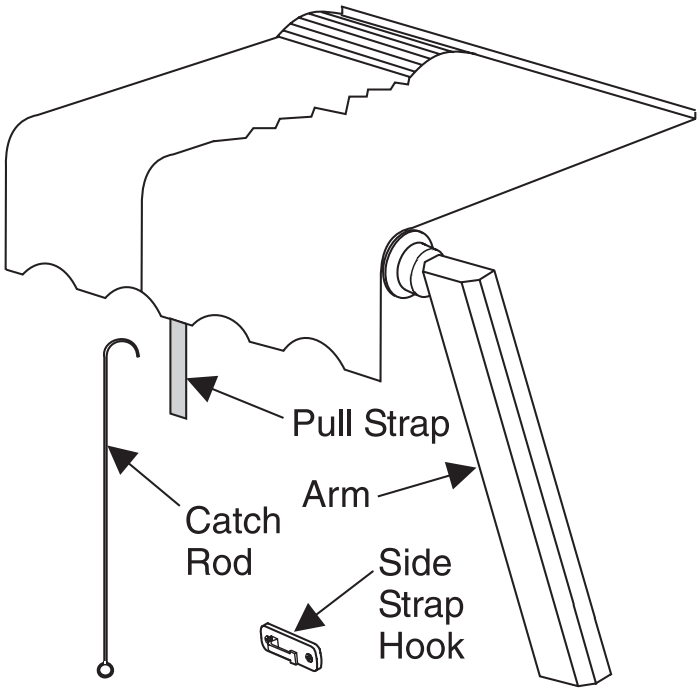
CAUTION:
At least five feet of clearance is needed between the side of the motorhome and any objects, such as trees or fences, to allow the slide room and Slide-out awning to fully extend.

CAUTION:
Rain water can pool on the Slide-out awning. The added weight will cause the awning to sag. Upon retracting the room, material can become caught in between the top of slide room and the opening in the motorhome. It will be necessary to retract the room in small increments and allow the water time to run off.

Window Awnings - Manual Carefree

To Extend the Awning:
- Hook loop of pull strap with catch rod and pull awning, reel assembly and side arms to extend fully away from motorhome.
- Hook pull strap on side strap hook, remove catch rod from pull strap and store.

To Retract the Awning:
- Hook catch rod on pull strap, remove pull strap from side strap hook and slowly allow awning to retract.
- Remove catch rod from pull strap and store.



030792

Care of Awning Vinyl Fabric:

Mildew will not form on the awning material itself, but it may form on the dust accumulated on the canopy. A quality vinyl cleaner, such as Carefree Awning Magic, will help keep your awning looking new. Be sure to follow the instructions on the container.

NOTE:
Allow the awning material to thoroughly dry before rolling the awning up. Metal surfaces should be cleaned with soapy water and thoroughly rinsed.

Care of Awning Acrylic Fabric:

The acrylic fabric should be cleaned regularly before substances such as dirt, leaves, etc., are allowed to accumulate on, and become embedded in, the fabric. The fabric can be cleaned without being removed from the awning. Simply brush off any loose dirt, leaves, etc. Hose down and clean with a cloth and mild soap. Do not use detergents. Allow to air dry, preferably on a warm sunny day. Should you have to retract the awning when the fabric is wet, it should be extended at the first opportunity to finish air-drying.

Cleaning and Maintenance:

- **Washing:** Loosen hardened dirt and remove dust from awning with a dry, medium bristle brush, monthly. Thoroughly rinse both the top and bottom with a hose. This process can be made easier with awning maintenance products. Saturate the fabric with the solution and leave it on for 15-20 minutes. Wash both sides of the awning using an awning brush. If necessary, reapply the solution to keep fabric saturated. Rinse the awning thoroughly. Repeat, if necessary, until most of the stains disappear.

- **Water Leaks:** If leaking occurs after washing, it generally results from insufficient rinse water removal. If water drips through the needle holes in the stitching use a commercial seam sealer that is available in canvas and trailer supply stores. Paraffin wax may also be applied to the top of the seams. As the awning "weathers" these holes will normally seal themselves.

It is normal for slight leakage to occur through the fabric where water is allowed to accumulate or pocket on the fabric. See "Storm Precautions" for information on the awning settings for proper water drainage. Sometimes soap or chemical residue, such as from active agents in insect fog or sprays, can "wet" the fabric so that it appears unable to repel water. Rinse the fabric thoroughly and test to see if it is water repellent after it dries. If leakage continues after repeating the washing and thoroughly rinsing, contact Carefree of Colorado concerning further maintenance.

Storm Precautions

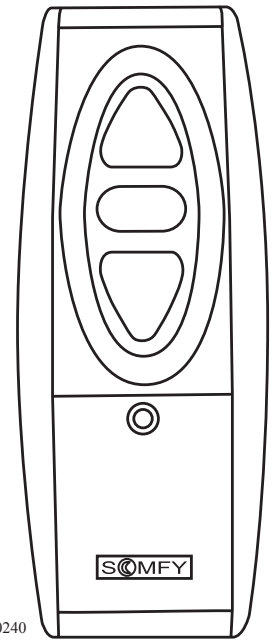
The warranty does not cover damage caused by acts of nature; therefore, steps should be taken to prevent damage from occurring due to wind, rain or storms. Avoid leaving the awning extended during rainy conditions. If leaving or retiring for the night, close the awning. This takes only a few seconds and provides the best protection.

Patio Awning - Girard

The Girard Lateral Arm Awning extends and retracts with the push of a switch, providing protection from the sun.

Features:

- Remote control operation.
- Retractable arms use twin cables for increased fabric tension.
- All aluminum hardware is powder coated to give long-lasting protection for both housing and mechanical parts.
- 100% acrylic fabric is weatherproof, permeable to air and resistant to mildew, rotting and fading.
- Motorized operation including a manual crank override for emergency retract.
- The wind sensor automatically retracts the awning during windy conditions.
- The electric motor is housed in the roller tube where it is protected from the elements and view.



060240

Patio Awning Remote

Extending the Awning:

The awning operates from 120 Volts AC. Hook to shore power, start the generator or turn on the inverter. The ignition must be off for the awning to operate. The awning requires 10' of lateral side clearance.

- Momentarily push the upper switch. The awning will automatically extend full distance. Awning travel can be stopped by pressing the center switch.

CAUTION:
It is strongly recommended to extend the awning full distance for maximum strength. To prevent damage, retract the awning during gusting winds or inclement weather. Rainwater can quickly collect (pool) on the canvas and overload awning hardware, resulting in damage.

NOTE:
The awning motor is not designed for continuous use. In the event the motor is used to excess, it will automatically shut off and remain inoperative until the circuit breaker inside the motor cools down and automatically resets. Awning run time should not exceed four to five minutes per hour. If the breaker trips, it will automatically reset in 30 minutes to one hour depending on ambient temperature.

After Extending the Awning:

After the awning has fully extended, no further setup or hardware installation is necessary. The 120 Volt AC power supply must remain on for the awning to automatically retract in excess wind. The awning is equipped with a remote mounted anemometer (wind speed sensor) that detects wind speed and automatically retracts (requires 120 Volt AC) the awning when wind speed exceeds a preset speed for more than a few seconds. If the wind speed sensor retracts the awning, leave the awning retracted until wind subsides to prevent possible awning damage. Retract the awning in inclement weather conditions, or when leaving the motorhome unattended.

Retracting the Awning:

- Clear away any leaves, pine needles or other debris by lightly taping the awning from underneath using a broom handle or other instrument that will not harm the fabric.
- Press the lower switch to retract the awning when at full extension. Awning travel can be stopped by pressing the center switch.

NOTE:
If the fabric was wet when the awning was retracted, extend the awning at the soonest opportunity to allow the fabric to thoroughly dry.

Emergency Procedure:

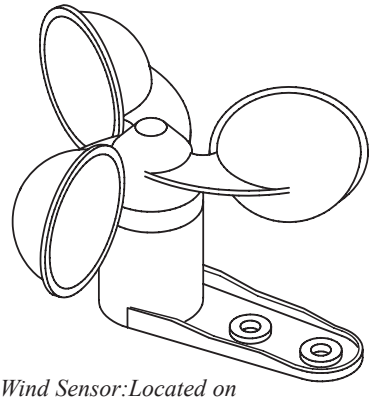
If the awning does not operate:

- Check to make sure the 120 Volt AC is on by hooking to shore power, starting the generator or turning on the inverter.
- Check the circuit breaker in the 120 Volt AC breaker panel located in the bedroom.
- The circuit breaker inside the awning motor may have tripped. Wait 30 minutes to one hour then retry. If the awning still does not respond, the awning can be manually retracted by using the supplied telescoping crank handle.

INFORMATION:
Follow the instructions for manual awning retraction in the equipment manufacturer's manual.

Wind Sensor Adjustment:

To prevent damage, the awning system utilizes a Wind Sensor that will retract the awning in case of sustained winds. In order for the Wind Sensor to operate, the motorhome must be hooked to shore power, have the generator running or the inverter turned on. The Wind Sensor will override any switch command. An adjustable potentiometer, located in the awning control box, sets the wind speed necessary to retract the awning. The potentiometer, adjustable between 12 and 31 mph, is preset from the factory at 22 mph. The control box is located in the forward cabinet of the curbside living room overhead. The access panel must be removed to adjust the wind speed sensor.



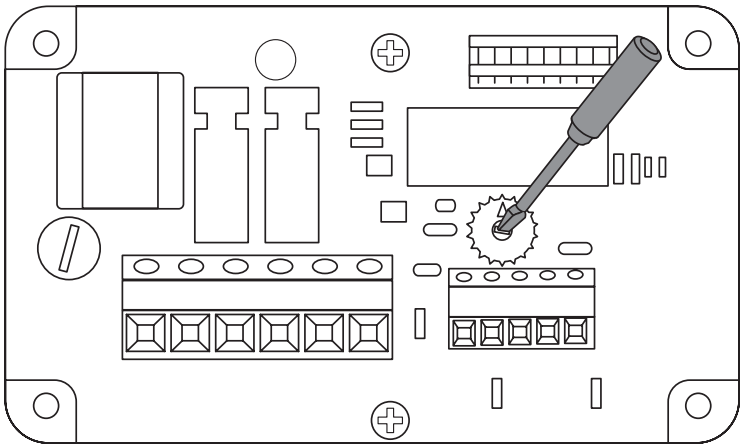
Wind Sensor:Located on the roof of the motorhome.

030929

To Adjust the Sensor:

- Disconnect or turn off AC power. Turn off the interior house power (12 Volt DC).
- Unscrew the cover plate screws.
- Adjust the potentiometer clockwise to increase the amount of wind speed needed to retract the awning.
- Adjust the potentiometer counterclockwise to decrease the amount of wind speed needed to retract the awning.

CAUTION:
Setting the potentiometer above 25 mph may void the warranty.



030930

Control Box

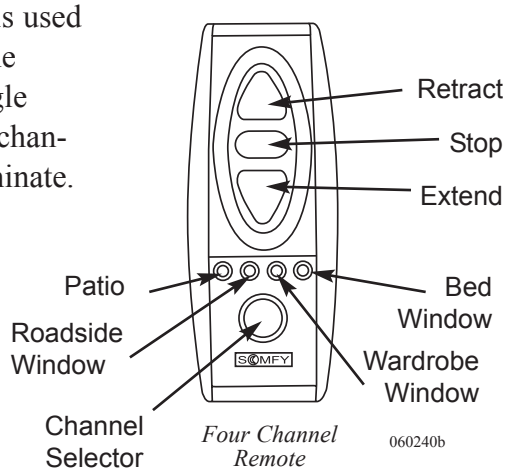
When the wind sensor attains the set speed for more than a few seconds, the awning will automatically retract, provided the awning has 120 Volt AC power. The awning will not automatically open when wind speed subsides. Open using the remote.

Tips for Awning Use:

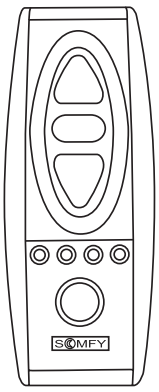
- Avoid leaving the awning partially extended during high wind conditions. The awning is at the strongest setting when fully extended.
- If the wind sensor retracts the awning, it is recommend to leave the awning in until winds subside.
- Awning will not operate with the ignition key in the ON position.

Four-Channel Remote (Optional)

The four-channel remote can control up to four awnings and is used on the patio awning and the automatic window awnings. Press the round channel selector button at the bottom of the remote to toggle through the different channels. One of the four LED's above the channel selector that corresponds to the appropriate awning will illuminate.



Four Channel Remote



Four Channel Remote

Window Awning - Girard (Optional)

The Girard window awning uses 120 Volt AC to operate.

To Extend or Retract the Awning:

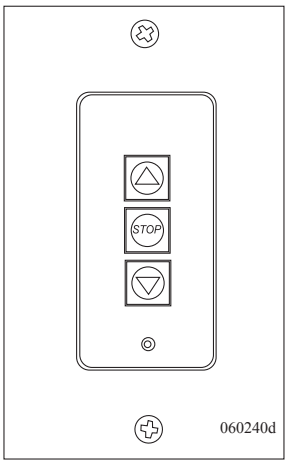
- Hook to shore power, start the generator or turn on the inverter.
- Use the 4 channel remote to extend or retract the awning. Awning will extend or retract full distance and automatically stop. Awning may be set to any position by pressing the stop button.

Door Awning - Girard

The Girard door awning uses 120 Volt AC to operate.

To Extend or Retract the Awning:

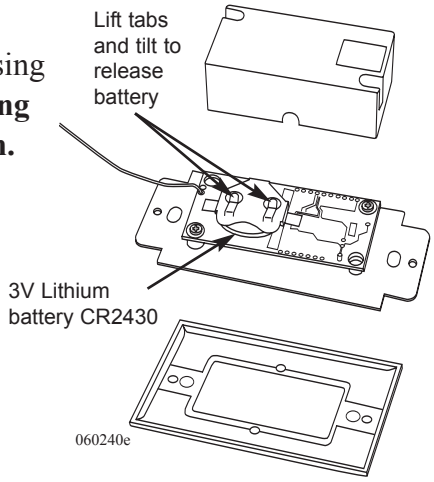
- Hook to shore power, start the generator or turn on the inverter.
- Use the control above the passenger chair to extend or retract the awning. Awning will extend or retract full distance and automatically stop.
- Awning may be set to any position by pressing the center button on the control. **The awning is strongest in the fully extended position.**



Face Plate

Changing the Front Door Awning Switch Battery:

- Remove switch plate.
- Remove switch unit from cabinet.
- Remove back cover.
- Lift tabs to release battery.
- Replace with new battery and re-install.



Remove back to replace battery.

Care & Maintenance - Girard

Girard Acrylic Awning Cleaning:

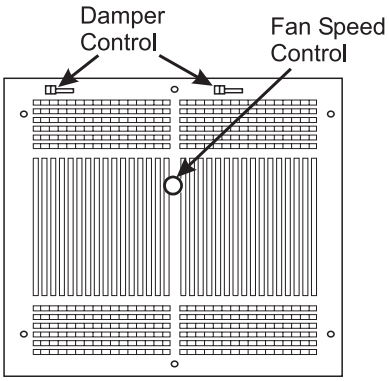
Acrylic awning fabric should be cleaned regularly before dirt, leaves and debris are allowed to accumulate, and become embedded in the fabric. Carefully brush off loose debris and hose down the awning. Clean the fabric using a cloth and mild soap such as FeronCLEAN®. A high-quality acrylic fabric cleaner may also be used to help maintain the appearance. Carefully follow the instructions as listed. Do not use detergents. Metal surfaces should be cleaned with soapy water and thoroughly rinsed. Allow the awning to thoroughly air dry while extended.

Care Facts & Tips:

- The awning is at the strongest setting when fully extended. Avoid leaving the awning extended in inclement weather. Retract the awning during conditions. Water weighs 8.33 lbs. per gallon and can quickly collect on the canvas. Excess water collection can overstress and damage awning hardware.
- Remove leaves, pine needles or other debris by tapping the canvas from underneath using a broom handle or other instrument that will not harm the fabric.
- If the Wind Sensor retracts the awning, it is recommend the awning remain retracted until winds subside.
- The ignition key must be in the **OFF** position for the awning to operate.
- The motor draws approximately 300 watts (about three amps) of power while in use.
- Allow the awning fabric to thoroughly dry before retracting the awning. Should the awning need to be retracted while the fabric is wet, extended it as soon as possible to allow it to completely dry.

FANS *Exhaust Fan*

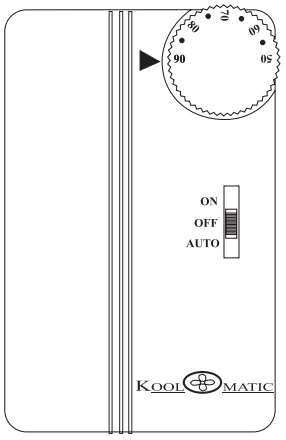
A wall thermostat controls the galley exhaust fan using House 12 Volt DC to operate.



030762

To Operate the Fan:

- Remove the ceiling grill cover.
- Open the grill damper.
- Select one of three fan speeds using the round knob on the grill.
- Set the thermostat to **ON** for continuous airflow or set the thermostat to **AUTO** and set the desired air temperature for thermostatically controlled airflow.
- To disengage the fan, set the thermostat to **OFF**. Close the grill damper and install the ceiling grill cover.

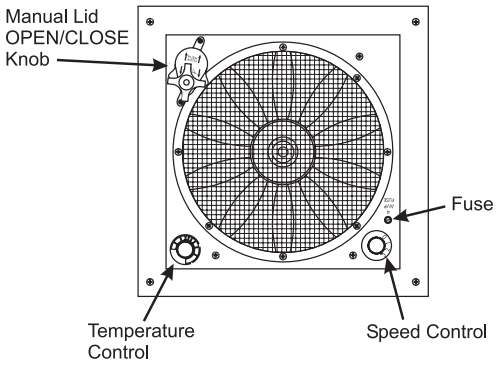


030771

NOTE:

Close the grill damper before installing the grill cover. Failure to close the damper may result in the cover blowing off while the motorhome is in motion.

The bathroom fan has three speeds with a **0** (Off) position. A built in thermostat has an operating range of 22º F to 123º F, based on inside ambient air temperature. The dark blue zone on the thermostat is cool; the dark red zone indicates heat. The fan starts automatically when the lid opens approximately two inches during normal operation.



030832h

Automatic Operation:

Leave fan in **AUTO** position for normal operation. Turn **FAN** switch **ON** at sink cabinet; the lid will open and the fan will start. The **AUTO** mode will not operate with the fan speed switch in the **0** position. Turn **FAN** switch to **OFF** position to lower vent lid and stop fan.

Manual Operation:

To adjust vent lid to different opening positions pull **DOWN** on the manual lid knob, turn knob counter-clockwise to lower the lid. Return fan to **AUTO** position by pushing **IN** on the knob.

NOTE:
If the speed switch is set on "0" fan cover will not operate in AUTO position.

CAUTION:
It is recommended to travel with the vents closed. High winds and vibration can damage the plexiglass dome.

Tips for Fan Operation:

- To keep condensation from accumulating, operate the fans. Condensation occurs naturally from fluctuations in interior and exterior temperatures, humidity and dew point changes, steam from cooking or boiling large amounts of water on the cooktop. Shower use is another source of condensation.
- If the fan fails to operate, check for a blown fuse either in the domestic fuse panel or the 4 Amp fuse on the fan.
- To remove the screen, loosen the eight screws holding the screen in place. Use a non-abrasive soap and water to clean and reinstall.
- Slightly open windows on the shaded side of the motorhome to create the most airflow, especially on hot, sunny days. Direct airflow by slightly opening selected windows. Maximum airflow is achieved between an open window and the Fantastic Vent.

NOTE:
Do not leave the fan switch in the active mode while the motorhome is stored or unattended for extended periods. High winds, unusual conditions or obstructions may prevent the fan cover from fully closing, resulting in leakage and serious damage.

PRIVACY DRAPERY ELECTRIC *(Optional)*

- The receptacle is powered by shore power, the generator or the inverter.
- Press and hold the rocker switch to open or close the drapes. Release the switch to stop movement.
- Release the switch when the drapes are at the end of travel.

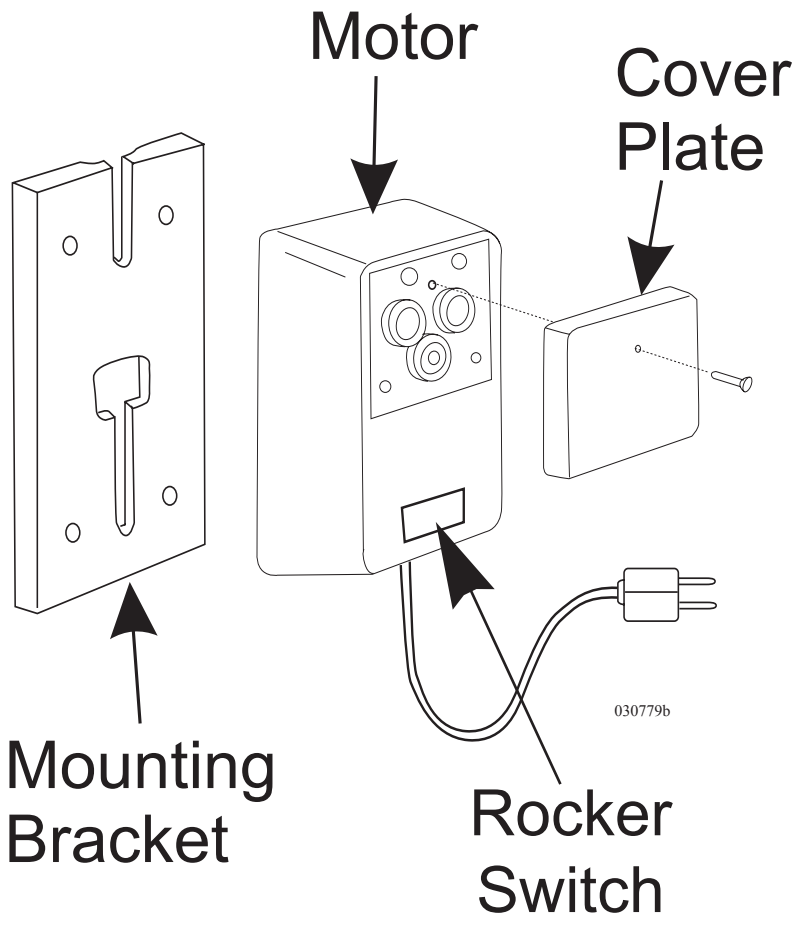
Internal Thermoswitch Shut-Off:

The drapery motor is designed for normal use. If run excessively, such as every few minutes, the internal thermoswitch shuts off the motor for several minutes. The thermoswitch prolongs the motor life and prevents inadvertent or accidental abuse of the mechanism.

NOTE:
If the cord stretches after use, adjust the tension by moving the motor on the wall bracket.

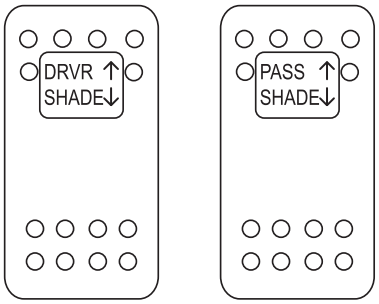
Replacing the Driver Tire:

- Turn off all power and unplug the receptacle.
- Remove the screws holding the cover.
- Roll the tire manually and divert the drapery cord out of the mechanism.
- Cut the old tire off using care not to cut the plastic drive roller.
- Wipe the roller with a dry cloth to remove any dirt or residue. Snap the new drive tire in place.
- It may be necessary to adjust the motor on the wall bracket to get the drapery cord back into position.



POWER SUNVISOR

The windshield visors are 12 Volt DC operating from the house batteries. One visor assembly is used for the driver and another for the passenger.



080306

To Operate the Visors:

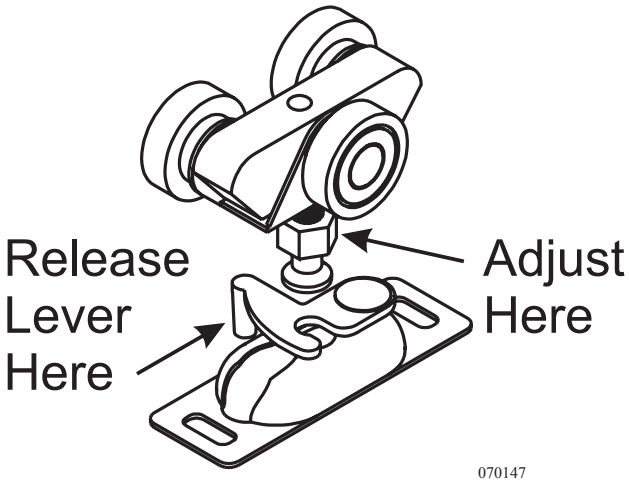
- Use the house battery cut-off switch to turn on the interior house power.
- Push the switch down to lower the desired Sunvisor.
- Push the switch up to raise the Sunvisor.

NOTE:
Do not move or drive the motorhome with any window view obstructed.

DOOR - SLIDING

The sliding pocket door uses two rollers at the top of each door. During the life of the motorhome the sliding door may need adjusting to close tight against the wall. Locate the small wrench and turn the adjusting screw upward or downward.

If, for any reason, the pocket door needs to be removed, locate the portion that is secured to the top of the pocket door and rotate the small lever outward to release the latches.



070147

LUBE:
The pocket door rollers should be lubed with just a small drop of oil once a year to help increase the life of the rollers and improve the sliding of the door.

SEAT CONTROLS

The Pilot and Co-Pilot seats are adjustable to provide maximum comfort. Seats must be locked in the forward facing direction while traveling.

NOTE:
The seats operate from 12 Volt DC house power. The ignition must be on to operate the lumbar/seat support and heater functions.

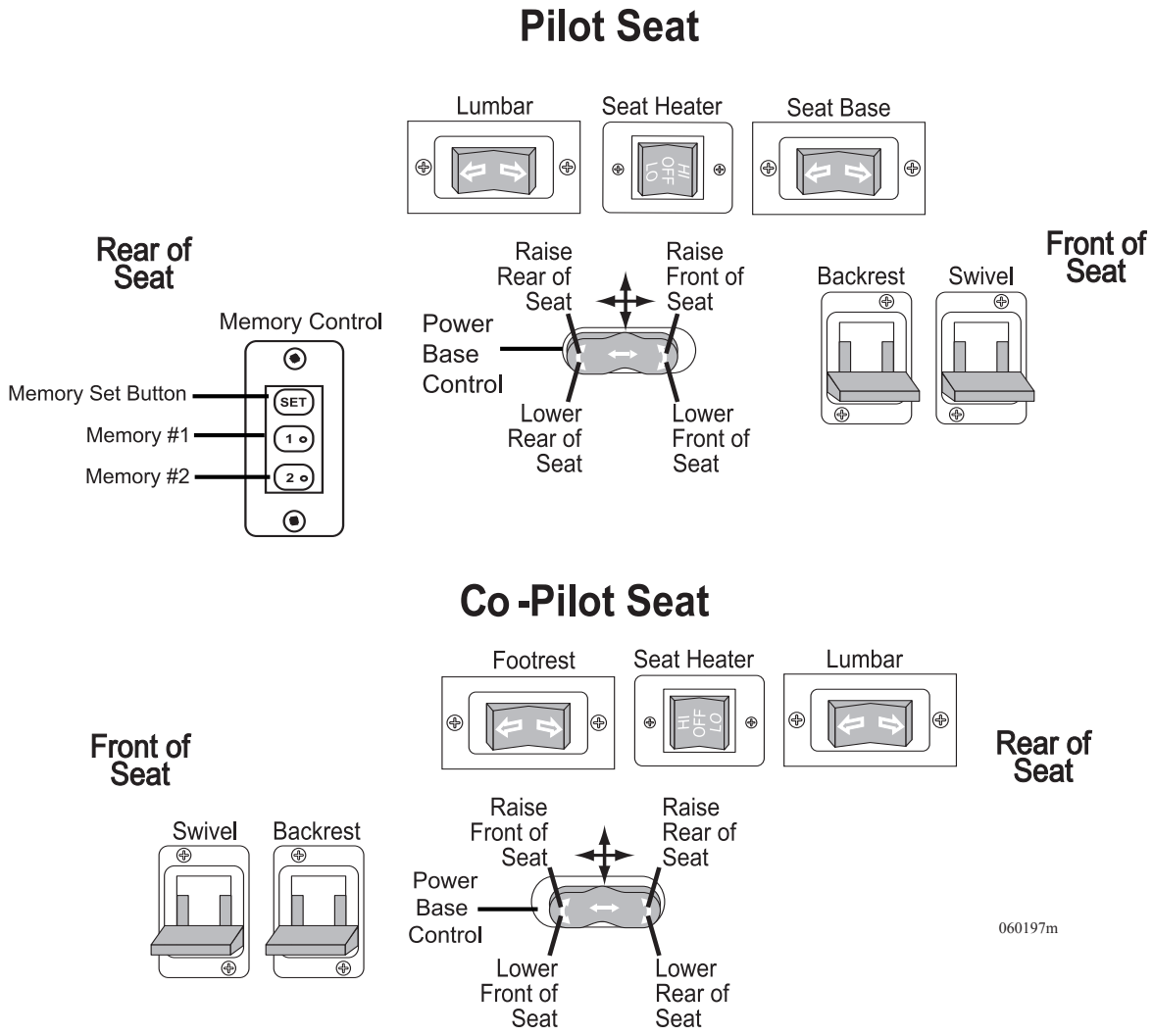
Memory Control

To Program a Seat Position:

- Position seat as desired using the Power Base Control. Press the SET button once, then select the number 1 or 2 Memory Button. The selected Memory Button will illuminate. When the seat position is memorized the light will turn off.

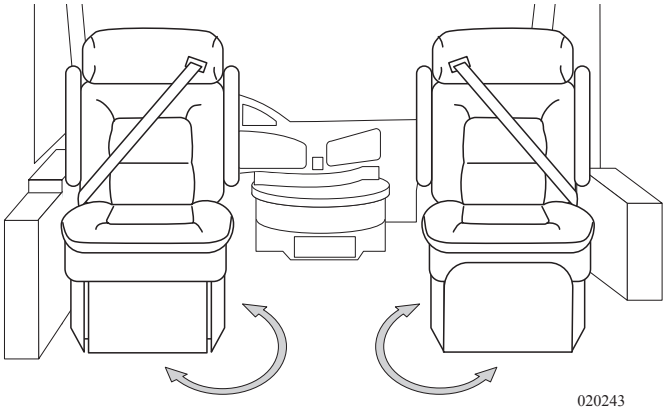
To Move Seat to a Stored Position:

- Press the desired Memory Button once, the light will illuminate until the seat reaches its programmed position.



Swivel Seat Operation:

- When swiveling a seat, lift up the swivel lever and rotate to the desired position.
- The passenger seat swivels all the way around when the Slide-out is extended.
- When rotating the driver seat, put the steering wheel in the upright position.
- Move the seat forward, then pull the swivel lever up and rotate around to the desired position.


020243

WARNING:
Seats must be locked in the forward facing position while the motorhome in transit.

SOFA BED CONVERSION

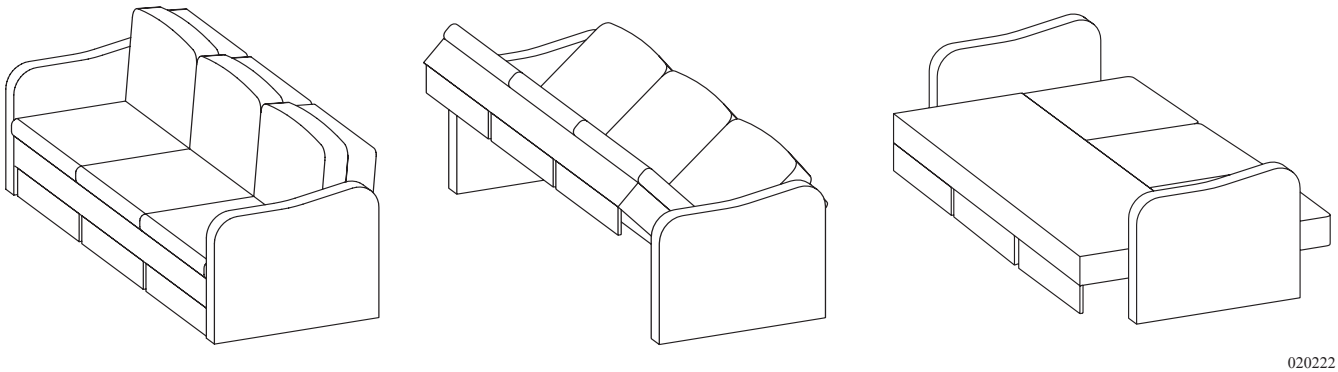
The sofa will convert easily into a bed. The sofa comes equipped with safety belts and these should be used if occupied during travel.

Sofa to Sleeper:

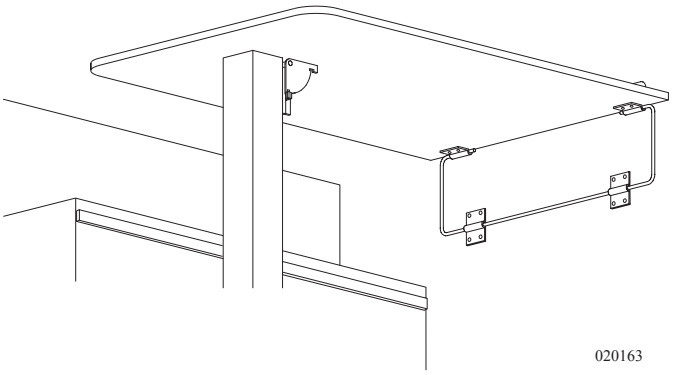
- Lift up from the center of sofa, just below the seat cushions, to form a "V" shape with the seat base and back rest.
- Push down on seat base until the seat base and backrest are flat.
- Fold seat belts out of the way.

Sleeper to Sofa:

- Lift the seat base up until seat and backrest are in a "V" shape.
- Push down on seat base.


020222

DINETTE BED CONVERSION *(Optional)*



To Convert Booth Dinette into a Bed:

- Lift seat cushions to an angled vertical position.
- With a firm grip, lift front edge of the table approximately six inches and push table leg lock to side.
- Swing the table leg up and lock into a horizontal position.
- Continue lifting table until table stays are clear of retainers. Pull outward and lower table down.
- Use both seat cushions and one back cushion for a mattress. Leave one back cushion in a vertical position.

WARNING:
Do not occupy the booth dinette, if not equipped with safety belts, or the dining chairs while the motorhome is in motion. To avoid personal injury to occupants in case of a crash or sudden stop, chairs must be stored in an enclosed area or secured with tie down straps while the motorhome is in motion.

AIR MATTRESS BED

The air mattress pump is located in the bed storage compartment and is plugged into a 120 Volt AC outlet. **Two remotes are used to adjust the firmness setting of each side of the mattress.** Only one side of the mattress may be adjusted at a time. **When one remote is being used, the other remote is inoperative.**

To Operate Mattress:

There are two modes that can be used to adjust the mattress firmness: Manual **(1)** mode and the Pressure Sensitive **(2)** mode.

The air mattress reads body weight to make proper adjustments and requires someone to be on the mattress when adjusting firmness settings in both the Manual and Pressure Sensitive modes.

To Select Modes:

Hold the **MODE** button down until the remote beeps, then release. The display will read 1. Use the + and - buttons to alternate between Manual and Pressure Sensitive modes. To enter the mode that is selected (1 or 2) hold down the **MODE** button again until the remote beeps. To return to mode select, at any time, press and hold the **MODE** button down until the remote beeps.

When in Manual Mode (1):

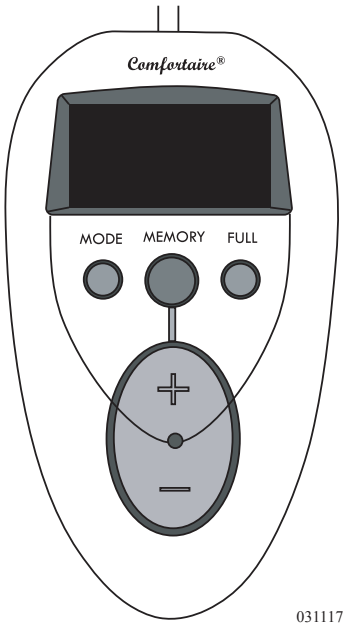
Press and hold the + button to increase mattress firmness or press and hold the - button to reduce mattress firmness. After adjusting the mattress the current firmness will be displayed on the remote for a few seconds.

When in Pressure Sensitive Mode (2):

The firmness setting will show on the display and can be adjusted in 1% increments by pressing the + and - buttons.

To Store a Firmness Setting:

After adjusting the mattress firmness in either the Manual **(1)** or Pressure Sensitive **(2)** mode press and hold the blue **MEMORY** button until the remote beeps. The firmness setting is stored. The firmness can be adjusted and then returned to the stored setting by pressing the **MEMORY** button. Holding the **MEMORY** button down until it beeps will change the stored position to the current mattress firmness.



Air Mattress Remote on Nightstand

NOTE:
This system is designed to use the back pressure of a person's weight. Changes to firmness should be made while lying on the mattress.

Instant Fill feature:

The instant fill feature works in either the **MANUAL** or the **PRESSURE SENSITIVE** mode. Press the **FULL** button on the remote and the mattress will inflate to 100% capacity. The instant fill works with or without someone on the mattress.

Cleaning and Maintenance:

- Check air filter at back of pump monthly. Rinse with water to clean and let dry before installing.
- Over time normal settling and impressions in cover will occur. Only the cover quilting is affected. Steam clean only, allow mattress cover to dry thoroughly. Do not dry clean.

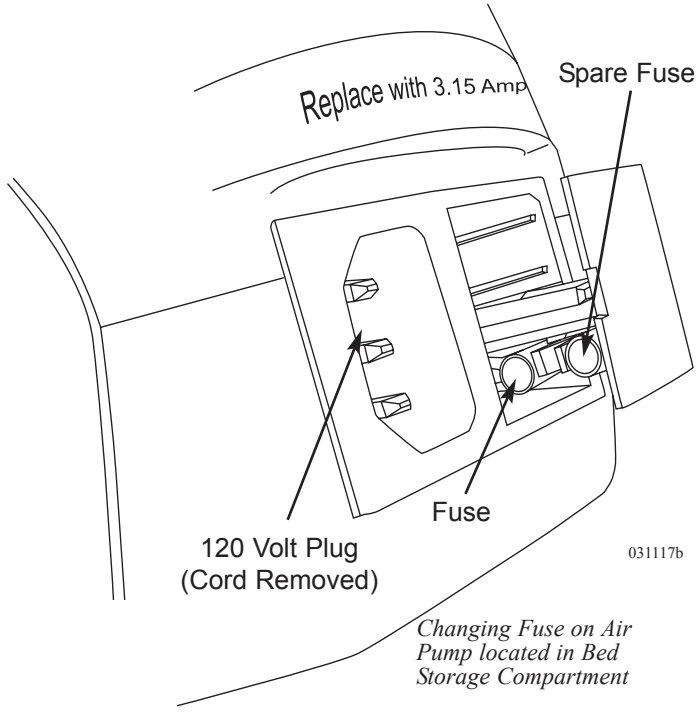
Troubleshooting

Slow Leak: Check fittings on front of pump and connections to mattress. If leaks from hose at outlet side of pump remove clamp, cut hose 1" and re-install hose and hose clamp.

If problem continues, cut hose from air pump nozzle and install hose plugs, located in the mattress cover, and install in hose ends. If air holds in the mattress the problem is in the pump. If air doesn't hold then it is the mattress. Call Comfortaire at **1-800-759-0594**.

Pump Will Not Operate:

- For pump to operate the motorhome will need to be plugged in, the generator running, or the inverter will need to be turned on. Ensure pump in bed storage compartment is plugged in.
- Check fuse on pump. Use a key or a small screwdriver to open fuse compartment. The back fuse is the fuse used. When the fuse holder is pushed in, the fuse is installed. If fuse is bad replace with spare in holder.
- If motorhome has power but the remote doesn't display, check phone line connections at remotes and at pump.



Changing Fuse on Air Pump located in Bed Storage Compartment

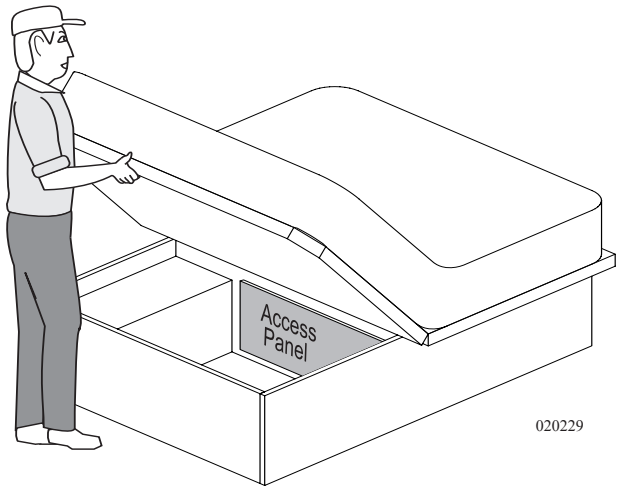
Pump Operates but Pressure Doesn't Change:

Check for kinks in hose or any visible obstructions between pump and mattress.

NOTE:
Do not disassemble pump. Internal components can be damaged and warranty will be voided.

STORAGE - UNDER BED

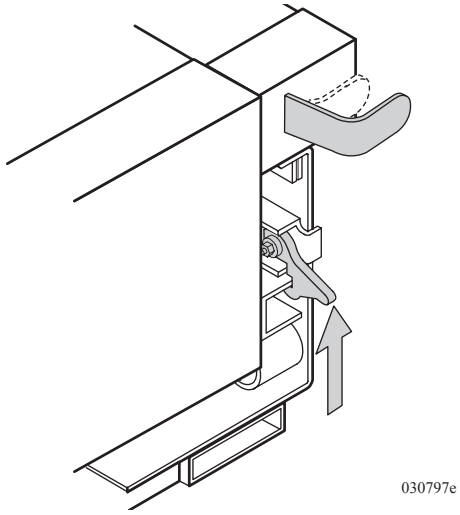
To use the storage compartment located under the bed, locate and unlock the bed deck latches. Lift up the bed by the front edge of the mattress platform. Gas struts hold the mattress and platform open.



NOTE:
Do not over stress gas struts by rapidly opening or closing the bed access cover, as this action can damage the struts or mounts. In extreme cold gas struts may not hold the mattress platform in the open position.

SUPER SLIDE *(Optional)*

The Kwikee Super Slide is an option that is available for use in the storage compartment bays of the motorhome. The super slide allows for the pay load to slide outward for easier access.



- The motorhome must be level before opening.
- There are two latch releases: lift and hold up to release one, pull outward while pulling on the super slide to release the other.
- Maximum weight capacity is 1,000 lbs. Never exceed this amount.

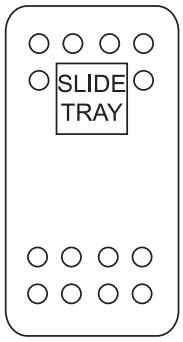
WARNING:
The motorhome must be level when sliding the drawer out of the bay compartment. The drawer can slide out abruptly and cause bodily harm when the motorhome is not level.

POWER SUPER SLIDE (*Optional*)

The power storage tray (in full pass through bays only) can be operated from the momentary switch located in the curb side bay, the Power Slide remote or the manual override if power is lost. Safety cut out switches on the roadside and curbside prevent tray operation when the cargo bay doors are closed.

Using the Switch:

- Open curbside bay door. Switch will work tray both directions. Press and hold switch to move tray. When switch is released the tray will stop.



060066i

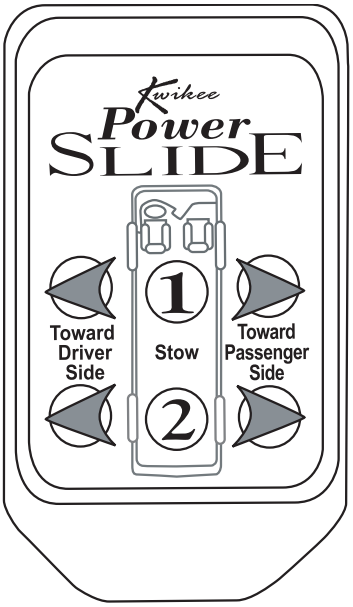
Power Slide Switch located in curbside storage bay.

Using the Remote:

- Press the left or right arrows adjacent to the tray number to be moved to slide tray out.
- To stow tray press the stow button (1 or 2).
- If the tray is out on the roadside and the curbside button (right arrow) is pressed the tray will return to the stow position.
- While tray is sliding out press the opposite arrow button to stop tray operation.

Troubleshooting:

- Power comes from a 40 Amp mini-breaker in the Rear Run Box labeled Bay Slide.
- Ensure the House Battery Disconnect in the battery compartment is **ON**.
- Ensure interior house power is **ON**.
- Check safety switch on hinged side of cargo door opening to see if it is out of adjustment. With the door open the switch should provide a ground through the metal contacts on the back of the switch.

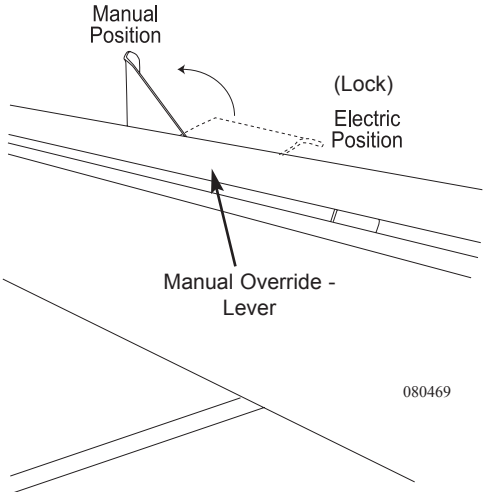


Powerslide Remote 080466

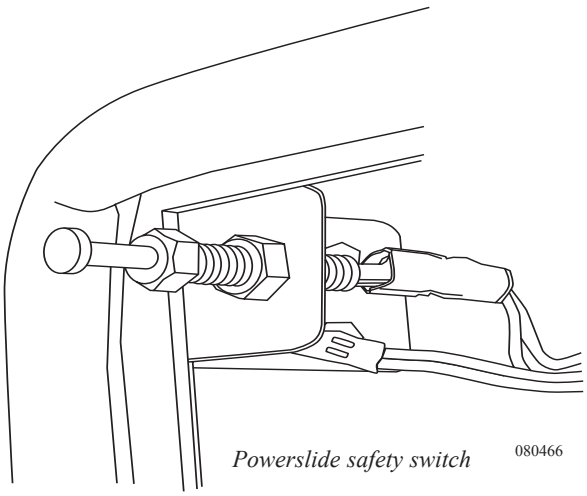
NOTE:
Maximum weight capacity is 800 lbs. Never exceed this amount.

Manual Override:

If battery power is lost or if there is an electrical problem, the tray can be moved in manually. Lift the manual release lever on the power module. Push tray in and return arm to lock position.



080469



Powerslide safety switch 080466

The Bedroom stereo system is a three-piece system consisting of AM/FM stereo tuner, CD Player and Clock. The system receives power from the front run box.

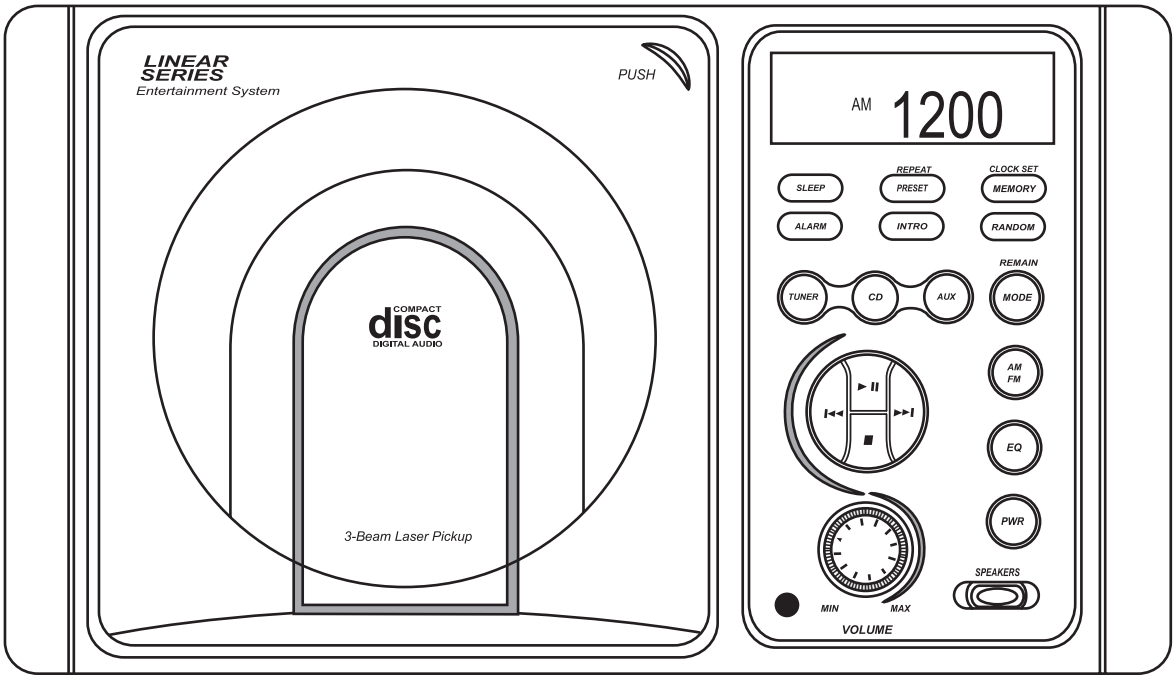
INFORMATION:
Detailed information with CAUTION or WARNING instructions for the bedroom radio can be found in the manufactuer's operation manual.

To set Clock:

1. Press the **POWER** button to turn off "standby."
2. Press the **MODE** button to display clock. Press the memory button and the minute segments display **"OO."** The hour segments flash continuously.

NOTE:
Pay attention to the "AM" or "PM" setting.

3. Press the **CD-TUNING-SKIP** |<< or >>| button to select the desired hour.
4. Press the **MEMORY** button again and the minute segments will flash.
5. Press the **CD-TUNING SKIP** |<< or >>| button to select the desired minute.
6. Press the **MEMORY** button once more. The flashing stops and the time is set.



031121

LADDER - REAR

The rear-folding ladder allows access to the roof. Care should be used when climbing the ladder. Access to the roof should be limited to cleaning and sealing purposes only. Fold ladder to the up position to open rear engine access doors.

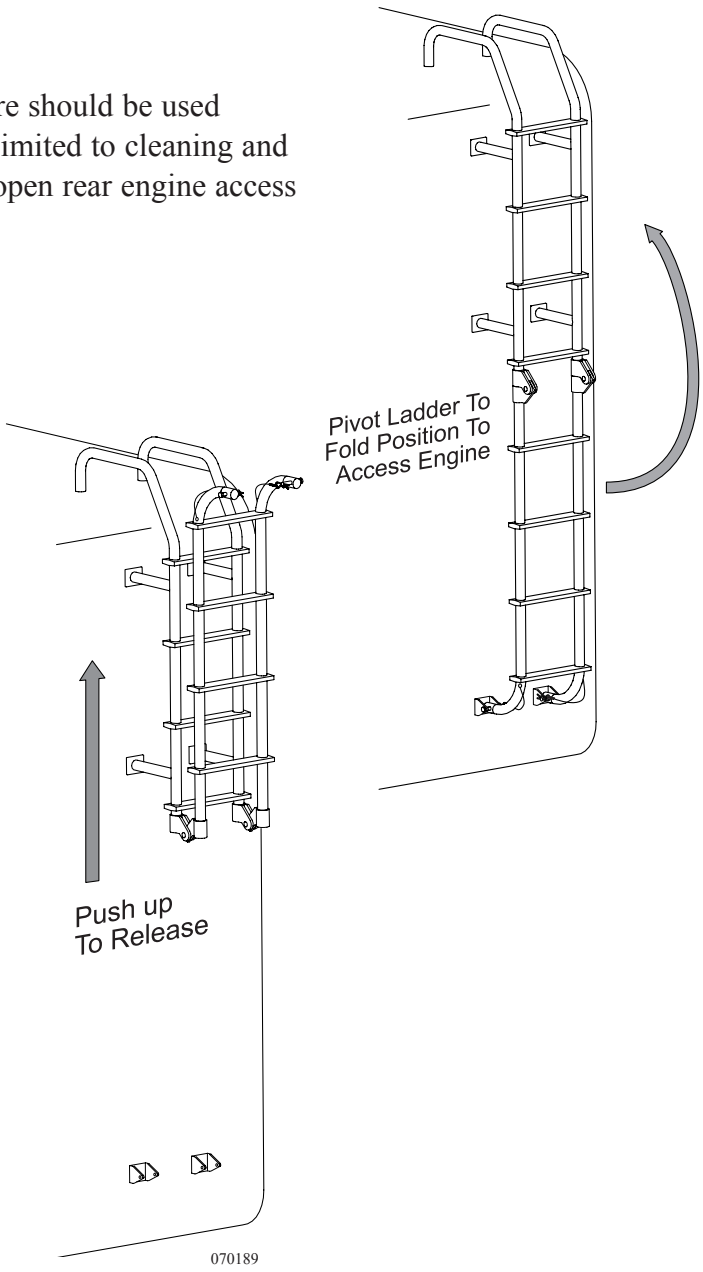
To Raise Ladder:

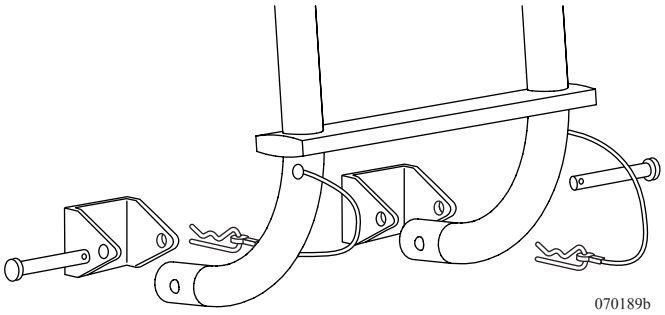
- Remove the hairpin cotter clip from the clevis pin.
- Fold ladder upwards. Hinges will gravity lock into the upright position.

To Lower Ladder:

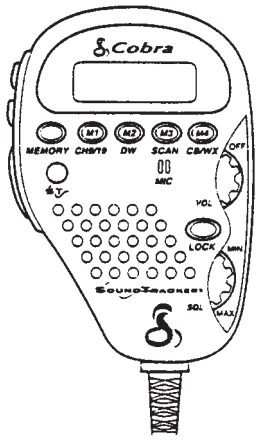
- Push up on lower section of ladder to unlock hinge.
- Lower ladder. Engage ladder legs with bottom locks.
- Install clevis pin and hair pin clip.

NOTE:
Maximum weight capacity for the ladder is 300 lbs.





The CB radio is a low-powered transmitting device used for two-way, short-distance communications. The CB can be a very useful tool for emergency weather condition information and potential road hazards reported by other CB operators.



030783

Handset:

- Volume/On/Off control has no effect on radio transmission.
- Squelch control is first turned up to a point where static or background noise can be heard then reduced to a point where the static disappears.
- The Channel Selector is used to select channels (1-40) by pressing the Channel Up/Down Tuning buttons.
- When the Microphone button is pressed, the CB radio switches from a listening device to a transmitter. Anything spoken into the microphone is transmitted over the airway of the channel selected. Press the button to talk and release the button to receive a reply.

Emergency Communication:

- Set the CB radio to Channel 9.
- Request a React base (if available) to respond by saying "Break Channel 9 for a React base" and provide the CB Distress Data (called "CLIP") repeatedly so the nearest monitor may be of assistance:

C(all sign) - Identify yourself and vehicle.
L(ocation) - Be exact.
I(njuries) - How many? What type? Are persons trapped?
P(roblem) - Give details and be specific about the assistance needed.

NOTE:
Channel 9 is for emergency use only.

Following rules of use:

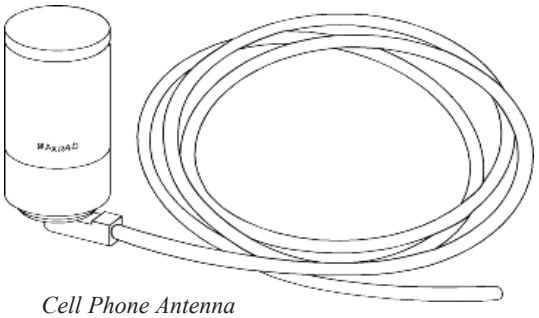
Limit communication to five minutes at a time. Give others a chance to use the channel. Do not use illegally amplified transmitter power or illegally high antennas or promote illegal activities. Do not transmit profanity or music over the airway. Do not use the CB to sell merchandise or a professional service.

Troubleshooting:

- Limited Range: Weather conditions, environment, terrain, trees, other vehicles, and/or the power of the radio and its antenna, and matching of the Standing Wave Ratio (SWR) setting affect CB radio range. See OEM (Original Equipment Manufacturer) manual to adjust SWR.
- No Power: Check 3 Amp fuse in Front Run Box.

CELL PHONE ANTENNA

The motorhome is equipped with a cell phone antenna. The antenna lead is located behind the dash instrument cluster. To access the lead, remove the inspection panel located on top of the dash pad. The antenna lead run is installed in the section between the drivers side window and the windshield. The coiled antenna lead should be located toward the front firewall, directly behind the instrument cluster.

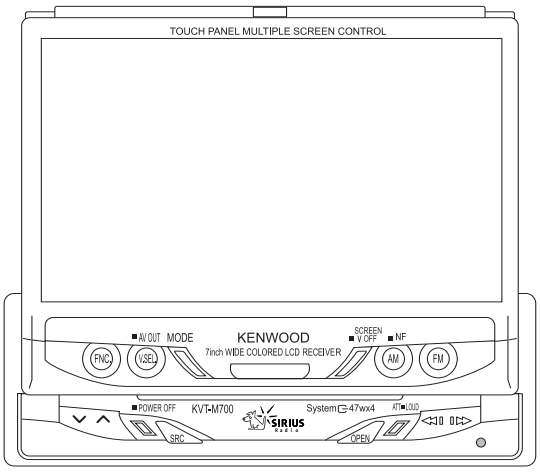


Cell Phone Antenna

030866

KENWOOD RECEIVER-MONITOR

This system uses an in-dash, 7" color video monitor and a Sirius® Satellite Radio Ready AM/FM receiver. The 7" video monitor will display the navigation and radio system information.



031050

<u>NOTE:</u>
The radio systems operate with the radio remote control or from the radio touch screen labels.

Power Requirements:

- Main battery disconnect switch (located in the battery compartment) must be on.
- Turn **ON** the interior house power using the battery cut-off switch.
- The ignition key must be in either the **ON** position or the **ACC** position.

To View:

- Press the **OPEN** button.
- The steering wheel may interfere with the monitor while opening. If this occurs, move the steering column (ensure this can be performed safely) before operating the set. The monitor will automatically retract if it cannot open due to an obstacle.
- The monitor position is adjustable. Refer to the angle control screen of the Kenwood Monitor-Receiver instruction manual.

Closing the Monitor:

- Press the **OPEN** button again to close the monitor

Power Controls:

- Press the **SRC** button for at least one second to Power **ON** the monitor.
- Press the **SRC** button again to Power **OFF** the monitor.

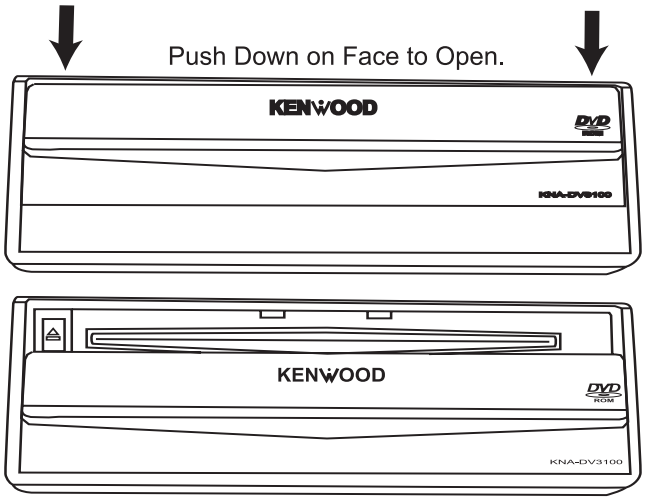
<u>INFORMATION:</u>
For more detailed instructions on the monitor or receiver, refer to the Kenwood Monitor-Receiver instruction manual.

The GPS Mobile Navigation system provides 2-D and 3-D map views, instant re-routing and voice prompted turn-by-turn instructions. The system includes a GPS antenna, a DVD ROM player, touch screen monitor and a single DVD to provide maps for the entire continental US and Canada.

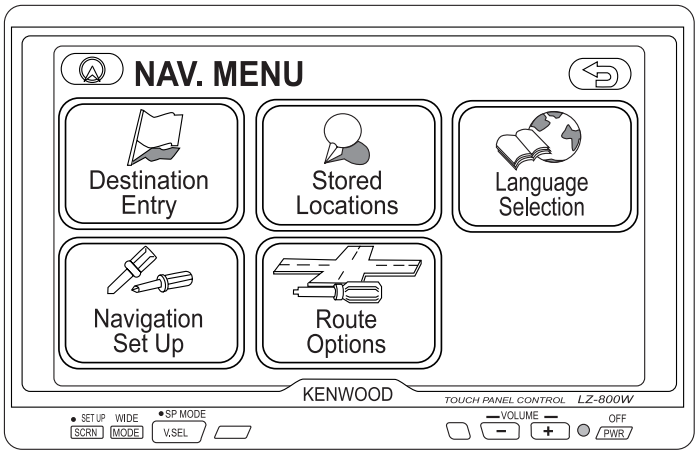
INFORMATION:
Complete information and instruction are found in the OEM instruction manual.

Perform the following instruction only when the motorhome is PARKED:

- Press the **PWR** button to turn on the Navigation monitor.
- Insert the map disk in the navigation CD unit.
- Press **V.SEL** repeatedly until **NAV** is displayed on the screen.
- When the ignition is switched on, the opening screen will appear on the monitor. The **Caution** Screen will follow.
- The monitor is a touch screen display. Press the **Agree** label to enable the **Current Position** screen.
- Press the **MENU** label to enable the main **NAVIGATION MENU**.



031052c



031051b

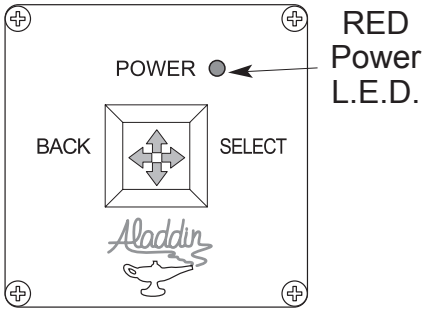
ALADDIN™ SYSTEM

The Aladdin™ system is designed to provide the operator with up-to-date chassis and house system information.

The Aladdin™ system automatically selects one of a number of cameras used to aid the driver during travel. For example, when the system is turned ON, placing the transmission in reverse will select the backup camera. Activating a turn signal will select the corresponding side view camera.

Joystick Module:

Joystick Module is the operator interface to the Aladdin™ system through the monitor and television display. Multiple joystick modules may be attached to the Aladdin™. Pushing the joystick to the right selects a menu item, pushing the joystick left takes the operator back to the previous menu. Pushing the joystick up or down enables the operator to scroll through or change information. An LED provides system-on power indication. When the joystick is moved, the LED turns off briefly ("blinks") indicating that the joystick command has been transferred to the Aladdin™. During normal operation, the LED also blinks approximately every four seconds.



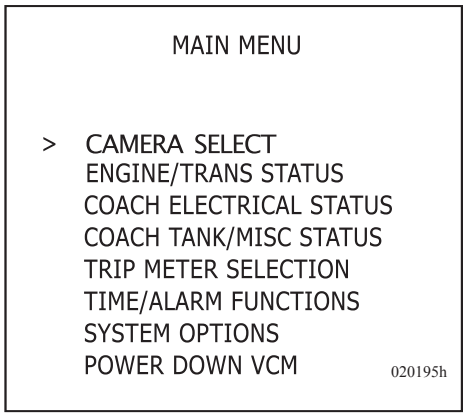
Aladdin Joystick

Operations

The Aladdin™ is turned on either with the motorhome ignition switch or a joystick. The Aladdin™ will power down when ignition is turned off, unless the operator selects the Aladdin™ to remain on.

Main Menu:

When the Aladdin™ is powered up, the main menu appears. The operator can choose any item by pressing the joystick up or down. An arrow indicates the current menu item. Pressing the joystick right will select that menu item. Pressing the joystick left goes to the previous screen.



NOTE:
Interior house power must be ON for the Aladdin™ screen to be displayed.

Select Camera:

The Aladdin™ operator can manually select one of the four video cameras that are attached to the Aladdin™. When the sub menu item is first selected after initial power-up, the Aladdin™ will display the video from each camera sequentially, changing camera view once every six seconds. A specific camera can be manually selected by moving the joystick up or down.

NOTE:

The Backup Camera is automatically selected when the transmission is placed in reverse and the side cameras are activated by the turn signals. If both turn signals are active (hazard lights) then the backup camera will be selected.

If a turn signal is activated while in reverse, the side camera will override the backup camera.

Engine/Trans Status:

Provides the operator with a single screen display of current available engine and transmission data. Compass heading and time are displayed on each screen.

If the operator moves the joystick right in this screen, an enlarged engine and transmission screen will display, showing only four parameters at a time, with five screens available. The screens are automatically scanned approximately every six seconds.

Move the joystick up or down to manually scan through the screens and disable automatic scanning. Move the joystick right to resume automatic scanning. Moving the joystick left to return to the previous all-in-one screen. A left/back from this original status screen will return the operator to the main menu.

STATUS

ENGINE	TRANS
0.0 MPH	N GEAR SET
0 RPM	NC GEAR ATT
109 F TEMP	83 F TEMP
0 PCT LOAD	
0 PSI OIL	BATTERY
0.0 MPG	13.4 VDC
0.0 CRUISE OFF	08:27 AM
E HEADING	

XX HEADING	hh:mm XM
ROAD SPEED	XXXX MPH
CRUISE INACTIVE	XXXX MPH
TRANS GEAR SELECTED	X
TRANS GEAR ATTAINED	XX

020197F

Coach Electrical Status:

The **COACH ELECTRICAL STATUS** screen will provide the operator with a display of AC Leg 1 and Leg 2 Volts, Amps and Frequency, House Battery Volts and Amps, and Solar Panel Voltage and Amps.

COACH ELECTRICAL STATUS

	VAC	AMP	SRQ
AC LEG1	117	18.4	61
AC LEG2	119	11.0	60
SOLAR	VDC	AMP	
HOUSE	13.9	1.0 CHG	
BAT	13.5	20 CHG	

Coach Tank/Mis Status:

The **COACH TANK/MISC STATUS** screen reads fresh, grey and black tank percentage full and corresponding gallons, LP-Gas tank percentage full. Basement and outside temperatures as well as compass heading will be displayed.

SET DATE AND TIME screen allows setting the current time and date. Joystick left or right selects the various digits. Joystick Up and Down changes the value.

SET DATE AND TIME

hh:mm:ss AM MM/DD/YY
^

DAY OF THE WEEK: MON

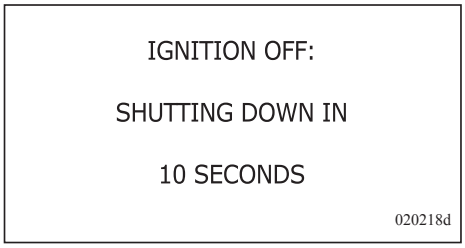
020209

COACHTANK/MISC STATUS

	PCT	GAL
FRESH TANK	0	0
GREY TANK	0	0
BLACK TANK	0	0
LP TANK	0	0
BASEMENT TEMP	63.1 F	
OUTSIDE TEMP	55.7 F	
COMP HEADING	E	

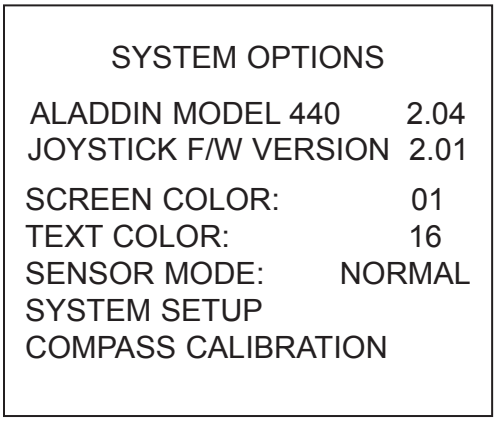
Power Down VCM:

Select **POWER DOWN VCM** to enter Low Power mode, and turn off sensor modules. Low Power mode is cancelled when any joystick module is touched.



Turning off the ignition will cause the Aladdin™ to power down. A ten-second countdown is performed prior to power down. Joystick action will abort this countdown and the Aladdin™ will remain on. The Aladdin™ can be manually powered down when desired by selecting the **POWER DOWN VCM**. If the joystick is not touched before the countdown, and the Aladdin™ has powered down, the joystick touch will cause the Aladdin™ to power back up.

System Options



The **SYSTEM OPTIONS** screen provides the operator with a submenu for Aladdin™ functions that are less frequently used, and includes screen appearance adjust. Only service personnel should use **SYSTEM SETUP** to program a new system. To assist the service technician in troubleshooting system problems, the **SENSOR MODE** may be used.

Screen and text colors are selected by accessing the menu item using joystick up and down. Move the joystick right to sequence through the seven available colors. Colors selected will be immediately displayed. Colors selected will be stored and remain in effect until changed, even if the Aladdin™ is powered down.

The usual **SENSOR MODE** is **NORMAL**. Additional options are **RAW** and **VERSION**. **RAW** mode causes the sensor modules to display raw, unmodified/calibrated data from their sensors, and might be used by technicians troubleshooting the system. **VERSION** mode causes the sensor modules to display internal software version numbers.

Compass calibration is used to match the compass module to the motorhome, and may be performed as needed.

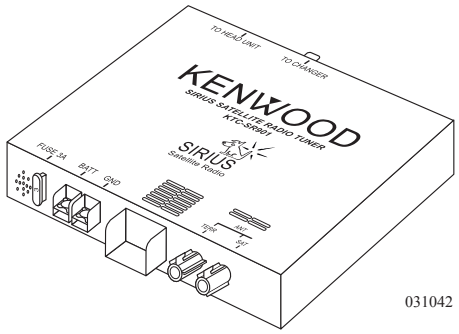
Compass Calibration

The **COMPASS CALIBRATION** system allows the operator to match the motorhome to the compass module. Calibration is accomplished by selecting **START CALIBRATION**, then driving the motorhome in a full 360° circle. At the end of driving this loop, select **STOP CALIBRATION**. At this time the Aladdin™ will request calibration status from the **TCM (Temperature Compass Module)**. A successful calibration will cause a "Calibration Successful" message to be displayed. A calibration that fails will display "Calibration Fail" and a failure code.

NOTE:
Other Aladdin™ functions and screens are discussed in respective sections of this manual.

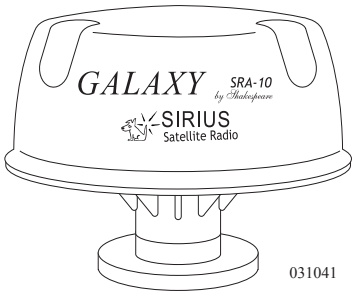
SATELLITE RADIO *(Optional)*

The Sirius® Satellite Radio is a digital signal decoder and tuner. Signals are transmitted from the Sirius ground station to one of three Sirius® satellites orbiting over the continental Unites States. The satellite then transmits the signal to the exterior surface-mounted antenna located on the roof of the motorhome. The radio receiver decodes the transmission and plays the selected channel within that transmission. Signals are also transmitted to ground repeaters for listeners in urban areas where the satellite signal can be interrupted. This means high quality programming and sound delivered directly to the Sirius® Satellite Radio without signal fade.



031042

NOTE:
For information regarding subscriptions and coverage areas visit Sirius® Radio online at www.siriusradio.com or call 1-888-539-7474.

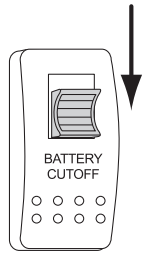


031041

INFORMATION:
For detailed information and operating instructions on the Sirius®-Ready Satellite Radio, refer to the manufacturer's manual located in the Owner's Information File.

TV & ENTERTAINMENT COMPONENTS

The components used to make up the entertainment center are carefully selected to provide the highest quality in audio and visual enjoyment. There are several pieces of equipment which encompass the entertainment center. The following paragraphs will discuss the operations and various components.



Release
Lock
080375

INFORMATION:
These instructions are a quick start guide and not a replacement for the individual component manuals. For detailed component operating instructions, refer to the respective manual.

NOTE:
It is recommended to become familiar with individual components.

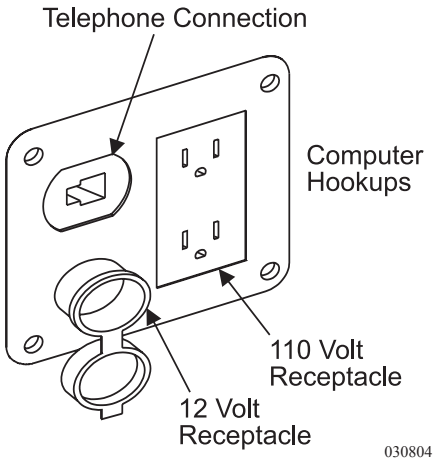
NOTE:
All components of the entertainment system require 120 Volts AC to operate. Hook to shore power, start the generator or turn on the inverter. The satellite system requires 12 Volts DC to operate. Turn on the interior house power using the battery cut-off switch.

Television (Front) Lockout Feature

The ignition switch controls the outlet for the front TV, allowing the front TV to be operated only while the vehicle is at rest. Viewing time of the front TV from the inverter depends on state of charge of the house batteries, and any additional 12 Volt DC lighting being used.

Connections - Cable TV, Computer & Telephone

The motorhome is equipped with cable TV and telephone hook-ups, located in the electrical service center. For convenience, auxiliary outlets are located at the co-pilot seat and on the optional computer desk.



Located at Entry Step

Television Inputs

The televisions have many different input that can be selected such as: a satellite dish, DVD/VCR player and/or the roof antenna. The TV tuner interfaces these different input signals from the various components to the televisions.

The Sharp TV has three inputs sources with a selection of five outputs:

• Antenna • Cable • VCR • DVD • Satellite

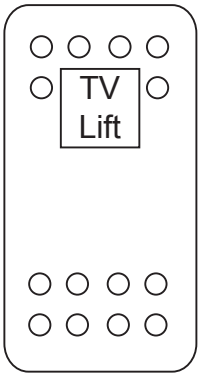
Television - Ceiling Mounted (Optional)

The flat-screen television is mounted to an assembly that will stow the television into the ceiling during travel. The "hide-a-way" system uses a 120 Volt AC motor to lower and raise the television. A 12 Volt DC ignition safety lock prevents the television from lowering during travel.

NOTE:
The ignition must be off to raise or lower the TV.

To Lower or Raise the Television:

1. Turn on the interior house power using the battery cut-off switch.
2. Hook to shore power, start the generator or turn on the inverter.
3. To Lower: Push and hold the momentary switch. It will lower after a short delay. Release the switch when fully lowered.
4. To Raise: Push and hold the switch until fully raised.



060066b

Antenna Boost

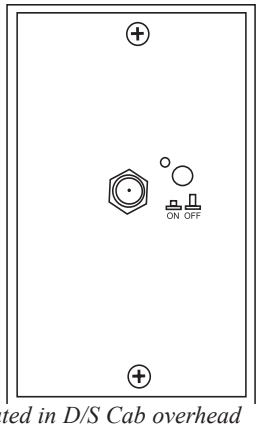
The antenna boost switch will select between watching the TV from the roof antenna or when parked and hooked to shore cable.

To watch TV from the roof antenna:

Push the button in. The LED will illuminate. The input to the TV is set to the roof antenna.

To watch TV from shore cable:

Set the button to the out position. The LED will be off. The input to the TV is set to shore cable.



030989b

Located in D/S Cab overhead

TV Antenna

The television antenna is a manual crank style antenna with built in electronics that use 12 Volts DC to "boost" signal strength. Signals that are weak or fuzzy can be amplified by pressing the black selector button. When using the antenna boost, the green LED will be illuminated. The antenna and booster work together to provide the best possible picture for most situations. Certain conditions occur when no amplification is needed, and in fact may make the picture worse. The television station will send a signal that resembles the waves or rings of water from a rock thrown into a still pond. The radiating television signal can hit an object such as a mountain and come back. This results in a double image. The antenna will receive a signal from the initial pass, and then receive an additional signal from the rebound resulting in a split or double image. In this case, the picture may be improved by no amplification or even lowering the antenna.

<u>CAUTION:</u>
Do not move motorhome with antenna in the raised or partially raised position and risk damage by tree limbs or wires. Worm gear damage or breakage may result.

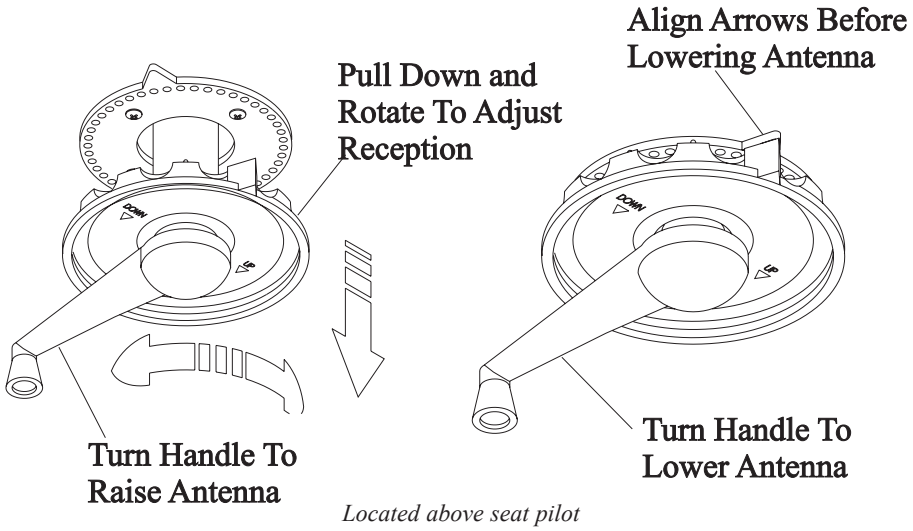
<u>WARNING:</u>
Before raising antenna, make an outside visual inspection for any obstructions or overhead electrical wires. Damage to the antenna, severe shock, personal injury or death can occur from inadequate clearance.

To Raise the Antenna:

- Rotate the crank handle clockwise to raise the antenna (approximately 14 ½ turns).
- Pull down on the outside directional wheel and rotate the antenna until the best picture is obtained. The directional wheel is spring loaded.

To Lower the Antenna:

- Pull down on the directional wheel and align arrows together.
- Rotate the crank handle counterclockwise to lower the antenna fully into the cradle. Make an outside visual inspection to ensure the antenna is properly stowed.



Located above seat pilot

130024

Television/Entertainment System - Front

To Operate Any Component:

- All the Entertainment Components require 120 Volt AC from shore power, the generator set, or the inverter to operate.
- Ensure interior house power is on and the house batteries are charged.
- The ignition key must be in the OFF position.

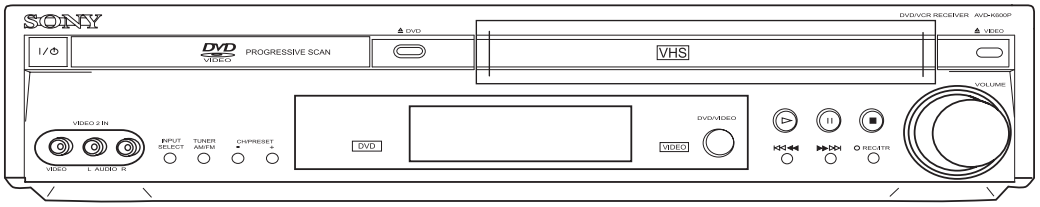
The front television entertainment system is comprised of a TV, a combination DVD/VCR Home Theater System and an optional satellite receiver.

The small red LED on the front of the TV indicates the TV is in standby mode. If the small red light is not illuminated, the main power switch for the TV must be turned on. The TV will need to be on Channel 3 for DVD, VCR, and Satellite.

NOTE:
Reading the individual component owner's manuals is strongly recommended. Many features and combinations for operating the entertainment system components are available.

031110

NOTE:
Auxiliary components must be on.



DVD/VCR Home Theatre System Combo

Flat Screen TV Operation:

To Watch the Front Television from the roof antenna or shore cable:

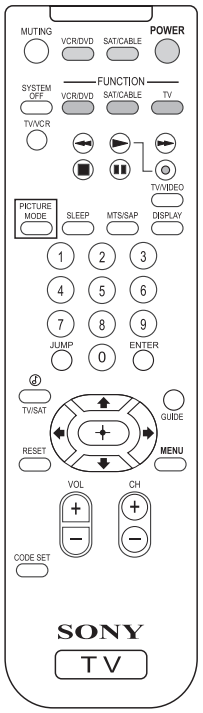
- Turn TV on.
- Turn on Antenna Boost for root antenna or off for shore cable.
- Press TV/Video button using the TV remote until TV is displayed.

To Play a DVD or Video Tape:

- Turn on TV and VCR/DVD Player.
- Push either VCR or DVD on the remote.
- Select Video 2 on TV remote with TV/Video button.

To Watch the Satellite:

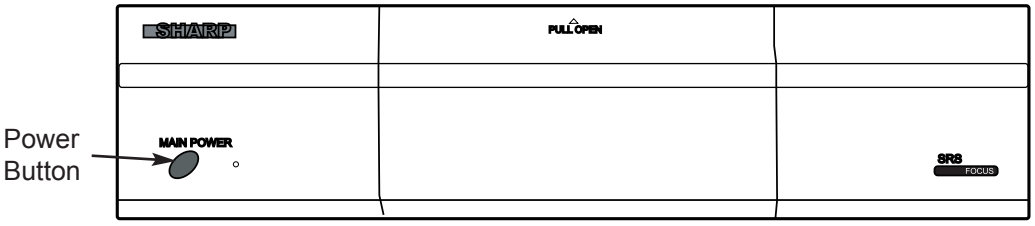
- Turn on the satellite receiver, controller and TV.
- Select Video 1 with TV/Video button on TV remote.
- Change channels using the satellite remote.



030881f

NOTE:

Inclement weather conditions may adversely affect the acquisition of a satellite signal. Degraded audio and video signals through the receiver will result.



TV Tuner located in cabinet above co-pilet seat

031120

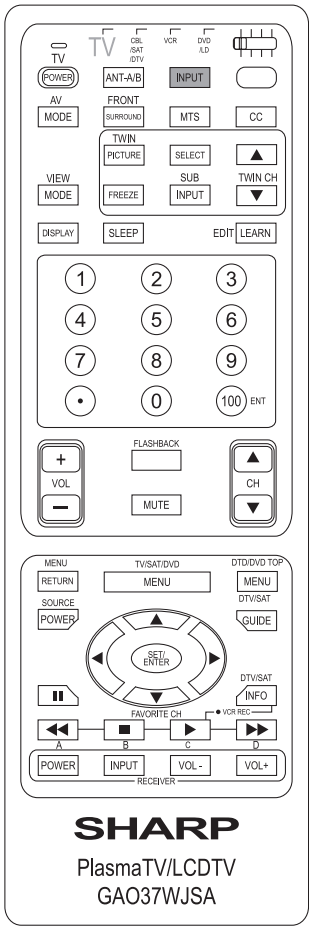
LCD TV Operation:

To Watch the Front Television from the roof antenna or shore cable:

- Turn on the Power button on the TV tuner. To turn on the TV press the Power button using the remote. Press the Input button on the top of the remote until the Input Source menu indicates TV.
- If selecting roof antenna, turn on Antenna Boost. For shore cable, turn antenna boost off.
- Using the TV remote, select desired channel and adjust volume.

To Play a DVD or Video Tape:

- Turn on the Power button on the TV tuner (on TV with separate tuner). To turn on the TV press the Power button using the remote. Press the Input button on the top of the TV remote until the Input Source menu indicates Input 3.
- Press the **DVD** or **VIDEO** button on the Home Theater System remote or press the **DVD/VIDEO** button on the Home Theater System until **DVD** or **VIDEO** displays. Insert **DVD** or video tape and unit will automatically begin playing.
- Adjust the volume using the TV remote or the Home Theater System.



031078

To Watch the Satellite:

- Turn on TV and tuner (on TV with separate tuner).
- Using the Sharp GA037 remote, press the INPUT button until INPUT 1 displays on the TV.
- Turn on the Satellite Receiver.
- Turn on the Satellite controller.
- Adjust the volume using the Home Theater System remote.

NOTE:
Inclement weather conditions may adversely affect the acquisition of a satellite signal. Degraded audio and video signals through the receiver will result.

To Play a Music CD:

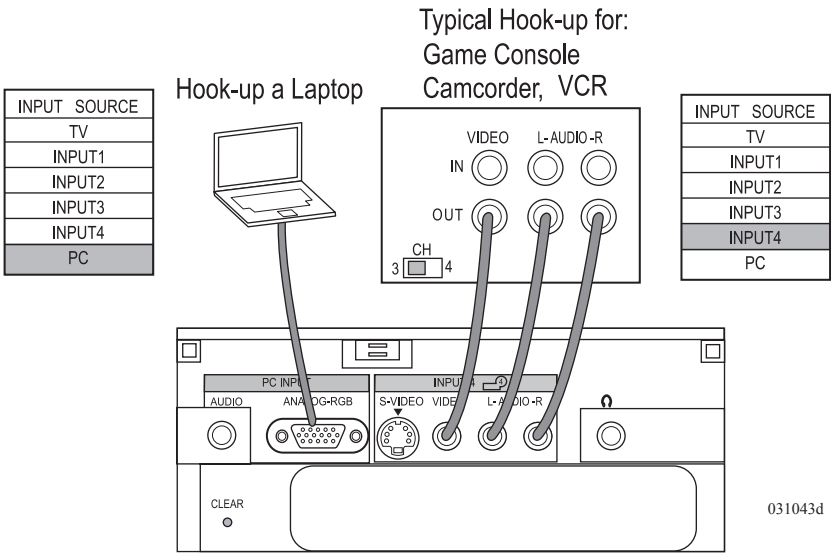
- Press the DVD button on the Home Theater System remote or press the DVD/VIDEO button on the Home Theater System until DVD displays. Press the Open/Close button. Place a CD on the tray with label up.
- Adjust the volume using the Home Theater System remote.

Hooking Up Auxiliary Equipment:

Additional equipment can be hooked up to the Front LCD tuner. Located behind the access door are auxiliary RCA jacks and RGB (PC) port.

INFORMATION:
Before hooking up additional equipment, refer to the equipment manufacturer manuals for cautions and instructions.

NOTE:
Refer to each component manual for in-depth operating instructions.



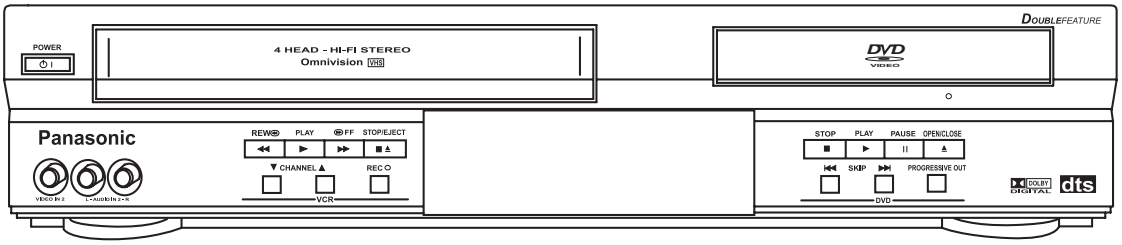
Behind drop down door on TV tuner in cabinet above co-pilot seat.

NOTE:
The flat screen TV requires adequate signal for proper operation. Audio is through the home theater system only.

The bedroom television system, separate from the front system, is comprised of a 20" flat screen TV (standard) or the optional 22" LCD TV (standard with the 42' Countess) with built in tuner, a combination DVD/VCR and a optional Hughes satellite receiver.

The bedroom system, separate from the front, operates similar to the front system. The small red LED on the front of the TV indicates the TV is in standby mode. If the small red light is not illuminated, the main power switch for the TV must be turned on. On the flat screen TV, the main power switch is on the front of the TV. The Main Power switch on the optional LCD can be found on the right side of the TV, behind the access panel. The button located about halfway up is the Power button.

NOTE:
Reading the individual component owner's manuals is strongly recommended. Many features and combinations for operating the entertainment system components are available.



BedroomDVD/VCR Player

031110B

Flat Screen TV:

Using the TV remote to select Antenna or Cable:

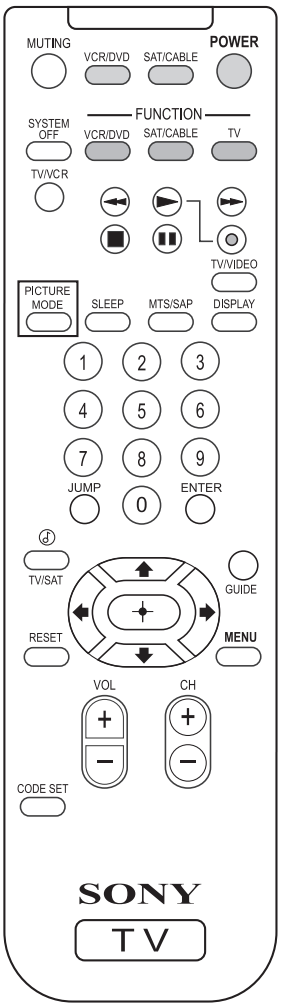
- Use the TV in/out switch to slide TV out of cabinet.
- Turn TV on with power button.
- Turn on Antenna Boost.
- Press TV/Video (*) button using the TV remote until TV is displayed.

To Select Satellite Viewing:

- Turn on the satellite receiver, controller and TV.
- Select Video 1 with TV/ Video button on TV remote.
- Change channels using the satellite remote.

To Select VCR or DVD:

- Turn on TV and VCR/DVD Player.
- Push either VCR or DVD on the remote.
- Select Video 2 on TV remote with TV/ Video button (*).



Standard T.V Remote

030881f

LCD TV:

Using the TV remote to select Antenna or Cable:

- Turn on the Power button on the TV tuner. To turn on the TV, press the Power button using the remote. Press the Input button on the top of the remote until the Input Source menu indicates TV.
- If selecting roof antenna, turn on Antenna Boost. For shore cable, turn antenna boost off.
- Using the TV remote, select desired channel and adjust volume.

NOTE:

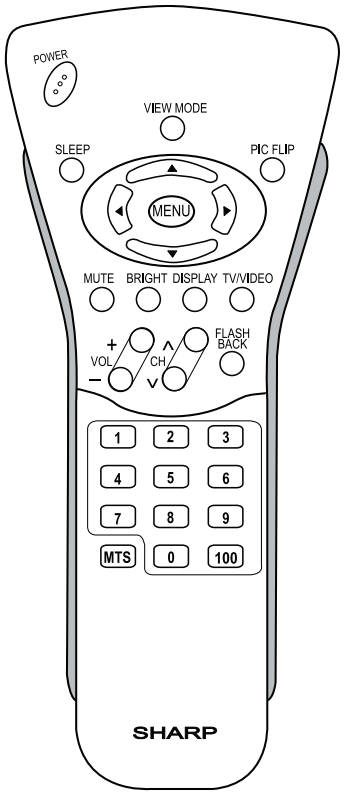
Auxiliary components must be on.

To Select Satellite Viewing:

- Turn on the satellite receiver, controller and the TV.
- Using the Channel UP/DOWN arrows on the TV remote, select CHANNEL 3.
- Follow screen instructions for the satellite system.

To Select VCR or DVD:

- Turn the TV on.
- Turn the VCR/DVD on.
- Push either VCR or DVD player on the VCR/DVD remote (TV automatically goes to CH 3).
- Load DVD disc or VHS tape and push PLAY.



Bedroom LCD TV Remote

031107

SATELLITE SYSTEM *(Optional)*

Satellite Receiver

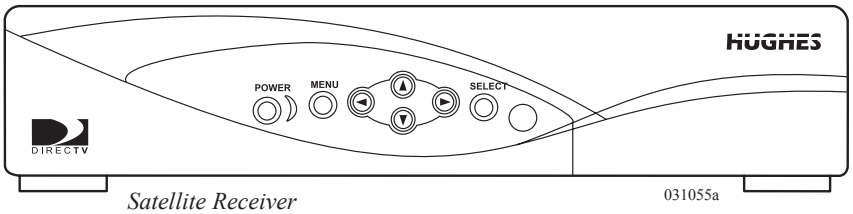
The Internal Receiver Descrambler (IRD) receives satellite signals from the antenna for decoding, processing, and channel selection, and then sends those signals to the TV for viewing. The IRD also provides the interface for the user to activate authorization for reception.

INFORMATION:

Refer to the IRD User's Manual for complete operating instructions.

NOTE:

The satellite remote can be programmed for Infrared (IR) or Radio Frequency (RF). This will enable either line of sight or control from another area. The IR setting requires the remote to have a direct line of sight to the satellite receiver. The RF setting allows the remote to operate the receiver from any room.

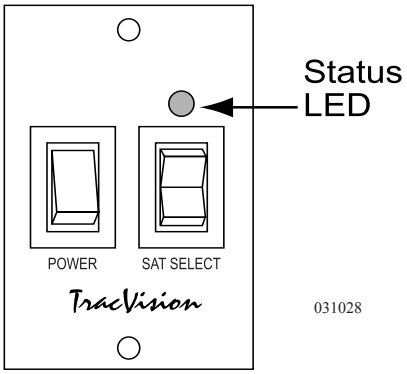


Satellite Receiver

031055a

Tracvision System (Optional)

The TracVision SF is a self-contained stationary, automatic satellite TV system. The TracVision SF automatically acquires and tracks DirecTV®, DISH Network™ and Bell ExpressVu satellite signals throughout the continental United States when the motorhome is in a stationary position. The satellite controller is plugged into an outlet behind the panel. To engage power the motorhome needs to be hooked to shore power, the generator running or the inverter operating.



Located in Cabinet above pilot seat.

<u>WARNING:</u>
TracVision SF is a self-acquiring satellite TV antenna for use when the motorhome is stationary. The system is not designed to track the TV satellite when the motorhome is in motion.

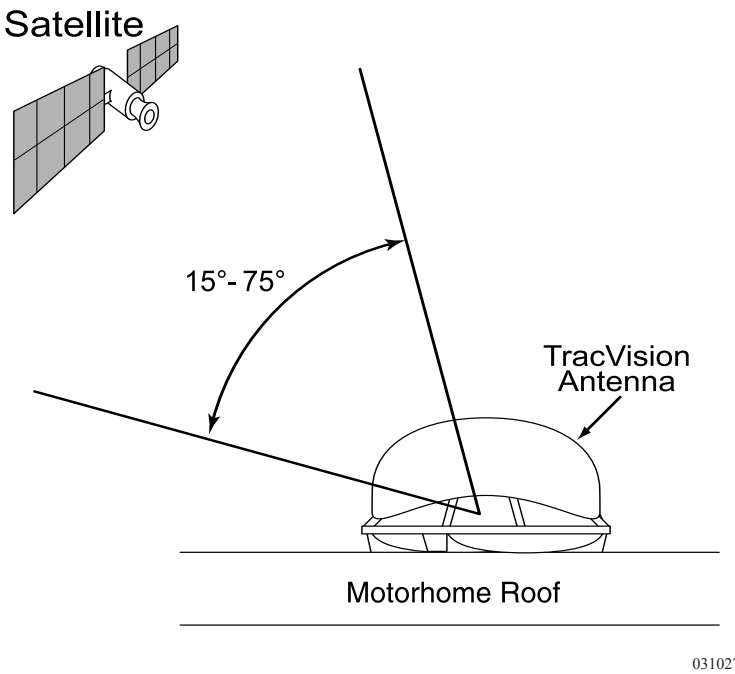
<u>NOTE:</u>
The satellite receiver must be turned on for the system to function. The receiver has many options.

<u>NOTE:</u>
For specific satellite coverage areas and providers visit KVH online at www.kvh.com.

Operation

The TracVision SF satellite system requires a clear view of the southern sky to receive satellite signals. Ideal antenna site has an unobstructed view of 15º to 75º in the Southern horizon.

If the satellite antenna receives intermittent signals, or cannot locate the satellite, check around the motorhome for objects that could be blocking the signal, such as trees, buildings, etc. The satellite antenna must be located in the selected satellite coverage area in order to receive a signal.



To Watch the Satellite:

- Turn on the TV and tuner (if TV has a separate tuner).
- Using the TV remote, Universal remote or manual TV controls select the VIDEO display for Satellite Video. Ensure the display is on the TV screen.
- Ensure the Satellite Receiver is on.
- Ensure the Satellite Remote panel is on.

NOTE:
As part of the startup process, the TracVision SF System will default to channel 200, a program directory. This is the system's means of verifying that it has identified and is tracking the correct satellite. Once channel 200 appears, wait at least another 30 seconds before changing the channel to ensure that the system has completed the startup routine.

System Start-up:

- Upon power-up, the system performs a set of start-up routines.
- Antenna then searches for a TV satellite.
- After locating a satellite, the IRD data connection determines whether the satellite signal can be decoded. If so, the antenna locks onto and tracks the satellite.

NOTE:
Once the startup procedure is complete and the antenna is locked onto the correct satellite, the TracVision SF power switch may be turned off to avoid unnecessary discharge of house battery power. Because the antenna LNB receives its power from the IRD, the antenna will continue to receive the satellite TV signals and relay them to the IRD.

NOTE:
If the antenna is unable to locate the desired satellite, refer to Section 4 "Troubleshooting" of the TracVision SF User's Manual for possible causes and corrective actions.

"*Instant On*" Operation

As part of operation, the TracVision SF routinely saves the satellite position to memory. When TracVision SF is powered up, the system looks at the last saved position. If the motorhome has not changed location, the antenna will immediately acquire the signal.

If the motorhome moves after the TracVision SF is turned off, the antenna will quickly carry out normal initialization routine to re-acquire the satellite. To turn off the TracVision SF system, press the **POWER** button.

NOTE:
It is highly recommended that the TracVision SF be turned OFF prior to moving the motorhome. TracVision SF will not track a satellite while the motorhome is in motion.

TracVision SF system requires the following preventive maintenance to maintain optimum performance.

Monthly:

- Wash the exterior of the radome and base plate assembly with fresh water; a mild detergent may be added to remove grime. **DO NOT** spray the radome directly with high-pressure water.
- **DO NOT** apply abrasive cleaners or volatile solvents, such as acetone, to the ABS dome.

Annually:

- Have the TracVision SF satellite system inspected by a professional RV Technician or TracVision satellite installer.
- Apply full strength liquid dish detergent to the dome surface and allow it to dry. This treatment provides a film on the dome surface that will allow moisture to bead up and roll off.

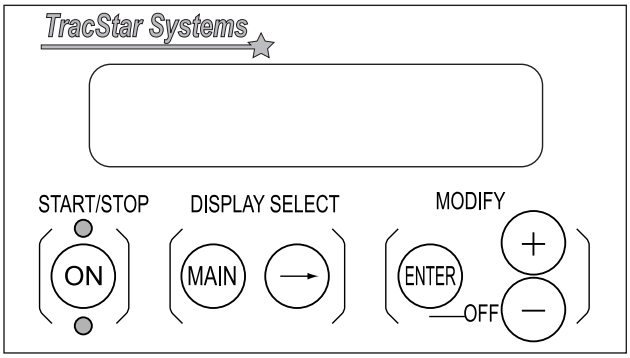
NOTE:
If a need arises to paint the radome, ONLY use non-metallic automotive paint to avoid degrading the RF signal strength and the reception quality.

INFORMATION:
For information on KVH warranty, repair, and liability policies, please refer to the complete warranty statement provided with the KVH User's Manual.

In-Motion System (Optional)

TracStar SV360 In-Motion Satellite System:

Press the **ON** button to allow the dish inside the dome to rotate and acquire the signal from the satellite. After the system has obtained the signal, the display can be turned off by pressing the **ENTER** and **-** button simultaneously.



Located in cabinet above pilot seat. 031033

To Use the In-Motion System:

- Turn on the display unit.
- Turn on the Satellite Receiver.

NOTE:
Inclement weather conditions may adversely affect the satellite signal acquisition. Degraded audio and video signals through the receiver will result.

UNIVERSAL REMOTE

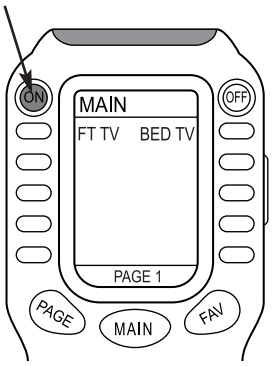
Each component of the home entertainment system includes a remote. The MX-800 universal remote is designed to simplify system operation by simultaneously performing functions. There may be minor variations in programming due to the various combinations of component makes and models. Each time the remote performs a function, the icon will illuminate. Some command functions will require repeat pressing of a button when adjusting the volume or changing channels, as indicated by the icon briefly illuminating. Other commands continuously respond, as indicated, by the icon illuminating while the button remains pressed.

Subject matters are abbreviated such as FT TV for Front TV. From the main menu press the ON button to engage the home theater components. Press OFF to turn all components off. Press a button next to a menu item to enter that menu subject. Press the button next to a subject to enable that feature. Macro will display at the bottom of the remote to indicate the remote is performing multiple tasks.

Example - To Watch TV:

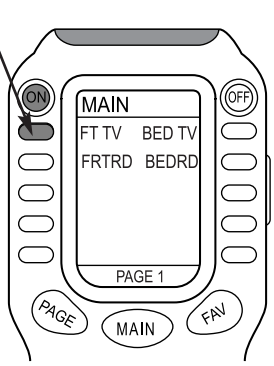
(1) Turn on all components from the main menu by pressing On. All components in the home theater system should turn on.
(2) Press FT TV to display the components that will work through the front TV.
(3) Select a desired component such as TV.
(4) Front TV screen will display.

Step 1 - Press ON



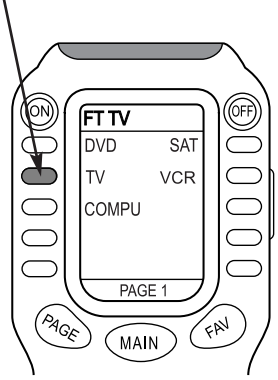
From the **MAIN** menu press **ON**. All components will turn on.

Step 2 - Press FT TV



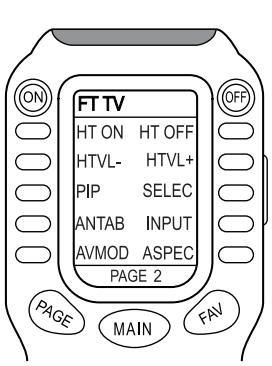
Press **FT TV** to display component menu.

Step 3 - Press TV



Press **TV** to watch television and display the TV menu.

Step 4 - Front TV Display



031112b

Use **VOL** to adjust TV volume and **CH** to adjust the channels. **ANTAB** selects between antenna and shore cable.

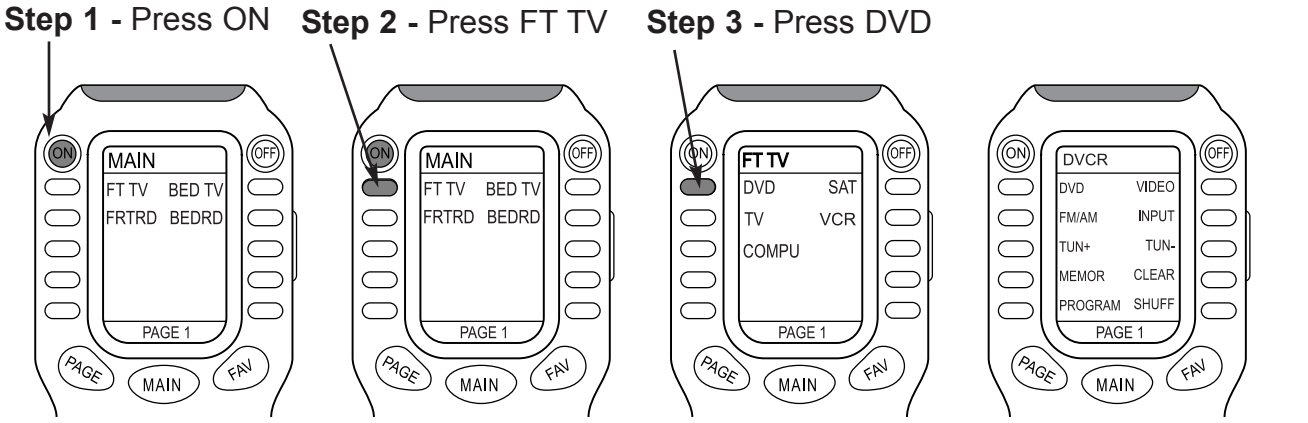
When selecting a component, a sub-menu for the selected component will appear. Press the button next to a subject. The component sub-menu will enter, change or alter that subject. If the desired action for that component is not on Page 1 of the sub-menu, press the PAGE button to bring up subsequent sub-menus (if available) for that component. Press the MAIN button to return to the main menu.

The remote cannot perform all requirements, such as pressing a main power button on a component, but it does eliminate having to use several remotes. Not all features or functions of components are programmed into the remote. Programming for the remote is set to interface several components and interrelated functions to obtain a desired command.

NOTE:
The remote is programmed to perform basic commands for the most commonly used features of the components. For in-depth component operation, refer to the OEM manual for that component.

Familiarization with component interfacing will ease operation of the remote. If components have been manually turned on or off prior to the ON command from the main menu, some components will already be turned on or off. Use the remote to gain experience with the various functions. Press MAIN to return to the main menu at any time.

NOTE:
For ease of operating the MX-800 remote, it is recommended to initially operate each component manually in order to become familiar with how each component operates and interfaces.



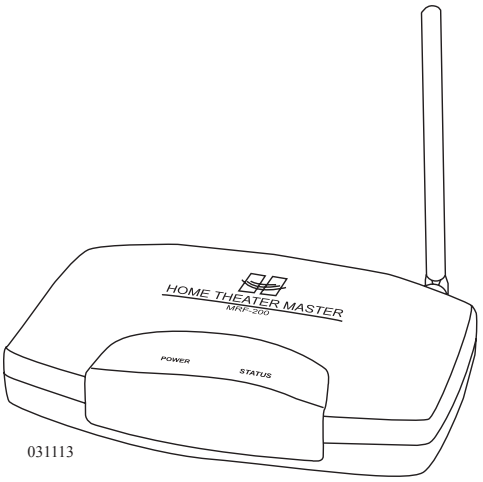
031112

From the **MAIN** menu press **ON**. The components will turn on.

Press **FT TV** to display component menu.

Press **DVD** to display DVD menu.

Select **DVD** or **Video** to play disc or video tape.

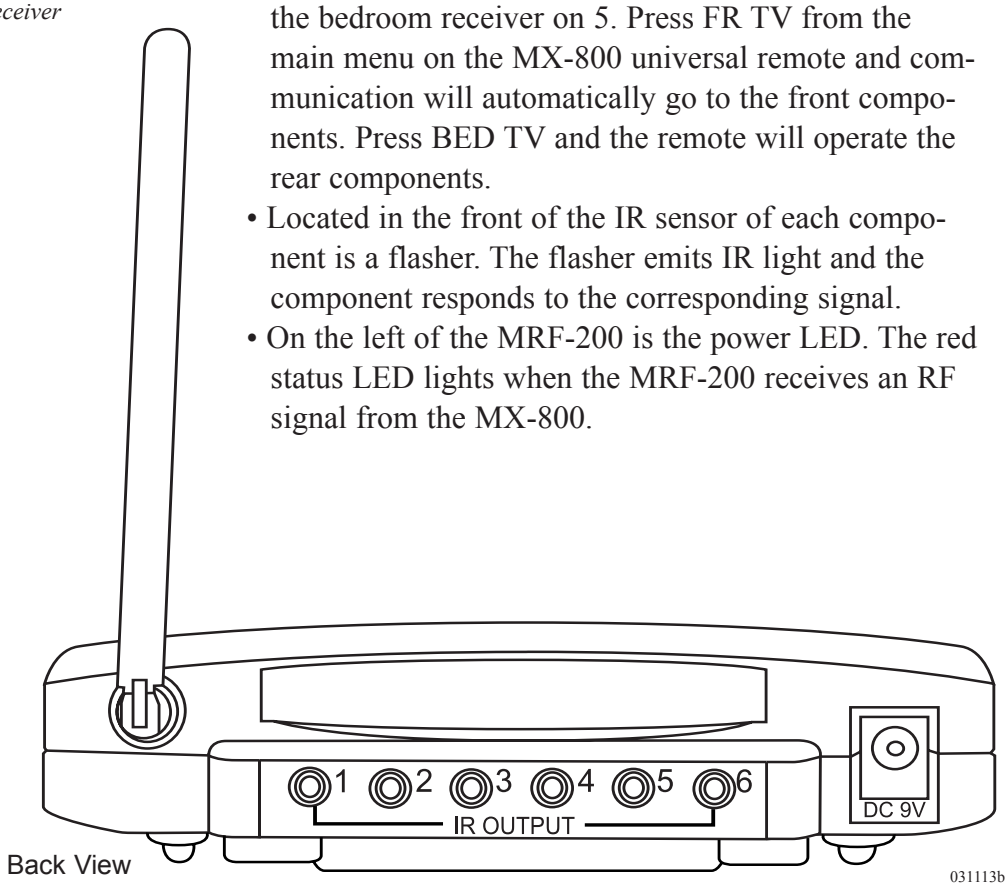


MRF-200 Receiver

MRF-200 Receiver

How it Functions:

- The MRF-200 receiver converts radio frequency signals received from the MX-800 to infrared signals to operate each of the Home Entertainment components.
- The receiver is plugged into a 120 Volt AC outlet and requires the motorhome be hooked to shore power, the generator running or the inverter operating.
- There is one receiver in the cabinet above the co-pilot seat and one receiver behind the TV in the bedroom.
- On the bottom of each receiver is an ID# dial that is set at the factory. The living room receiver is set on 1, the bedroom receiver on 5. Press FR TV from the main menu on the MX-800 universal remote and communication will automatically go to the front components. Press BED TV and the remote will operate the rear components.
- Located in the front of the IR sensor of each component is a flasher. The flasher emits IR light and the component responds to the corresponding signal.
- On the left of the MRF-200 is the power LED. The red status LED lights when the MRF-200 receives an RF signal from the MX-800.



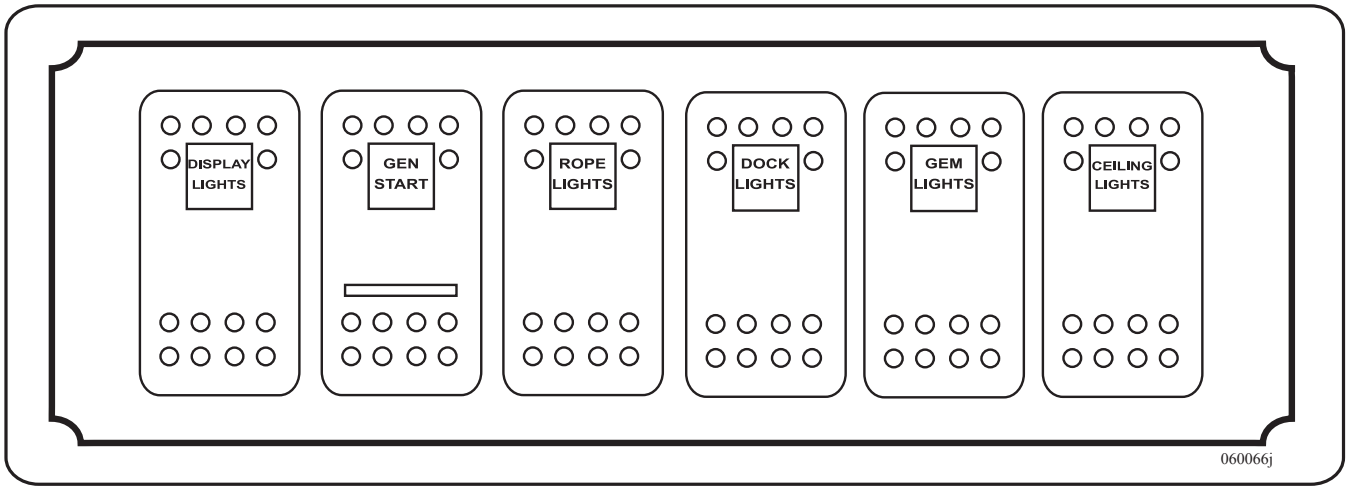
Located in cabinet above co-pilot seat and in bedroom entertainment cabinet.

BEDROOM PANEL

The bedroom panel contains various switches that control bedroom lighting and generator remote starting

To Activate the Panel:
• Use the battery cut-off switch to turn on interior house power.

Switches:
• **Display Lights** = Turns on the bedroom panel backlights.
• **Gen Start** = Starts and stops the generator. Also displays generator fault codes.
• **Rope lights** = Turns on bedroom valance lights.
• **Dock Lights** = Turns on outside docking lights.
• **Gem Light** = Turns on overhead cabinet lights.
• **Ceiling Lights** = Turns on the bedroom ceiling lights. The switch works in conjunction with the bedroom switch located on wall.



Located on bed cabinet above front night stand.

NOTE:
The generator switch is not affected by house battery power.

NOTES

The Executive 2005

Water Systems

Section 6

WATER SYSTEMS - INTRODUCTION.....267
WATER TANKS.....268
Measurements & Calibration.....268
Gravity Fill.....270
WATER - HOSE REEL.....271
City Hook-Up.....271
Fresh Tank Fill.....272
PLUMBING MANIFOLD.....272
WATER PUMP.....273
Water Pump Troubleshooting.....274
Pressure Accumulator Tank.....275
WATER FILTERS.....276
Galley Water Filter & Sanitizer (OPT).....277
Maintenance.....279
WATER SYSTEMS.....281
Troubleshooting.....281
Disinfecting Fresh Water.....281
FAUCETS.....282
SOAP DISPENSER - LIQUID.....283
WASTE WATER SYSTEMS.....284
Proper Waste Disposal.....284
What Not to Put in Waste Holding Tanks.....284
Waste Drain & Sewage Tanks.....285
Waste Drain Hose.....285
What to Put in Holding Tanks - Black Water Tank...286
What to Put in Holding Tanks - Grey Water Tank....286
Tank Flush.....287
DUMPING SYSTEM (OPT).....288
TOILET.....290
Cleaning & Maintenance.....291
Drain Traps & Auto Vents.....292
COLD WEATHER CONDITIONS.....293
Cold Weather Storage.....293
WINTERIZATION.....293
Using Air Pressure.....294
Using Nontoxic Antifreeze.....296
De-Winterization.....297
SERVICE CENTER.....298
TYPICAL WATER BAY.....299
WATER SYSTEMS DIAGRAM.....300

This section contains information about the operation and care of the various water system equipment found in the motorhome. Optional water equipment will also be discussed, so not all information may be applicable to the motorhome. More detailed information with **CAUTION** or **WARNING** instructions for the various equipment, other than what is found in this section, can be found in the manufacturer's manual in the owner information box.

It is hard to imagine how much water is used by the average person. Newcomers to a self-contained motorhome soon discover water does not last long unless consumption is drastically reduced. For example, less water can be used for showering if the shower is turned off while soaping down, then turned back on to rinse. This way a good shower uses a couple gallons of water or less. There is plenty of water to meet personal needs once habits are adjusted.

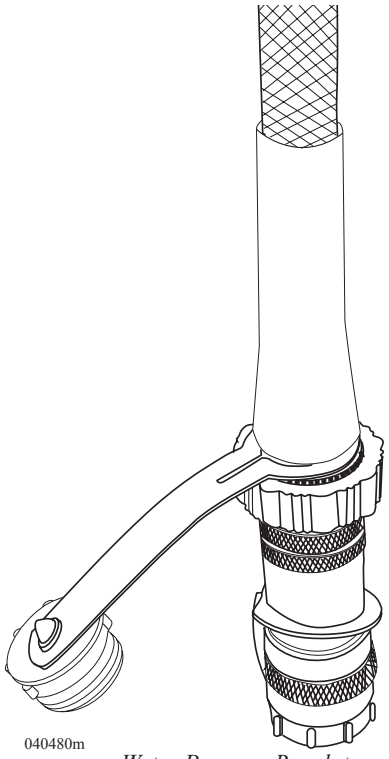
Fresh Water System:

The fresh water system consists of the fresh water tank, water pump, gravity fill connection, water filter(s) and a water hose for potable water use only. Proper care of the hose is necessary. After each use, drain the water hose. Roll the hose up onto the hose reel. Attach the regulator and plug to keep out insects and debris.

Waste Water System:

The waste water system consists of a waste holding tank (grey water), a sewage holding tank (black water), flush system, toilet and drains.

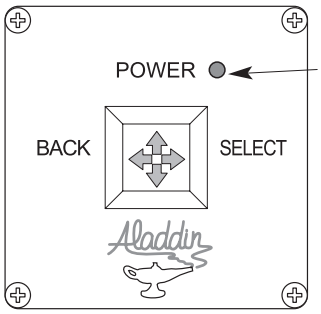
WARNING:
Water is electrically conductive. Do not use any electrically powered item or electrical outlet that may be exposed to a water source, such use can result in a serious shock causing injury or death.



Water Pressure Regulator Attached to Hose Reel

WATER TANKS - *Measurements & Calibration*

The Aladdin™ system is used to monitor various systems including holding tank capacity. From the main menu, move the joystick until the cursor is next to **Coach Tank/Misc Status**. Move the joystick right to display tank status.



Aladdin Joystick 080377d

The Coach Tank/Misc Status screen displays:
- Fresh, grey and black tank percentage full and corresponding gallons.
- LP-Gas tank percentage of full.
- Basement and outside temperatures.
- Compass heading.

Access the **Main Menu**, scroll down to the **Systems Options** screen.

MAIN MENU

> CAMERA SELECT
ENGINE/TRANS STATUS
COACH ELECTRICAL STATUS
COACH TANK/MISC STATUS
TRIP METER SELECTION
TIME/ALARM FUNCTIONS
SYSTEM OPTIONS
POWER DOWN VCM

020195h

Calibration:

Fresh, grey and black tank percentages are determined by the tank sensors. Tank sensors measure the height of the water in the tank. Gallons entered are equally divided by the Aladdin™ system between empty and full calibration.

COACH TANK/MISC STATUS

	PCT	GAL
FRESH TANK	XXXX	XXXXX
GRAY TANK	XXXX	XXXXX
BLACK TANK	XXXX	XXXXX
LP TANK	XXXX	XXXXX
BASEMENT TEMP	XXXX	F
OUTSIDE TEMP	XXXX	F
COMP HEADING	XX	

020199e

NOTE:
The Aladdin system is calibrated at the factory. Calibration should only need to be performed if a component in the system is replaced.

SYSTEM OPTIONS

ALADDIN MODEL 440 2.04
JOYSTICK F/M VERSION 2.01

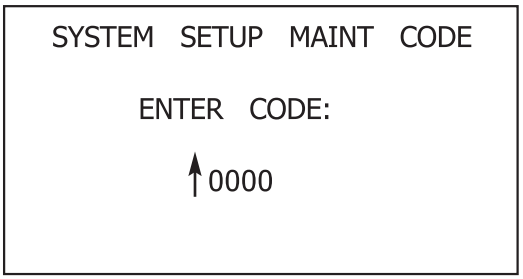
SCREEN COLOR: 01
TEXT COLOR: 16
SENSOR MODE: NORMAL
SYSTEM SETUP
COMPASS CALIBRATION

Systems Options screen displays:
- Screen Color
- Text Color
- Sensor Mode
- System Setup
- Compass Calibration

System Setup:

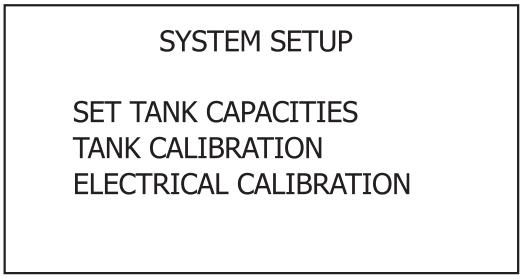
Should only be used by a technician initializing or troubleshooting the system. Requires access code 1218.

NOTE:
Only service personnel should enter the access code.



020195e

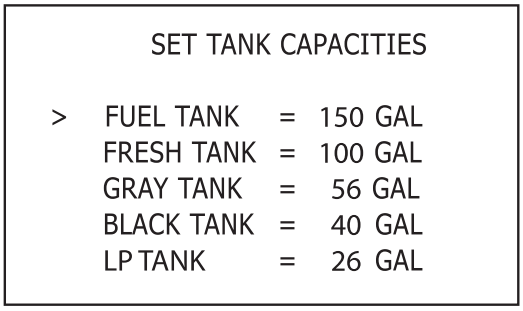
Move the joystick to the **right** to enter **Set Tank Capacities**. Move the joystick **Up** or **Down** to select the tank. Move the joystick **right** to enter. Move the joystick **Up** or **Down** to change the **Hundreds** value. Move the joystick **right** from the hundreds digit to set.



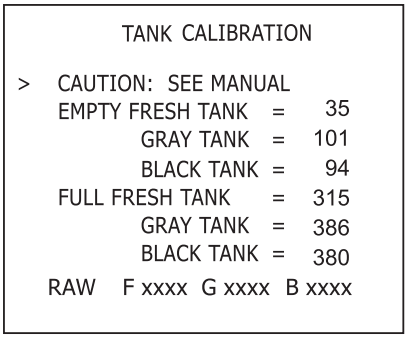
020214c

Set Tank Capacities Screen:

The purpose of setting tank capacities is to program the Aladdin™ system fuel and holding tank capacities in gallons. The Aladdin system uses the fuel tank capacity information to estimate fuel remaining calculations.



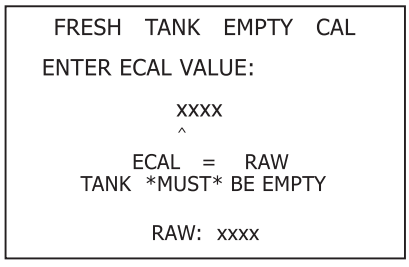
020216c



020218g

Tank Calibration Screen:

Displays the current value of each of the calibration parameters, and RAW data value from the Tank Interface Module.



020218g

Empty Calibration:

Empty calibration must be done with the tank empty. All that is necessary is to enter the value of the raw data (displayed on the bottom of the calibration screen).

Full Calibration:

Full calibration can be performed at any time. If the tank is full (verified by visual tank inspection) it is only required to enter the current raw value. If the tank is not full, it is necessary to measure the tank height (from centerline of the sensor to the top of the tank, in millimeters). Add this value to the empty cal value, and subtract 19; then enter this number for the full calibration value.

```
FRESH  TANK   FULL   CAL
ENTER FCAL VALUE:
        xxxx
        ^
FCAL = RAW AT FULL TANK
FCAL = ECAL + THmm - 19
RAW: xxxx   ECAL xxx
```

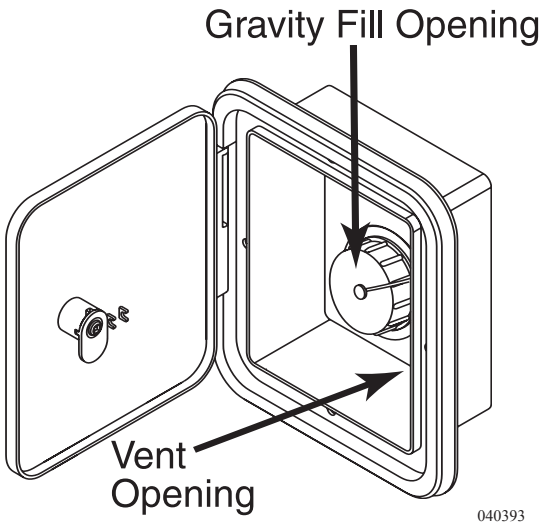
020218h

NOTE:
The sensors measure the tank in millimeters. Incorrect tank capacities will provide incorrect readings. Calibration settings are memorized regardless if the system loses power.

NOTE:
The Aladdin™ system must be in Normal mode to allow the Tank Level Sensors to memorize calibration settings.

Gravity Fill

The gravity fill inlet allows fluids to be added directly into the fresh water tank. When dry camping, water can be poured directly from a container into the fresh water tank. The gravity fill inlet can be used to pour disinfecting solution into the fresh water tank or when using potable RV antifreeze to winterize the fresh water system. Use only potable water sources, solutions and delivery systems when using the gravity fill inlet.



040393

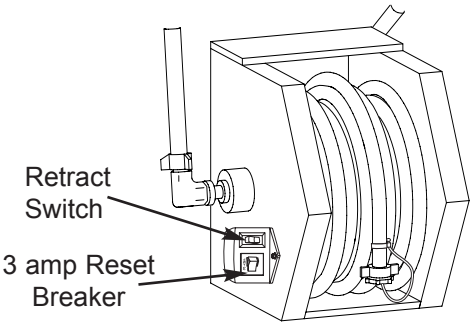
Located to the rear of plumbing service center

Filling the Tank:

1. Unscrew fill cap taking care to keep cap and inlet clean.
2. Insert potable water hose into inlet.
3. Fill tank until water overflows from inlet.

NOTE:
Do not leave the gravity fill inlet unattended when in use.

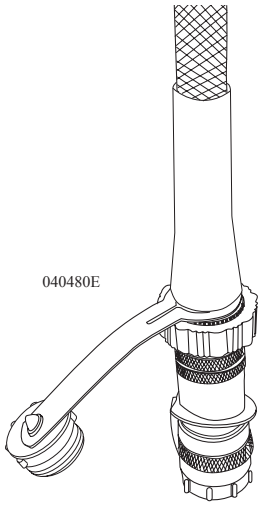
The convenience of the water hose reel eliminates the need to store a potable water hose in the bay. Use the hose reel for city water hook-up or to fill the fresh water tank. The reel is equipped with a 35 foot hose and a 12 Volt DC motor that will rewind the hose after use. The water reel is located in the roadside bay.



Located in roadside bay in front of plumbing service center. 040480k

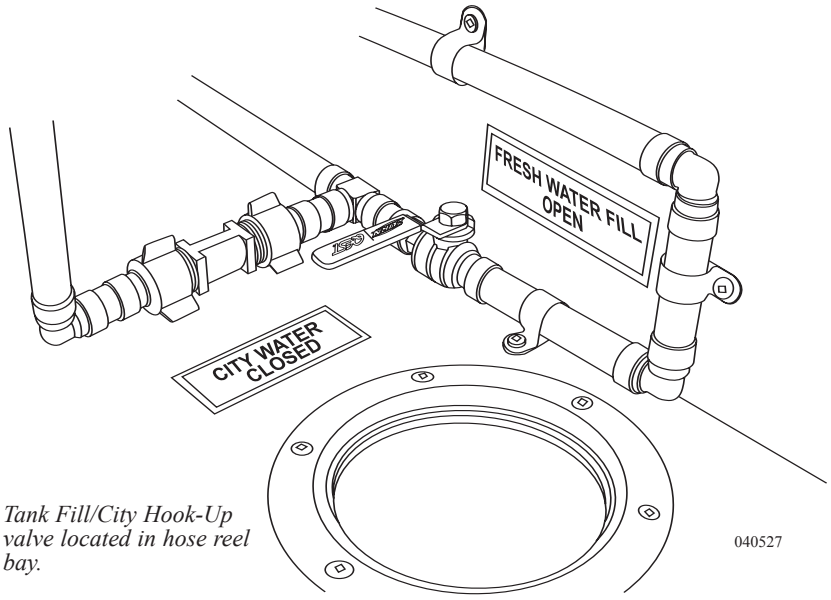
City Hook-Up

- Remove hose plug and install a water pressure regulator to the water hose.
- Connect the water hose to a City Water hook-up.
- Turn the city water/tank fill valve to the City Water - Closed position.
- Turn on the water supply.
- The water pump can either be off or on. It will not affect the water pump to leave it on.



Water Pressure Regulator Attached to Hose Reel

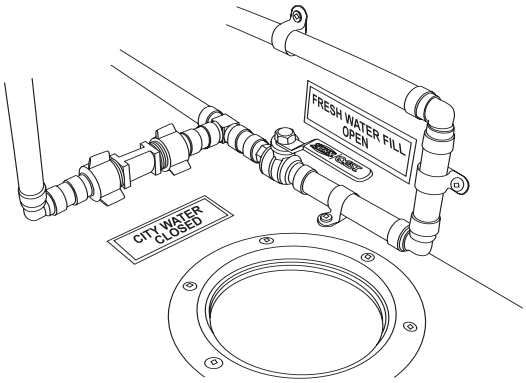
<u>CAUTION:</u>
Some outside water sources develop high water pressure, particularly in mountainous regions. High water pressure is anything over 55 psi (pounds per square inch). An additional pressure regulator can be connected to the city water faucet to regulate the pressure to the potable water hose. Excessive water pressure may cause leaks in water lines and on a hot day, cause the water hose to swell and burst.



Tank Fill/City Hook-Up valve located in hose reel bay. 040527

Fresh Tank Fill

- Remove hose plug and install a water pressure regulator to the water hose.
- Connect the water hose to a City Water hook-up.
- Turn the city water/tank fill valve to the Fresh Water Fill - Open position.
- Turn on the water supply.
- The water pump should be off.
- The water tank is full when water comes out the tank overflow pipe located on the curbside of the motorhome. Shut the water supply off as soon as possible.



040527b

Tank Fill/ City Hook-up valve located in hose reel bay.

NOTE:
When filling the fresh water tank, do not leave the hose unattended. Watch for water to come out of the overflow located at the curb side of the motorhome in front of the drive axle. Turn water off before a full blast of water comes out. Use the Aladdin system to monitor tank filling.

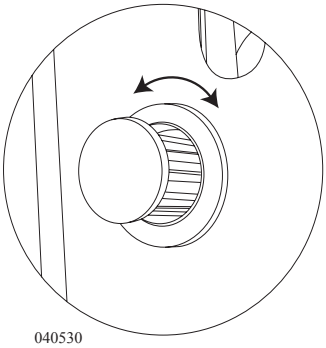
To Retract the Hose Reel:

- Disconnect the water hose from the faucet. Do not leave water regulator attached to faucet.
- Press the retract switch and guide the hose onto the reel.
- Install plug in hose when not in use.

Maintenance:

When using the hose, look for kinks. Periodically fully extend the hose. Straighten the hose on the ground. It is important that the water hose remains clean.

PLUMBING MANIFOLD

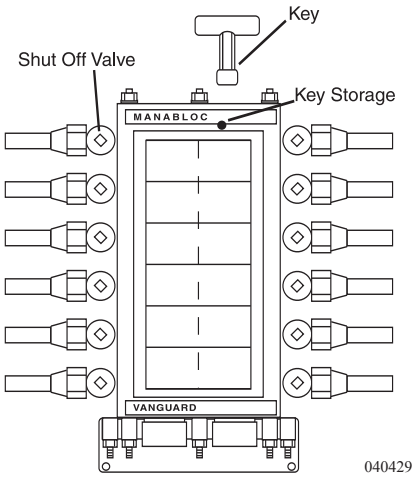


040530

Press knob to expose. Turn clockwise or counter-clockwise to open manifold door.

The plumbing manifold is located behind a locking door in a curbside bay. The manifold separates the main hot and cold lines. The main hot and cold inputs are divided into the individual branch lines. Water flows unrestricted with no hidden fittings located behind walls.

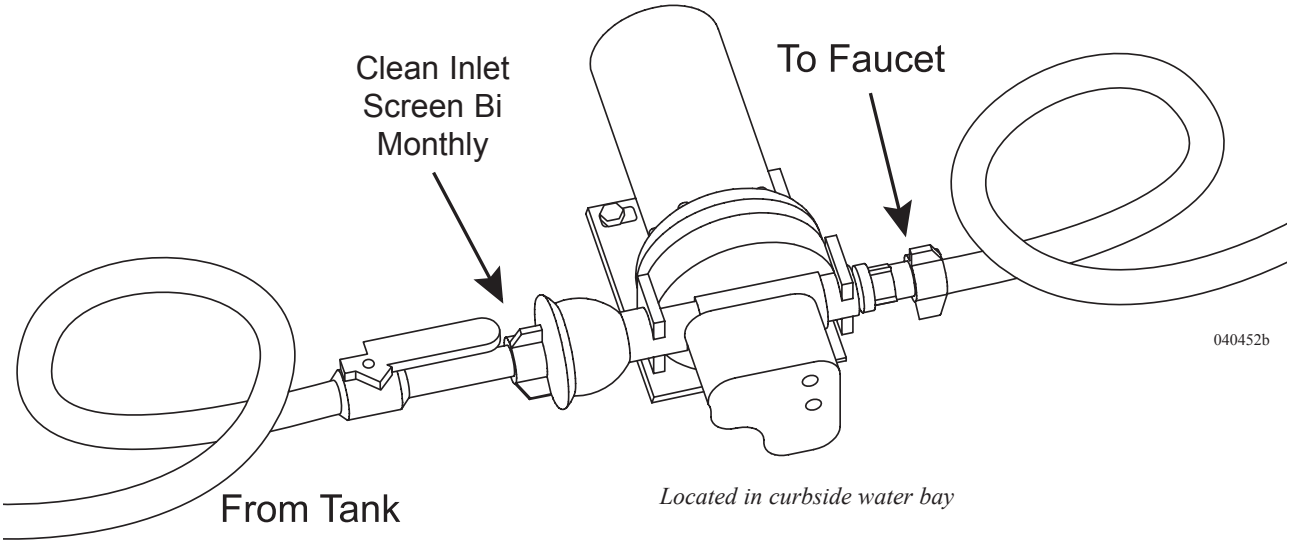
Each faucet or appliance water line may be turned off. Hot water valves are located on the left; cold water valves on the right. Use the provided key to turn on or off a water line. When the key is horizontal, the water line is open. Turning the key to the vertical position shuts that water line off. Each water line is labeled for easy reference. Snap the key into the key storage after use.



040429

The water pump pressurizes the fresh water system when not connected to city water. The water pump is totally automatic and self-priming, operating on demand as water is used. The water pump is located in the curbside water bay.

WARNING:
Before leaving the motorhome for extended periods of time (i.e. overnight or longer) be sure that the city water and the water pump has been turned off. Damage from neglect will be the responsibility of the owner, not the manufacturer.

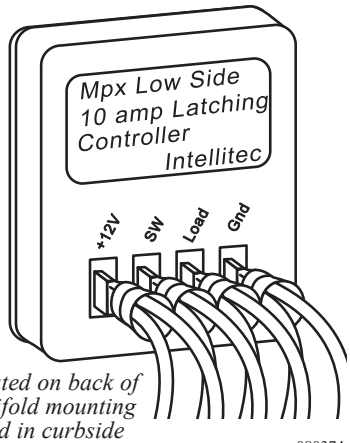


Located in curbside water bay

Latching Controller:

The circuitry of the latching controller allows multiple switch locations to operate the water pump. Pressing one of the water pump switches provides a momentary ground signal to the latching controller, turning the water pump on or off from any location. The indicator lamp at each water pump switch illuminates when the water pump is on.

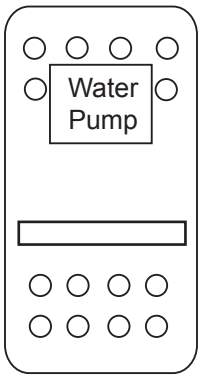
NOTE:
The latching controller is located next to the water pump.



Located on back of manifold mounting board in curbside water bay.

080374

The water pump can be operated from the following locations:
- Bathroom/Vanity
- Galley
- Service Center



080335c

To turn the water pump on or off:
- Momentarily press the water pump switch. The indicator lamp will illuminate when the water pump is turned on.

CAUTION:
Do not continue water pump operation if the fresh water holding tank is empty. Damage to the water pump or electrical supply system may result.

Using the water pump to pressurize the fresh water system after removal from storage:
- Close all drain valves and low point drains.
- Fill the fresh water tank.
- Open the hot and cold water valves of each faucet.
- Turn the water pump on. Wait for the water lines to fill.
- Close each faucet when it delivers a steady stream of water (cold first).

Water Pump Troubleshooting

Vibration induced by road conditions can cause the plumbing or pump hardware to loosen. Check the water pump system for components that are loose. Many symptoms can be resolved by tightening the hardware. Check the following items:

Water pump will not start or blows the fuse:
- Check the electrical connections at the water pump, located in the curbside water bay, fuse or breaker, water pump switch and ground connection.
- Check the electrical connections at the latching controller.
- Is voltage present at the pump? If voltage is present, the pressure switch may be faulty.
- Is the latching controller grounding the water pump?
- Check the charging system for correct voltage and good ground.
- Check for an open or grounded circuit or motor.
- Check for a seized or locked diaphragm assembly (water frozen).

Water pump will not prime or sputters (No discharge/motor runs):
- Is the pump inlet strainer clogged with debris?
- Is there water in the tank, or has air collected in the water heater?
- Is the inlet tubing and plumbing sucking in air at plumbing connections (vacuum leak)?
- Check for proper voltage with the pump operating.
- Check the pump housing for cracks or loose drive assembly screws.

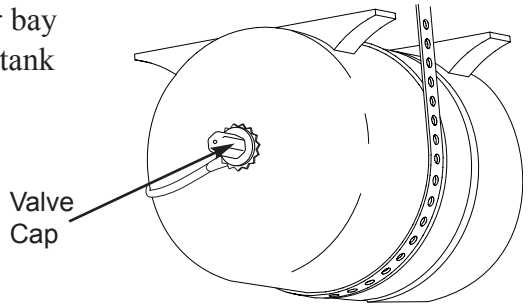
Water pump will not shut-off or continues to run when the faucet is closed:
- Check to see if the fresh water/tank fill valve is completely closed.
- Check the output (pressure) side plumbing for leaks and inspect for a leaky toilet or valves.
- Look for a loose drive assembly or pump head screws.

Water pump is noisy or rough in operation:
- Check for plumbing that may have vibrated loose.
- Does the mounting surface multiply noise (flexible)?
- Check for mounting feet that are loose or compressed too tight.
- Look for loose pump head to motor screws.

Water pump is rapid cycling:
- Look for restrictive water flow in the faucets or shower heads.

Pressure Accumulator Tank

The pressure accumulator tank mounts in the curbside water bay near the water pump. The pre-charge pressure in the accumulator tank should be checked monthly.



Remove tank valve cap to check air pressure.
040494d

Accumulator Features:
1. Smooth flow from the faucets.
2. Reduced water pump cycling.
3. A pre-charged air cushion.
4. Elimination of pulsation and water hammer.
5. Water pressure at faucets.

The accumulator tank includes a tire valve that is used to pre-charge the tank with air pressure. The pre-charge pressure must not exceed the water pump cut-in pressure, the pressure at which the pump restarts. The water pump has a cut-in pressure of 40 psi. The pre-charge pressure of the accumulator tank is 18 to 22 psi. To check the air pressure in the accumulator tank, the water pump and city water will need to be off. Open a faucet to relieve the water pressure. Check the accumulator tank pressure monthly using a tire air pressure gauge (one that reads low air pressure). Use a hand-operated pump to add air pressure to the accumulator tank only when needed. The amount of airflow and high-pressure from a compressed air system can quickly overcharge the tank, causing the internal bladder or tank to rupture.

WATER FILTERS

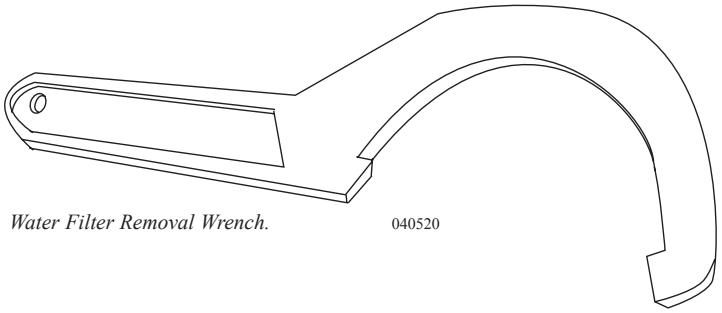
The two-stage filtration system filters up to 1,350 gallons between filter changes. The filtration system uses the following filters:

- **First Stage - Five Micron Sediment Filter:** For reduction of suspended solids, dirt and rust. Life expectancy varies with incoming water condition. Recommended change interval depending on usage and incoming water quality.
- **Second Stage - Five Micron Carbon Block Filter:** Improve water quality by reducing objectionable organic chemicals, chlorine, tastes and odors. Recommended change interval depending on usage and incoming water quality.

Prior to disinfecting the water system with a chlorine bleach solution, remove the filter elements and re-install the filter bowls without the elements. Use the following procedure to remove or change the filter elements.

Removal:

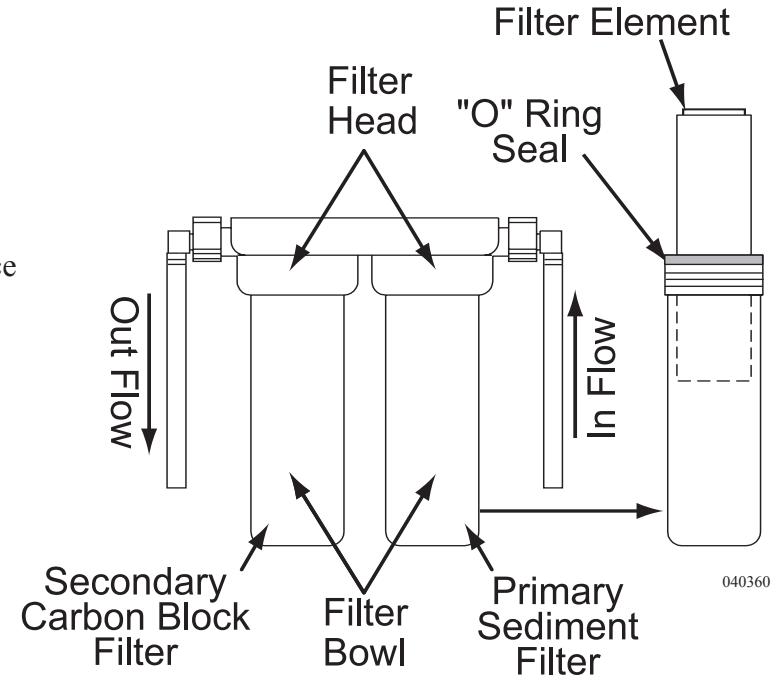
- Turn off the water supply and the water pump.
- Open the faucet to bleed off pressure.
- Unscrew the filter bowl from the filter head.
- Remove the old element and empty any remaining water in the bowl.



Water Filter Removal Wrench. 040520

Installation:

- Place the elements in the bowls, observing primary and secondary filter locations.
- Screw the bowls onto the filter heads, hand tight.
- Turn on the water pump or city water.
- Open the outside faucet at the plumbing service center and purge air from the filter assembly.
- Check for leaks.

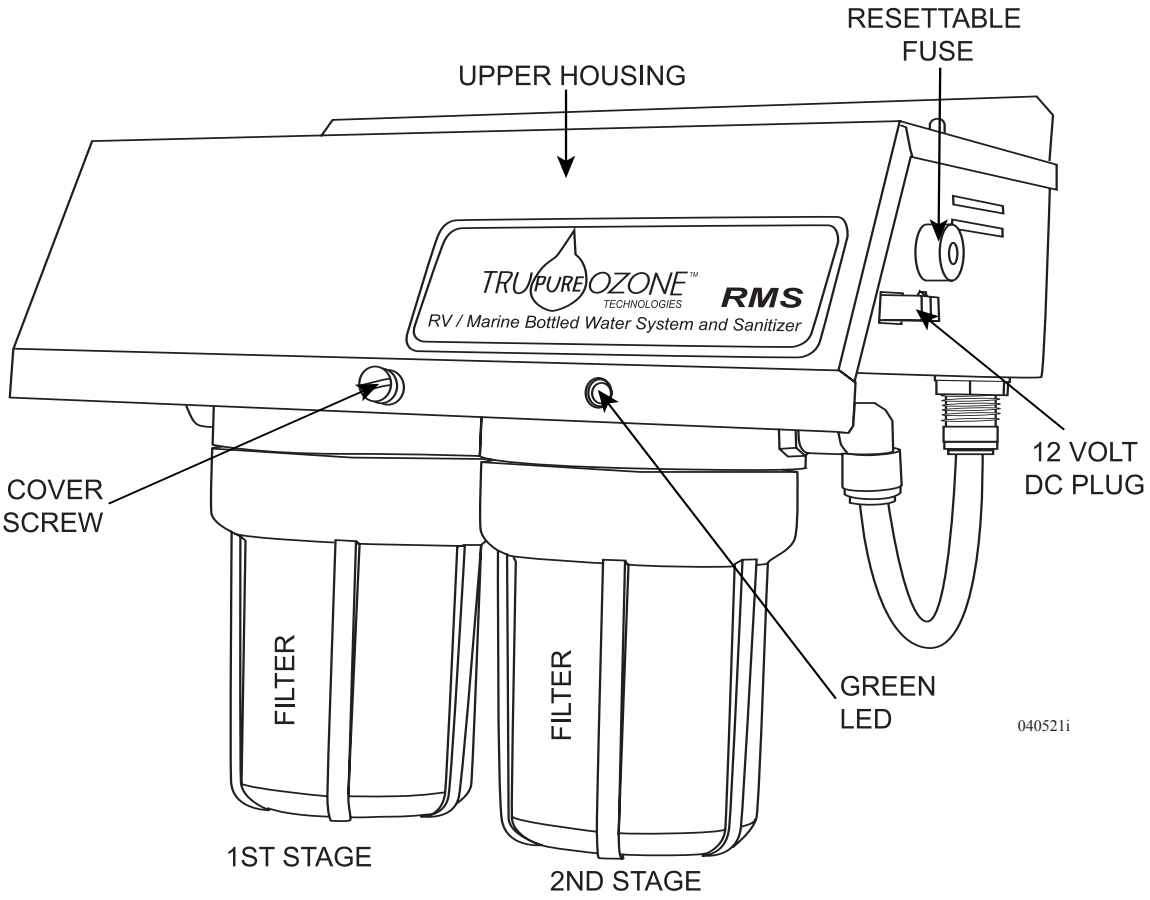


Filters located in Curbside Water bay

The water filters connect to the galley cold water supply. The dispenser is mounted to the galley top. The unit is located in the passenger side water bay compartment mounted below the motorhome's water filters. The system provides two levels and types of filtration, and then injects powerful ozone gas as the final stage disinfectant. The 1st stage filter is a particulate filter to remove dirt, rust and other contaminant from the water. The 2nd stage filter is a carbon block filter to remove chlorine, organics and other impurities. The ozone injection, between .2 and .25 parts per million at one gallon per minute, destroys micro-organisms and adds a high level of oxygen to the water. Any ozone taste will disappear within a few minutes.

The water can also be used for increasing food freshness and extending food shelf life, as well as sanitizing countertop surfaces and dishes.

CAUTION:
If a leak should occur, immediately shut off the valve labeled galley on the plumbing manifold. Contact a dealer for service.

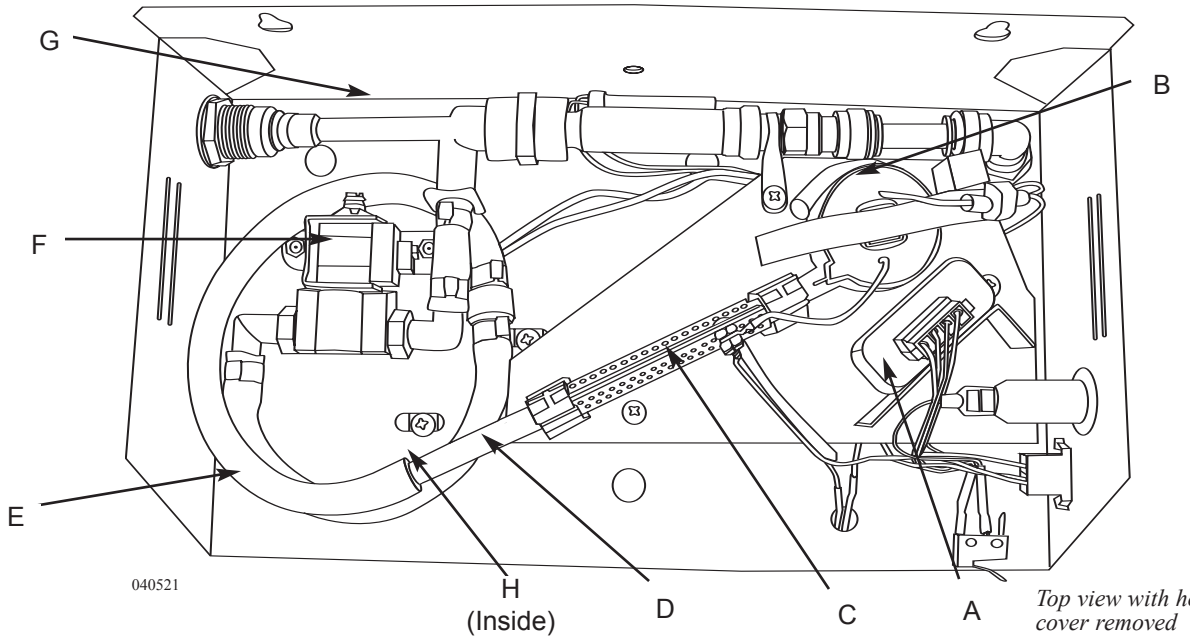


Filters located in Curbside Water

Inside the upper housing are the following:

A. Electronic Module
B. Transformer
C. Electrode Heat Sink
D. Ozone Electrode Assembly
E. Ozone Gas Transfer Line
F. Anti-backflow Electronic Solenoid Valve
G. Ozone Electrode Assembly
H. Cleanable Glass Borosilicate Dielectric

CAUTION:
Always turn off water supply with galley valve on the plumbing manifold and unplug power from right side of unit before removing cover, changing filters, servicing or maintaining.

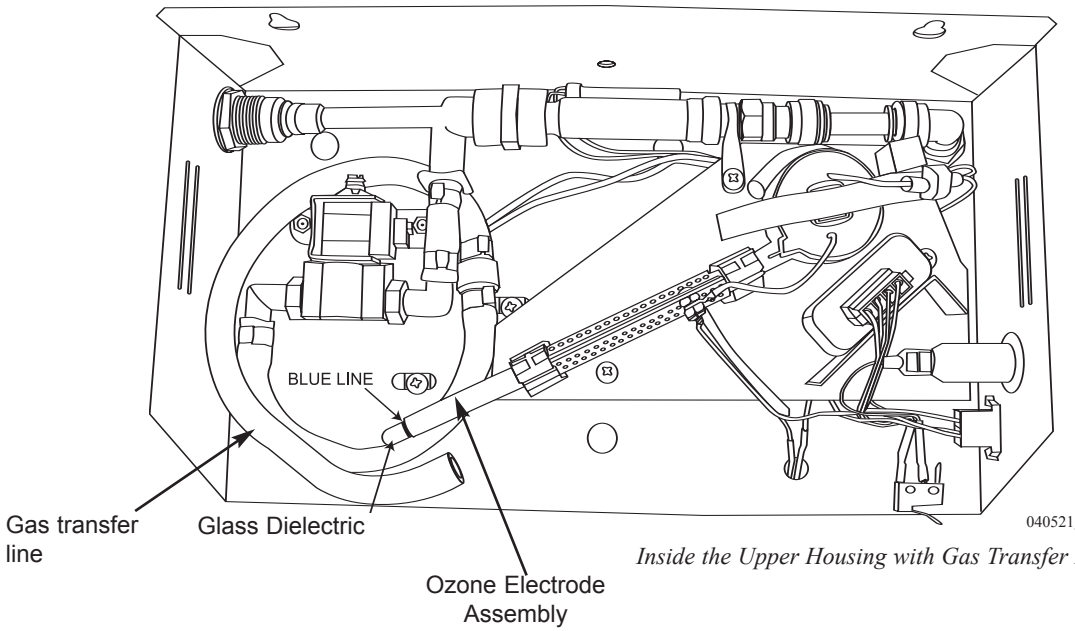


Top view with housing cover removed

Clean the borosilicate dielectric every 30-60 days. Change the 1st and 2nd stage filters every 3-6 months.

To Clean the Borosilicate Dielectric:

1. Remove cover to expose ozone generator.
2. Gently remove the end of the ozone gas transfer line from the left end of the ozone electrode assembly.
3. Grasp the rounded end of the glass dielectric and pull straight out until it is completely free from the stainless steel Ozone Electrode Assembly.
4. Moisten a soft cloth or thick paper towel with soapy water and carefully wipe clean any buildup of the dielectric glass. Dry the glass completely. If the stain on the glass is difficult to remove, apply a small amount of baking soda to the cloth and clean outside of tube.



Inside the Upper Housing with Gas Transfer Line removed.

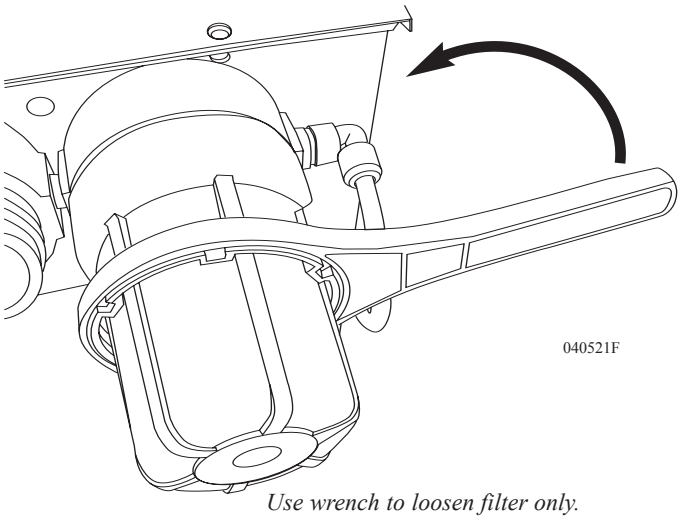
CAUTION:
Do not submerge or allow water to enter into the dielectric. If this happens, place the dielectric on a paper towel in a microwave for one minute or until no moisture is present. Wait for dielectric to cool before handling.

5. Wait for the glass dielectric to completely dry. Gently insert the dielectric back into the stainless steel Ozone Electrode Assembly. Carefully slide the glass dielectric over the stainless steel rod that is inside the outer shell until it seats at the base.
6. Replace the black ozone transfer tubing over the end of the ozone electrode assembly.
7. Replace the outer unit cover and restore power.

WARNING:
Ensure glass dielectric tube is pushed all the way up to the blue line before start-up.

To Change the 1st and 2nd Stage Filters:

1. Use provided latex gloves to avoid cross contamination between old and new cartridges or exposing yourself to contaminants that have been filtered from the water.
2. Turn off the water supply to the galley at the plumbing manifold.
3. Relieve pressure by opening dispenser at sink.
4. Place a shallow container under the filter sump to catch any remaining water. Unscrew the left, 1st stage (filter marked XP), filter sump bottom using the filter wrench.
5. Remove the old cartridge and dispose.
6. Repeat steps 4 and 5 for 2nd stage (filter marked XC) filter.
7. Wash both filter sumps with warm soapy water and rinse.
8. Place new cartridges labeled #1 and #2 in the sump bottoms and re-install matching filter numbers to unit. Hand tighten only. Do not use a wrench.
9. Open cold water supply valve and turn on Tru-Pure Faucet until all air is purged from filter housings and water.
10. Check for leaks.



Use wrench to loosen filter only.

CAUTION:
Do not allow system to be exposed to temperatures below 32ºF or over 120ºF. or exceed operating pressure of 80 psi.

Testing the Unit:

- Turn on the cold water supply to the unit and open the Tru-Pure faucet to purge air from the system.
- Confirm that the green light illuminates after a few seconds.
- If Green LED on unit does not illuminate, confirm that power is ON. If the power indicator still does not light and power is on, **inspect** resettable fuse on the side of the unit.

Water system problems are generally caused by improper use or lack of attention. Improper winterizing, poor maintenance, road vibration and campsite water pressure variations are common culprits of water system failure.

Check all plumbing connections for leaks at least once a year. If the water pump runs when a faucet is not open, check for a water leak. Close drain valves. If the pump continues to run, take the motorhome to an authorized dealer for service.

Disinfecting Fresh Water

Disinfecting the water system with chlorine bleach (superchlorination) protects against bacteriological or viral contamination from common water sources.

When to disinfect the fresh water system:

- If the motorhome is new.
- If the motorhome has not been used in a long time.
- Every three months.

NOTE:

An independently operated water pump with garden hose connections, and a container to hold the prepared solution, may be used to perform this task.

To Disinfect the Water System:

- Remove water filter elements in water bay and re-install filter sumps.
- Prepare a chlorine bleach solution using one gallon of water and ¼ cup of chlorine bleach. Use 1 gallon of solution for every 15 gallons of tank capacity. For example: Add 2 2/3 gallons solution to a 40 gallon tank. Add 4 2/3 gallons solution to a 70 gallon tank. Add 6 2/3 gallons to 100 gallon tank. This mixture puts a 50 PPM (parts per million) disinfecting solution in the water system that will act as a quick-kill dosage for harmful bacteria, viruses and slime-forming organisms. Concentrations higher than 50 PPM may damage the water lines and/or tanks.
- Another method of introducing the chlorine bleach would be to multiply the number of gallons by 0.13. The result would be the amount in ounces of chlorine needed to be introduced into the fresh tank with water.
- Drain the fresh water tank. Close the drain and prepare to introduce the solution into the fresh water tank. The method of introduction is up to the owner.

TIP:

Use the same hose labeled for potable water to introduce the chlorine solution into the system. This will disinfect the potable water hose at the same time. Several flushes will be required to remove chlorine residue from the potable hose.

- Turn on the water pump in the motorhome.
- Open each faucet and run the water until you smell a distinct chlorine bleach odor.
- Turn off all faucets allowing the system to stand for four hours.
- Drain the fresh water tank of the mixed solution.
- Fill the water tank with fresh water. Thoroughly flush hot and cold lines with fresh water. Repeat this process until the chlorine bleach smell is no longer detectable in the water system.
- Install new water filter.

CAUTION:
If not properly and thoroughly rinsed, chlorine bleach or other concentrated chlorine bearing chemicals can cause failure to the Aqua-Hot Domestic Water Loop (copper tubing).

The Aqua-Hot copper tubing is rated for use with fresh water and winterizing solutions only. Periodic flushing with other common household chemicals, including bleach, will have little or no effect on the product if properly rinsed with the fresh water afterwards. Failure of copper tubing, especially soft or flexible copper, can result if materials other than water or winterizing solutions are allowed to reside inside the piping for extended periods of non-use. The most common cause for failure is due to an extended exposure to chlorine, solutions containing chlorine (i.e. bleach) or hydrochloric acid.

CAUTION:
Do not use vinegar to disinfect the water system. Vinegar will deteriorate the copper tubing inside the Aqua-Hot Domestic Water Loop.

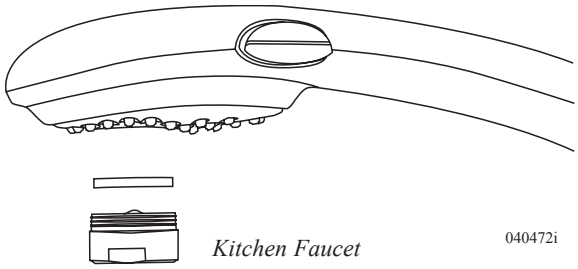
FAUCETS

The kitchen faucet head has a flexible hose allowing the faucet head to be removed from the base. O-rings seal the faucet head to the base preventing water from dripping into the cabinet. Push the slide bar to select either stream or spray.

Should the flow of water reduce, the filter screen in the faucet head may be clogged. Fresh water sources will vary by location. Build up of lime deposits, or debris on the faucet screen, will restrict or plug the flow of water coming from the faucets. All faucet screens should be checked and cleaned every two weeks of use.

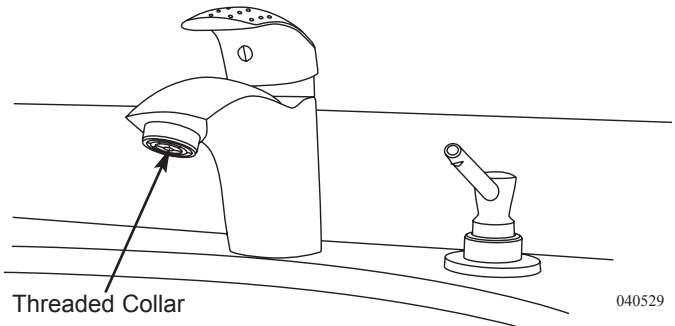
To clean faucet screens:

- Unscrew kitchen-screen retainer from faucet head.
- Lavatory/vanity - remove threaded collar from faucet outlet.
- Clean screen using a small soft brush, if necessary, and a de-liming solution.
- Install screen and check water flow.



Kitchen Faucet

040472i



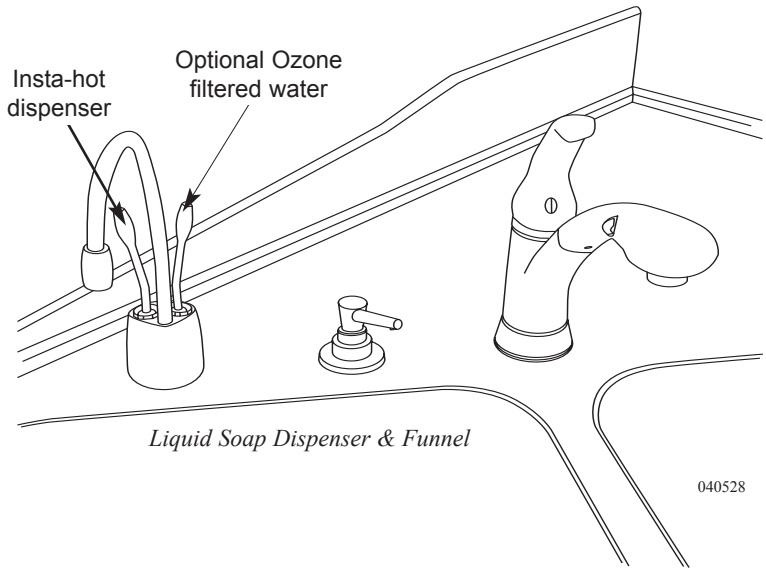
040529

Lavatory/Vanity Faucet

SOAP DISPENSER - LIQUID

The liquid soap/lotion dispenser can be used with any type of liquid soap or lotion. The liner of the bottle will not corrode or discolor the contents of the dispenser. To clean, use a soft cloth and blot dry. Harsh abrasive cleansers or polishes can damage the finish on the dispenser.

- Lift dispenser pump out of bottle.
- Use funnel to fill bottle with liquid soap or lotion.



Liquid Soap Dispenser & Funnel

040528

WASTE WATER SYSTEMS
Proper Waste Disposal

Dumping raw sewage from toilet holding tanks, except at authorized dumping stations, is universally prohibited. Most National, State and private parks have either a central dump facility or campsite hook-up for sewage. Many modern rest areas along the interstate now have dump stations available. Woodall's Campground Directory, Trailer Life's RV Campgrounds and Services Directory, Rand McNally's Campground and Trailer Park Guide, Good Sam Park Director (Good Sam Club), and other similar publications list dumping stations. Some major oil companies offer dump facilities at selected stations.

What Not to Put in Waste Holding Tanks

- Do not use strong or full strength detergents to deodorize and disinfect. Use odor control chemicals made especially for holding tanks.
- Automotive antifreeze, ammonia, alcohol or acetone in holding tanks will dissolve plastic.
- Do not put large table scraps in the tanks. They could stick in or damage the valve seals.
- Facial tissue is thicker, softer and stronger than a rapidly dissolving tissue. White toilet paper dissolves faster than colored. To test tissue dissolving ability, immerse one tissue square into a jar of water. Shake the jar five times to determine if the tissue disintegrates into pieces or remains in one piece. Do not use any type of tissue that remains in one piece. Paper designed specifically for holding tanks is available at most RV supply stores.

NOTE:
Never dispose of sanitary supplies or other non-dissolving items into the system. Facial tissue, wet strength tissue, paper towels or an excessive amount of toilet tissue can create clogging in the holding tank system.

CAUTION:
Do not use any products that contain petroleum distillate or ammonia in place of RV odor controlling chemicals. Petroleum distillate or ammonia will damage the ABS plastic holding tanks and seals.

Waste Drain & Sewage Tanks

The waste drain system provides adequate and safe storage and/or discharge of waste materials. The drain system uses ABS plastic piping and fittings connected to sinks, shower, toilet and holding tanks draining to an outside termination. The motorhome should be reasonably level for optimum operation of the waste systems. The wastewater holding system consists of a grey water tank that stores the sink, shower and laundry washer drain water, and a black holding tank that stores waste from the toilet.

Drain valves and a tank flush system dispose waste through a common termination. Each holding tank has a separate drain valve dumping the waste water (grey water) and sewage (black water) through a common single discharge outlet. The tank drain valves are located service center on the roadside. Use the Aladdin™ System to monitor tank levels. When ready to drain the tanks, drain the sewage tank first. Next, flush the black tank with the flush system. Close black tank valve after flushing tank. Drain the grey water tank. Using this sequence helps to flush solids from the sewer hose. When traveling, it is recommend both holding tanks be empty or less than half full.

Waste Drain Hose

A flexible three-inch sewer hose attaches between the termination drain and the shore facility. The termination drain is adjustable and should be periodically exercised. Sewer hoses usually come in 10 or 20 foot lengths. The sewer hose is stored in a tube accessed through a door on the roadside next to the rear tire. The shore fitting for the sewer hose may be a three or four-inch, male or female thread pipe; or a four-inch pipe with no threads, covered by a metal plate. Different style of adapters are available to fit most configurations. Hose ladders may also be purchased to support the hose.

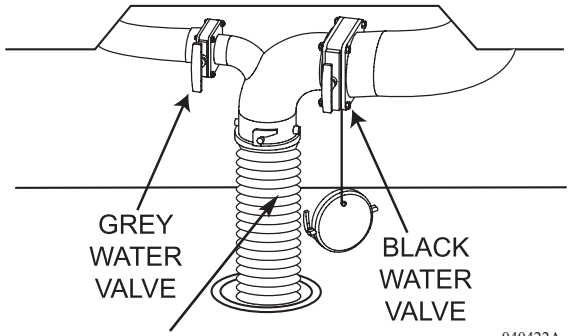
It is important that the hose remains secure. **Always tighten clamps and restraining devices before use.** Lay the hose inline between the termination outlet and the shore fitting. Restrain the hose to prevent movement during use. Wear protective and/or disposable gloves when handling the sewer hose.

To Exercise the Termination Drain:

- Grasp the drain firmly on both sides of the drainpipe.
- Swivel the pipe up and down several inches to exercise the internal O-rings.
- The drainpipe may be left in the upward position to prevent residual material from leaking out.

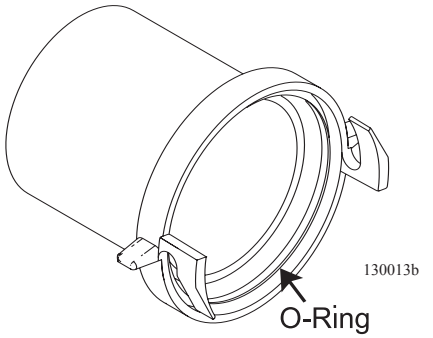
To Attach the Hose:

- Remove sewer hose from carrier.
- Remove termination cap. Align coupler tangs with termination tabs. Twist coupler clockwise 90º locking coupler to termination outlet.
- Unscrew the access deck plate and feed the drain hose through the opening.
- Rotate the drainpipe downward for maximum flow.
- Attach the other end of the hose to the drain service. Restrain hose to prevent movement during use.
- Open the (small) grey water valve.



Plumbing Service Center on roadside

The black water valve remains closed until the tank is full or until time of departure to help prevent clogging. Use the outside faucet or shower attachment for washing or rinsing the sewer hose after dumping the black tank.



Hose adapter clamped to end of sewer hose.

LUBE:
Lubricate the O-ring on the sewer hose adapter periodically with silicone spray.

NOTE:
Close the grey water valve 24 hours prior to departing to allow the tank to fill with liquid to help in the dumping process.

NOTE:
Use care when connecting the sewer hose adapter to the termination outlet in cold weather.

What to Put in Holding Tanks - Black Water Tank

Before initially operating the toilet, treat the sewage holding tank with a pre-charge of water and an odor-control chemical (available at most RV supply stores). First, add approximately three gallons of water to the holding tank. Next, mix the chemicals, in accordance with the manufacturer instructions, with approximately one gallon of water. Pour mixture through toilet to the holding tank. Be careful not to spill the chemical on your hands, clothing, toilet bowl or carpet. Hot weather conditions may require adjusting the amount of chemical used to control odor. Repeat the chemical precharge to the holding tank each time the tank is cycled.

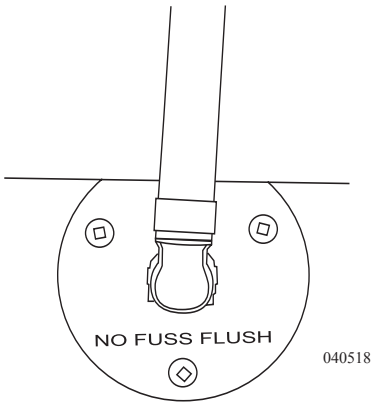
WARNING:
Most chemical mixtures for holding tank odor control are poisonous. Follow the product manufacturer's directions and warnings when using holding tank additive. Do not use any products that contain petroleum distillate or ammonia in place of RV odor controlling chemical. Petroleum distillate or ammonia will damage the ABS plastic holding tanks and seals.

What to Put in Holding Tanks - Grey Water Tank

The grey water waste tank stores the sink, shower and clothes washer drain water. A reduced mixture of chemicals may help to control odor in the grey tank.

Ensure that there is enough liquid in the holding tanks prior to dumping the waste holding tanks to provide a smooth flow through the valve, drain pipe and drain hose. Empty the waste holding tanks weekly to prevent stagnation and overfilling.

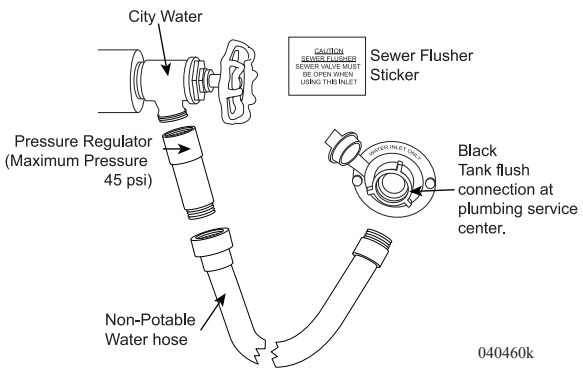
The motorhome comes equipped with a power flush nozzle, located in the black tank to help reduce solid build-up. Flush the tanks each drain cycle. Failure to thoroughly rinse the tanks may result in accumulated solids and clogged spray nozzles.



Connection in curbside compartment behind water bay

Dumping the Tanks:

1. When preparing to dump the black tank, first close the grey water valve.
2. Fill the grey tank to at least 50% by running water in the shower or sinks.
3. Use the Aladdin™ system to observe tank fluid levels. When the grey tank is 50% full, stop filling the tank.
4. Open the black water valve. Allow the black tank to drain.
5. Connect a non-potable water hose, with pressure regulator, to the flush system fitting located in the service center.
6. Turn on the faucet and allow water to rinse the black tank at least three minutes. Never operate the system unattended. Ensure the water flows freely though the sewer hose.
7. When completed, turn off the faucet and close the black water valve.
8. Open the grey water valve. The water in the grey tank will flush remaining solids from the sewer hose. The grey valve remains open until the next drain cycle, or time of departure.



<u>WARNING:</u>
Never operate the flush system unattended. Flooding may occur. Use the tank flush system each time the holding tanks are cycled. Failure to routinely use the flush system will result in a clogged spray nozzle. Turn off the water supply when finished flushing the tank.

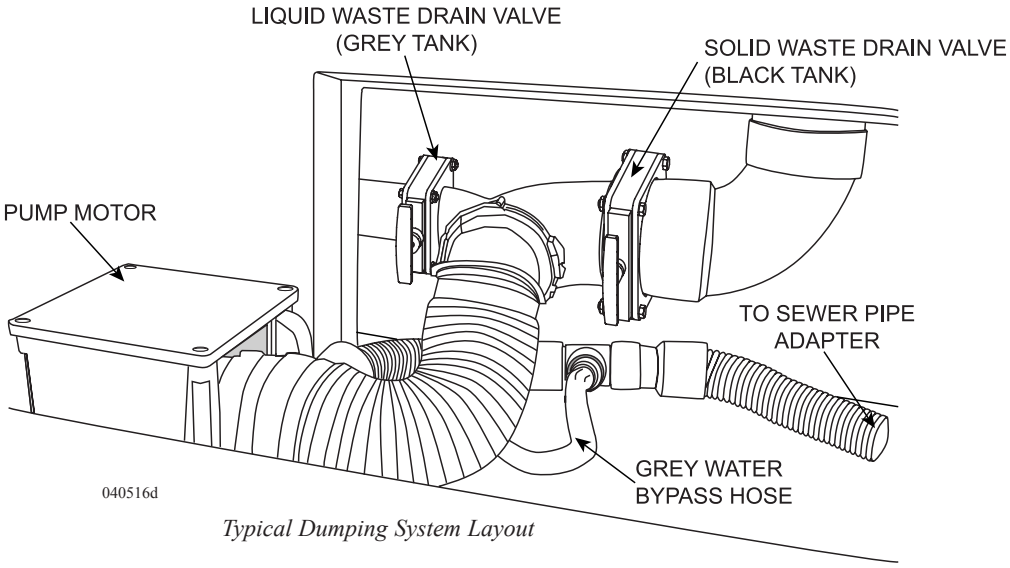
9. When preparing for travel, close both black and grey valves. Undo restraining devices from the sewer hose. Disconnect the sewer hose from the termination outlet by rotating the fitting counterclockwise 90º.
10. Drain the sewer hose using hand over hand method working the sewer hose towards shore fitting. Rinse the sewer hose with outside facility and repeat the hose drain process.
11. Remove the sewer hose from shore fitting. Install sewer hose in carrier and lock door. Secure the termination cap (required by law in some states).
12. If desired, add chemicals to the tanks to control odor. Follow the directions given by the manufacturer of the chemical.

<u>NOTE:</u>
Dump the black tank before driving.

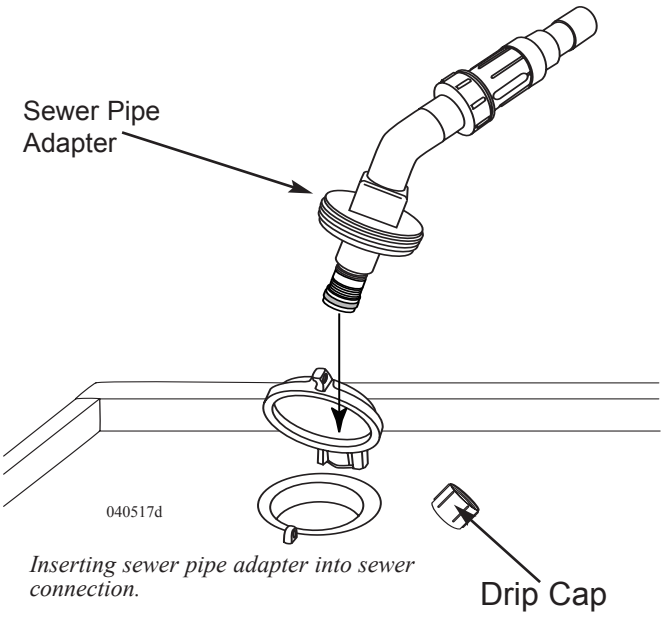
DUMPING SYSTEM *(Optional)*

The holding tank management system is a closed loop system designed to empty the tanks, rinse the black tank with water from the grey tank to eliminate clean water usage, transfer grey water from the grey tank to the black tank when dry camping to maximize the capacity of the tanks, and reduce exposure to unsanitary conditions.

The system comes with a 3" inlet hose with sewer pipe adapter, a 12 gallon per minute macerator pump, a grey water bypass hose with on-off valve, drip cap, a 10' attached hose and a 12' spare hose.



Typical Dumping System Layout



Inserting sewer pipe adapter into sewer connection.

To Empty the Black Tank:

- Ensure the 3" flexible hose from the macerator pump to the termination point on the dump connection is secure.
- Remove drip cap at bottom of sewer pipe adapter.
- Insert adapter into sewer connection.
- Open the solid waste drain valve at the plumbing service center by pulling outward. Turn on the pump using the switch on the service center panel.
- When the black tank is empty, turn off the pump and leave the black tank valve open.

To Rinse the Black Tank:

- With the black tank valve left in the open position open the grey tank valve. This will allow half of the grey tank liquid to flow into the black tank. Gravity will equalize the volume in the tanks in a few moments.
- Close the grey valve and turn the pump back on to rinse the black tank. This process may be repeated to rinse the tank again.

To Empty the Grey Tank:

- With sewer attachment installed open the grey tank valve and turn on the pump.

Grey Water Bypass:

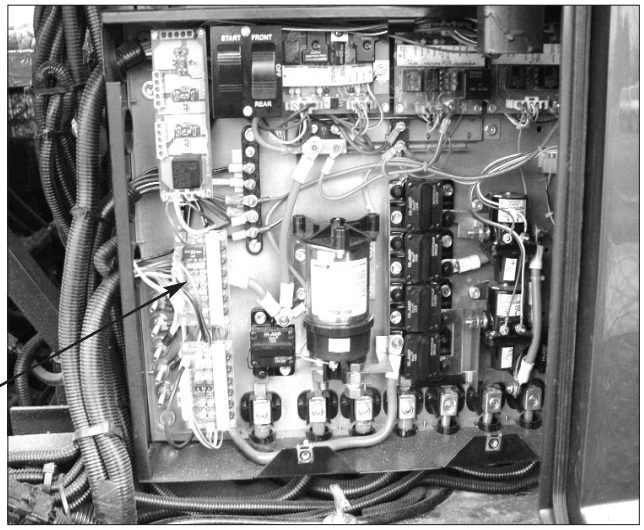
The grey water bypass system allows continuous grey water flow during stays at parks with sewers at the site. The liquid (grey) waste uses gravity to drain from the tank and bypasses the pump by going through the bypass hose into the parks sewage service. The bypass hose is the small garden-sized hose connected at the termination point of the dump valves and "T-s" into the small flexible hose on the outlet side of the macerator pump.

To Use the Grey Water Bypass:

- With the 3" flexible hose connected at the termination point of the liquid and solid waste drain valves and the sewer pipe adapter attached to the facilities sewer system, open the grey tank drain valve.
- Ensure the sewer pipe adapter is in sewer connection.
- Open the grey water bypass valve where the garden hose fits into the bottom of the connector at the termination point on the liquid and solid waste drain.

Troubleshooting:

- For the macerator pump to run the chassis battery disconnect switch in the engine compartment needs to be on.
- 12 Volt DC power for the macerator pump comes from the chassis batteries and is protected with a 20 Amp fuse located on the rear run box at the curb side of the engine compartment R4 Circuit Board.



Rear Run Box in engine compartment

TOILET

The toilet uses water from either the fresh water tank or a city water supply. The water pump must be turned on or connect the motorhome to city water. The toilet uses 12 Volt DC to flush. The toilet flushes directly into the sewage holding tank (black water).

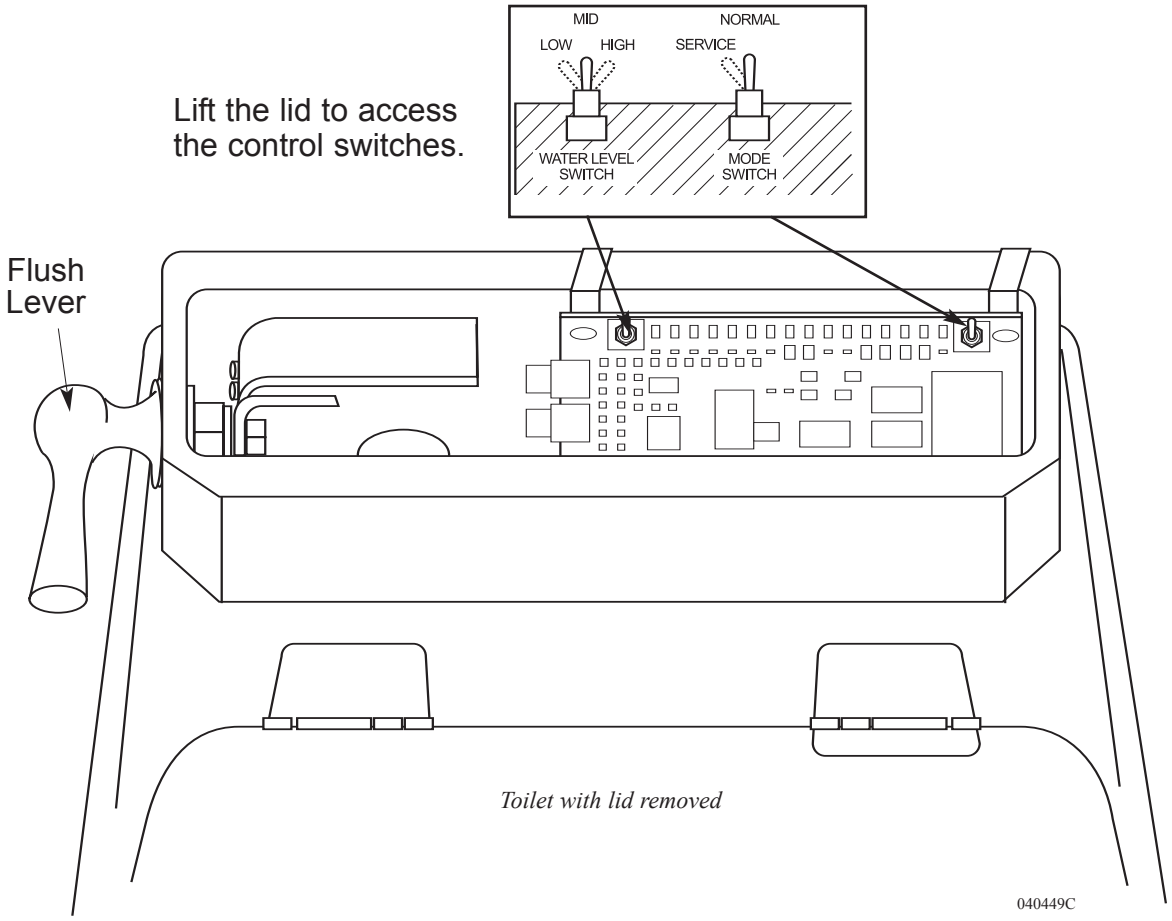
To Add Water to the Toilet:

Lift the flush lever until the desired water level is obtained. Generally, more water is required when flushing solids.

To Flush the Toilet:

Momentarily push the lever down. Holding the lever down will not increase flush time or water flow. The flush cycle is a timed event controlled by a microprocessor. Water pressure and flow rates vary with location. It may be necessary to adjust the water level.

NOTE:
The toilet requires 12 Volt DC to operate. Low voltage will cause toilet malfunction or failure.



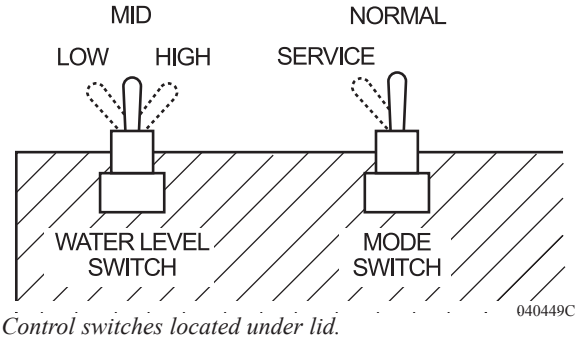
Toilet with lid removed

Control switches:

1. Water Level Switch:

Adjusts the water level in the bowl after the flush cycle.

NOTE:
Setting the Water Level switch to High increases water consumption and may produce water spill during travel.



Control switches located under lid.

2. Mode Switch:

Pushing the switch to Service will hold the ball valve open. This feature is useful when adding chemical to the sewage tank.

CAUTION:
To prevent accumulation of solids below toilet, add several gallons of water to the holding tank before use. Most chemical mixtures for holding tank odor control are poisonous. Follow the product manufacturer's directions and warnings when using any holding tank additive.

NOTE:
Never dispose of sanitary supplies or other non-dissolving items into the toilet. Facial tissue, wet strength tissue, paper towels or an excessive amount of toilet tissue can clog the tank or termination valve.

Cleaning & Maintenance

The toilet should be cleaned regularly for maximum sanitation and operational efficiency. Clean the toilet bowl with a mild bathroom cleaner. Do not use chlorine or caustic chemicals, such as drain opening types, as they will damage the seals.

Clean the toilet system using the tank flush. If additional flushing is desired, flush with several gallons of fresh water and one cup of dry laundry detergent. Add odor control deodorant, in the amount specified for your holding tank capacity, and every few days during use.

Maintenance - Checking for Leaks:

- **Back of toilet:** Check water supply line connection. Toilet tissue works well to find leaks. The tissue changes texture when contacting moisture.

- **Between closet flange and toilet:** Confirm that flange screws are snug. Do not over tighten screws. If leak continues, remove toilet and check flange height. Adjust, if necessary to 7/16" above floor. Replace flange seal if damaged.

Maintenance - Bowl Problems:

- **Poor flush:** Flush should be obtained within two to three seconds. If a problem persists, adjust the water level. If problems continue, the water pressure or flow rate may be low. Remove the water supply line and check flow rate. Flow rate should be at least ten quarts (9.5 liters) per minute. Water pressure should not be below 25 psi.
- **Bowl will not hold water:** Check for foreign material in ball valve.

NOTE:
If the motorhome is in storage for six months, it is a good idea to spray silicone on the ball valve. Perform this maintenance monthly (silicone will evaporate in about 30 days). Do not use a petroleum-based lubricant, damage to the seals will occur.

Drain Traps & Auto Vents

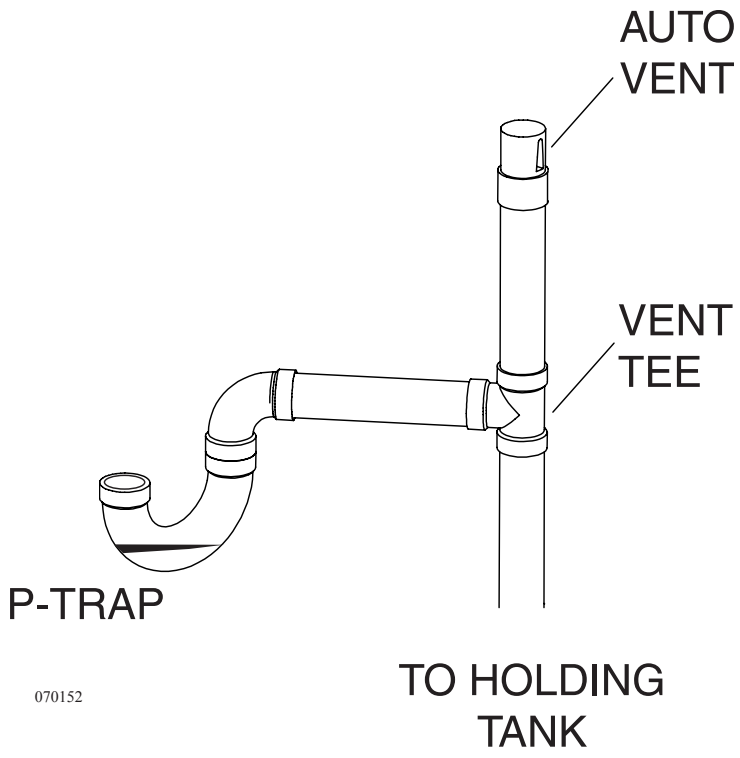
Drain Traps:

Sinks, shower and clothes washer drains incorporate a water trap (P-Trap) and auto vents to prevent waste water holding tank odor from entering the motorhome. P-Traps are usually within 54" of a vent tee and must contain water to block odors. During storage, water can evaporate and allow odor into motorhome. If odor is detected, run water into sinks, shower and clothes washer to fill P-traps.

AutoVents:

The auto vent is designed to assist in the smooth flow of water in the drain without creating a vacuum.

The auto vent, if stuck in the open position, can allow grey odors to enter the motorhome. Some auto vents can double as "clean outs" in the event the line needs to be snaked out.



COLD WEATHER CONDITIONS

A motorhome is not designed for extended use in below freezing (32° F/0° C) weather. However, you may not experience any problems as long as the temperature does not drop too low. Interior water lines, fixtures, water storage tanks and pumps are normally protected from moderate freezing temperatures, as long as the Aqua-Hot is operating. Exposed drains may freeze quickly. If in doubt about what temperature the motorhome will tolerate, winterize with potable antifreeze.

Cold Weather Storage

If the motorhome is stored where freezing temperatures may occur, drain the domestic fresh water loop. Drain the fresh water tank by opening the fresh tank drain valve in the plumbing service center.

NOTE:
Icemakers, water filters, water purifiers and the Aqua-Hot all use domestic water and should be drained and stored in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendation for winterization.

WINTERIZATION

The fresh and waste water systems require winterization when the motorhome is placed in storage. Two separate methods that may be used, or combined, to winterize are use of compressed air to evacuate all liquids and/or antifreeze to replace all liquids.

The recommended method of winterizing is using air pressure to remove liquids that may freeze and cause damage to the various systems and appliances. The lines can then be left empty, or filled with an FDA approved RV antifreeze. When plumbing lines are drained, antifreeze is not necessary, and the decision to use antifreeze is left to the motorhome operator.

NOTE:
ONLY FDA approved RV antifreeze should be used to winterize the water systems in the motorhome.

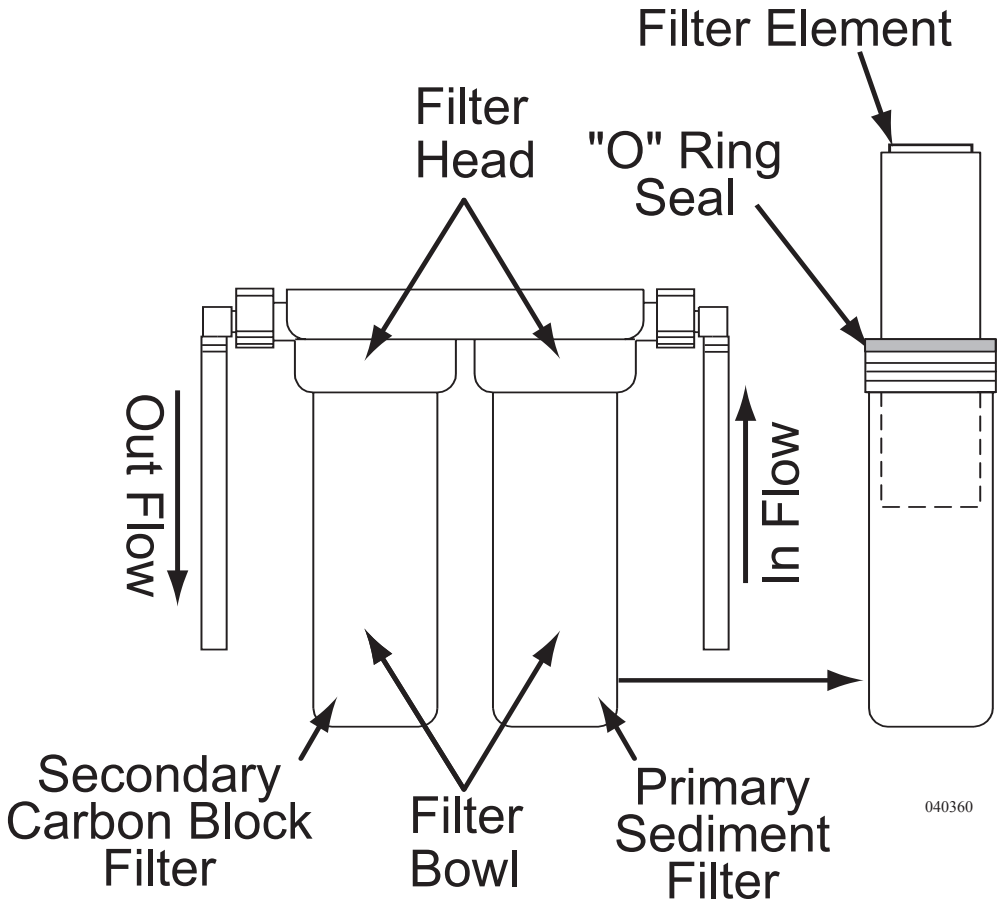
Using Air Pressure

Access to an air compressor, and an adapter to connect the air line regulator to the water system, will be necessary. Air adapters used for winterizing are available at RV supply locations. When attached to the water lines, air pressure should not exceed 40 PSI. Higher pressure can damage the lines.

1. Empty and flush the holding tanks.
2. Drain the fresh water tank by opening the drain valve located inside the water service center of the motorhome.
3. Open hot and cold low point drain valves in manifold bay. Let all the water drain.

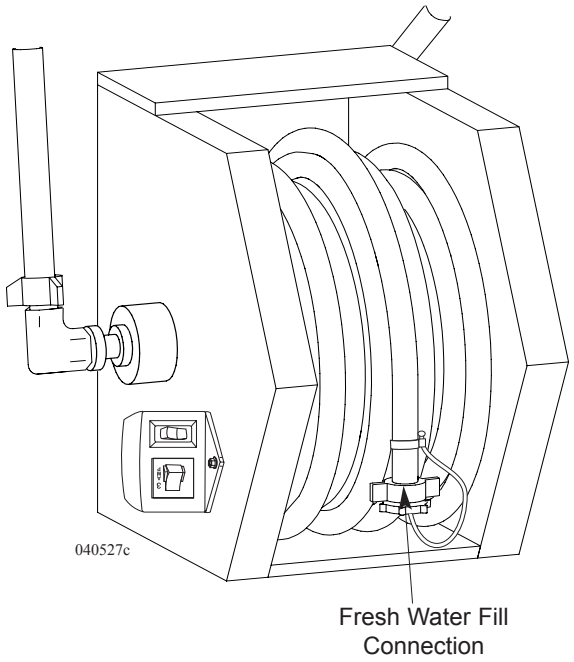
CAUTION:
Neglecting to winterize the Aqua-Hot during freezing temperatures, will result in serious damage to the domestic hot water heating system of the Aqua-Hot. Vehicle Systems recommends winterizing the Aqua-Hot domestic water loop with RVA approved antifreeze. Instructions for this procedure can be found in the Aqua-Hot owner's manual.

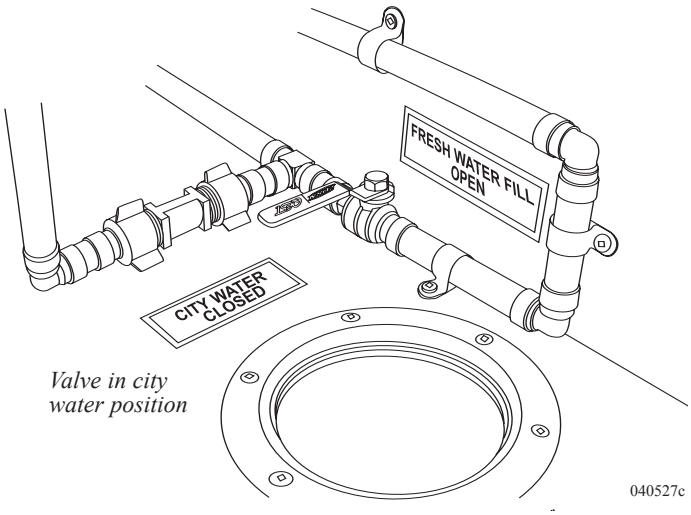
4. Locate filters in bay. Remove filters, replace canister and re-install filter bowls. Remove optional Ozone Water filters in same manner.



Filters located in curbside Water bay

5. Connect an air hose with regulator to the city/fresh water fill connection, with valve positioned for city water. Set regulator for 40 psi and turn on air. (Air adapters for winterizing are available at RV supply locations.)
6. When water stops flowing from the drain valves, open and close the faucets one at a time, hot and cold, until only air comes out. Do not forget the toilet and any outside faucets.
7. Hold the toilet flush mechanism open until the water has stopped running.
8. Disconnect the air hose with adapter and turn the city/fresh water valve to the tank fill position.
9. Close all valves, faucets and replace plugs.
10. One (1) gallon of FDA approved RV antifreeze is needed to protect various water drain lines in the motorhome. Pour 1 pint into both the kitchen and bath shower drains. Pour 2 pints into the bath sink drain. This will protect the P-traps, with some of the antifreeze going into grey tank to protect the drain valve. Open the valve on the toilet. Pour another 3 pints into the toilet, letting the antifreeze run into the black tank to protect the drain valve. Use a soft cloth to wipe out the sinks, shower and toilet (after the antifreeze is poured in) to protect the surfaces from stains. Pour the last pint into the washer/dryer drain.





Valve in city water position

<u>WARNING:</u>
Ensure the water is not hot when draining the low-point drain lines. Hot water from the lines can cause burn injuries.

Using Nontoxic Antifreeze

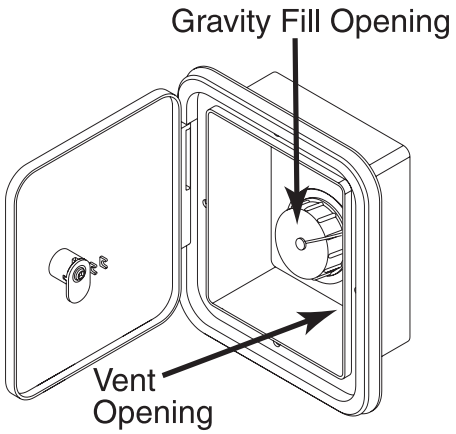
Ten to twelve gallons of FDA approved RV antifreeze will be required to winterize the motorhome.

WARNING:
Use only specifically designed, non-toxic, FDA Approved RV antifreeze for potable water systems. NEVER use automobile engine antifreeze. If ingested, antifreeze can cause serious injury or death.

WARNING:
Turn off the Aqua-Hot and allow it to cool before starting winterizing procedures. Hot water can result in burn injuries. Disconnect all electrical connectors to the Aqua-Hot before winterizing.

CAUTION:
It is recommended that a qualified RV service technician familiar with motorhomes, such as an authorized dealer, perform the winterizing procedure.

1. Empty and flush the holding tanks.
2. It is not necessary to blow out the lines with air. Close valve located between water pump and fresh water tank.
3. Locate filters in bay, remove filters, replace canisters.
4. Close all faucets, drain valves and low point drains.
5. There are two separate ways to pump RV Antifreeze into system:
   a. If you have a pump for winterizing, (available at RV supply locations) attach the "out" side of the pump to the waterline on the outlet side of the motorhome water pump, the motorhome winterizing connection if so equipped. Place the "in" side of the winterizing pump attachment hose into the antifreeze source.
   b. The gravity fill can be utilized to introduce approximately 8 to 10 gallons of FDA approved RV anti-freeze into the fresh water tank. The valve between water pump and fresh water tank must be in the open position.



040393

Located to the rear of the Plumbing Service Center

6. Turn on the pump.
7. Turn on all the faucets, one at a time, hot and cold starting with the faucet farthest from the pump. When you see antifreeze, turn the faucet off. Do not forget the toilet and all outside faucets.
8. Use a soft cloth to wipe out the sinks and shower to protect surfaces from antifreeze stains.

NOTE:
Some items such as the icemaker, washer/dryer and dishwasher require special instructions, which can be found in the specific owner's manuals.

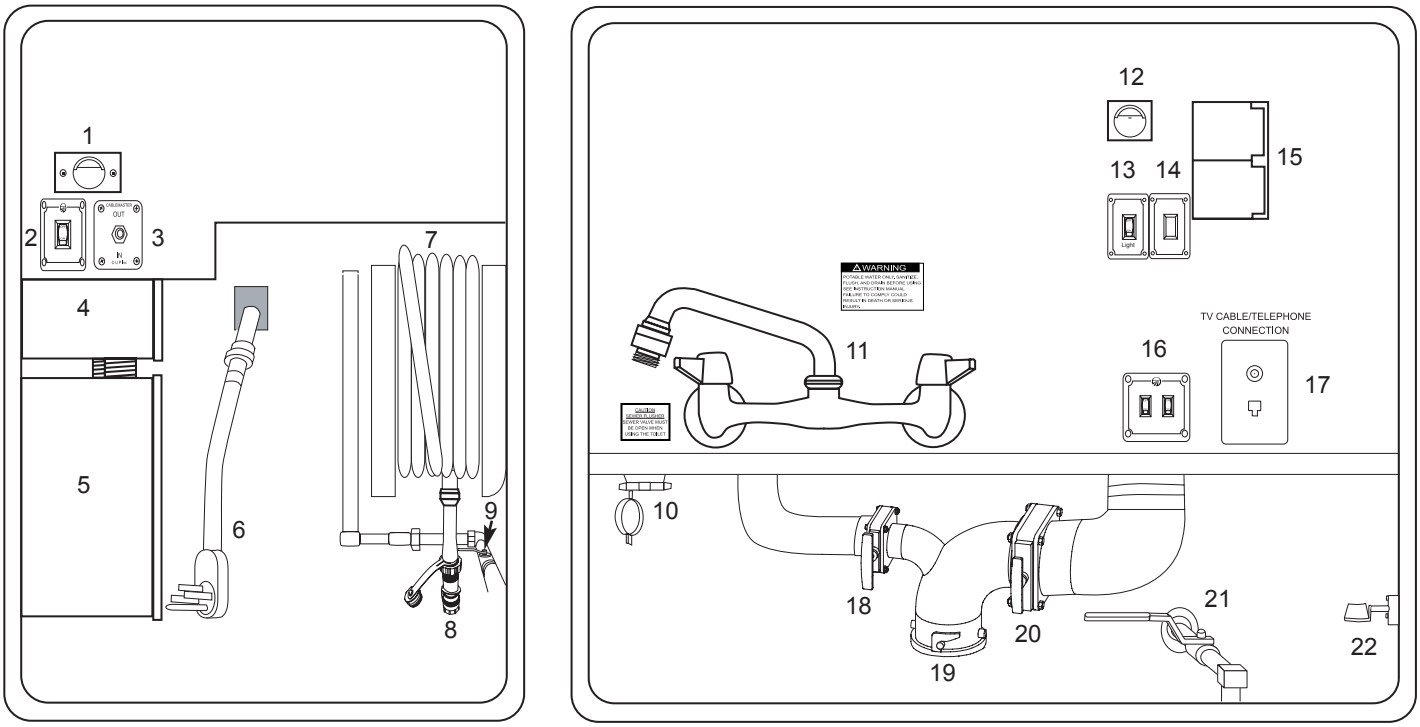
NOTE:
Clean up spilled antifreeze immediately to prevent permanent staining.

De-Winterization

To de-winterize, drain and fill the fresh tank with water. Connect the power supply line for the water pump. Operate all faucets, one at a time, until clear water is present.

CAUTION:
The first two trays of ice from the icemaker may contain contaminants. Discard and replenish the icemaker as necessary.

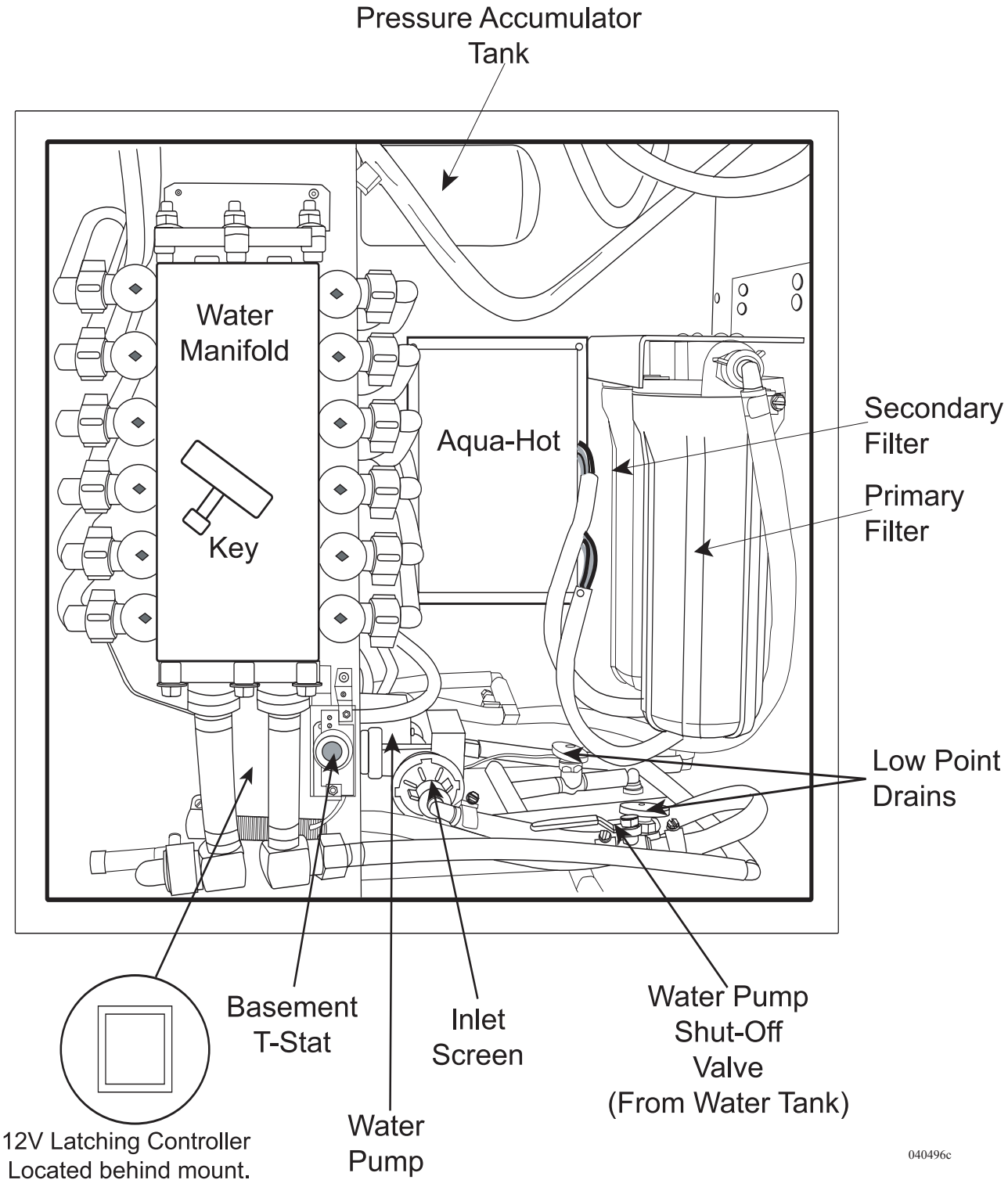
SERVICE CENTER



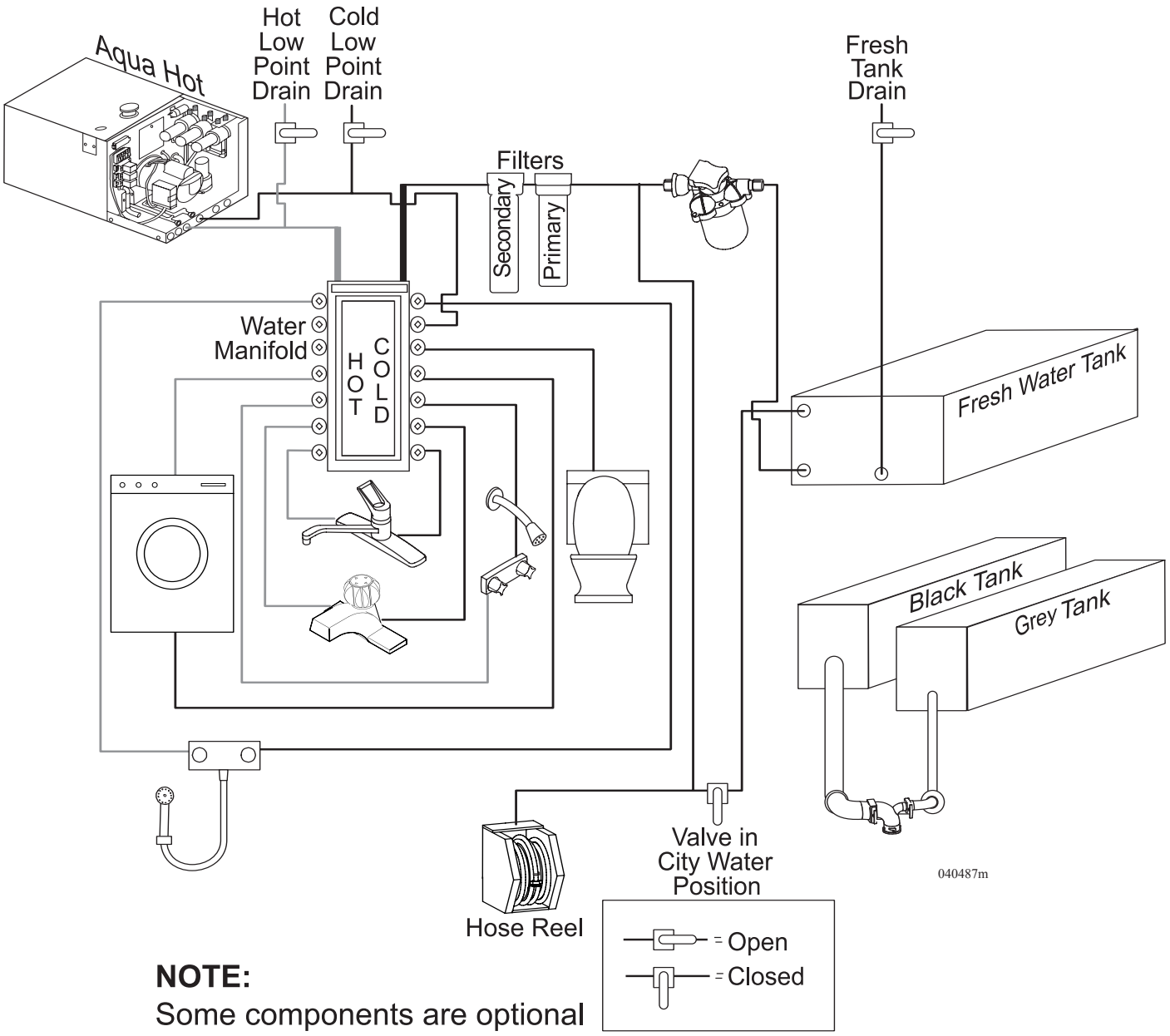
NOTE:
Layout of Service Center and location of components may vary with floor plans.

1. Light
2. Light Switch
3. Power Cord Reel Switch
4. Transfer Switch
5. Aladdin A/C Interface
6. Power Cord
7. Hose Reel
8. City Water Connection
9. Fresh Tank Fill/City Water Valve
10. Black Tank Flush Connection
11. Faucet
12. Light
13. Light Switch
14. Spare
15. 120 Volt Outlet
16. Water Pump Switch and Light
17. TV Cable/Telephone Connection
18. Grey Tank Dump Valve
19. Termination Outlet
20. Black Tank Dump Valve
21. Fresh Tank Drain
22. Sanitizer Holder

TYPICAL WATER BAY



WATER SYSTEMS DIAGRAM



NOTE:
Some components are optional

Typical Water System Layout

NOTES

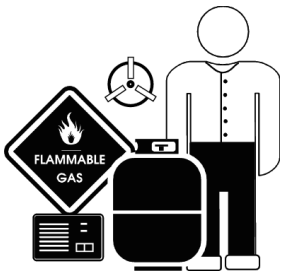
NOTES

The Executive 2005

LP-Gas Systems

Section 7

LP-GAS SYSTEMS 305
LP-GAS DETECTOR 306
Testing 307
Alarm 308
Maintenance 308
LP-GAS EMERGENCY PROCEDURES - CHECKLIST 309
LP-GAS TANK 309
Measurement 309
Tank Capacity 310
Tank Filling 310
Tank Operation 312
LP-GAS FUNDAMENTALS 312
LP-GAS REGULATOR 314
LP-GAS HOSE INSPECTION 316
LP-GAS DISTRIBUTION LINES 317
LP-GAS CONSUMPTION 318
LP-GAS SAFETY TIPS 319



This section contains information and instruction for the operation and care of the Liquefied Petroleum (LP-Gas) system and related equipment in the motorhome. The motorhome has appliances and equipment which either operate on or are part of the LP-Gas system. Some items discussed may not be applicable to all motorhomes. More detailed information with **CAUTION** or **WARNING** instructions for the various equipment, other than what is found in this section, can be found in the manufacturer's manual in the owner's information box.

The LP-Gas tank mounted in the motorhome contains liquid petroleum gas that is under high pressure. As the fuel is used, liquid gas vaporizes and passes through the tank valve to a regulator that automatically reduces pressure. Low-pressure gas is then distributed to components through a pipe manifold system.

Component lighting problems are commonly caused by an improperly adjusted gas regulator. Do not attempt to reset the regulator. Adjustments need to be made by a dealer or an authorized service person.

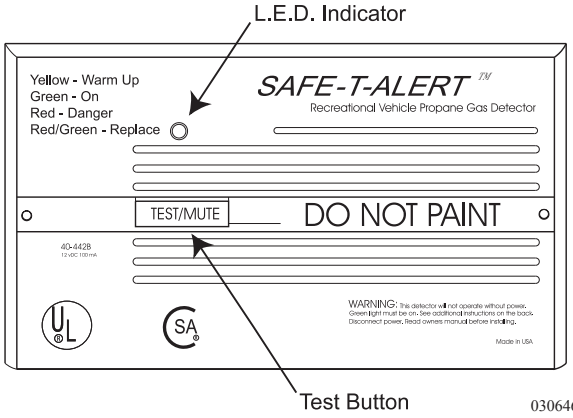
In higher elevations or extreme cold weather (10° F/-21° C or lower) a shortage of LP-Gas may be experienced. If LP-Gas is going to be used in higher elevations or cold climates for a long period of time, have an authorized service person adjust the LP-Gas regulator for these conditions.

Have the LP-Gas system checked by an authorized dealer at least once a year, and thereafter before every extended trip. Although the manufacturer and the dealer test the system carefully for leakage, travel vibrations can loosen fittings.

Leaks can be easily found by applying a leak detector solution on all connections. Leaks can usually be repaired by tightening the fittings. If not, shut off the main gas valve at the tank. Immediately see an authorized dealer for repairs. Hand tighten the tank valves only. Do not use a wrench or pliers as over tightening may damage valve seats and cause leaks. If a leak is suspected (which can be easily identified by the odor of rotten eggs or sulfur) never light a match, have an open flame or use any spark producing equipment or appliance.

WARNING:
LP-Gas is highly volatile and extremely explosive. DO NOT use matches or a flame to test for leaks. Only approved LP-Gas leak testing solution for leak detection should be used. Unapproved solutions can damage copper tubing and brass fittings. A liquid dish detergent solution of 10 parts water may be used. Shake the solution until bubbles form and then apply the mixed solution to fittings and accessory control valves. All fittings tested should be thoroughly rinsed and dried after testing. Never attempt to adjust LP-Gas regulators. Only qualified service personnel should perform any maintenance or repair to the LP-Gas system.

LP-GAS DETECTOR



The LP-Gas detector is required safety equipment in RVs. **American National Standards Institute (ANSI) A119.2 - Fire & Life Safety 3-4.8 LP Gas Detectors** states *" A LP-Gas detector must be installed in any RV that contains an LP-Gas appliance and an electrical system. The LP-Gas detector must be listed as suitable for use in recreational vehicles under the requirement of UL 1484 Residential Gas Detectors, and installed according to the terms of its listing."*

The detector senses both LP-Gas and methane gas. Liquefied Petroleum (LP) Gas is heavier than air; methane gas is lighter than air. LP-Gas will settle to the lowest point, generally the floor of the motorhome. Methane gas will rise. The gas detector is also sensitive to other fumes such as hair spray, of which most contain butane as the propellant. Butane, like propane, is heavier than air and will settle to the floor level. Sulfated batteries (rotten egg odor) will also sound the alarm. When this occurs, reset the detector to stop the alert sound.

About the LP-Gas Detector:

Be aware of the difference between a gas leak versus gas escaping from an unlit, open burner. Pure propane vapors from a leaking pipe or gas fitting are heavier than air and will build up heaviest concentration at the leak and float down to mix with air. Gas from open burners is intentionally mixed with air to induce burning and dissipate into the air. When mixed with air, gas becomes only marginally heavier and will expand outward. If a gas burner is left on, the area around the burner, range, and adjoining counter space will be combustible and can cause injury and damage if ignited. This condition will exist for an extended time period. Eventually, the gas will reach the detector's location and cause the alarm to sound.

NOTE:
The LP-Gas detector only indicates the presence of propane gas at its sensor. Combustible levels of LP-Gas may be present in other areas. This detector is intended for the detection of LP-Gas ONLY.

The LP-Gas detector is not tested to detect other types of gas. However, other volatile gases (nuisance gases), most of them flammable in various concentration, may cause the detector to alarm. Some products that may cause the detector to alarm are alcohol, liquor, kerosene, gasoline, deodorants, colognes, propellant used in spray cans and cleaning solvents. In some cases, vapors from glue and adhesive used in the manufacturing of the motorhome may also cause the detector to alarm for several months after the date of manufacture. If it is determined that the detector has false alarmed because of the above mentioned nuisance gases, reset the detector and ventilate the motorhome with fresh outside air.

Take precautions to ensure one of these nuisances has not masked an actual gas alarm condition. The detector draws less current than one instrument panel lamp and will operate to detect gas until the battery is drained down to 7.0 Volts. The detector must be supplied with a voltage higher than 7.0 Volts, for it to operate properly. If the power source is disconnected, or if the power is otherwise interrupted, the detector will not operate.

The LP-Gas leak detector has a self-check circuit running at all times while the detector is powered. In the event that the circuitry fails, a failure alarm will sound and the operating indicator will cease to light.

LP-Gas Detector Operation:

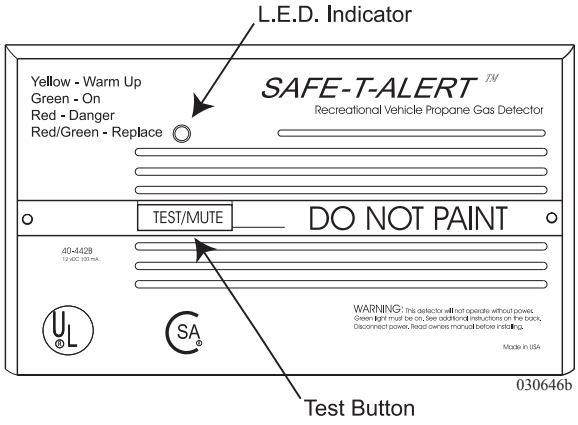
Upon first application of power, the LED will flash yellow for three minutes while the detector is stabilizing. At the end of the start cycle the LED will turn Green, indicating full operation. If the detector senses unsafe levels of gas it will immediately sound an alarm. The gas detector operates on 12 Volt DC, with a current draw less than 1/10th of one amp.

CAUTION:
The detector will not alarm during the three minute warm up cycle.

Testing

Press the **TEST** switch any time during the warm up cycle, or while in normal operation. The LED should flash red and the alarm should sound. Release the switch. This is the only way the detector should be tested. The test feature checks full operation of the detector.

WARNING:
Test the operation of this detector after the motorhome has been in storage, before each trip and at least once per week during use.



Alarm

The **red** LED will flash and the alarm will sound whenever dangerous levels of propane or methane gas are detected. The detector will continue to alarm until the gas clears or the **Test/Mute** switch is pressed.

Procedures to Take During an Alarm:

1. Turn off all gas appliances, (stove, refrigerator), extinguish all flames and smoking material. Evacuate, leave doors and windows open.
2. Turn off the primary valve on the LP tank.
3. Determine and repair the source of the leak. Contact a qualified professional for service, if necessary.

CAUTION:
Do Not re-enter until the problem is corrected.

Potential Sources of LP Gas Leaks When Operating the Motorhome:

- Cooktop Burners
- Oven
- Refrigerator
- Defective LP-Gas Connection
- Defective Regulator
- Portable Propane Powered Equipment

Alarm Mute:

Press the **Test-Mute** button when the detector is in alarm.

1. The **red** LED will continue to flash and the alarm will beep every 30 seconds until the gas level has dropped to a safe level.
2. The LED will flash **green** until the end of the **Mute** cycle.
3. If dangerous gas levels return before the end of the **Mute** cycle, the alarm will beep four times and return to phase 1.
4. After two minutes the detector will return to normal operation (solid **green**) or resound the alarm if dangerous levels of gas remain in the area.

Fault Alarm:

Should the microprocessor sense a fault in the gas detector, a fault alarm will sound twice every 15 seconds. The LED will alternately flash **red to green** and the **MUTE** switch will not respond to any command. The gas detector must be repaired or replaced.

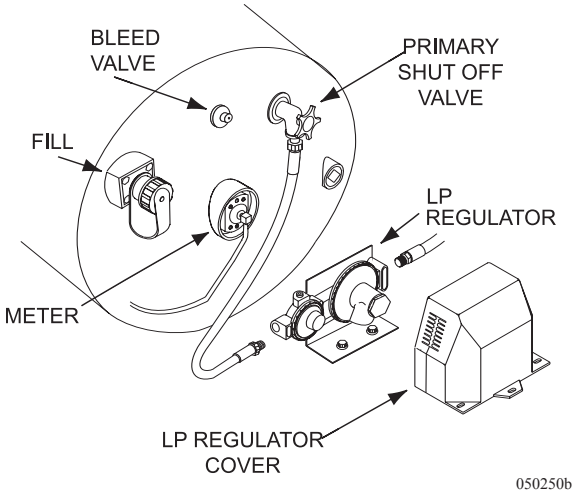
Maintenance

1. Vacuum the dust off the detector cover weekly (more frequently in dusty locations) using the soft brush attachment of the vacuum.
2. Do not spray cleaning agents or waxes directly onto the front panel. This action may damage the sensor, cause an alarm or cause a detector malfunction.

LP-GAS EMERGENCY PROCEDURES - CHECKLIST

If you smell gas (a rotten egg or sulfur smell) at any time, perform the following steps immediately:

- Shut off gas appliances.
- Manually turn off the primary shut-off valve at the LP-Gas tank.
- Do not attempt to operate any electric switch as this can produce a spark and could ignite the gas.
- Open windows and doors.
- Evacuate the motorhome. Stay clear of the surrounding area.
- Keep all sources of ignition out of the area.
- Contact a qualified service technician to find the source and repair the gas leak.



050250b

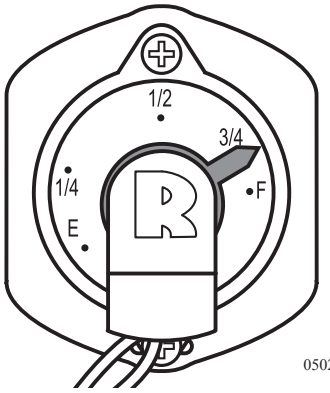
WARNING:
A fire or explosion from ignited gas or gas fumes can cause serious injury or death.

LP-GAS TANK - *Measurement*

Two methods can be used to monitor the amount of fuel in the LP-Gas tank. A small gauge is located on the LP-Gas tank. This non-adjustable gauge provides a quick view of the LP-Gas level. The Aladdin™ System will also provide a percentage full reading on the **COACH TANK/MISC STATUS** screen.

COACH TANK/MISC STATUS		
FRESH TANK	PCT	XXXXXXX
	GAL	XXXXXXX
GRAY TANK	PCT	XXXXXXX
	GAL	XXXXXXX
BLACK TANK	PCT	XXXXXXX
	GAL	XXXXXXX
LP TANK	PCT	XXXXXXX
BASEMENT TEMP	F	XXXXXXX
OUTSIDE TEMP	F	XXXXXXX

020199



050256b

Tank Capacity

LP-GAS TANK CAPACITY*	
All Models**	38 Gallons*

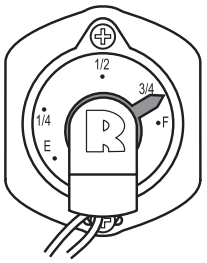
**Actual filled LP-Gas capacity is 80% of listing due to safety shut-off required on tank. **Except All Electric models.*

NOTE:
This chart reflects product specifications available at the time of printing. Floor plans introduced thereafter may not be reflected in the chart. All other information contained throughout the manual will still apply.

NOTE:
All tank capacities are estimated based upon calculations provided by the tank manufacturers and represent approximate capacities. The actual "usable capacity" may be greater or less then the estimated capacities based upon fabrication and installation of the tanks.

Tank Filling

Woodall's Campground and Trailer Guide, and other similar publications, list refueling stations. Many travel parks sell LP-Gas. Before filling the LP-Gas tank, shut off pilot lights, appliances and igniters to prevent a fire or explosion. Have a trained service person fill the LP-Gas tank.



LP Tank Gauge
050256b

The LP-Gas tank fill is located in the curbside compartment. If the tank is new and being filled for the first time, inform the service technician to purge any air from the tank before filling. When the tank is filled to the proper level, there is space available for the conversion of liquid into gas. If a tank is over-filled, it may cause the safety valve to release pressure. When this happens, a strong rotten egg odor near the tank and/or a hissing noise may be detected.

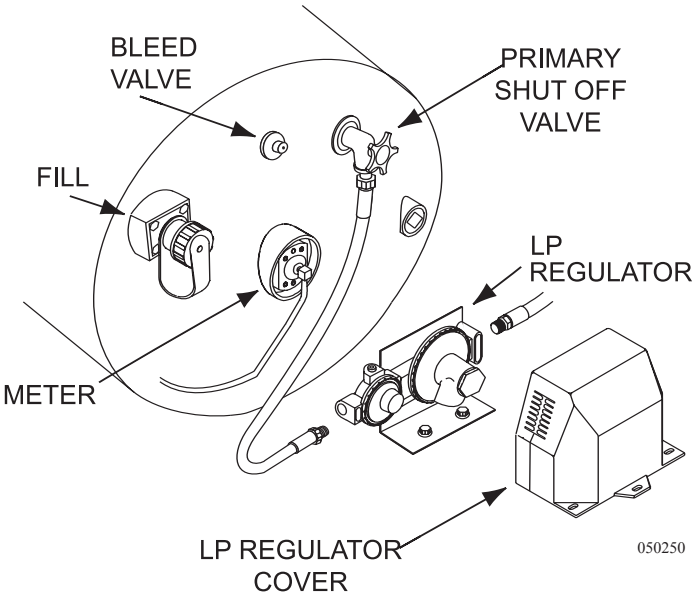
LP-Gas exists in both liquid and vapor form within the tank. A "Full" tank is approximately 80% liquid. The pressure inside the tank varies with the temperature of the liquid. All tanks are required to be equipped with a safety pressure relief device. The purpose of the safety valve is to release excess pressure. When the tank is full, the gauge on the tank will only read ¾ full.

NOTE:
Actual full liquid capacity is 80% of full tank capacity.

CAUTION:
Pressure inside LP-Gas tanks can reach over 200 psi when exposed to direct sunlight. A high-pressure safety relief valve will purge excess high pressure, if necessary. LP-Gas will stop vaporizing as the LP-Gas tank temperature approaches - 40º F.

WARNING:
Extinguish all sources of heat, sparks, flames and smoking materials within a 50' radius during the refueling process.

1. Turn off pilot lights, all appliances and the engine. Close all vents, doors and windows to prevent vapors from entering the motorhome.
2. Remove dust cover and screw nozzle to the fill valve.
3. Turn on dispensing pump, then open 80% bleed valve.
4. Open valve on fill nozzle and dispense liquid into the tank.
5. Close valve on fill nozzle as liquid just begins to expel from 80% bleed valve. The overfill protection valve prevents filling the tank to more than 80% of the rated capacity.
6. Close 80% valve and shut off dispensing pump.



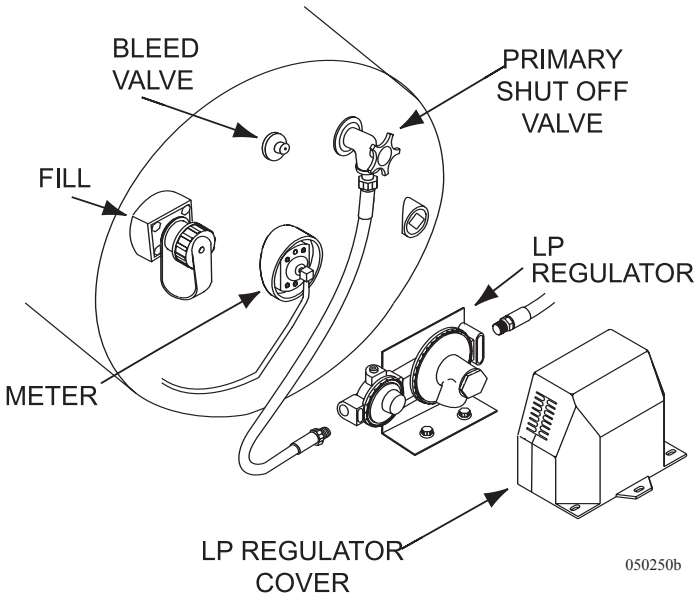
7. Open high-pressure bleed valve on fill nozzle to remove pressure between dispensing pump and fill nozzle. Remove nozzle from the fill valve.
8. Install the dust cover.
9. LP-Gas appliances (especially the refrigerator) may have difficulty starting after a period of non-use. To speed the process of supplying fresh fuel to the appliances, light the stove first.

WARNING:
It is common for small amounts of liquid propane to escape and evaporate during the refueling process. Protect bare skin. Instant freezing will occur if exposed to liquid propane.

WARNING:
When storing portable LP-Gas tanks that are not connected to an LP-Gas system, install an approved plug in the tank outlet holes to prevent leaks. Do not store or transport empty LP-Gas tanks, portable tanks, gasoline or other flammable liquids inside the motorhome. Keep open flame and spark producing materials away from the LP-Gas area. Shut off all appliances and the primary LP-Gas tank valve (located on the LP-Gas tank Roadside End) when the motorhome is in storage. If this warning is ignored, a fire or explosion could result.

CAUTION:
Pressure inside LP-Gas tanks can reach over 200 psi when exposed to direct sunlight. A high-pressure safety relief valve will purge excess high pressure, if necessary. LP-Gas will stop vaporizing as the LP-Gas tank temperature approaches -44º F.

Tank Operation



Tank Operation:

- Manually open the primary shut-off valve located on the LP-Gas tank.
- Turn off the primary valve on the LP-Gas tank when the motorhome is in between trips.
- Hand tighten the primary valve. Do not use a wrench or pliers to close the valve.
- The primary valve is designed to be closed by hand. Over-tightening the valve may permanently damage the valve seat.

LP-GAS FUNDAMENTALS

# Capacity	Gallon Capacity	BTU Capacity
5	1.18	107,909
10	2.36	215,807
11	2.59	237,387
20	4.72	431,613
30	7.08	647,420
40	9.43	863,226

CONVERSIONS

Gallons to Liters (1 Gallon = 3.785 Liters)
Fahrenheit to Celsius (F° - 32 ÷ 1.8 = C°)
11 in. Water Column = 6 1/4 ozs. per sq. in. pressure.
27.7 in. Water Column = 1 lb. per sq. in. pressure.

The above capacities allow for 20% vapor space on each cylinder.

Data taken from the National Fire Prevention Association (NFPA). Pamphlet #58-1998.

LP-Gas Statistics:	
Pounds Per Gallon	4.24
Specific Gravity of Gas	1.50
Specific Gravity of Liquid	.504
Cubic Feet Gas Per Gallon of Liquid	36.38
Cubic Feet Gas Per Pound	8.66
BTU Per Gallon	91,502
BTU Per Pound	21,548
Dew Point in Degrees Fahrenheit	- 44° F
Vapor Pressure at 0° F	31
Vapor Pressure at 70° F	127
Vapor Pressure at 100° F	196
Vapor Pressure at 110° F	230
Flash Point	842° F

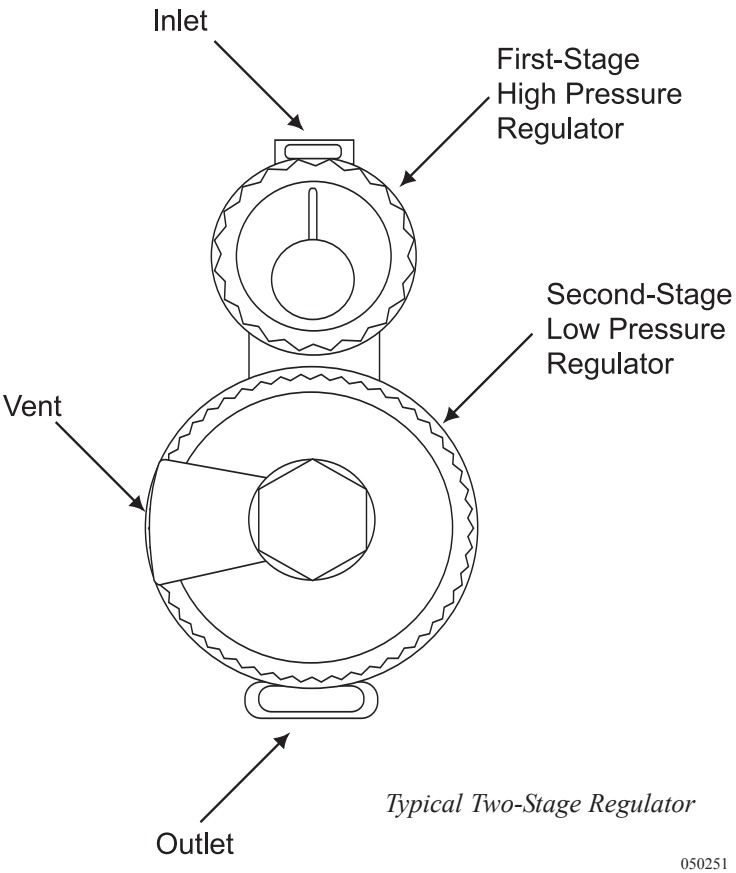
Basic Facts About LP-Gas:

- LP-Gas detectors are a federal requirement on all LP-Gas equipped recreation vehicles.
- LP-Gas is a by-product produced by refining oil.
- Odor is added to LP-Gas after the refining process.
- Each liquid gallon of LP-Gas produces 91,502 BTU (British Thermal Units).
- Temperature affects pressure of LP-Gas. Internal tank pressure can exceed 200 psi.
- Tanks or valves contain pressure relief valves. The relief valve opens at 125% above tank rating.
- LP-Gas stops vaporizing at -44º F.
- Standard LP-Gas operating pressure is 11" of Water Column or approximately 6 ¼ ounces per square inch.
- An inch of Water Column is a measurement of applied pressure to one side of a U-Tube ½ filled with water at sea level. The amount of pressure required to raise the water level 11", represents 11” of Water Column.

NOTE:

The above information is not a complete guide for the use of LP-Gas tanks or appliances. In cold climates keep fuel levels above 50% in order to keep vaporization of LP-Gas at the highest level.

LP-GAS REGULATOR



Typical Two-Stage Regulator

050251

LP-Gas is compressed into liquid form in the tank. Only the vapor is used during combustion by an appliance. As vapor is removed from the tank, the remaining liquid will vaporize to maintain pressure that is removed during consumption. This process will continue until there is no liquid remaining in the tank.

Temperature affects action of the liquid to vaporize. If temperature of the liquid is - 44º F, the liquid remains stable with tank pressure, about 0 psi. If liquid temperature is 100º F, the liquid quickly vaporizes with tank pressure, about 200 psi. Vapor pressure must remain relatively consistent, regardless of temperature, for the appliance heat output to remain stable. Vapor pressure regulation is performed by the regulator.

The motorhome two-stage regulator reduces vapor pressure so that it is safe for use. The first stage of the regulator reduces tank pressure to a range of 10 to 13 psig (pounds per square inch gauge). The second stage further reduces pressure to a working pressure of 0.4 psig (11 Inches of Water Column or about 6¼ ounces psi.). A vent is installed to allow the internal diaphragm to move with atmospheric pressure change. It is important to keep the vent clean and clear of obstruction or corrosion. If the vent becomes clogged, pressure from LP tank may cause erratic pressure regulation. If there is any corrosion, contact a qualified LP-Gas service technician. The regulator is mounted so that the vent faces downward. If the vent becomes clogged, clean it with a toothbrush.

Under normal atmospheric conditions an LP-Gas regulator will not freeze, nor will the LP-Gas. Vapor passing through the regulator will expand and cool, condensing moisture in the gas. The moisture will freeze, build up and block the vent. The possibility of freeze up is greatly reduced with the two-stage regulator.

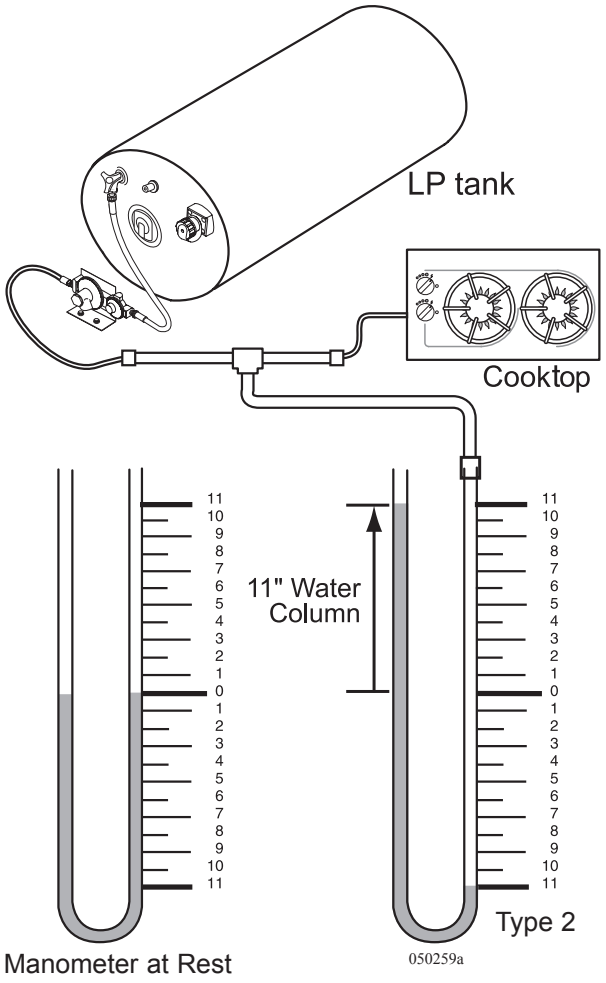
To Prevent Freeze Up:

- Ensure the LP-Gas tank is totally free of moisture prior to filling.
- Ensure the tank is not overfilled.
- Keep the valve closed when the tank is empty.

If A Freeze Up Occurs:

- Have an LP-Gas distributor purge the tank.
- Have the LP-Gas distributor inject methyl alcohol in the tank.

Damage to the regulator can occur when the tank is overfilled. The regulator is designed to work with vapor only. This is why the tank is filled to only 80% of its liquid capacity. The other 20% allows for vaporization of the liquid. The primary vapor valve is located in the vapor section of the tank. In an overfilled tank, liquefied petroleum can fill the regulator. As the liquid vaporizes, it can freeze the diaphragm. High tank pressure on a frozen diaphragm can cause a rupture and result in erratic pressure regulation. This is why it is important to have the LP-Gas pressure checked for proper pressure and accurate regulation during appliance operation. Erratic pressure regulation dramatically affects refrigerator operation on LP-Gas.



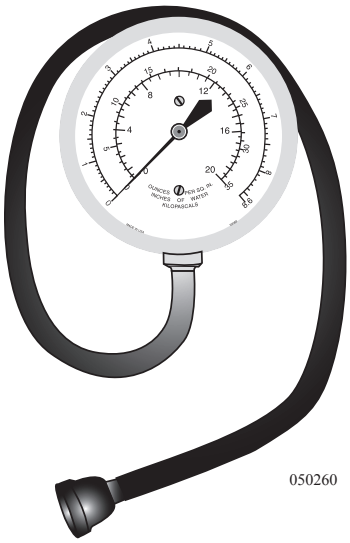
U-Tube Testing Layout

Manometers:

The manometer is the best way to accurately determine LP-Gas pressure. There are two different styles of manometers: Gauge and U-tube. Gas pressure is measured in Inches of Water Column. This is the amount of pressure applied to one side of a U-shaped tube half filled with water. The amount of pressure needed to raise the column of water **11"** represents **11 Inches of Water Column**.

WARNING:

Do not attempt to adjust the regulator. Adjustments require special equipment. Failure to follow these instructions may result in a fire or explosion, and can cause severe personal injury or death. Do not operate LP-Gas appliances until the LP-Gas pressure is checked and a leak down test is performed!



Manometer Gauge for Testing Type 1

LP-GAS HOSE INSPECTION

It is suggested by the hose manufacturer that the LP-Gas supply hoses used on the motorhome undergo regular inspection. As a guideline, we suggest that all flexible LP-Gas lines connecting the slide-out, appliances and tanks be inspected in the spring and fall of each year by a qualified RV technician.

According to the manufacturer, inspection should consist of the following procedures, and performed when the hose is not under pressure:

1. **INSPECTION:** Inspect the outside cover of the hose for blistering, abrasion or cuts and coupling slippage. Cuts in the hose cover that expose or damage the reinforcement are cause for replacement. Hose strength is controlled by the plies of reinforcement and damage in this area cannot be tolerated. Small cuts, nicks, or gouges that do not go completely through the cover are not cause for replacement of the hose.

NOTE:
Pricking of the cover in the manufacture of this type of hose is common and necessary for satisfactory hose performance. Consequently, the uniformly pricked cover should not be viewed with alarm.

2. Damage to the textile reinforcement or wire braid is cause for hose replacement. Wire braid reinforced hose, which has been kinked or flattened so as to permanently deform the wire braid in the unpressurized state, shall be removed from service.
3. Blistering or loose outer cover is cause for hose replacement.
4. Examine couplings for slippage. Slippage is evidenced by the misalignment of the hose and coupling and/or the scored or exposed area where slippage has occurred. Any evidence of slippage is cause for hose replacement.
5. It is important that if a damaged LP-Gas hose is found, the source of the damage be determined and corrected prior to the replacement of the LP-Gas hose.

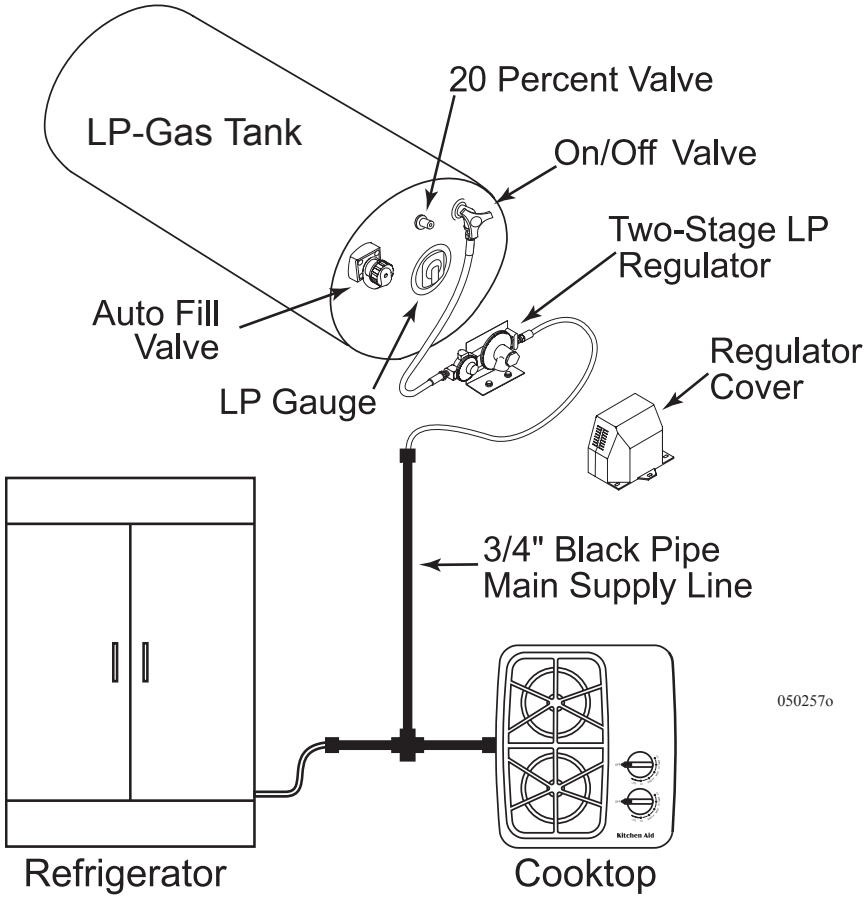
NOTE:
Only a qualified RV technician should complete replacement of LP-Gas components.

It is also suggested, that the flexible LP-Gas supply lines on your recreational vehicle be replaced every ten (10) years. The manufacturer of the LP-Gas supply lines recommended this schedule after performing extended testing and determining that the failure rate may increase after this period of time. The motorhome manufacturer recommends following these guidelines to assure continued safety and dependable use.

A primary manifold black steel pipe running throughout the motorhome distributes LP-Gas to secondary lines. All secondary lines leading to gas appliances are made of copper tubing with flared fittings. If any lines rupture do not attempt to splice them. Always run a new line. It is recommended that gas distribution work be performed by an authorized dealer or an authorized service technician. When removing or servicing any gas appliance, manually close the primary valve located on the end of the LP-Gas tank. This will prevent dangerous gas leakage that could result in an explosion and possible serious injury.

INSPECTION:
Inspect the rubber flexible lines, twice a year, for abrasions, tears, kinks or other signs of damage.

If a gas leak is suspected, get the system inspected and repaired by a qualified service technician as soon as possible.



Typical LP-Gas System Layout

LP-GAS CONSUMPTION

Each gallon of LP-Gas produces 91,502 BTUs of heat. One 27 gallon tank produces two million BTU's. Total consumption depends on the rate of usage by each appliance and the operating time. The stove typically uses the most gas.

Determine Fuel Consumption:

To determine approximately how many hours an LP-Gas appliance will operate on one gallon of LP-Gas, use the following formula:

- LP-Gas appliances are rated in Input BTU (British Thermal Units). The rating is usually stamped or printed on a tag affixed to the appliance. For example: the Input rating of the appliance is 10,000 BTUs.
- One gallon of LP-Gas produces 91,502 BTUs.
- Divide the amount of BTUs of one gallon of LP-Gas (91,502) by the rating on the appliance in this example 10,000. Net continuous operation time for one gallon of LP-Gas for this appliance would be approximately 9.2 hours.

The above formula can be useful when trying to determine the approximate length of time a tank of LP-Gas will last. Generally, LP-Gas appliances do not operate continuously. An example would be the typical cycling of the refrigerator.

Typical Appliance BTU Ratings
Cooktop Large - 12,500 BTU Small - 6,000 BTU
Refrigerator (Norcold) 2-door - 1,500 BTU 4-door - 2,200 BTU

Determining how long a tank of LP-Gas will last:

- Combine the BTU input totals of all appliances, and the approximate length of time these appliances operate per day.
- Multiply the number of liquid gallons in the LP-Gas tank by 91,502.
- Divide the total of BTUs of the LP-Gas tank by the total number of BTUs the appliances consume, equals the approximate number of hours of operation before refueling.

WARNING:

LP-Gas is highly volatile and extremely explosive. Never use matches or open flame to test for leaks. Use only approved LP-Gas leak testing solution to test for leaks. Unapproved solutions can damage copper tubing and brass fittings. Never attempt to adjust LP-Gas regulators without the use of proper equipment. Improper LP-Gas regulator adjustment will affect the performance of LP-Gas operated appliances. Incorrect flame or explosion can occur. Only qualified personnel should perform any maintenance or repair to the LP-Gas system.

LP-GAS SAFETY TIPS

Liquid Propane gas is one of the safest and most reliable fuels available on the market when handled properly. LP-Gas, however, does have a great explosive “potential" if handled improperly. Danger is minimized by becoming familiar with and following a few safety precautions, and by learning how to properly operate LP-Gas appliances. Use of LP-Gas requires the responsibility to enforce extra safety measures.

The motorhome is equipped with many LP-Gas operated appliances because it is a convenient and efficient source of fuel. LP-Gas appliances must be operated and maintained in accordance with the product manufacturer’s instructions.

The National Propane Gas Association (NPGA) has a special service program offered called GAS® (Gas Appliance System) Check. The GAS® Check program is aimed at educating users about the convenience of propane with safety and peace of mind. For information on the **NPGA Gas® Check program, call (630) 515-0600 or visit www.npga.org.**

LP-Gas Tanks and Cylinders:

Tanks are built to American Society of Mechanical Engineers (AMSE) Code. The cylinders are built to DOT (Department of Transportation) Code. The major difference between cylinders and tanks is in required testing and inspection procedures, and in construction of the containers. Both tanks and cylinders are required to undergo pressure testing and inspection; however, the procedures for how they are tested and inspected differ.

The difference between the two codes are that the valves, fittings and brackets are located only on the ends of the DOT cylinders; however, on the ASME tanks they may be located on ends, as well as the sides. There is also a difference in how the tanks are rated. Required tank ratings are in gallons (ASME ratings) or pounds (DOT) water capacity. The Federal DOT (Department of Transportation) regulations require periodic inspections and re-qualifications of cylinders.

American Society of Mechanical Engineers (AMSE) tanks or bulk containers are generally used in motorhomes, and are permanently mounted on to the unit.

An alloy steel two-piece welded and brazed tank is used on all towable products. The marking on the collar, DOT 4BA240, identifies the DOT specifications and service pressure. Other pertinent information included on the collar is the water capacity (WC) and the tare weight (TW), both which are measured in pounds, and the manufacture date (one of the most important items). There is a required 12 year re-qualification. The final piece of information is Dip Tube (DT) length. This is part of the overfill protection and maximum liquid allowance in the cylinder.

Maintenance and Safety Tips for the LP-Gas Refrigerator:

- It is recommended to have the venting system checked for blockage by an authorized service center before firing up the refrigerator for the first time each season and annually. Insects may have built nests that will obstruct flow.
- Have the refrigerator, venting **inspected** annually by an authorized service center.
- Before firing up the refrigerator for the first time each season, have the venting system checked for blockage. Insects may have built nests that will obstruct flow.
- At the first indication of incomplete combustion (yellow flame instead of a blue flame or soot is present) contact a service technician immediately. Improper combustion can cause carbon monoxide buildup, which is potentially fatal!

Maintenance and Safety Tips for the Propane Range:

- Burner flame should be a blue color, indicating complete combustion. If not, have the unit serviced by a qualified technician.
- Do not cover the oven bottom with foil. Air circulation will be restricted.
- Never use gas ranges or ovens for heating purposes.
- Always have pot handles turned inward.
- Ensure children understand never to turn or play with the knobs on the front of the propane gas range.

NOTES

NOTES

The Executive 2005

Electrical Systems - House

Section 8

HOUSE ELECTRICAL - INTRODUCTION.....325
BATTERY DISCONNECT - HOUSE.....326
BATTERY CUT-OFF SWITCH.....327
SHORE POWER HOOK-UP.....327
Power Cord Reel (OPT) 331
AC120 Volt & Amp Meters.....332
TRANSFER SWITCH.....332
GENERATOR - 240 VOLT AC 333
Pre-Start checks 334
Starting the Generator 334
Stopping the Generator.....335
Power the Equipment.....335
Generator Fuel 336
Resetting the Circuit Breaker..... 337
Generator Exercise 337
GENERATOR - AUTO GEN START (RC7 GS) 338
INVERTER - 3000 WATT 341
RC7 GS Remote 341
Stand-By Operation 342
Battery Charging with the Inverter.....342
Battery Temperature Sensor.....343
Pass-Through AC Power.....343
Meters Menu 344
Programming the Inverter 345
Re-booting the Inverter.....348
INVERTER-SINE WAVE (OPT) 349
Remote 350
Programming & Resetting.....352
Stand-by Operation.....353
Battery Charging.....353
Battery Temperature Sensor.....354
Pass-Through Power 354
Meters Menu 354
Automatic Generator Start Programming.....355
Inverter Facts 358
DISTRIBUTION PANELS - HOUSE 250/120 359
Circuit Breaker.....360
GFCI BREAKERS & OUTLETS.....361
DISTRIBUTION PANEL - HOUSE 12 VOLT 362
FUSES 362
Tools of the Trade.....363
Knowing When to Say When 363
BATTERY.....364
How It Works 364
Starting Battery 364
House Batteries 365
Battery Maintenance.....366
Testing the Battery.....366
Battery Voltage & Current 368
Battery Charge Time & Consumption Rate 369
SOLAR PANEL (OPT) 370
Charge Controller.....371
Solar Panel Care.....372
LIGHTS - INTERIOR HALOGEN.....373
BULB USAGE - INTERIOR 373
ALL ELECTRIC (OPT) 374
Overview 375
Meters.....375
Remotes.....376
House Batteries 377
Main Battery Disconnect.....379
Alternator 379
Wiring Systems Interfaced.....380

The motorhome 120/240 Volt AC system can be operated from three different power sources: shore power, the on-board generator or the inverter/charger. Shore power is the most efficient and should be used whenever possible. The generator can be used when shore power is unavailable. The inverter/charger supplies silent AC power using the house batteries of the motorhome. The AC power output is limited and should be used sparingly.

Two different sources supply the main AC circuit breaker panel with power: the 50 Amp shore power cord or the on-board generator. The power source used is automatically selected by a switching device known as a transfer switch. The inverter supplies AC power to the sub-panel.

WARNING:
The electrical system is engineered and tested for complete safety. Circuit breakers and fuses protect the electrical circuits from overloading. When planning modifications or additions to the electrical system, we strongly recommend consulting the dealer for assistance to ensure continued integrity and safety of the electrical system. Please note that any modifications may void the warranty.

WARNING:
Water is electrically conductive. Do not use any electrically powered item or electrical outlet that may be exposed to a water source. Such use can result in a serious shock causing injury or death.

Shore Power:

The motorhome is equipped with a shore power cord to connect the motorhome to outside electrical services. Shore power service is the most efficient source of electrical power. The plug end of the shore power cord is 50 Amp, 240 Volt. When this type of power service is not available, electrical adapters will be required to allow a proper and safe connection to the electrical service supply.

NOTE:
When 50 Amp shore service is not available, care will have to be used when operating the appliances and using the outlets to avoid overloading the shore power service.

Generator:

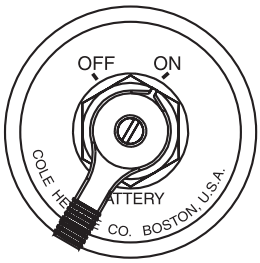
The generator can be selected for use when shore power is unavailable. The maximum amount of generator output power, measured in watts, is calculated at an elevation of 500 feet above sea level. This figure will decrease slightly at higher altitude. Ambient temperature also effects total maximum output. The amount of AC electrical load applied to the generator determines fuel consumption.

Inverter/Charger:

The Inverter/Charger provides silent AC power when shore power is unavailable, and the generator is not selected as a secondary power source. This device has limited AC power output, measured in watts, and operates only selected appliances and outlets. The Inverter/Charger is an auxiliary 120 Volt AC power source that inverts 12 Volt DC house battery power to 120 Volts AC. The Inverter/Charger also converts 120 Volts AC power, supplied from either shore power or the generator, to 12 Volts DC power, to recharge the batteries. When dry camping, the Inverter/Charger may be used to supply power to selected outlets.

BATTERY DISCONNECT - HOUSE

The main house battery disconnect switch turns the house battery power supply on or off by disconnecting 12 Volt DC power to the following items: inverter, domestic fuse panel in the bedroom, domestic fuse panel in the front run box and domestic power supply in the rear run box(s). Turn the house battery disconnect switch off when the motorhome is going to be stored, or before performing electrical maintenance. If possible, leave the motorhome plugged into an AC source with the battery disconnect switch on to help prevent the possibility of dead batteries. Use of this battery cut-off switch will not turn off all DC electrical items or other parasitic loads present on the house battery. Some are federal mandate items such as the LP-Gas detector. If an AC power source is not available, and the motorhome is going to be stored for more than 48 hours, it is recommended to turn the house battery disconnect switch off.



Located in the rear compartment, curbside.

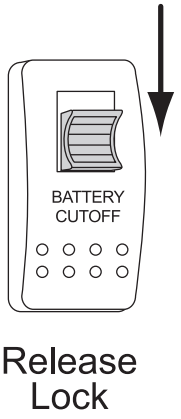
<u>WARNING:</u>
When welding is involved for motorhome repair or modification, only qualified, experienced technicians should weld on the chassis. Improper welding procedures and materials may weaken the assembly or result in damage that is not obvious and may not cause an immediate problem or failure. Unauthorized modifications or repairs to the chassis could result in a forfeiture of warranty coverage.

<u>DANGER:</u>
Due to the sensitive nature of the electronics on the chassis, the following precautions are required to protect electrical components in the motorhome chassis:

1. **Disconnect the (+) positive and (-) negative battery connection.**
2. **Cover electronic control components and wiring to protect from hot sparks.**
3. **Disconnect the terminal plugs from the engine Electronic Control Unit, located on the passenger side of the engine block.**
4. **Disconnect all the plugs from the transmission Electronic Control Unit, located in the storage bay between the frame rails.**
5. **Disconnect the wiring from the alternator.**
6. **Do not connect welding cables to electronic control components.**
7. **Attach the welding ground cable no more than two feet from the part to be welded**.

BATTERY CUT-OFF SWITCH

The battery cut-off switch is located inside next to the entry door. This switch controls the 12 Volt DC power to the domestic fuse panels. The switch locks into the center position to prevent interior DC power from being accidentally turned on or off. When the switch is activated, power is supplied to all interior DC lighting and DC operated appliances. Some appliances will require both DC and AC power to operate, such as the roof air conditioner. This switch is helpful when dry camping to conserve house battery power. Refrigerator and inverter operation are unaffected by the operation of this switch. When the interior house power is off, there are still parasitic loads on the house batteries, and therefore is not a substitute for the main battery disconnect switch.



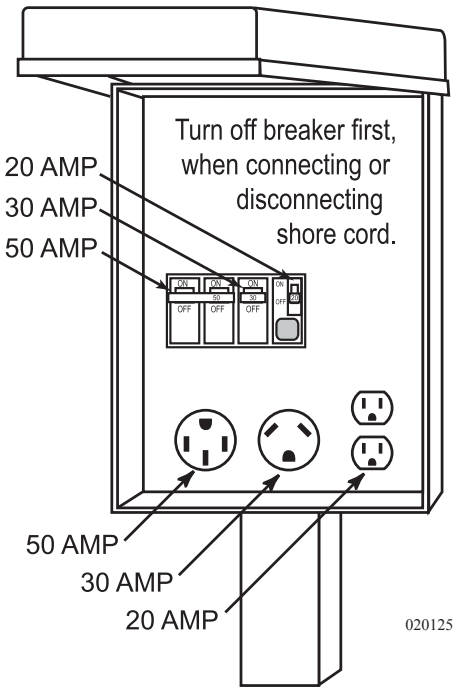
To Turn the Interior Power On or Off:

• Simultaneously push the spring-loaded lock down and push the switch.

CAUTION:
To avoid flash damage to electrical contacts, turn off the interior lighting before activating or deactivating the battery cut-off switch.

SHORE POWER HOOK-UP

The power requirement for the motorhome is 50 Amp 120/240 Volt AC single phase. The shore cord is stored in the rear roadside compartment. If 50 Amp shore power service is available, connect the supplied shore power cord. If less than 50 Amp service is available, electrical adapters will be required.



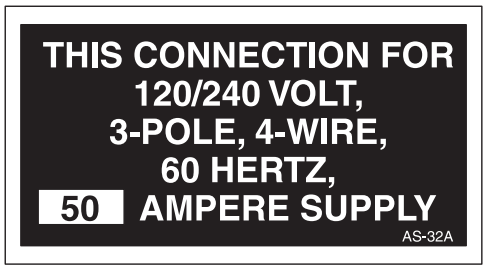
CAUTION:
Avoid flash damage to the electrical system contacts. Before plugging the motorhome into shore power, starting the generator or using the inverter make sure all the appliances are off.

WARNING:
Keep fingers away from metal contacts of the shore plug end. Do Not stand in water when making electrical connections. Serious electrical shock and personal injury can occur. To avoid the risk of electrical shock, turn the circuit breaker off at the power supply outlet before making the shore power connection.

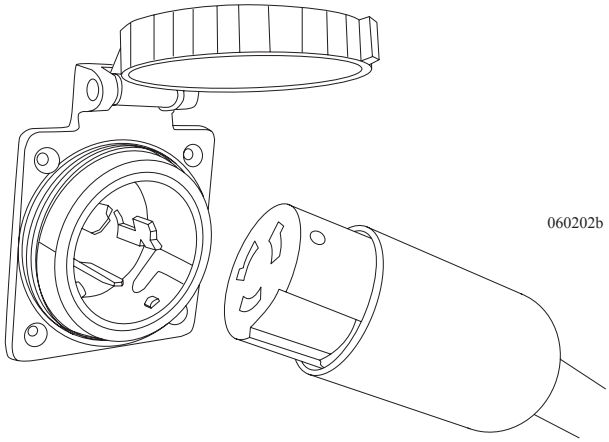
CAUTION:
Do not remove cover from shore power supply to troubleshoot electricity to the motorhome. Serious personal injury or death may occur. If there is no power to the motorhome inform the park manager. It is the park manager's responsibility to fix problems with the shore power hook-up.

Plugging in the Shore Cord:

- Located in the roadside compartment is the shore power cord.
- Unscrew the deck plate and insert the end of the shore cable through the deck plate.
- Align cord end with socket terminals. Insert cord end into socket and rotate end clockwise ¼ turn locking cord end into socket.
- If 50 Amp service is not available, install the proper electrical adapter(s) to the opposite end of the cord.
- Always turn off the shore power breaker to the power supply outlet before connecting or disconnecting the shore cord. This will prevent an accidental shock and flashing of electrical contacts.
- Make the connection to the outlet and turn the shore power breaker on. The transfer switch should make an audible click.
- Go inside the motorhome and check the AC voltage, using the Aladdin™ screen to verify proper voltage.



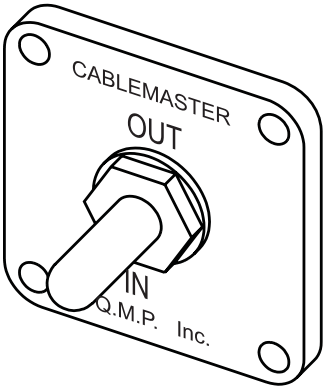
060203



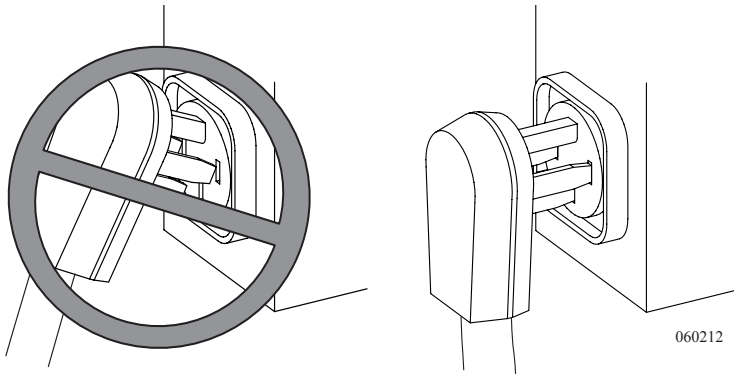
060202b

Plugging in the Shore Cord with Cord Reel Option:

- Located in the roadside compartment is the shore power cord.
- Locate the power cord switch. Extend the cable by placing the switch to the Out position. Extend a sufficient amount of cable to reach the power supply, then turn the switch off. If 50 Amp service is not available, install the proper electrical adapter(s) to the cord.
- Always turn off the shore power breaker to the power supply before connecting or disconnecting the shore cord. This will prevent an accidental shock and flashing of electrical contacts.
- After the connection is made, turn the shore power breaker on. The transfer switch should make an audible click.
- Go inside the motorhome and check the AC voltage using the Aladdin™ screen.



060043



060212

Incorrect Method

Correct Method

When Hooked to 50 Amp:

After verifying proper voltage, wait approximately one minute for the inverter/charger to "stabilize" charging of the batteries before starting air conditioners or other large AC loads.

When Hooked to 30 Amp:

Wait approximately one hour before operating electric appliances. This will allow time for the inverter to stabilize charging the batteries. Use caution when operating appliances to avoid overloading the supplied shore service breaker. Operate appliances and outlets in sequence rather than all at the same time.

CAUTION:

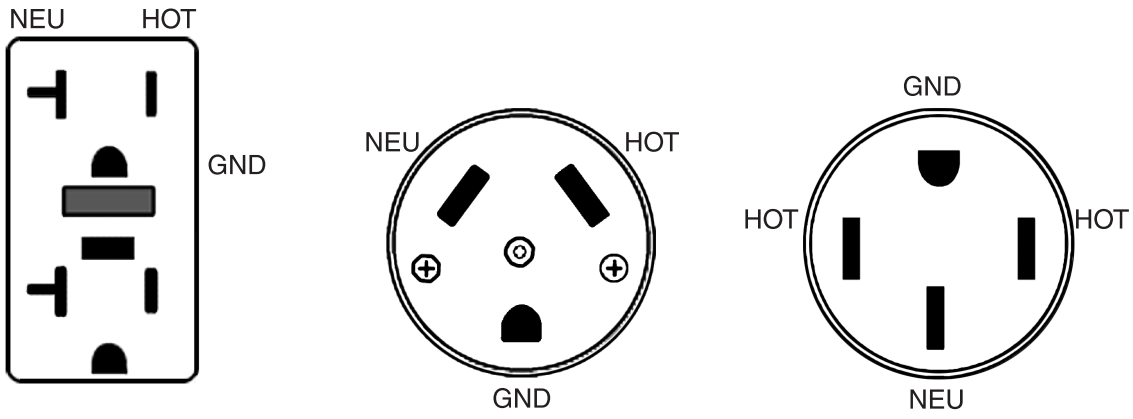
If shore power service is limited to 15 or 20 Amps, use of light duty extension cords and electrical adapters will create voltage loss through the cord and at each electrical connection. Line voltage loss and the resistance at each electrical connection, can be a hazardous combination. Damage to sensitive electronic equipment may result!

WARNING:

Avoid the risk of electrical shock or component damage by disconnecting from shore power during electrical storm activity. Use the Inverter/Charger or start the generator, if AC power is needed.

NOTE:

Three types of shore power outlets most commonly used are shown in the illustration.



15-20 AMP
120 VOLT

30 AMP
120 VOLT

50 AMP
240 VOLT

060121c

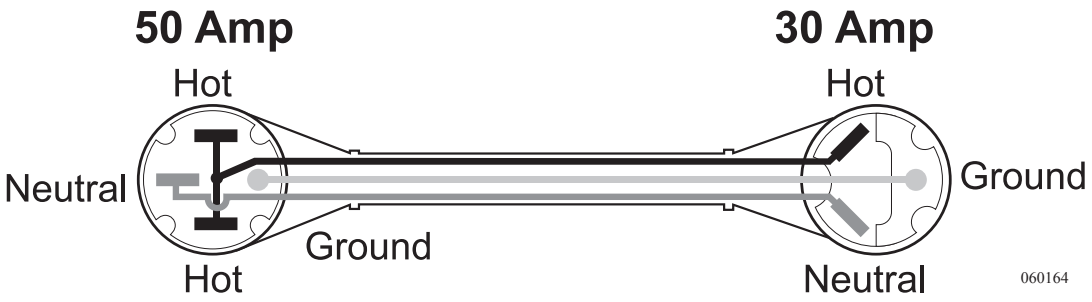
Power Supply:

Different amperage supplies vary greatly in the amount of available current.

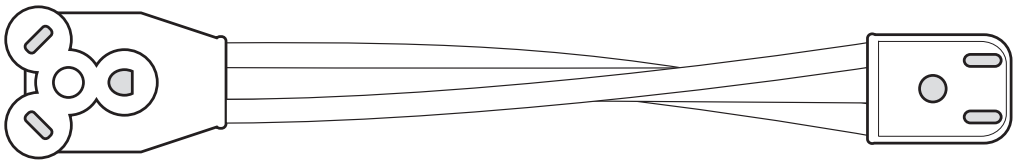
- The continuous amount of current through a breaker or fuse is only 80% of its rated capacity.
- 50 Amp 240 Volt AC shore power service consists of two power supply conductors, a neutral and a safety ground. The 50 Amp breaker simultaneously limits each power supply conductor to no more than a short-term maximum of 50 Amps for each conductor. The 50 Amp 240 Volt service actually provides 80 continuous amps.
- Use care when hooked to anything less than 50 Amp shore service. Shore power service less than 50 Amps consists of one power supply conductor, a neutral and a safety ground; 30 Amp shore service is limited to 24 continuous Amps; 20 Amp shore service is limited to 16 continuous Amps.

Electrical Adapters:

There are many different electrical adapters to suit a variety of needs. Only UL approved adapters should be used. The most common adapter is a 50-30 Amp adapter. The type of connector adapts the 50 Amp shore cord to a 30 Amp shore power outlet. Another common adapter is the 30-20 Amp adapter. Always install the adapter to the cord prior to making the connection to the outlet.



Typical 50-30 Amp Adapter.



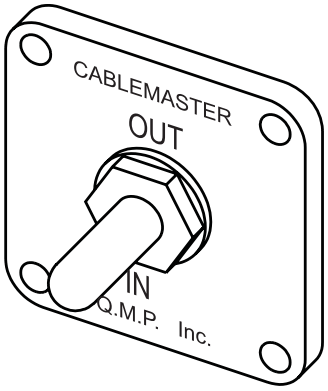
30-20 Amp adapter. Adapts the 30 Amp shore cord to a 20 Amp shore power outlet.

The Power Cord reel is a 12 Volt DC motorized assembly designed to mechanically coil and stow the shore cord. The Power Cord reel is located in the roadside compartment of the motorhome. One end of the Power Cord reel is wired directly to the transfer switch. The motor control switch is labeled **IN** and **OUT**. This switch operates the 12 Volt DC motor to extend or retract the cable.

When extending or retracting the power cord, turn the switch to the direction desired. Assist the cord, following the direction of travel. Extend only as much power cord as necessary to reach the shore power outlet. When the cord is connected to shore power, the cord should be slightly slack.

Maintenance:

When only a short section of the shore power cable is frequently used, the cable may coil sharper than normal and kink. To relieve kinking, routinely extend the cable full distance and straighten the power cable on the ground. It is important the cable remains clean. Accumulated dust and dirt on the cable may cause difficulty in retracting the cord. After cleaning and straightening the cable, allow the Cablemaster to retract the cable into the motorhome.



060043

Power Cord Reel Switch: 12 Volt DC Located in roadside bay in front of plumbing service center.

Check all AC and DC wiring at least once each year to ensure corrosion-free, tight connections. Check the neoprene covers on the In-Limit switch and the Power Switch to confirm they are free of cracks or fracture.

WARNING:

Before working on the electrical system, disconnect from shore power and turn off the Inverter/Charger. Disconnect the negative 12 Volt DC battery cables at the inverter. Remove rings, metal watchbands and other metal jewelry before working around batteries and connectors. Use caution when working with metal tools. If the tool contacts a battery terminal or metal connected to it, a short circuit could occur causing personal injury, explosion or fire.

AC120 Volt & Amp Meters

	VAC	AMP	FRQ
AC LEG 1	116	19.4	60
AC LEG 2	116	0.2	60
	VDC	AMP	
SOLAR	3.5	1.4 CHG	
HOUSE BAT	12.6	45 CHG	

Aladdin™ System displays many AC and DC electrical values:

- AC voltage, amperage and frequency values when hooked to shore power, or when operating from the generator.
- House Battery DC voltage and amperage.
- Solar panel charge voltage and amperage.

The Aladdin™ System monitors the two "hot" supply lines of the 240 Volt AC system. Voltage, amperage and frequency values are measured at the transfer switch. After hooking to shore power check that incoming electrical values are satisfactory. Monitor current consumption when using appliances while hooked to anything less than 50 Amp service. AC values will read "Off" when using the inverter for AC power.

Use the Aladdin™ System to avoid low or high voltage operation, or to monitor DC current consumption when dry camping.

NOTE:
When operating from the inverter, use the inverter remote display to monitor AC voltage and amperage.

TRANSFER SWITCH

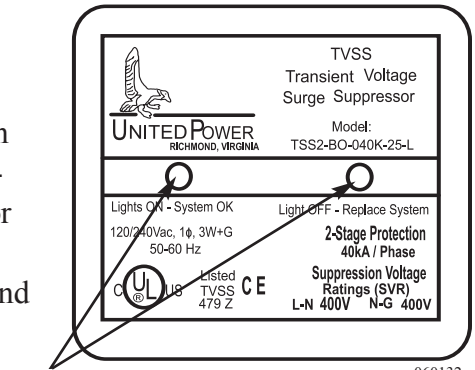
Transfer Switch Cover

The transfer switch uses electronics to monitor voltage input for high or low voltage conditions. If the incoming voltage from the generator or shore power exceeds 138 AC Volts, or if voltage drops below 105 AC Volts, the transfer switch automatically disconnects the electrical service. This helps prevent damage to voltage sensitive equipment that can occur.

Surge Protector:

A surge protector mounts to the transfer switch to prevent the motorhome from receiving a sudden "spike" of incoming voltage.

When hooked to shore power, or operating from the generator, lights on the surge protector will activate to indicate the surge protector is operating. If one, or both, indicator lights are inactive, damage to the surge protector or electrical system may have occurred. Disconnect from shore power, stop the generator and **do not** use the inverter. Replace the surge protector and have the electrical system inspected by a qualified electrical service technician.

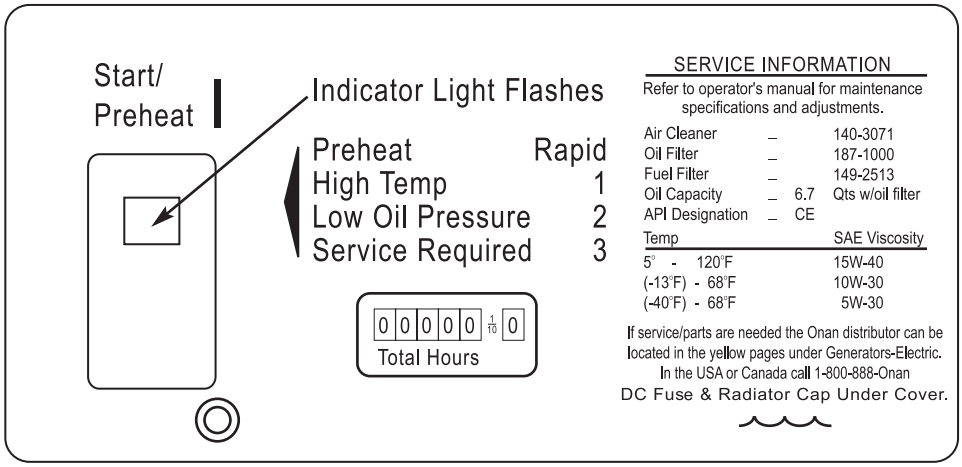


Surge protector connected to transfer switch in roadside bay

NOTE:
To prevent damage to the transfer switch contacts, do not operate appliances or plug AC loads into the outlets when hooking to shore power or starting the generator. If voltage from shore power is below or above acceptable levels, start the generator and disconnect from shore service until shore power supply voltage becomes stable.

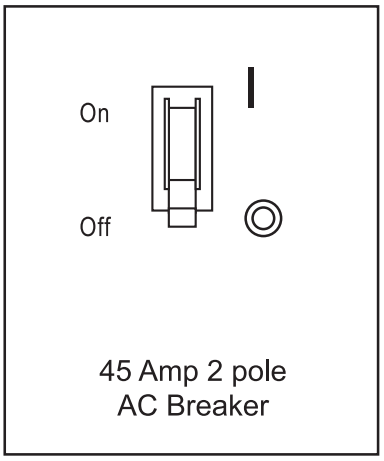
The generator is located in the front compartment of the motorhome. The generator can be started from the following locations:

- Generator remote switch on the dash.
- Generator control panel located on the generator.
- Bedroom control panel.
- Inverter panel.



Panel Location at Generator

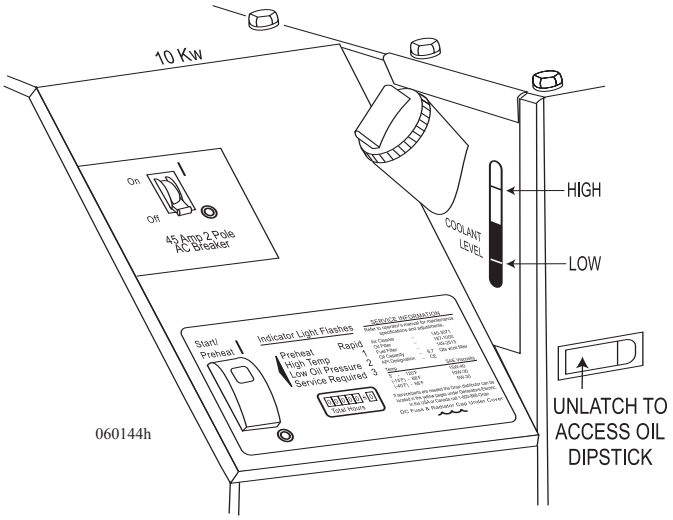
060144i



060144i

Pre-Start Checks

Prior to the first start of the day perform a general **inspection** including oil and coolant levels. Keep a maintenance log on number of hours in operation since the last service. Perform any service or maintenance that may be due.



Before Starting the Generator:

- Clear people and animals from hazards of electrical shock and moving parts.
- All appliances and other large AC electrical loads must be off.

NOTE:
The generator may require priming. To prime hold control switch in the OFF position. Repeat if necessary. The diesel generator fuel pick-up tube is cut to approximately 1/4 tank so as not to run the main engine out of fuel.

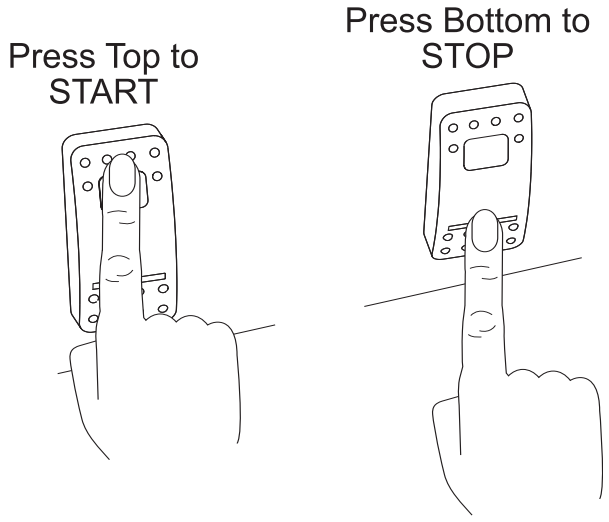
020146

Starting the Generator

Push and hold the control switch in **START** position until the generator starts. Release switch. The control switch may flash up to 15 seconds, indicating engine preheat.

WARNING:
Excessive cranking can overheat and damage the starter motor. Do not crank the engine for more than 30 seconds at a time, in two minute intervals. If the generator fails to start, refer to the manufacturer's manual.

WARNING:
When the motorhome is parked, position the dash air conditioner vent control in the OFF position to prevent exhaust gases from entering the motorhome during generator operation.



080357

Engine exhaust contains Carbon Monoxide, an odorless and colorless gas. Carbon monoxide is poisonous and can cause unconsciousness and/or death. Inspect the exhaust system thoroughly before starting the generator. Do not block the exhaust pipe, or situate the motorhome where the exhaust may accumulate around the motorhome or nearby vehicles. Operate the generator only when safe dispersion of exhaust can be assured. Monitor outside conditions to ensure the exhaust continues to safely disperse.

WARNING:
When parking near high grass, be sure that the hot exhaust gases or the exhaust pipe does not contact the grass and ignite, resulting in a fire.

CAUTION:
An exhaust extension adds weight and stresses the generator exhaust system. Damage to the exhaust piping or exhaust manifold can result, allowing Carbon Monoxide gases to accumulate under or leak into the motorhome.

Stopping the Generator

Turn off the appliances and disconnect other AC loads being used. Allow the generator to run unloaded for at least one minute before shutdown to allow the engine to cool. Momentarily push the control switch to the **STOP** position. Release the switch.

Powering the Equipment

The AC output of the generator powers the motorhome air conditioners, the AC Inverter/Charger, all appliances and items plugged into the electrical outlets of the motorhome. The number of electrical appliances that can be operated at any given time depends upon how much power is available from the generator. If the generator is "overloaded" or a short circuit causes "over current," either the generator will shut down or the circuit breaker will trip. If power consumption, in total, exceeds the generator power output, compensation for temperature and elevation may be necessary. Operate appliances in sequence, rather than all at the same time.

NOTE:
The generator may shut down when loaded nearly to full power and an air conditioner (or other large motor load) cycles on. For a brief moment during start up an electric motor can draw up to three times the rated power. For this reason it may be necessary to operate some appliances in sequence when air conditioners or other large motor loads are on.

Air density decreases as altitude increases. Power decreases at approximately 3% of the rated power each 1,000 feet (305M) of increase in elevation above sea level. It may be necessary to operate fewer appliances at the same time when the camping location is at a higher elevation. For example: 7500 watt generator at 5,000 ft. = 6375 watts net. Temperature also affects maximum output power. For example: at 120º a 7500 watt generator produces 6000 watts net.

INFORMATION:
The generator may shut down for reasons other than an overload. If a blink code appears on the control switch, refer to the manufacturer's manual to obtain an explanation for the code.

Generator Fuel

There is always a possibility fuel may be contaminated. Diesel fuel may contain water or a microbe growth (black slime). Any contamination of fuel will greatly reduce the total output of the generator, and may cause erratic AC output.

NOTE:
The motorhome manufacturer does not cover damage to the generator caused by fuel contamination, or to appliances due to erratic AC voltage.

AVERAGE FUEL CONSUMPTION	DIESEL 10,000 WATTS (gal./hr.)
No Load	.1
Half Load	.6
Full Load	1.1

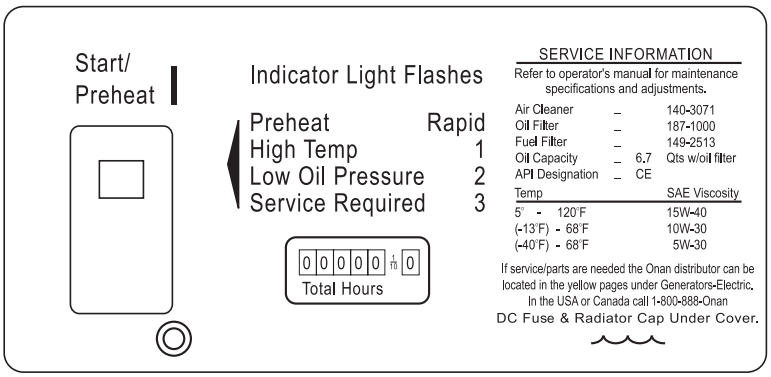
Resetting the Circuit Breaker

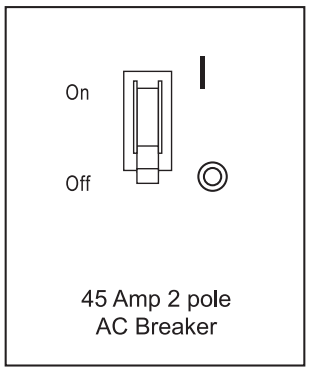
If a circuit breaker trips in the main AC breaker panel, or on the generator control panel, there may be a short circuit or too much load.

NOTE:
The generator will continue to run after a circuit breaker trips.

If a circuit breaker trips, disconnect or turn off as many loads as possible. To reset the circuit breaker, switch the circuit breaker to **OFF**; then switch back to **ON** to reconnect the circuit. If the circuit breaker immediately trips, the electrical distribution system has a short or the circuit breaker is faulty. Call a qualified electrician. If the circuit breaker does not trip, reconnect a combination of loads that will not overload the generator or cause the circuit breaker to trip again. Remember to compensate for elevation and temperature changes when re-connecting loads.

NOTE:
An appliance or load may have a short if it causes a circuit breaker to trip after reconnection. DO NOT continue to reset breaker. Have the problem corrected before resuming operation.





060144i

Generator Exercise

If use of the generator is infrequent, “exercise” the generator once a month by operating it at approximately half the maximum rated output for two hours. This “exercise” will help promote better starting, more reliable operation and longer engine life. This procedure drives off moisture, lubricates the internal engine parts, replaces the old stale fuel with a fresh supply, and also promotes removing oxides from the electrical switches and contacts.

NOTE:
Avoid short run periods of the generator. Run the generator set under a load for a minimum of one-half hour.

GENERATOR - AUTO GEN START (RC7 GS)

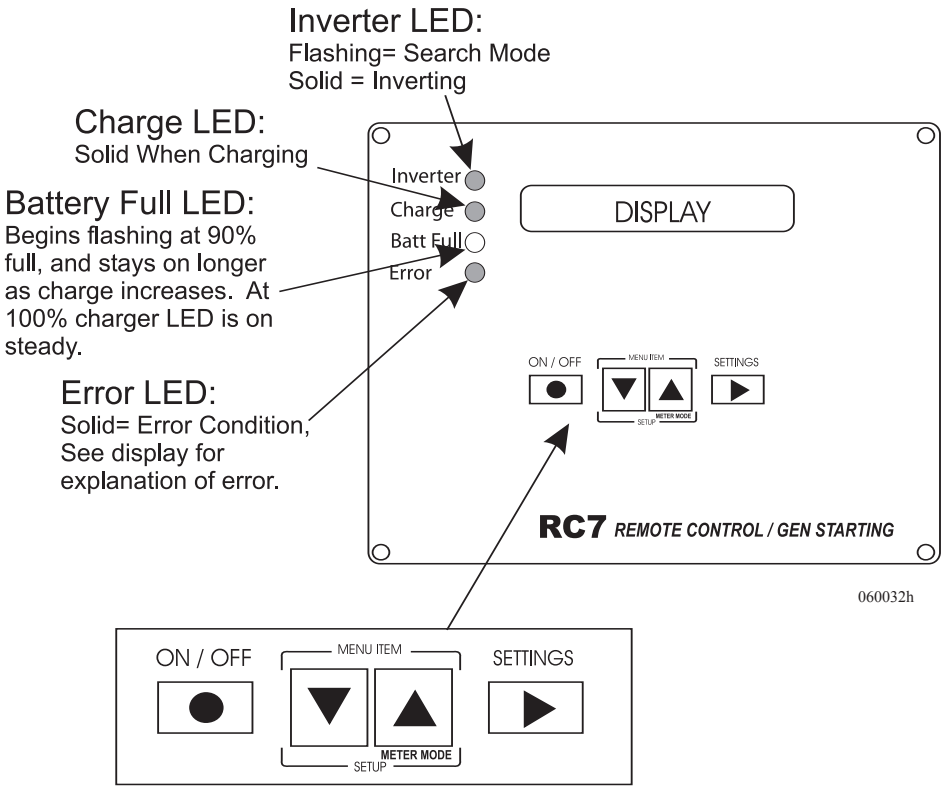
House batteries operate most of the interior lighting and appliances. As house battery power is consumed, the inverter can be programmed to automatically start and stop the generator to keep up with the drain on house batteries. A wide field of parameters can be programmed for generator start and stop points. The settings listed below are an average that should work in most situations. The Automatic Generator Start feature can be programmed when hooked to shore power, operating from the generator, or operating from the batteries.

CAUTION:
Disable the automatic generator start program before refueling, during generator servicing or when storing the motorhome.

INFORMATION:
These instructions are only a guide and not a replacement for the Inverter Owner's Manual. Please refer to Inverter Manual for in-depth information.

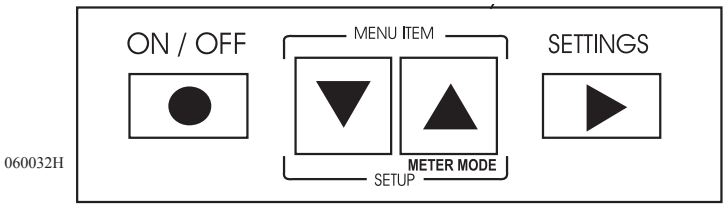
Entering the Setup Mode:

1. Press the **Setup** (up and down arrows) simultaneously for five seconds then release. After entering **Setup** mode, **Search Sense** should display. If this is not displayed, press **Setup** again.
2. Under the **Search Sense** heading, **Defeat** should display. If not, press **Settings** until the inverter is set to **Defeat** in the **Search Sense** heading.
3. Press **Down** arrow once, **Auto LBCO** will display. This should be set to **ON**. If not, press **Settings** once. **Auto LBCO** should now be **ON**.
4. Continue through the rest of the list using the **Down** arrow. Use **Setting** to change the value. When the program is set it may be necessary to slightly adjust the program profile to fit a particular need.



Settings:

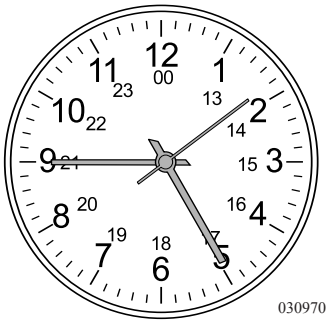
- Search Sense = Defeat.
- Auto LBCO = On.
- Battery Capacity = 500 Amp standard. 1000 Amp All Electric.
- Battery Type = Select Liquid Lead Acid.
- Charge Rate = 100%.
- Shore Power Amps = 30 Amp.
- RC7 GS Setup = Personal preference on this. Last key will continuously display the last screen viewed. In **Power Saver** mode, the last screen will display for a short period of time then the screen will go blank.
- LCD Contrast = Max Contrast. The screen will fade with each successive contrast selection. Continue to press **Settings** until "**Max Contrast**" appears.
- External Shunt = Select None.
- Fuel Gauge Cutout = 11.8 Volts DC.



Set Clock:

The next group of settings is when, and under what conditions, the generator will start and stop. The clock must be set before the inverter will allow programming changes to the rest of the menu headings. Scroll down to the last menu heading **Set Clock**.

- Hours and minutes will alternately flash every eight seconds.
- Use the Settings button to advance the flashing hours or minutes. The clock is a 24 hour clock. If the display reads 00:01, it is 12:01 a.m. If the clock reads 13:00, it is 1:00 p.m.



Example of a 24 hour clock.

NOTE:
The clock time and the generator start/stop programming will be erased whenever the main battery disconnects are turned off.

Programming Auto Start:

After setting the clock, press the **UP** button to scroll back up to the Menu item **Generator Start** to set the conditions at which the generator will automatically start and stop. The following is a general guide. Use the Up and Down arrows to customize settings.

- Generator Start = 50% State of Charge (SOC).
- Generator Stop = 90% State of Charge (SOC).
- Begin Generator Quiet Time = This is the time when the generator will stop operation. 19:00 is 7:00 PM.
- End Generator Quiet Time = This is the time when the generator can start. 09:00 is 9:00 AM.
- Select Generator = Onan Quiet Diesel.

Automatic Generator Start is now programmed. Exit by simultaneously pressing **Set-Up** buttons. **Waiting for AC**, **Inverting** or a charge status **Bulk**, **Absorb** or **Float** should now be displayed.

When the generator starts from the Auto Start program it will automatically stop at 90% State of Charge. If the generator started from the Auto Start program, and is still operating at Gen Quiet Time, the inverter will shut the generator off.

A **RED** error light flashes and the display will indicate Gen Quiet Time. The fault alarm will sound for a short time, and can be silenced by pushing the **Up** or **Down** button.

NOTE:

To start the generator manually after the Automatic Generator Start feature is enabled, it must be started from the RC7 GS remote. If the generator is started manually from any remote switch other than the RC7 GS remote while the Automatic Generator Start feature is enabled, the inverter may shut the generator off due to the parameters set.

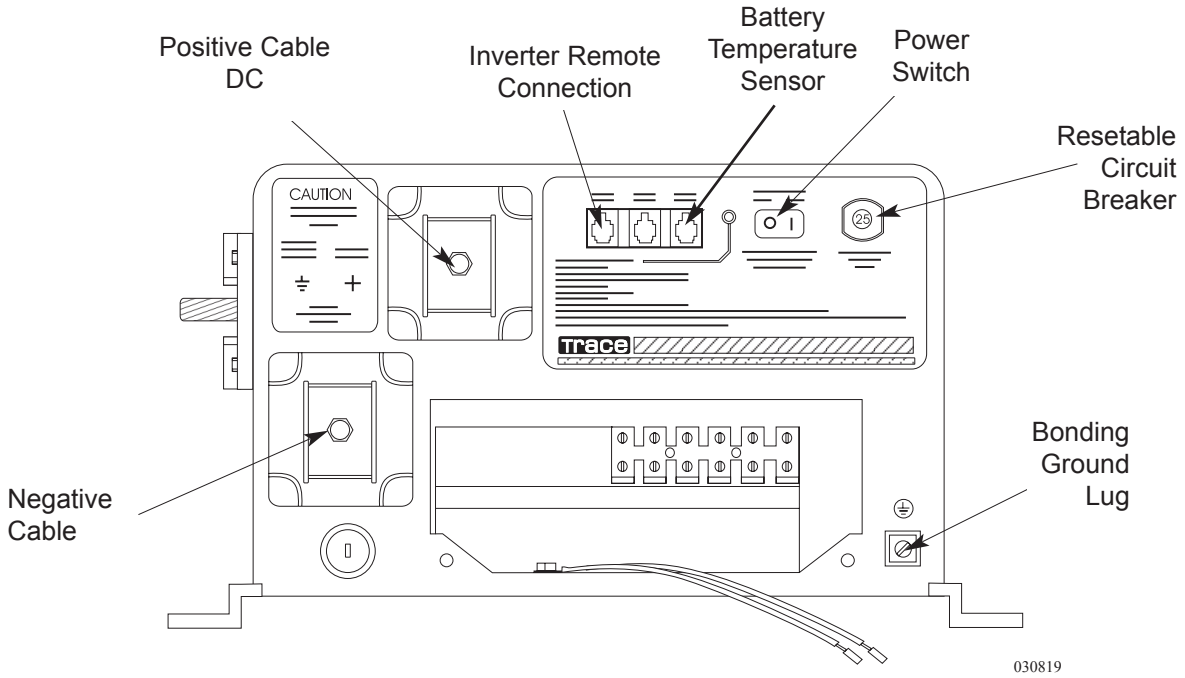
Starting the Generator Manually:

- Use the RC7 GS remote to start or stop the generator when the Automatic Generator Start feature is enabled.
- Press the **UP** or **DOWN** arrow (while in the main menu) until **Generator Start/Stop: Press (ON/OFF)** is displayed.
- Press and hold the **ON/OFF** button until the generator starts. The display will indicate the generator was started manually. Use the **ON/OFF** button or any of the generator start/stop switches to stop the generator.

To Disable Automatic Generator Operation:

- Set the generator Start and Stop points back to Manual **ON/OFF**, or switch off the house and chassis main battery disconnects to erase the clock time and generator start/stop programming.

Use the inverter, when shore power is unavailable and the generator will not be used as the secondary AC power source option, to supply silent AC power to most receptacles, the television and microwave. Use of the inverter will greatly increase house battery power consumption. Turn off the inverter when not in use to conserve house battery power.



To turn the inverter On or Off:

• Momentarily press the inverter **ON/OFF** button on the RC7 remote control.

NOTE:

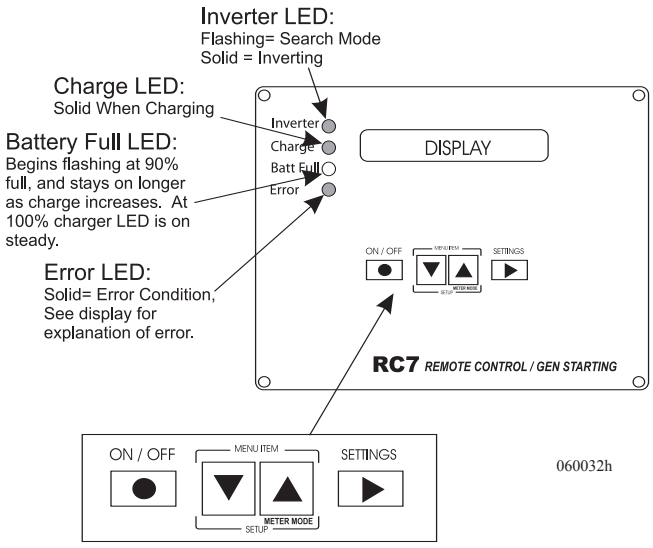
This information is not a replacement for the inverter manual. Consult the Inverter Owner's Manual for complete instructions.

RC7 GS Remote

The RC7 GS remote control is used to change or add features and set variable parameters. The remote may also be used to start and stop the generator.

RC7 GS Remote features include:

- Automatic generator start.
- Fully adjustable battery charge rates.
- Adjustable fuel gauge cut-out.
- Adjustable charging curves for different battery types.
- Adjustable power sharing.
- Meters Menu.



The remote control liquid crystal display (LCD) and light emitting diodes (LED) are used for operation status conditions. The LED lights give inverter status, charge status, battery condition and error indications at a glance. The LCD screen displays charging cycle status, various meter readings, automatic generator operation status, programming field and error messages.

The inverter **ON/OFF** button turns the inverter on or off, and can be used to start or stop the generator. The up or down arrows are used to scroll up or down through the operation or meter fields. The up arrow is used to toggle between operation and meter fields. Pressing the up and down arrows will simultaneously access the programming field. The settings button is used to set or scroll through a particular programming field.

NOTE:
The main switch on the Inverter/Charger is to remain ON.

Stand-By Operation

The Inverter/Charger can be programmed for stand-by power operation to automatically provide AC power if shore power discontinues, or the generator is turned off. When AC power resumes, the inverter will automatically return to "Stand-By" mode and begin charging the batteries.

To Enable Stand-By Mode:

- Momentarily press the blue **On/Off** button while the motorhome is hooked to shore power or operating from the generator. The Status light on the remote panel will blink slowly. Battery charging is not affected in Stand-By mode.

NOTE:
Disable stand-by operation when not in use. House battery power may accidentally be consumed, causing the house batteries to drain.

Battery Charging with the Inverter

Whether hooked to shore power or operating from the generator, the internal battery charger of the inverter will automatically charge the batteries when AC power is supplied to the input terminals of the inverter. The time it takes to charge the batteries to a full state of charge is dependent upon the inverter set-up parameters and actual state of charge of the batteries.

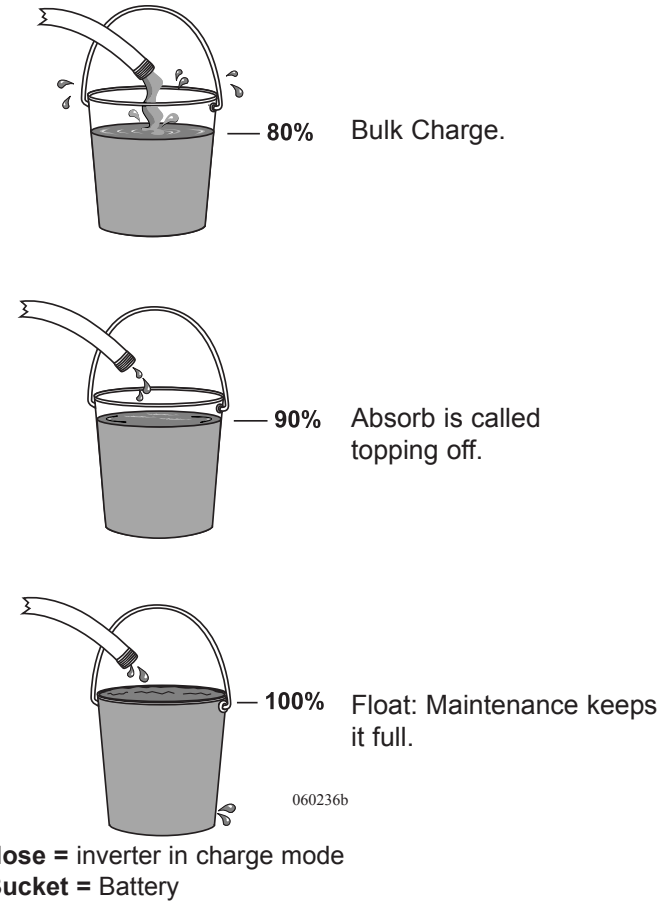
Inverter three-stage charging cycle:

- **Bulk Charge Cycle:** Brings the DC voltage up high, initially between 14.2 - 14.6 Volts. The length of time the inverter is in Bulk Charge depends the state of charge of the batteries.

- **Absorb Cycle:** Absorb Cycle battery voltage is the same as the Bulk Charge Cycle, between 14.2 - 14.6 Volts. Length of the Absorb Cycle is a timed event determined by the inverter.

- **Float Charge Cycle:** Charge voltage is generally around 13.3 - 13.7 Volts. Approximately 80% of the charging cycle has been completed by this time.

NOTE:
The Inverter/Charger will charge the batteries with AC power applied regardless of remote status.



Battery Temperature Sensor

B.T.S - Attached to one house battery.

A Battery Temperature Sensor (BTS) is affixed to one of the house batteries to measure battery temperature and send that information to the inverter. When battery temperature rises, the inverter will decrease charge voltage to prevent boiling the batteries. When battery temperature cools, the inverter will raise charge voltage. Voltage compensation with temperature variation is necessary to keep charge voltage at optimum values. If the BTS cord is unplugged from the inverter, the inverter will use a temperature default setting of 77º F/25º C as a reference point.

Pass-Through AC Power

A double pole "pass-through" relay trips when AC power is supplied to the input terminals to transfer AC power through the inverter to the sub breaker panel in the bedroom. The sub breaker panel supplies AC power to most outlets and appliances. When the inverter receives AC power, the internal battery charger "ramps up" battery charging voltage. After approximately 20 seconds, the relay engages, allowing AC power to pass through the inverter to the sub-panel.

Main Menu Display

The Main Menu displays operating status of the inverter. Use the **Up** or **Down** arrows to scroll through the Main Menu.

Waiting for AC:
System inactive waiting for AC power to be supplied.

Inverting:
Unit is inverting.

Charging Cycle Status:
Bulk, Absorb or Float mode.

Battery State of Charge:
Based on the Fuel Gauge Cutout setting. May be displayed in percentages or as a fuel gauge.

Time Left To Run:
Evaluates the battery reserve capacity at current operating load based on the Fuel Gauge Cutout and Battery Bank Capacity settings.

Time Left To Charge:
Estimated time left to charge batteries to full state of charge based on Fuel Gauge Cutout and Battery Bank Capacity settings with current battery voltage.

Generator Start/Stop:
Use inverter ON/OFF button to remotely start the generator, or to override automatic generator start feature for manual operation. This feature is available to use without altering automatic generator start programming.

Meters Menu

The Meters Menu displays specific numeric accounts of the inverter.

To Access the Meters Menu:

- Press and hold the **UP** arrow for five seconds. The RC7 GS remote will beep. Release the button. **Avg Shunt Amps** should be displayed. Use the **Up** or **Down arrows** to scroll the field. This field area includes:

  Avg Shunt Amps:
  Measures the DC current either charging or discharging. Most of the house DC current usage is monitored by the inverter.

  Battery Voltage:
  Monitors the house battery voltage.

Inv/Chg Current:
Measures the AC current usage when the inverter is charging.

Inverter Output VAC:
Monitors the AC output voltage while the unit is inverting.

AC Input Amps:
The inverter uses a double pole pass through relay, measuring current consumption through the Hot 1 terminal.

Battery Temperature:
Monitors counts of the battery temperature sensor (BTS). Counts are measured impulses which the inverter uses to calculate the battery case temperature. The charging voltage is adjusted to optimum values.

Xformer Temp:
Monitors the transformer temperature which is measured in counts. Higher count readings are registering lower temperatures.

FET Temp:
Monitors the Field Effect Transistor temperature which is measured in counts.

Est Batt Cap:
Estimates the battery bank capacity in amp hours (Ahrs). Charging and discharging on a cyclic basis will give an approximate indication of the battery capacity in amp hours. Observe the reading and multiply by eight to obtain an approximate reserve capacity. This figure is only approximate and will change with cyclic use.

Programming the Inverter

The factory settings of the inverter will work in most situations. Before changing program values consult the Inverter Manual for complete details.

To enter programming mode:
- Press and hold the **up** and **down** arrows for five seconds. The RC7 GS remote will beep.
- Release the buttons. The programming mode has been entered when the Search Sense is displayed.
- Use the **up** and **down** arrows to scroll though available field settings.
- Use the **right-pointing** arrow to scroll through available settings for selected field.

To exit the programming mode:

- Allow 20 seconds to elapse from the time the last key is pressed. Program changes are then accepted by the inverter in non-volatile memory.
- Momentarily pressing the **up** and **down** arrows to exit the programming menu. Program changes are automatically saved in non-volatile memory.
- The inverter is now ready to use. **Waiting for AC** will display, or if any program changes were made with AC applied, one of the three stages of the charge cycle will display: **Bulk**, **Absorb** or **Float**.

NOTE:
Non-volatile memory is a permanent programming change accepted by the inverter. Turning the main battery disconnect switches off does not affect programming changes. Only the inverter clock time and automatic generator start/stop programming will be erased.

Search Sense:

The inverter searches for an AC load. For example: While inverting, AC loads of various amperage may be applied. These loads may range from a few watts to several amps. Search Sense is the cut-in point when the inverter will exit "Sleep Mode" and start inverting at a standard output voltage. The Defeat setting allows the inverter to be at a constant standard output voltage. When changing the Search Sense value, AC loads must be evaluated for proper inverter operation.

Auto LBCO:

Automatic Low Battery Cut-off may be turned on or off to allow the inverter to use available DC voltage at a set value while inverting. Turning the LBCO **ON** stops the inverter when the battery voltage drops to 10.5 Volts DC. Turning the LBCO **OFF** stops the inverter when the battery voltage drops to 8.5 Volts DC. This leaves the batteries fully discharged, but not completely dead.

Battery Capacity:

Battery bank capacity is adjustable in Ahrs (amp hours). Settings change charging curves, and the length of time of the charging cycles. Range is from 125 Ahrs to 1,000 Ahrs. Select the closest Amp Hour rating for the house battery bank capacity. The Auto setting will "learn" the battery bank size by user characteristics. For example: Discharging and recharging the batteries on a cyclic basis. The inverter takes several charging cycles to "learn" an individual battery bank size. When the main battery disconnects have been turned off, the "learn" memory is erased.

Battery Type:

Battery types differ in chemical composition. Chemical types require charging characteristics at different voltages.

Selection of available battery types are:

- AGM (Absorb Glass Matte)
- Gel Cell
- Liquid Lead Acid

Charge Rate:

Charge rate is adjustable from 10 to 100%. Selecting a lower percentage charge rate will lessen the charger's current consumption, taking longer to charge batteries and leaving the user a few extra AC Amps when operating from a limited AC power source.

Shore Power Amps:

This is a load shedding feature of the battery charger in the inverter. For example: Shore Power amps set to 30 Amps will decrease the AC current available for the internal battery charger's use, as pass through AC current value approaches 30 Amps. Lowering shore power amps will limit the available AC current for the internal battery charger's use. This is adjustable from 5 to 30 Amps, in 5 Amp increments.

RC7 GS Remote Panel Setup:

Allows the user to select the desired screen display. The Last Key will leave the menu active, with the last status viewed on the display. The Rolling Display will continue to scroll through the active menu status display. Power Saver allows the display to "sleep" after viewing the status. Touch any key to "awaken" the RC7 GS remote, then press the desired key.

LCD Contrast:

This changes the display screen contrast. Six settings are available. Lighter contrast settings may leave the screen difficult to see in a bright atmosphere.

External Shunt:

The inverter monitors both AC and DC current values, whether charging or discharging (figures are approximate), by using internal or external shunts. The shunt monitors partial current consumption, allowing the majority of current to pass on heavier conductors. Programming shunt selection affects which shunt the inverter is using to monitor DC current values. Single inverter systems use an internal shunt to monitor system DC current values. When programming single inverter systems select External Shunt None. Dual inverter systems use an external shunt to monitor system current values. When programming the shunt selection of a dual inverter system, the master inverter is programmed by the remote installed in the monitor panel. The master inverter will be programmed as External Shunt This Inverter. The slave inverter will be programmed as External Shunt Other Inverter.

Fuel Gauge Cutout:

Battery chemistries and types have different static voltage readings at different states of charge. The battery voltage may be used to determine an approximate state of charge for that battery type and chemistry. The Fuel Gauge Cutout voltage is a reference point the inverter uses to determine a battery with no reserve capacity amp hours remaining. Changing the value of the Fuel Gauge Cutout will affect the fuel meter, automatic generator start and stop points if set by SOC (state of charge) and time left to run or charge. The Fuel Gauge will read 0 when the Fuel Gauge Cutout pre-programmed voltage reaches 50% SOC.

NOTE:

The remaining field items are used to program the Automatic Generator Start parameters.

The house batteries operate most of the interior lighting and appliances. As house battery power is consumed, reserve battery capacity diminishes. The inverter can be programmed to automatically start and stop the generator to keep up with the drain on the house batteries. All field reference points are house battery indications or conditions. A wide field of parameters may be chosen for the generator start and stop points. These points may be set in three categories:

1. House battery voltage.
2. State of charge (SOC). The Fuel Gauge Cut-out affects SOC.
3. Absorb or Float point of the charge cycle.

Example: The inverter can be programmed to start the generator when house battery voltage drops and to stop the generator when the house battery voltage obtains a pre-programmed state of charge (SOC). When selecting field reference points, the start and stop points spread to prevent short cycling of the generator.

NOTE:
If the generator is started manually from any remote switch other than the RC7 GS remote while the automatic generator start feature is enabled, the generator may shut down due to field parameter settings.

To override the automatic generator operation and operate the generator manually, use the RC7 GS remote Inverter button. Press the **UP** or **DOWN** arrows while in the Main Menu until **Generator Start/Stop: Press (ON/OFF)** is displayed. Manually stop the generator using the **ON/OFF** button.

Re-booting the Inverter

The RC7 GS remote is a display only. If the inverter exhibits unusual symptoms, such as not responding to commands or displaying erroneous error conditions, re-boot the inverter.

To Re-boot the Inverter:

1. Remove AC power from the inverter by disconnecting shore power and/or shutting the generator off.
2. Turn the main switch on the inverter to the **OFF** position.
3. Switch house and chassis main battery disconnects to the **OFF** position.
4. Wait 30 seconds, allowing time for the capacitors to discharge.
5. Switch house and chassis main battery disconnects to the **ON** position.
6. Turn the main switch on the inverter to the **ON** position.
7. Connect the shore power cord or start the generator.

Use the inverter when shore power is not available and not using the generator as a secondary power source. The inverter/charger has limited AC power output. It may be necessary to operate items in sequence rather than everything at once. Exercise care when using the inverter as an AC power source. Use the inverter sparingly as it quickly consumes house battery power.

When hooked to shore power, or operating from the generator, the inverter charges the house battery bank. The inverter will not automatically begin charging when hooked to shore power or operating the generator. A charge mode must be selected. The amount of time to charge the batteries to a full state of charge will vary with the depth of discharge when the charge cycle begins and any additional DC loads, such as lights.

NOTE:
The inverter is programmed at optimum values from the factory. Changing program values may adversely affect inverter performance.

To Turn ON the Inverter:
• Press the red button on the inverter remote until the cursor scrolls to **On**.

To Turn OFF the Inverter:
• Press the red button on the inverter remote until the cursor scrolls to **Off**.

To Begin Battery Charging:
• Hook to shore power or start the generator.
• Press the red button on the inverter remote until the cursor indicates either **Chg** or **On**.

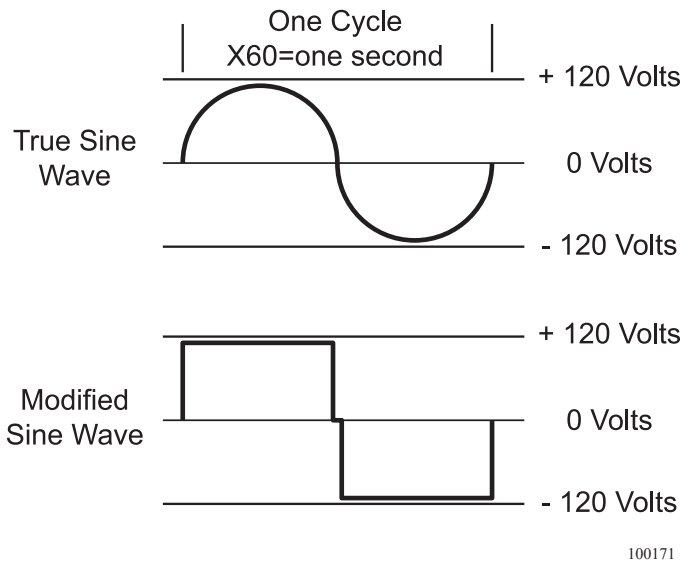
NOTE:
This is not a substitute for the owner's manual for the inverter. The inverter is comprehensive with many variables. Not all the programming details are covered.

NOTE:
When hooked to shore power or operating the generator, press the red button to enter a charge mode by selecting "On" or "Chg" in the main menu. Failure to enter either mode will result in dead batteries.

Sine Wave Cycle Patterns:

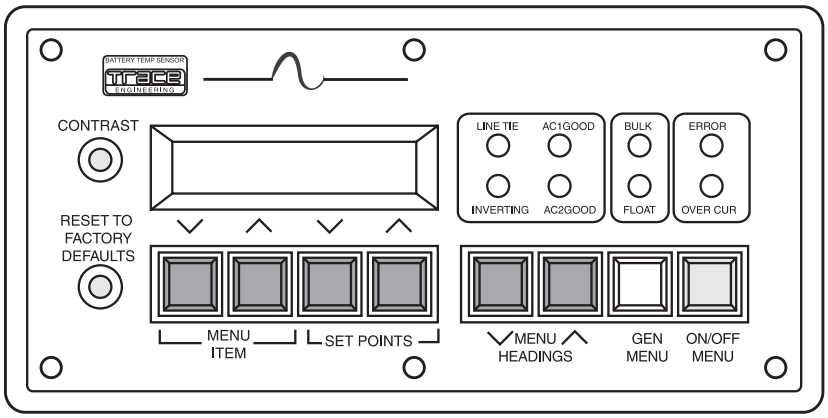
Inverters use battery power to make AC power. AC is Alternating Current, meaning the power signal alternates from positive to negative 60 (cycle) times a second. The term "sine wave" refers to the oscillating characteristic of the cycle. Inverter output cycles commonly come in two configurations Modified Sine Wave or True Sine Wave. The output cycle of a true sine wave inverter closely mimics the electrical wave pattern of a utility company or generator when observed with electronic equipment.

When AC power is available, the inverter will time itself to follow the incoming wave pattern. If the inverter is in stand-by operation when AC power discontinues, the inverter will immediately begin inverting and supply AC power to any loads.



Remote

The sine wave inverter is fully programmable with many features. Use the remote control to change or add features and set variable parameters.



Features of the Remote:

- Fully adjustable battery charge rate.
- Adjustable charging curves for different battery types.
- Adjustable power sharing.
- Meters menu.
- Automatic generator start.
- Manual generator start.

The remote control uses a liquid crystal display (LCD) and light emitting diodes (LED) for operation status and programming. The LED lights give inverter status, AC input, charge status and error indications at a glance. The LCD screen displays various meter readings, programming field and error messages.

There are 14 main headings listed in the programming field, referred to as Menu Headings. Most of the Menu Headings have several sub-headings. Sub-headings are referred to as Menu Items.

Navigating the Menu:

- Pressing a **Menu Headings** button enters Menu Heading numbers **1** to **8**, referred to as the **User Menu**.
- Pressing the red and green buttons simultaneously will access Menu Heading numbers **9** to **20**, this is the **Setup Menu**.
- Use the **Menu Headings UP** or **DOWN** arrows to scroll the various main headings. A number in the lower right hand corner of the screen indicates the number of the heading.
- Use the **Menu Item UP** or **DOWN** arrows to scroll the various sub-heading of a Menu Heading.
- Use the **Set Points UP** or **DOWN** arrows to change the values of a subheading.

NOTE:
A complete description of the Menu Headings and Menu Items are listed in the inverter manual. Refer to the list when accessing the menu or changing program values.

Red Button:

Press the **red** button to scroll the cursor. An underscore of the first letter indicates the selected mode. Press the **red** button to turn ON the inverter, battery charger or quickly exit programming mode and return to **Menu Heading** number **1**, **Inverter Mode**.

OFF - Turns the inverter and charger off. The charger will not activate in this mode when AC power is available.

SRCH (Search) - Turns the inverter on when a specified load, rated in watts, is applied to the inverter. Generally, there are enough loads to turn the inverter on in this setting.

ON - Turns the inverter on regardless of load. When AC is available the charger turns on and the inverter goes into **Stand-by** mode.

CHG - Turns the charger on when AC is available. If AC power discontinues, the charger will stop.

NOTE:
When hooked to shore power, or operating the generator, use the red button to enter a charge mode by selecting either On or Chg in the main menu. Failure to enter a Charge mode will result in dead house batteries.

Green Button:

Press the **green** button to scroll the cursor. An underscore of the first letter indicates the selected mode. Press the **green** button to enable the **Automatic Generator Start** program, start the generator or begin Equalize Charge.

OFF - Turns off inverter control over any generator function.

AUTO - Enables the automatic generator start program.

ON - Overrides the automatic start program and starts the generator.

EQ - Starts an Equalize Charge to the house batteries on the next start cycle of the automatic generator start. The equalize charge (EQ) feature applies a high-voltage charge to the house batteries. The Equalize Charge voltage can exceed voltage operating limits of engine, transmission or other sensitive electronic equipment resulting in extensive damage. The EQ feature should only be enabled by qualified personnel. Before beginning an equalize charge, consult the battery manufacturer to obtain information on performing an equalize charge.

WARNING:
An Equalize Charge uses a significantly higher than normal charge voltage. This voltage can damage sensitive electronic equipment. Several precautionary measures are required when performing an Equalize Charge. Only qualified motorhome personnel should enable this feature. Consult the battery manufacturer before beginning an equalize charge cycle.

Inverter Reset:

The factory default settings in the inverter are set to optimum values for most situations. Slight adjustments may be necessary depending on the amperage available from shore power, personal habits and battery type. A comprehensive study should be done before making any changes to the programming profile. If the programming was altered, it is easily reset to the factory default values.

To Reset the Inverter:

- Press the **Menu Headings Down** button on the remote until Trace Engineering heading "3" displays.
- Using the **Menu Item** buttons, scroll down until "Press Reset Now For Default" displays on the screen.
- Using the eraser end of a pencil or a pen, press the "Reset to Factory Default" button on the remote.

NOTE:
The main switch on the inverter remains ON.

Stand-by Operation

The inverter can be set-up for stand-by power operation. For example: If AC input is discontinued to the motorhome, the inverter will automatically provide AC power. When AC power resumes, the inverter will automatically return to "stand-by" mode. Battery charging is not effected by stand-by operation.

To Activate Stand-by Mode:
• Press the **red ON/OFF** button until the cursor indicates **ON**.

NOTE:
Remember to disable stand-by operation when not in use. House battery power may be accidentally consumed.

NOTE:
In All Electric motorhomes, the inverter supplies the power necessary to operate the refrigerator if shore power is not available or not operating from the generator.

Battery Charging

Whether hooked to shore power or operating from the generator, the internal battery charger of the inverter will charge the house batteries. Battery charging does not begin automatically when AC power is available. The inverter must be turned on to begin battery charging. The time it takes to charge the batteries to a full state of charge varies greatly. It can take several hours or even days depending on the actual state of charge of the batteries and DC power consumption.

The inverter uses a three stage charging cycle. The first stage is "bulk" charge. The bulk charge will bring the DC voltage up high, initially between 14.2 and 14.6 Volts depending on ambient temperature. Voltage and current control the bulk charge cycle. The length of time the inverter is in the bulk charge cycle will vary with the state of charge of the batteries. The second stage is the "absorb" cycle. The battery voltages in the absorb cycle are the same as the bulk charge cycle between 14.2 and 14.6 Volts. The length of the absorb cycle is a timed event determined by the menu item Set Absorption Time under the menu heading number **9**, **Inverter Setup**. The final charging stage is the "float" charge cycle. Approximately 80% of the charging cycle is completed by this time. The float charge voltage is generally around 13.3 to 13.7 Volts. The last 20% of the charge cycle requires the most amount of time.

To Begin Battery Charging:
• Hook to shore power or start the generator.
• Press the **red** button on the inverter remote until the cursor indicates either **CHG** or **On**.

Battery Temperature Sensor

060085b

The inverter uses a battery temperature sensor to adjust charge voltage. When battery temperature rises, the BTS sends this information, registering as counts, to the inverter to decrease charge voltage. Voltage compensation with temperature variation is necessary to keep the charge voltage at optimum figures. The BTS should be adhered to a house battery. If the BTS is unplugged, the inverter uses the default setting of 77º F/25º C as a temperature reference point.

Pass-Through Power

Incorporated in the inverter is a double pole "pass-through" relay that trips when supplying AC power to the input terminals. This relay transfers AC power through the inverter to the AC sub panel supplying power to outlets and appliances. When AC power is supplied to the inverter, the internal battery charger will "ramp up" battery charging voltage. A time delay allows pass through AC power to the sub panel before ramping up the battery charge.

Meters Menu

The meter heading number **4** in the user section displays various voltage and amperage readings.

To access the meters:

- Scroll the menu using the **Menu Headings** buttons until meters heading number "**4**" displays on the screen.
- Use the **Menu Items** buttons to view the available meters.

NOTE:
The meters do not display a (+) symbol for positive values.

Explanation of the Meters

Inverter/Charger:
Amps AC - Displays the total number of AC amps used by the internal charger when hooked to shore power or operating from the inverter. This meter also displays the AC amp load when using the inverter.

Input Amps AC - Combined total of AC amps including the internal charger and pass through relay amps.

Load Amps AC - Displays the total number of AC amps of the pass through relay.

Battery Actual Volts DC - Displays the DC battery voltage at the inverter when hooked to shore power or operating the generator.

Battery Temp/Comp Volts DC - Displays the bulk voltage setting in the menu item **Set Bulk Volts DC** under the menu heading **Battery Charging Number 10**. Actual charge voltage will differ depending on ambient temperature. This is due to battery temperature compensation.

Inverter Volts AC - Displays the inverter's AC output voltage.

Grid (AC1) Volts AC - Not used.

Generator (AC2) Volts AC - Displays the incoming line voltage from either shore power or generator to the inverter.

Read Frequency Hertz - Displays the number of cycles per second of incoming power to the inverter.

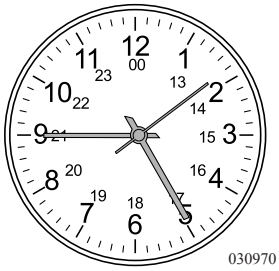
Automatic Generator Start Programming

Procedure to program the automatic generator start function:

There are several variables to the program. Some settings may work fine in one location, but not in another. The order of instructions will follow the sequence of the headings. Read all instructions thoroughly. This is not a substitute for the inverter manual.

Setting the Clock (24 hour):

1. Using the **Menu Headings** buttons scroll to menu number "**6 Time of Day**."
2. Press the **DOWN** button on the **Menu Items** button, **Set Clock Hour** will display. Use the **Set Point** buttons to set the hour. Time changes in ten minute increments. The clock is a 24 hour clock. For example: 9:00 a.m. would be 09:00, 3 p.m. would be 15:00 and 7 p.m. would be 19:00.
3. Press the **DOWN** button on the **Menu Items** button, "**Set Clock Minute**" will display. Use the **Set Point** buttons to set the minute.
4. Press the **DOWN** button on the **Menu Items** button, "**Set Clock Second**" will display. Use the Set **Point** buttons to set the second.



Setting Generator Timer:

5. Press the **Menu Headings DOWN** button, Menu Heading number "**7 Generator Timer**" will display.
6. Press the **DOWN** button on the **Menu Items** button, "**Start Quiet Time h:m**" will display. **Start Quiet Time** is the time you want the generator to stop running or not start at or after quiet time begins. Using the **Set Point** buttons to set the hour and minute (24 hour clock) the generator will start quiet time.

7. Press the **DOWN** button on the **Menu Items** button, "**End Quiet Time h:m**" will display. **End Quiet Time** is the time you want the generator to begin operation. Using the **Set Point** buttons to set the hour and minute (24 hour clock) will end quiet time.

NOTE:
If desired the quiet time may be disabled. Set the Start and End Quiet Times to the same hour and minute.

The next set of instructions cover many variables to program the starting or stopping events of the generator. Many different starting conditions, length of operation or stopping conditions are available. If in doubt about changing any settings, the factory default settings are average settings and will work in many situations.

WARNING:
Use caution when programming the automatic generator start function. When this feature is enabled the generator may start at any time. Disable this feature when performing service to the generator or when stored in an enclosed building.

Gen Auto Start Setup:

8. Press the **red** and **green** buttons simultaneously to continue the generator **auto-start** programming. Heading number "**9 Inverter Setup**" should appear.

9. Press the **Menu Headings DOWN** button to scroll to heading number "**12 Gen Auto Start**" setup. Press the **Menu Items DOWN** button to advance through the next set of variables. Read all options first before setting any values of the **Menu Items** in Menu Heading number "**12**."

10. Press the **Set Point** buttons to change the settings of a Menu Item. **Menu Items** in **Menu Heading 12 Gen Auto Start Setup**:

Set Load Start Amps AC - Starts the generator when the AC current on the pass through relay of the inverter meets or exceeds the preset number of amps. For example: Setting the preset number of amps to 15 when hooked to a 20 Amp service starts the generator when the total current exceeds 15 Amps on the pass through relay.

Set Load Start Delay Min - This is the time delay period used with Set Load Start amps AC menu item. Example: setting the time period to 00:00 starts the generator immediately when the total number of amps exceeds the setting of menu item Set Load Start amps AC.

Set Load Stop Delays Min - This is the time period the generator continues to operate after the generator started from the setting in the Set Load Start amps AC menu item.

Set 24 hr Start Volts DC - Starts the generator if the voltage drops below the setting for a consecutive 24 hour period. For example: If the voltage is set for 12.5 Volts DC, and house battery voltage drops below 12.5 Volts for a continuous 24 hour period, the generator will start. This setting is helpful when storing the motorhome.

CAUTION:
It could be several days before the generator starts from the 24 hour voltage setting. Do not use this setting when storing the motorhome inside a storage building. Do not park the motorhome near dry grass.

Set 2 hr start Volts DC - Starts the generator if the voltage drops below the setting for a consecutive two hour period. For example: If the voltage is set for 12.0 Volts DC and house battery voltage drops below 12.0 Volts for a continuous two hour period the generator will start. This voltage setting is usually lower than the 24 hr start voltage setting. Primarily used when dry camping. An example would be a light load on the house batteries over time. Voltage drops at relatively steady rate until obtaining the preset voltage for two continuous hours.

Set 15 min start Volts DC - Same operating principle as the previous two menu items. This voltage setting is used when applying heavy loads to the house batteries. An example: Using many lights and the inverter to watch the television and operating the microwave. These types of loads rapidly deplete battery reserves. Battery voltage drops quickly when applying heavy loads to the house batteries.

Read 30 sec LBCO start VDC - Used with the menu item **Set Low Battery Cut Off VDC** under menu heading number "**9 Inverter Setup**." If house battery voltage drops to this point, the inverter waits 30 seconds before starting the generator.

NOTE:
This start setting overrides quiet time.

NOTE:
The generator will operate until the bulk and absorption cycles are complete if the generator started from one of the low battery settings.

Set Exercise period - Starts the generator regardless of any other setting. Periodically starts the generator for maintenance reasons. The generator should be operated at least every 30 days to lubricate the internal engine components.

Set Maximum run time h:m - Displays an error message if the generator operates longer than the time period set. This is only a message. To cancel the message return to heading number "**2 Generator Mode**." Use the **green** button to scroll to **Off**. Setting the time and minute to **00:00** defeats this function.

Gen Starting Details:

11. Use the down arrow on the **Menu Headings** button to scroll to menu heading number **13**, **Gen Starting Details**.

12. Use the **Menu Items** button to scroll down to "**Set Gen warm-up seconds**." Use the Set Points buttons to set the time to 90 seconds. If it is not set to 90 seconds, the generator will shut down prematurely.

13. Use the **Menu Items** button to scroll down to "**Set Post Crank seconds**." Use the **Set Point** buttons to set the time to 90 seconds. If it is not set to 90 seconds, the generator will shut down prematurely.

To Enable or Disable the Auto Gen Start Program:

After completing the programming schedule, use the green button to return to heading number "**2 Generator Mode**."

- **To Enable the Automatic Generator Start Feature:** Press the green button and scroll to **AUTO**.
- **To Disable the Automatic Generator Start Feature:** Press the green button and scroll to **OFF**.

Inverter Facts

Important Facts About the Inverter:

- The inverter will not charge automatically unless the remote is set to **CHG** or **ON** by using the red button.
- When the main battery disconnect switch is turned off, or if battery power to the inverter is removed, all program settings are lost. When battery power is restored, the inverter will need to be programmed.

If the Inverter Fails to Charge:

With AC available, if for any reason battery voltage dropped below 8.5 Volts DC before the remote was set to CHG or On, the inverter will not charge the batteries. The inverter requires at least 8.5 Volts DC to operate the internal "brain." Use an alternate method of inducing a charge voltage to the house batteries.

1. Hook to shore power or start the generator.
2. Start the engine. The alternator on the engine should supply a charge to the house batteries.
3. The LCD screen should display. Press the red button until the cursor is under CHG.
4. After the remote indicates the inverter is charging, the engine can be shut off.
5. If this method does not work a battery charger may be used. Observe polarity when hooking up cables. Reverse polarity will damage the inverter.

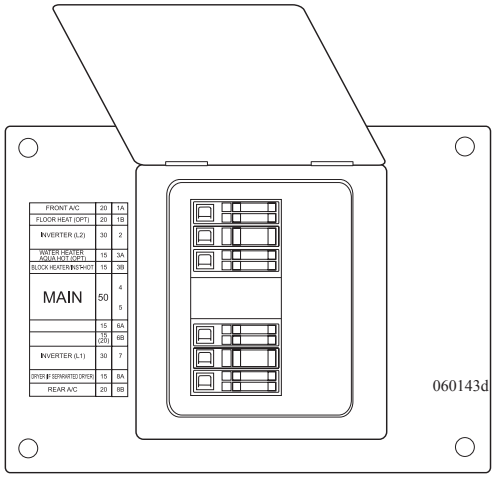
WARNING:

The gases around the battery can explode if exposed to flames, sparks or lit cigarettes. An explosion can result in injury or vehicle damage. Batteries contain sulfuric acid, which burns skin, eyes and clothing. Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery when being jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery. Connect only to chassis, away from the battery.

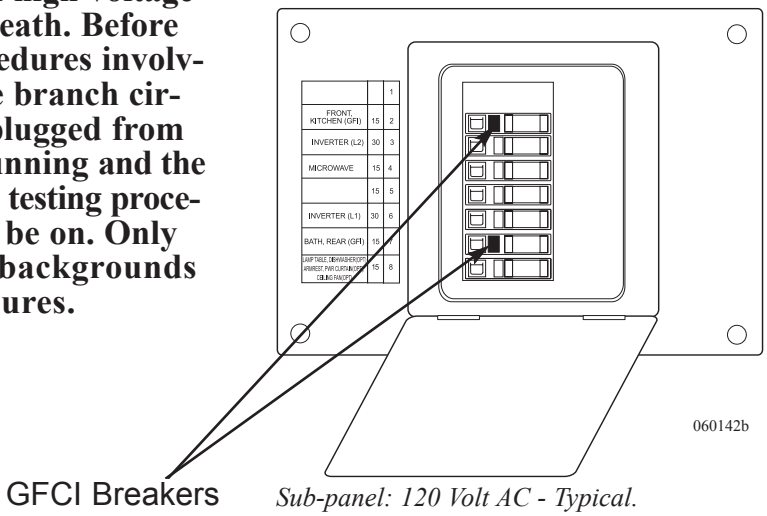
The AC distribution panels are located in the bedroom. The main 240 Volt AC panel receives power from the transfer switch, which is supplied by either shore power or the generator. The AC power is supplied to the 50 Amp main breaker first, then the power is supplied to the individual branch circuit breakers. The panel label describes the breaker layout and the item, outlet or appliance to which they pertain.

The sub panel receives AC power from the inverter and supplies power to items which can be operated by the inverter. The AC power produced by the inverter supplies power to the sub panel only.

WARNING:
The 120/240 Volt AC panels contain high voltage which can cause serious injury or death. Before beginning any work or testing procedures involving the electric panels, or any of the branch circuits, be sure the motorhome is unplugged from shore power, the generator is not running and the inverter is in the off position. Certain testing procedures may require the AC power to be on. Only qualified personnel with electrical backgrounds should attempt any testing procedures.



Main Panel: 240 Volt AC - Typical.



Sub-panel: 120 Volt AC - Typical.

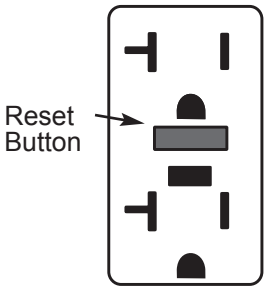
Branch circuit breakers supply AC power to the different items or "loads." Should a breaker "trip" from over current use, or a short circuit condition, the load should be tested or disconnected to determine the reason the breaker tripped. If no cause is found, or not readily apparent, reset the breaker by toggling the breaker to the **OFF** position, then back to **ON**. Should the breaker trip again after the load is re-applied, there may be a fault with that particular load. Do not continue to reset breaker until the problem has been diagnosed and corrected.

Circuit Breaker

The internal configuration of the circuit breaker is designed to trip when excess current causes the breaker to heat up. The trip action of the circuit breaker can occur within milliseconds due to the speed at which electricity can travel. Breakers are designed to operate at a continuous load of 80% of the breaker's rated capacity. For example: A breaker with a 20 Amp rating will operate a continuous 16 Amp load. This design leaves a small amount of working capacity within the breaker. When an inductive load is applied, such as when an electric motor turns on, the motor starts to spin and current consumption may momentarily exceed the rated capacity of the breaker. As the electric motor comes up to operating speed, the electric motor's current consumption will decrease. The AC current load then falls back into the breaker's rated 80% set point. This electric principle should be kept in mind when using anything other than 50 Amp shore service and using appliances with electric motors, such as air conditioners. When using outlets, care should be considered when applying loads such as electric motors, heaters, coffee makers, toasters, hair dryers or other large current consuming loads. The current rating is usually stated on most electrical items. The current rating will either be rated in amps or watts. Current ratings stated on electrical items will change slightly with voltage fluctuations. As voltage increases, current consumption decreases. As voltage decreases, current consumption increases. This may explain why in some instances items operated at borderline voltage to current tolerances may seem fine in one location but problematic in another.

NOTE:
To calculate watts to amps simply divide the watt figure by the voltage of which the item operates from. For example: The electrical item is rated at 1370 watts. Divide that by the operating voltage of 115 Volts which equals 11.913 Amps. Use this formula to calculate the amount of load to the available power supply.

A ground fault circuit interrupter (GFCI) can be found in two different types of applications. One type is incorporated in a breaker used in 120 Volt AC breaker panels, the other is incorporated in an outlet.



060072

GFCI Outlet

The GFCI, whether it is a breaker or an outlet, offer two types of protection. One type of protection is from over-current or shorts to guard against hazardous ground fault currents that can result in injury or death. Ground fault currents are currents that flow from the "hot"or power terminal through a person to the ground. For example, touching a faulty appliance while standing on or making contact with an electrical ground such as a water fixture, bath tub or the earth. If the device has been properly installed, it will offer protection against the type of shock that can result from faulty insulation, wet wiring from inside an appliance, or any device or equipment plugged in or wired to that circuit. The ground fault portion of the outlet or breaker uses sensitive electronics inside the outlet or breaker to detect a ground fault problem. The electronics monitor the normal current of power, flowing to the hot or black wire through the load (eg. a light bulb or appliance) and coming back on the neutral, or white wire. If just a small amount of the current comes back on the safety ground wire, the electronics will trip the breaker or outlet, stopping the flow of electricity. The amount of current it takes to trip the device from a ground fault varies slightly from the different outlet or breaker manufacturers (approximately 30 milliamps or less).

RM03A0003

GFCI Breaker

Electrical shocks resulting from ground faults can be felt, but such a shock is considerably less than one without ground fault protection. People with heart conditions, or other conditions that make them susceptible to shocks, can still be seriously injured. A GFCI outlet or breaker will not protect against shock from a normal current flow. For example, a shock from touching both metal prongs of an electrical cord or appliance while plugging it in.

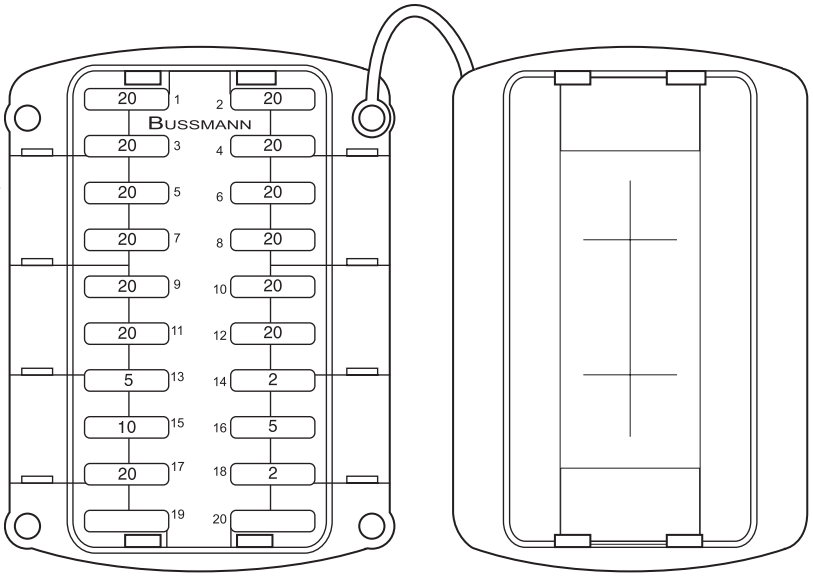
WARNING:
If a breaker or outlet continually trips, DO NOT continue to reset breaker or outlet until the problem has been identified and corrected.

NOTE:
The ground fault outlet or breaker should be tested once a month to ensure it is operating. Use the TEST button on the outlet or breaker. It should trip with an audible "click." The breaker or outlet will not trip if AC power is not present at the device. If power is present and the device will not trip, replace it before using that circuit.

NOTE:
One milliamp is 1/1000 of one amp.

DISTRIBUTION PANEL - HOUSE 12 VOLT

The 12 Volt DC house distribution panel contains fuses (located in the bedroom) that protect the electrical circuits. These fuses are a standard automotive type.



060151B

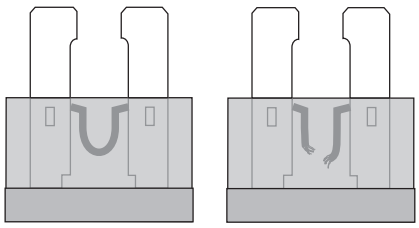
Fuse Panel Label located in bedroom closet.

FUSES

AMPERAGE	COLOR
1	BLACK
2	GRAY
3	VIOLET
4	PINK
5	GOLD
7.5	BROWN
10	RED
15	BLUE
20	YELLOW
25	CLEAR
30	GREEN

amperagechart

Amperage Chart.



GOOD FUSE BLOWN FUSE

ATO Fuse

060086B

The 12 Volt DC fuses, located in this distribution panel, service the interior house lighting, ventilation fans, monitor panel, furnace and water heater. Should a fuse blow it will be evident by the broken metal strip located in the center of the fuse. Replacement fuses should be of the same amperage. If a higher rated fuse is installed it can damage the wiring. Fuse current set points follow much of the same electrical principle as the 120 Volt AC breakers. Using 12 Volt DC as the electromotive force can make it more susceptible to outside influences, such as corrosion from weathering or oxidation.

The large variety of applications this voltage can be used in makes it a diet staple for most of the recreational vehicle and automotive industries. The danger from shocks with this voltage is minimized, but can still occur. A good example is when a magnetic field is generated, then collapses when the power supply is cut. The result is a discharge that can reach tens of thousands of volts for a short time period. Care should be used when working with this voltage as current values can be quite high, like in the case of battery cables.

Shorting a battery cable to ground with a battery at a reasonable state of charge can result in a fire or serious personal injury from a burn.

Tools of the Trade

One of the most widely used tools for testing a 12 Volt DC problem is the test light. Test lights come in a host of varieties, such as a light bulb with a probe and ground clip, to the more elaborate electronic ones that measure a wide scale of voltages and perform a variety of functions. A VOM or Volt Ohm Meter is used to perform a multitude of tests. It is generally used when exact values are needed for evaluation. These meters come in an analog or digital format. Either of these two testing tools may be used, depending upon personal preference. If a 12 Volt DC light is not working, the test light may be better suited for this. In the case of a charging system problem the meter may be the tool of choice. In any situation the testing tool is an invaluable piece of equipment when it comes to determining an electrical problem.

Knowing When to Say When

Should it become necessary to use testing tools, take precaution and consider three things:

1. Recognize when a problem is beyond your skill level. Attempting a repair without knowledge of it can lead to major problems.
2. Would the repair be cost effective and cause less problems than if it were repaired by a professional at a later date? How many times has a repair seemed simple enough only to find it has taken an entire day?
3. Would the current situation be potentially dangerous if left to be repaired at a more convenient time?

NOTE:
Check all related fuses before assuming you have encountered an electrical problem or situation. Spare fuses should be kept on hand and can be purchased from auto parts stores. A fuse description label is on the distribution panel cover.

WARNING:
If a fuse blows replace the fuse with same amperage rating and type. Installing higher amperage fuses can damage the wiring or the item the fuse is protecting, or may cause a fire. If the fuse repeatedly blows after replacing it do not continue to replace it. Have the problem diagnosed and corrected by a qualified technician.

BATTERY - *How It Works*

Batteries come in different sizes, types, amp hours, voltages and chemistries. There are nearly as many descriptions of battery types and how they should be used as there are people willing to offer advice on them. Although it is not possible to cover batteries in their entirety, there are guidelines that can be followed to ensure that the batteries are well maintained.

The operation of the battery is based on a chemical reaction. The battery is a container of lead plates, insulators and a solution of distilled water and sulfuric acid known as “electrolyte.” The 12 Volt DC battery is actually six batteries in one case. When charged, each cell has a voltage of 2.1 Volts DC. When six cells are hooked together this makes a 12.6 Volt DC battery (fully charged).

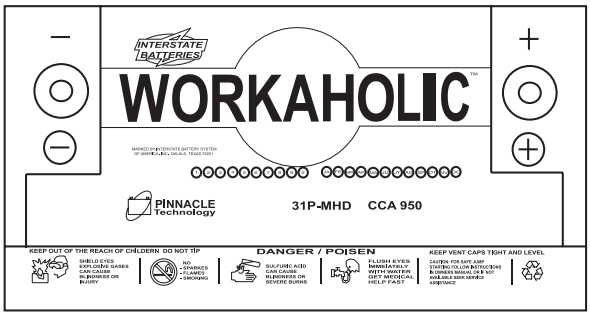
Electrons are stored on the negative plates. When a load (eg. a light bulb) is placed between the positive and negative terminals, the electrons move from the negative plate to the positive plate through the “load” and then back to the ground terminal. At this time the sulfuric acid leaves the water and adheres onto the plates of the battery. The electrolyte solution keeps the electrons from flowing while the battery is in the “at rest” position.

Charging the battery moves the sulfuric acid back into solution with the distilled water. A battery left in a low or discharged state will cause the acid to “sulfate.” In attempting to recharge the battery, the acid has become hardened and no longer will leave the plates and enter into the liquid solution with the distilled water. The lowered acid to water ratio has a direct affect on the battery’s ability to release the stored electrons (power output) and the length of time it can perform (reserve capacity). Batteries left in a discharged condition will readily freeze, causing the case to crack and allowing the solution to spill. The plates can also warp. This is why batteries should not be left or stored in a “discharged” condition.

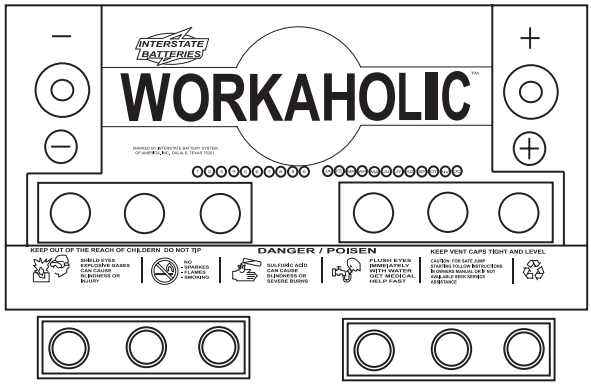
Starting Battery

Starting batteries are designed for high output cranking power, but not for deep cycle like the house batteries are designed to do. Starting batteries will not last long in deep cycle application. “Cold Cranking Ampere” is a measurement of amperage output that can be sustained for 30 seconds. Starting batteries use thin plates to maximize the surface area of the battery. This allows a very high starting current that will permit the plates to warp when the battery is deep cycled (discharged).

The starting batteries are located in the engine compartment. Periodically **inspect** the mounting hardware and trays. Trays and hardware should be tight and clean with no corrosion.



Battery with cover.



080460

Battery with cover removed. Cut plastic to remove cover.

House batteries are designed for use with 12 Volt DC operated lights, appliances and inverters. These are available in many sizes and types.

Types of House Batteries:
- Liquid Lead Acid (LLA)
- Absorbed Glass Mat (AGM)
- Gel Cell

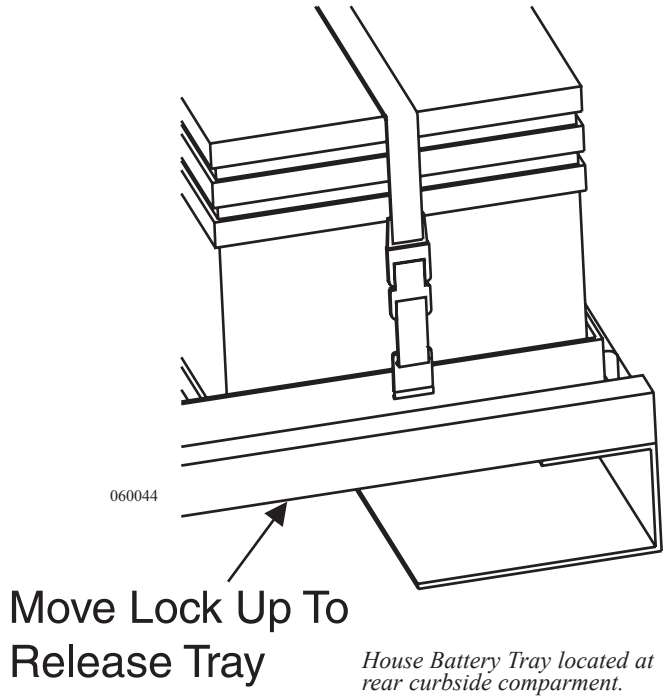
NOTE:
Tap water contains minerals which can alter battery chemistry and ruin the battery. Use only distilled water when refilling the LLA battery.

Slide Tray Operation:

The slide-out battery tray is secured in place by a locking mechanism at the front of the tray. To slide the tray out, lift up on the handle and pull until the tray stops. To secure the battery tray, push it back in until the tray latches.

Slide Tray Maintenance:

The battery tray slide will occasionally require lubrication. When performing maintenance to the batteries, remove old lubricant and dirt from the battery tray slide with solvent, brake cleaner or equivalent. Do not allow any of the cleaning solution or battery acid by-products to spatter onto and damage the painted surfaces. Lubricate all moving parts of the battery tray slide with white lithium grease or Kwikee brand spray lubricant.



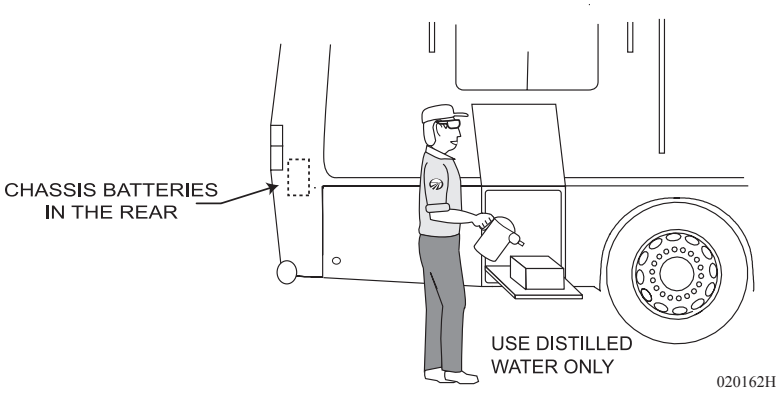
House Battery Tray located at rear curbside comparment.

NOTE:
Driving without the tray secured can result in damage.

CAUTION:
Many types of petroleum based products or battery by-products can damage the paint finish. Do not allow these types of chemicals to get on the paint finish. If the chemicals splatter on to the painted surfaces, immediately rinse the surface using plenty of water and a mild automotive detergent.

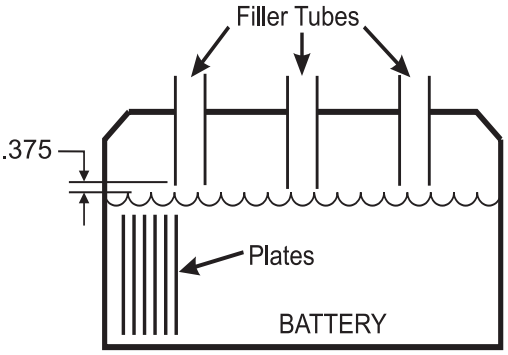
Battery Maintenance

Liquid Lead Acid (LLA) battery cells should be checked at least once a month. The level should be above the top of the plates, but not overfull. The electrolyte level should be approximately 3/8” below the well to allow room for expansion while the battery is being charged. Over-filling the battery will allow the electrolyte solution to boil or gas out of the battery cap. Remember to use only distilled water to refill the battery. A battery with a low electrolyte level will rapidly boil out the water once the plates have been exposed to air.



Periodically check the batteries for corrosion and cracks. Replace vent plugs that are cracked or missing. Keep the top of the batteries clean. The accumulation of electrolyte and dirt may permit small amounts of current to flow between the terminals, which can drain the battery.

Check the battery connections for tightness and corrosion. If corrosion is found, disconnect the cables (mark cable locations) and carefully clean them with a mild solution of baking soda and water, or an aerosol product specifically designed for battery maintenance. Do not allow cleaning solution to seep into the battery and damage the electrolyte balance. Use water to rinse the top of the battery and surrounding area when done. Carefully hook the cables back to the battery. The battery cable to battery terminal connections should be metal to metal. Coat the terminals with petroleum jelly or an anti-corrosion grease.



Battery State of Charge	Spec. Gravity	Voltage
100%	1.265	12.7
75%	1.225	12.4
50%	1.190	12.2
25%	1.155	12.0
Discharged	1.120	11.9 or Less

NOTE: The distilled water level in battery should be 3/8" below the filler tube.

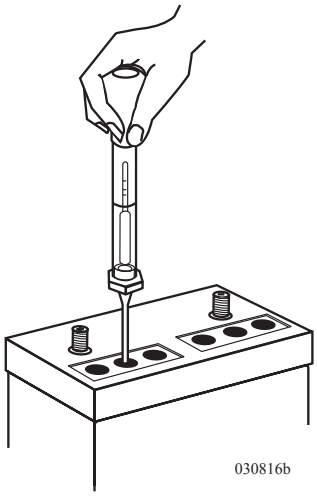
<u>WARNING:</u>
Liquid lead acid batteries produce hydrogen gas while being charged. This is highly explosive. Do not smoke around batteries and keep all source of ignition or flames away from batteries. The hydrogen gas may explode resulting in fire, personal injury, property damage or death.

Testing the Battery

A battery can be tested and monitored several ways. The Aladdin System shows the voltage of the house batteries at a quick glance. The most efficient way of testing the LLA batteries is to check the electrolyte solution using a hydrometer.

Hydrometers are available in different types, such as cylinder graduation (shown here) or floating ball types. Hydrometers can be purchased from most auto parts stores. The hydrometer tests the battery electrolyte solution, measured in specific gravity. Distilled water has a specific assigned gravity of 1,000. The hydrometer is calibrated to this mark. Pure sulfuric acid has a specific gravity reading of 1,840. The acid is 1.84 times heavier than water. The electrolyte solution is about 64% water to 36% acid (fully charged battery). Hydrometers with cylinder graduation are graphed and the exact state of specific gravity can be determined.

Temperature and recent battery activity (charging or discharging) affect the hydrometer readings. It is best to check the battery when it has been "at rest" for at least three hours, although readings taken at other times will give a "ballpark" figure. When using the hydrometer, draw the electrolyte solution up into the tube. Allow the hydrometer to attain the same temperature as the electrolyte solution. Note the reading for that cell. Complete the same test for the rest of the cells on that battery bank.

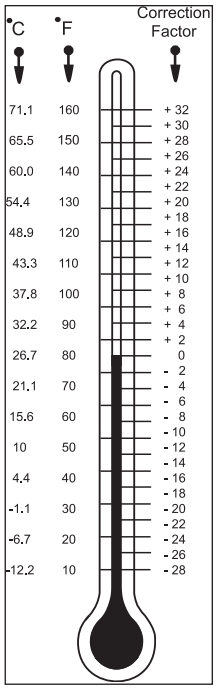


Hydrometer (Cylinder Type) testing a LLA type battery.

The hydrometer is calibrated at 80° F. Temperature affects the hydrometer readings. The higher the electrolyte temperature, the higher the specific gravity reading. The lower the temperature, the lower the specific gravity reading. Add or subtract four points for each 10° variance from the 80° F chart. Readings between cells should not vary more than 50 points.

If one cell in a particular battery bank being tested is at a 50% state of charge while the others are indicating a full charge, charge only that battery to see if the low cell will come up. At the same time, do not over charge the "healthy" cells.

If the low cell does not come up after charging, this battery can damage the rest of the battery bank and should be replaced. An accurate digital volt meter + - .5% will also give an indicator of the battery's state of charge.Another test that can be performed is to place a specific load on the battery for a predetermined length of time equal to that particular battery's rating. This machine is usually an adjustable carbon pile that can vary the load being applied to the battery(s) while monitoring voltage to see if they will perform to their specific rated capacities.



Temperature Correction Chart.
030815

NOTE:
See the chart for temperature compensation. Liquid levels should be even between the cells of the battery being tested as it will affect the accuracy of the test.

WARNING:
Sulfuric acid in the batteries can cause severe injury or death. Sulfuric acid can cause permanent damage to eyes, burn skin and eat holes in clothing. Always wear splash-proof safety goggles when working around the battery. If the battery electrolyte is splashed in the eyes, or on skin, immediately flush the affected area for 15 minutes with large quantities of clean water. In case of eye contact, seek immediate medical aid. Never add acid to a battery once the battery has been placed in service. Doing so may result in hazardous splattering of electrolyte.

Battery Voltage & Current

Why does the voltage on a discharged battery measure the same as a fully charged battery until the loads are applied? The simple answer to this might go as follows: A battery creates electrical power by converting energy from a chemical reaction into electrical energy. As this reaction slows down the battery voltage will drop. In a lead acid battery the electrolyte conductivity (how well electrical current can flow through it) changes. The same current may be available but the rate of the reaction decreases, causing a voltage drop.

Another way of looking at this is to use the analogy of a water pump (a battery is an electric pump). The pressure in psi (pounds per square inch) that a pump delivers is like a battery's voltage. The volume of water in GPM (gallons per minute) is like the electrical current. Look at a 12 psi pump with no loads (the pump is running but the outflow valve is turned off). The pump will run and the internal pressure of the pump will build up to some point higher than 12 psi. When the valve is opened, and the water is free to flow into the loads, the pressure will drop to the rated output pressure of 12 psi, but only if the load is not too big. If the pump is designed to maintain 12 psi at 15 GPM, and a load demanding 20 GPM is connected, the pump will not be able to keep up and the pressure will get sucked down to a lower psi. If the load is reduced or removed the pump will catch up and return to its rated 12 psi pressure. If the pump has an infinite source of water, such as a lake or the water utility (this is like the grid, no battery), the pump will never run out of pressure.

If the pump never runs out of pressure, and is operated at or below its 15 GPM level, it will hold 12 psi. However, a pump that is connected to a water tank with a finite capacity will start to lose the ability to hold pressure as the level of water in the tank drops. Think of siphoning water from a bucket. As the level of the water drops, the volume of water exiting the siphon slows down.

When the tank is full it is capable of feeding more "pressure" to the pump inlet due to gravity, and the pump always has enough water available to maintain its rated pressure and volume. However, if the water tank gets low the pump will not have enough water volume coming in to maintain 12 psi at 15 GPM. If the loads are removed from the pump by closing the valve on the outflow, even with low pressure in the tank the pump will eventually pressure up to 12 psi. It will just take it longer to get there. When the valve is opened the pump will sustain 12 psi for a brief period, but since the tank is no longer feeding the pump as fast as needed the pressure will eventually drop. This analogy can be restated by replacing the pump with a battery, pressure with voltage, volume with amps, outflow valve with a switch, water with electricity and the water tank with the battery electrolyte.

The level of the tank could be thought of as the rate of the reaction occurring in the electrolyte. When the battery is fully charged the electrolyte has an excess of reactions taking place to feed the battery terminals. This tapers off with time as the electrolyte is spent, so maintaining voltage becomes possible. With no loads the discharged electrolyte will be capable of producing close to the rated voltage, but only after a period of time has elapsed for enough of a reaction to take place to bring the voltage back up. Hopefully, this explanation will clarify why a battery measured at rest can indicate close to its rated voltage but will not run a load.

Calculating Run Times:

Calculating run time figures when operating 120 Volt AC electrical items with an inverter can be exponential due to battery characteristics. Flow characteristics of electrons vary with different battery types and chemical compositions. Deep cycle batteries are generally designed to slowly release a majority of their charge capacity. Deep cycle batteries are rated in amp hours (Ahrs) with the discharge occurring over an extended period of time before the battery is charged. Engine starting batteries are designed to quickly release large amounts of current for short durations, without depleting battery reserves. Commercial type batteries bridge the gap of deep cycle and engine batteries. Commercial batteries release medium amounts of current over a longer period of time but they are not designed to cycle their charge capacity.

The working range of a deep cycle battery is between 50 and 100% state of charge (SOC). Deep cycle batteries should not be cycled below 50% state of charge. Discharging a deep cycle battery below 50% state of charge shortens the life of the battery. Deep cycle batteries use an amp hour rating which is usually calculated over a 20 hour discharge interval. For example: A deep cycle battery with a rated capacity of 100 Ahrs. is designed to release current at the rate of 5 Amps per hour. Multiply a 5 Amp load over a 20 hour discharge period equals the rated 100 Ahr. capacity. These discharge figures are calculated with the battery starting at 100% state of charge with the battery at 80º F when the discharge cycle begins. However, increasing the discharge load applied to the battery from 5 Amps to 10 Amps on a 100 Ahr battery does not yield ten hours of discharge time. This is due to the internal reactions which occur when a battery is discharging. Actual discharge time for a 10 Amp load may be closer to eight hours of discharge time. Increasing the load applied to the battery to 20 Amps will not yield five hours discharge time but may be less than three hours. It might be understood as a point of diminishing return.

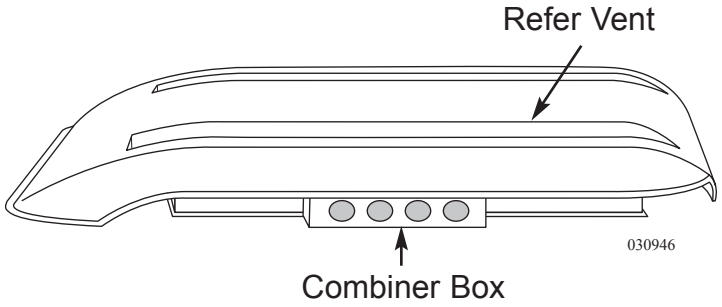
Calculating applied loads to an inverter to approximate run time from the battery amp hours available is not an equal trade up when voltage is inverted and amperage is calculated. When the inverter is used to operate an AC load it uses approximately ten times the DC current needed from the battery when inverting 12 Volts DC to operate the 120 Volt AC item. There is also a small efficiency loss of about 10% when inverting. For example: When using the inverter to operate an AC electrical item, which has a current draw rating of 2 Amps, the inverter will use over 20 Amps DC power from the batteries.

Determining Current Consumption:

First determine the amount of current used by an AC item. For example: The television is rated at 200 watts at 120 Volts AC. Calculate watts to amps. Divide 200 watts by the operating voltage of 120, this equals 1.6 Amps. Multiply 1.6 Amps AC current by a factor of ten the inverter will use, this equals 16 Amps DC battery current. Add the revised 10% efficiency loss figure, this calculates to a total of 17.6 Amps DC. If the battery bank capacity is rated at 500 Ahrs., actual elapsed time to the suggested 50% state of charge would net viewing time for the television at approximately 13 hours in ideal conditions.

The run time figure will vary greatly with the actual state of charge of the battery bank when the discharge process begins. Ambient temperature, combined with other working loads, such as lights and parasitic loads applied to batteries, affect run times. Calculating the exact run time is not precise due to all the variables and equations involved; however, an approximate time figure can be obtained. Proper battery maintenance and charge cycles affect battery performance. Observe the battery condition with hydrometer and voltage readings. Use only distilled water when filling batteries. To achieve the highest quality of battery performance and longevity maintain the batteries in their proper operating range.

SOLAR PANEL *(Optional)*



The solar power system consists of one solar panel with mounts, a Combiner box and a charge controller that can handle up to five 100 watt solar panels.

Solar Panel:

The solar panel is a laser-grooved, buried-grid panel that is capable of delivering about five amps of charge per hour, per panel, in full sunlight. One 100 watt solar panel delivers enough power to offset the normal day-to-day drain on batteries caused by various parasitic electrical loads, such as transmission memories, alarm systems, natural self-discharge of batteries and other like items. Adding a second, third or more solar panels (up to five, depending upon needs and electrical consumption) can replace what is drawn out of the batteries from the operation of lights, water pumps, inverters, etc., while dry camping.

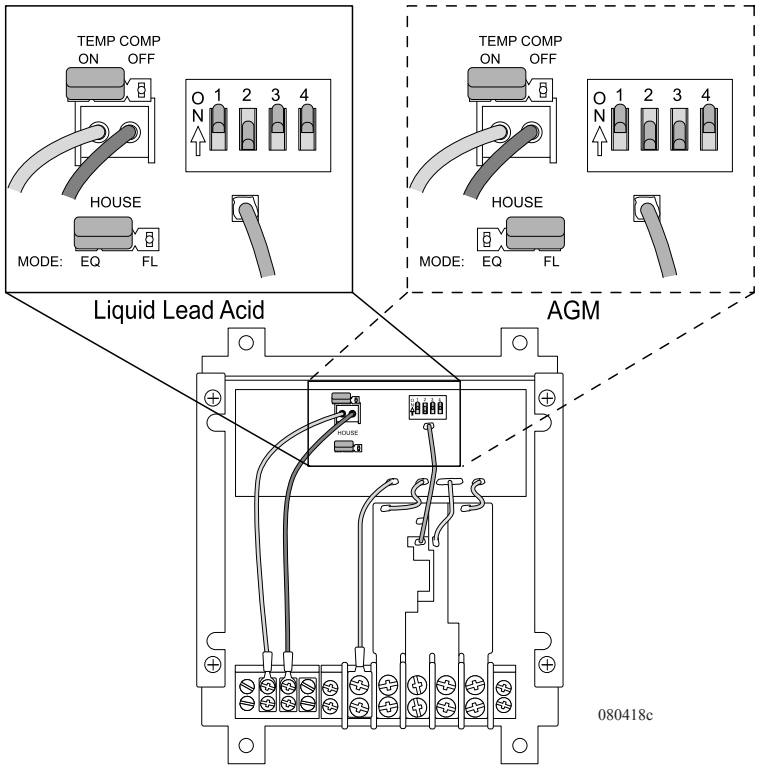
NOTE:
The solar panel needs to be cleaned monthly. The solar panel may need to be cleaned more frequently depending on weather conditions.

Combiner Box:

The Combiner Box, located on the side of the refrigerator vent on the roof, has four standard "knock outs" to allow for installation of additional solar panels.

The Charge Controller can be set to accommodate either Flooded Lead-Acid (LLA) or Absorb Glass Mat (AGM) batteries. The Charge Controller is located in the large pass-through bay. The controller is used as a heat sink for the electronics attached to it. It is normal for the controller to become warm to the touch, especially when processing higher amperage. The charge controller will automatically enter Thermal Shutdown if it gets too warm.

Status of the charge controller is viewed through the Aladdin System electrical status display.



Charge controller located in curbside bay, shown with cover removed to change battery setting.

The RV-45D Charge Controller includes the following:

1. **Dual Battery Bank Charging -** The controller automatically sends charge to both the House and Engine batteries at the same time.

2. **Pulse Width Modulation -** Delivers all the available charging amperage until the batteries reach their set point voltage (**Bulk**) and then it begins to taper off amperage (**Absorption**) until it is reduced to all that is needed to simply hold the batteries at their set point voltage (**Float**).

3. **Temperature Compensation -** Protects the batteries from excess water loss and/or plate sulfating by automatically compensating for temperature changes, and adjusting the charging voltage accordingly.

4. **Automatic Equalization (Only when set to Liquid Lead-Acid Batteries) -** Activated once per day. Allows weaker battery cells a chance to catch up with stronger cells. To assure all LLA battery cells are at an equal state of charge, a delay timer is activated to allow a short duration of slightly higher voltage.

5. Automatic Float (Only when set to Absorbed Glass Mat Batteries) - Resets the charge parameters to work with AGM batteries and removes the equalization cycle. AGM batteries are sealed and are not designed to withstand the higher voltage reached during equalization. The feature also changes Float setting from 14.2 to 13.4 Volts DC, which is the AGM battery manufacturer's recommendation.

CAUTION:
The Charge Controller may be warm to the touch. This is a normal function of the Charge Controller.

Solar Panel Care

A critical part of maintaining the solar electric battery charging system is to keep the panel clean. The amount of power that a panel will produce is directly related to the intensity of sunlight. A dirty panel will allow less light to reach the panel, resulting in less power produced. A single layer of dust or road grime can reduce the power output by 15 to 25%. Leaves and debris that can cover two or three of the 36 individual cells can reduce output power by 50 to 75%.

Use of the basic maintenance tips, regular inspections and regular cleaning will assure maximum charging from the solar charging system. To clean the panel, use a non-abrasive cleaner and paper towels. The surrounding environment, and the amount of road dust encountered, will determine how frequently the panel should be cleaned.

Tips to Follow:

1. The panel should be cleaned if a film or a layer of dust is on the windshield.
2. On a bright sunny day, charging amps should be 3.5 to 5 Amps per panel.
3. High winds can blow dust and debris around causing dirt build up. Frequently **inspect** the panels and clean as necessary.

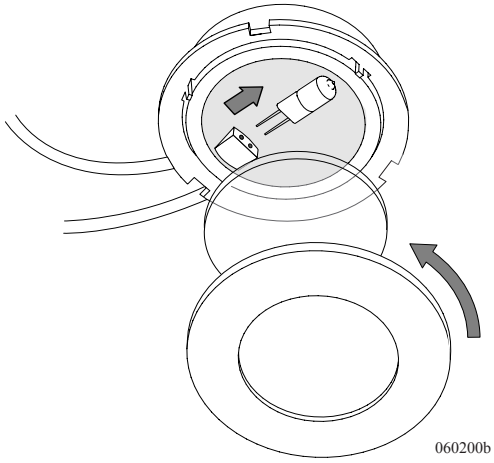
CAUTION:
To avoid arcing at the battery connector when replacing batteries or performing battery cable maintenance, be sure to remove the fuse for the solar panel charge controller, or cover the solar panel, to stop the production of electricity at the source.

LIGHTS - INTERIOR HALOGEN

The bulbs inside the halogen lighting are replaceable.

To Replace a Bulb:

1. Rotate the outer trim ring counterclockwise and remove.
2. Press the safety lens towards retaining tab. Pull down and away.
3. Carefully grasp bulb and pull from socket.
4. Use a clean cloth or piece of tissue to grasp new bulb. Do not touch bulb directly as this can cause a "hot spot" and result in immediate bulb failure.
5. Align contacts of bulb with terminals in fixture base. Insert bulb until contacts are firmly seated.
6. Replace safety lens.
7. Align tabs in trim ring with slots in fixture base. Rotate lens clockwise until trim ring locks into place.



CAUTION:

Do not touch halogen lighting while on. They can cause a burn. Do not touch replacement bulbs. Oil in the hands can cause a "hot-spot" to occur. If the bulb is touched, allow it to cool and clean the bulb with alcohol.

BULB USAGE - INTERIOR

INTERIOR BULB CHART	
LOCATION	**BULB NUMBER**
CEILING LIGHTS	GE F15T8 - CW
DASH LIGHT	161
COSMETIC/VANITY LAMP	12V 13W 9-019F
CLOSET LAMP	DE 561
ROUND 3” HALOGEN CEILING LIGHT	12V 10 W FC 2585
ROPE LIGHT	LITCO 31-120-40
ENTRY HANDLE LIGHT TUBE	MP# 16615157
MAP LIGHT	12V 6W 38886K
STEPWELL LIGHTS	Vista Manufacturing 90416
WALL LAMPS	120V 40W 6-16.5 (2”)
DINETTE/BEDROOM LAMP	12V 912 or 921

** MP = Monaco Part Number*

ALL ELECTRIC *(Optional)*

This material in this section covers items that are particular to the All Electric motorhome. This is meant to augment the rest of the manual and therefore is not a substitute. The key for the All Electric motorhome electrical system to function properly is understanding how the AC and DC electrical systems interface. Become familiar with the inverters and programming the remotes. The generator must be operating properly for of the Automatic Generator Start feature to function. The charge condition of the house batteries is equally important. Keep the inverter owner's manual in the motorhome to be used as a reference.

The motorhome does not have propane and operates much differently than the standard propane equipped motorhome. All appliances operate from AC, DC, diesel or a combination thereof. For the electrical system to function, the 120 Volt AC and 12 Volt DC power supply sources must be operating properly, especially the generator. When shore power is not available, appliance operation relies exclusively on the generator, inverter or batteries for power. The inverter Automatic Generator Start feature should be enabled when shore power is not available to help prevent dead house batteries. Using the inverter as the 120 Volt power source can quickly consume battery power. Do not allow the batteries to discharge lower than 50% SOC (State of Charge). The batteries ability to obtain a full state of charge, and the number of discharge cycles, reduces each time a severe discharge occurs. Eventually the batteries will no longer accept a charge, resulting in electrical system malfunction or total system failure.

The SOC of the batteries determines the length of time the inverter can operate from the batteries. Use arithmetic to calculate inverter run time or DC power loads. When dry camping closely monitor interior light use. Some lights operate only from 120 Volt AC.

NOTE:
One inverter will need to remain on to operate the refrigerator when dry camping

CAUTION:
The shore power requirement of an All Electric motorhome, in most situations, will exceed 20 Amp shore power service. It is strongly recommended to hook to 30 Amp service or start the generator.

Overview

The motorhome is equipped with two inverters. The two inverters, combined with the house battery bank, supply an ample amount of power when the system is used wisely. When dry camping, turn the inverters on only when needed. The inverters use battery power to supply 120 Volt AC power to operate most of the appliances, outlets and the entertainment system.

The Automatic Generator Start feature should be enabled to start the generator to prevent the battery bank from severe discharge. When house battery voltage becomes low, the Auto Gen-Start will engage to supply 120 Volt AC power to the main load center and the inverters. The inverters charge the battery bank. The generator will continue to operate until the pre-programmed stop point. The generator stops and the inverters supply 120 Volt AC power, repeating the cycle.

NOTE:
This is not a replacement for the inverter manual. Keep the inverter manual in the motorhome as it will be needed for reference.

Meters

The two inverters are electrically linked together with an external shunt that monitors AC and DC current. A shunt allows a majority of the current to flow through the shunt on heavy conductors, while some of the current flows through on light conductors. The external shunt is what the Master inverter uses to monitor DC charging or discharging current. An internal shunt monitors AC current. When hooked to anything less than 50 Amp service, or particularly when dry camping, use the Master remote to monitor AC and DC current consumption and charging values. The AC and DC meters are located in the Meters Menu. Analog meters are available for quick AC reference when hooked to shore power or operating from the generator. Use the inverter meters to calculate the amount of DC power the inverter requires to operate the refrigerator, cook top and microwave. Write down the figures to approximate discharge time of the battery bank.

NOTE:
When using the inverters as the power source the analog meters do not operate.

Remotes

In the All Electric motorhome each inverter has its own remote control panel. The RC7 GS remote panel, is the Master remote. The RC7 panel, is the Slave remote. All programming and monitoring values are established through the Master remote. Programming the inverters, or changing program values, have a significant effect on the performance of the electrical system. The remotes for the All Electric motorhome use a different programming schedule. These different values are Shunt Selection, Battery Type and Battery Capacity. These must be programmed correctly for the electrical system to function properly.

NOTE:
When programming the inverters make sure the correct shunt option, battery type and battery capacity are programmed. All remote programming information is stored in the inverter. The remote is a display of stored information only.

Accessing the Program Menu:

There are several settings available in the programming menu. Care should be used when selecting or changing a program setting.

- Press the Menu Set-Up (**Up** and **Down** arrows) buttons simultaneously for three seconds. When the control panel beeps, release the buttons immediately.
- The programming menu is successfully entered when Search Sense appears on the screen. Use the Up or Down arrows to scroll the programming menu.
- The Settings button will change the value or option.
- Press the Menu Set-Up buttons to exit the programming mode.

Shunt Selection - When programming the shunt option, the Master inverter remote in the monitor panel will be programmed **"External Shunt: This Inverter."** The Slave inverter adjacent to the monitor panel will be programmed **"External Shunt: Other Inverter."** The Slave remote will then be a used as a display only. All AC and DC voltage and current values are viewed through the Master remote.

External Shunt: This Inverter

External Shunt: Other Inverter

Auto Gen Start - The Auto Gen Start feature can be programmed to start the generator from either a specific voltage or a percentage of state of charge. The Auto Gen Start feature can be programmed to stop the generator at a point of the charge cycle or a percentage of state of charge. If the Auto Gen Start feature is programmed to start or stop the generator from a specific state of charge, the voltage setting of Fuel Gauge Cutout will affect at what point the generator starts or stops. For example: If the Fuel Gauge Cut-out voltage is set to 11.8 Volts with the generator set to start at 80% SOC (state of charge), actual voltage when the generator would start would be approximately 12.5 Volts.

Battery Type - Charge voltage is automatically selected when programming the battery type of the Master remote in the programming menu heading “Battery Type.”

Battery Type: Select **"Battery Type: AGM**" - This setting uses a lower charge voltage than the Liquid Lead Acid setting.

Battery Type AGM

Battery Capacity - The amount of time in the Bulk and Absorb charge cycles are automatically selected when programming the Battery Capacity of the Master remote. In the programming menu under **Battery Capacity**: select **Battery Capacity 1000Ahr.**

Battery Capacity 1000Ahr

While Traveling:

While traveling, the refrigerator may be operated keeping the refrigerator contents cool. The electrical combination of the engine alternator and the inverter's AC output supplies the power necessary to operate the refrigerator on 120 Volts AC. Disable this feature when the engine is off. House battery power is quickly consumed when using the inverter to operate the refrigerator on AC electric. Hook to shore power, start the generator or enable the Automatic Generator-Start feature. To conserve house battery power, turn the inverter off when not in use.

NOTE:
All-Electric motorhomes include two solar panels which are installed on the roof.

House Batteries

The battery bank consists of five Type 8-D 255 amp hour AGM (Absorb Glass Mat) batteries. The batteries are hooked in parallel. Voltage readings are the only way to accurately determine the state of charge of the sealed AGM batteries. Voltage readings are most accurately measured after three hours of battery inactivity. The length of time it takes to charge the battery bank to a full state of charge will vary with the following conditions:

- How deep were the batteries discharged?
- What other DC loads are applied during the charge cycle?
- What is the actual physical condition of the batteries?
- Inverter remote programming.

State of Charge (%)	O.C.V./Cell	O.C.V./12 Volt Battery
100	2.13	12.8 or greater
80	2.10	12.6
60	2.05	12.3
40	2.00	12.0
20	1.97	11.8
0	1.93	11.6 or less

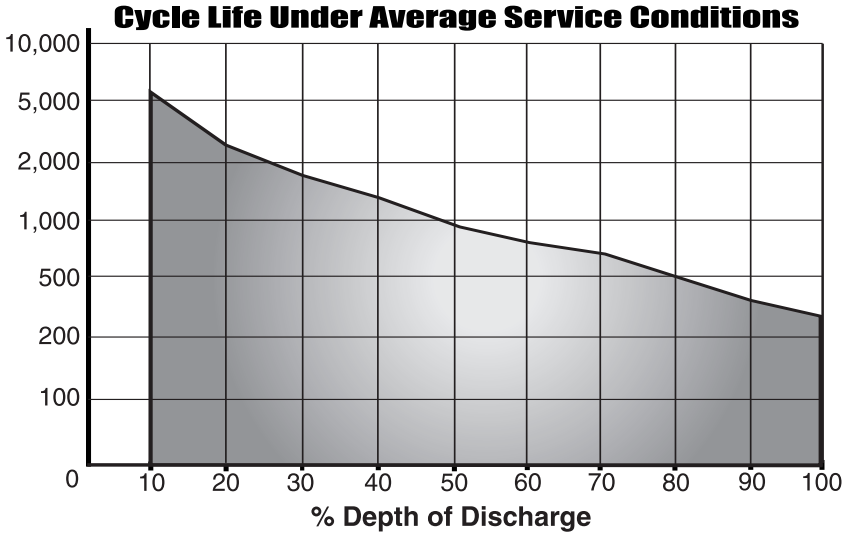
These voltage levels are approximate and give an indication of the state of charge of a battery at rest. As the battery ages these voltage measurements will be lower.

It may take a number of hours or days, with the motorhome hooked to shore power 24 hours a day, to charge the batteries to a full state of charge. During the charge cycle, one inverter may be in Bulk charge while the other is in Float. This is normal, as the two inverters though electrically linked through a common shunt, do not have a common link between their internal chargers.

Discharge and recharge time of the house batteries will vary depending on the type of load and voltage during the charge or discharge cycle. Discharging the batteries at a slow steady rate to a specific voltage, then charging the battery bank for the same amount of amp hours removed during the discharge cycle, will not yield a charged battery bank. The AGM battery bank, though very efficient, is not a perfect trade with amp hours discharged and charged. In addition, the type of discharge load depends on the charge time. A rapid and heavy discharge cycle yields less available amp hours than a slower discharge rate. Conversely, a rapid discharge cycle, though equivalent in the same amount of amp hours as a slow discharge cycle, requires a longer charge time. Regardless of the type of discharge cycle, it always requires more amp hours to charge the batteries than what the batteries have discharged.

The life of the battery bank will greatly decrease when the Depth of Discharge (DOD) is below 50%. Charge the batteries whenever they have been discharged. Batteries left in a discharged condition will eventually no longer accept a full charge or may not accept a charge at all. Never store the motorhome with a discharged battery bank. It is better to make several small discharge and full charge cycles than a few deep DOD cycles.

NOTE:
For optimum battery life, the batteries should not be cycled lower than 60% state of charge.



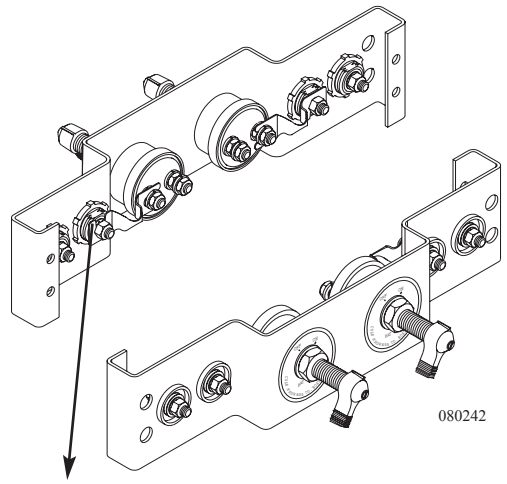
Test Conditions: 1. Discharge Voltage = 1.75 V/Cell. 2. Charge Voltage = 2.4 V/Cell. 3. Duration = 1 Hr. Rate. 4. Temperature = 25° C. 5. End of Life = 80% Capacity.

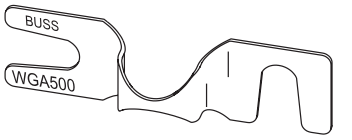
Battery Depth Discharge % Chart

Main Battery Disconnect

Located in the battery bay are two main battery disconnect switches for the house batteries. On the back of each disconnect switch is a 500 Amp fuse. These fuses protect against a shorted battery cable or other over current condition. A weatherproof fuse holder, with a 20 Amp ATO fuse for the solar panel, is attached to one of the battery disconnect switches.

CAUTION:
When working on the batteries use protective measures against short circuits. Place insulating material over the batteries when working on or near the battery area. Remove rings and watches. Use extreme caution when working with hand tools. Do not allow the tool to short circuit battery connection. Always mark cable routing and location before servicing, removing or replacing batteries.



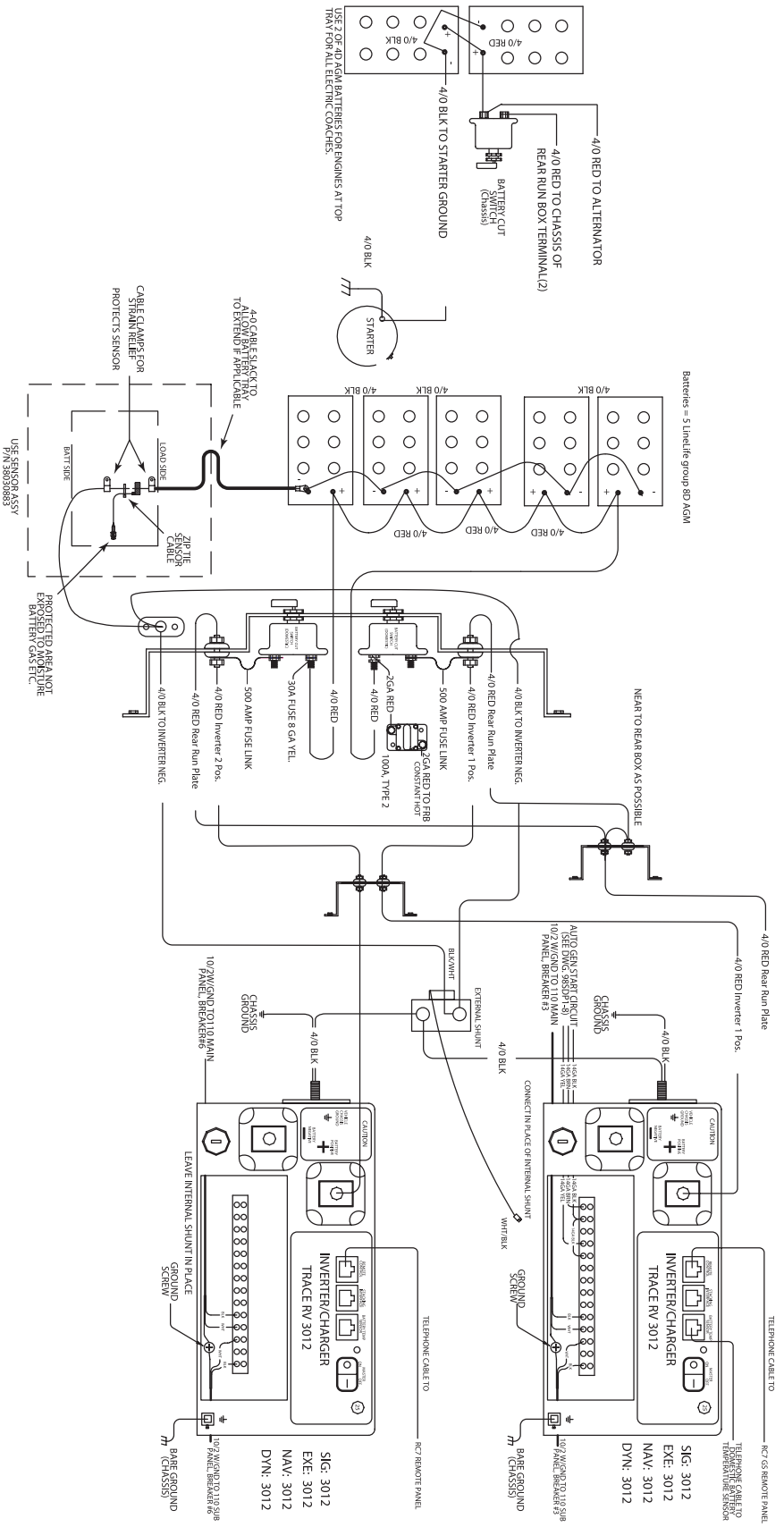


BUSS WGS500 060122

Alternator

The engine alternator is a 270 amp Leece/Neville. The alternator is not designed to charge the house batteries from a complete discharge to a full state of charge. The alternator will maintain the battery charge during travel, supplying the DC current necessary to operate running lights or other DC load

Wiring Systems Interfaced



NOTES

NOTES

The Executive 2005
Electrical Systems - Chassis
Section 9

CHASSIS ELECTRICAL - INTRODUCTOIN.....385
BATTERY DISCONNECT - CHASSIS.....385
BATTERY - CHASSIS.....386
FUSES & CIRCUITS 387
Rear Start Switches.....388
Isolator Relay 389
Relays.....389
ALTERNATOR 392
Alternator Testing Procedure.....393
STEERING COLUMN & SMART WHEEL.....394
Smart Wheel Operation.....394
Wiper Function 396
Tilt & Telescope.....397
CONSOLE.....397
Transmission Shift Seletor 397
Parking Brake 398
Leveling Controls.....399
DASH - INDICATOR LAMPS 400
Gauges.....401
Operation 403
Switches 404
DASH AIR CONDITIONER & HEATER CONTROLS.....408
About Refrigerants.....411
SYSTEM CONTROL CENTER 415
DIAGNOSTIC PLUG LOCATION 416
Diagnostic Bracket (Engine).....416
ALADDIN™ ENGINE DISPLAY 417
BULB USAGE CHART - EXTERIOR.....418
ENGINE “NO START” - FLOW CHART 419

CHASSIS ELECTRICAL - INTRODUCTION

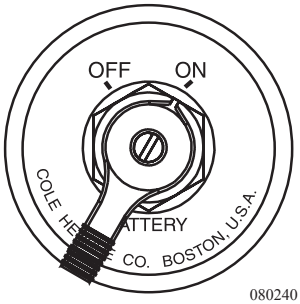
A majority of the chassis electrical functions are designed to operate from 12 Volt DC (direct current) power. This is why the chassis batteries play such an important role in the function of the motorhome. Therefore,it is important to keep the 12 Volt DC system(s) in good working order. These systems, with their incorporated electronics, are voltage sensitive. If DC voltage is not within specification, some electronic items may be damaged.

The two different systems, engine and house, have their own set(s) of battery(s). The engine battery supplies 12 Volt DC power to the front distribution panel located in an outside compartment by the roadside front wheel. This panel contains mostly engine system fuses and wiring such as headlights, taillight, dashboard functions, gauges, etc. The house battery(s) supplies 12 Volt DC power to the distribution panel located in the bedroom. This panel contains fuses for the house, interior lighting and appliances.

BATTERY DISCONNECT - CHASSIS

The main battery disconnect switch, located in the engine compartment, controls the DC power to the front electrical bay, and to most components in the rear run box. Most chassis and engine functions are interrupted when the battery disconnect is turned off. Some electronic components of the engine and transmission require a constant power source, and will continue to draw power when the disconnect is engaged.

Turn the main battery disconnect switch off when the motorhome is going to be stored, or when performing electrical maintenance. If possible, leave the motorhome plugged into an AC source with the battery disconnect switch on to help prevent the possibility of dead batteries.



080240

Battery Disconnect Located in Engine Compartment

If an AC source is not available, and the motorhome is going to be stored more than 48 hours, it is recommended to turn the battery disconnect switch off.

WARNING:
When welding is involved for motorhome repair or modification, only qualified, experienced technicians should weld on the chassis. Improper welding procedures and materials may weaken the assembly or result in damage that is not obvious and may not cause an immediate problem or failure. Unauthorized modifications or repairs to the chassis could result in a forfeiture of warranty coverage.

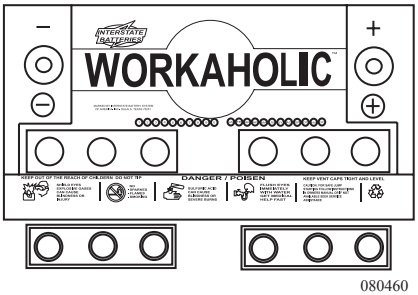
DANGER:
Due to the sensitive nature of the electronics on the chassis, the following precautions are required to protect electrical components in the motorhome chassis:

1. **Disconnect the (+) positive and (-) negative battery connection.**
2. **Cover electronic control components and wiring to protect from hot sparks.**
3. **Disconnect the terminal plugs from the engine Electronic Control Unit, located on the passenger side of the engine block.**
4. **Disconnect all the plugs from the transmission Electronic Control Unit, located in the storage bay between the frame rails.**
5. **Disconnect the wiring from the alternator.**
6. **Do not connect welding cables to electronic control components.**
7. **Attach the welding ground cable no more than two feet from the part to be welded**.

BATTERY - CHASSIS

The chassis battery is a crank type battery designed to produce high amperage necessary to start the engine. Maintain the chassis battery through regular electrolyte level inspections and hydrometer readings. High electrolyte consumption, or inconsistent hydrometer cell readings, may indicate a charging system problem. Perform a charging system and current draw check if the battery is exhibiting abnormal hydrometer readings.

NOTE:
Replacement batteries should have the same cold cranking amp (CCA) rating.



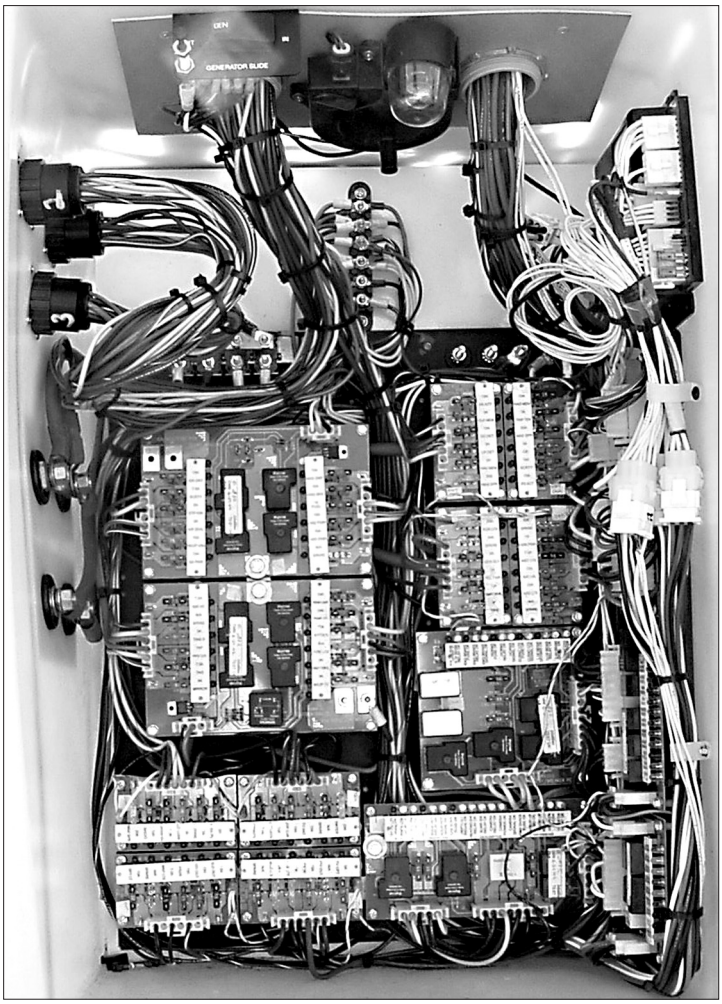
080460

Battery with cover removed. Cut plastic to remove cover.

The motorhome relies on two electrical panels to control chassis system functions and some house operated items. One electrical panel, located roadside ahead of the front wheel, contains fuses, self-resetting circuit breakers and micro-relays. The other electrical panel, located curbside rear compartment, contains high-amperage circuit breakers, a high-amperage solenoid and the rear start box. The circuit cards in both electrical panels use LEDs to indicate power.

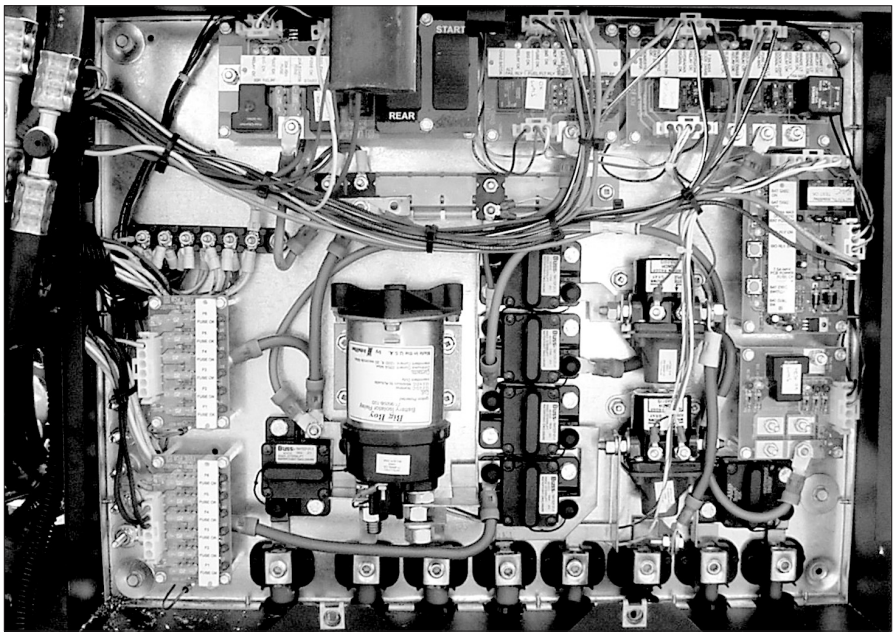
- **RED** indicates Fuse.
- **GREEN** indicates Relay.
- **YELLOW** indicates Signal.

The fuses are standard ATC blade type. When a fuse "BLOWS," the wire in middle of the plastic case will be broken. A bad or blown fuse must be replaced with a fuse of the same rating and type. Using a fuse of a different type or rating will defeat the circuit protection provided by the fuse, which could result in damage to the motorhome electrical system.



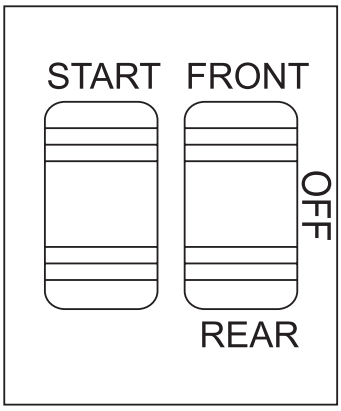
Front Run Box in Roadside front bay. front run box.tif

A fuse that has been replaced, and continues to "BLOW," may indicate a fault exists or an electronic component has failed. It is recommended that the motorhome be taken to a qualified RV technician before any future use to diagnose and repair the potential problem. Circuits are identified with a label adjacent to the fuse.



Rear Run Box in engine compartment.

Rear Start Switches



090373h

Rear Start switches located inside the Rear Run Box in the rear curbside compartment.

The rear start switches are for safety and convenience. The **FRONT/REAR** switch has three positions:

1. **FRONT -** In this position the motorhome will only start with the ignition key.
2. **REAR -** In this position the motorhome can only be started with the rear start switch. (Note that the ignition switch must also be in the "on" position.)
3. **OFF -** In this position the starter will not engage with either ignition key or rear start switch. It will also turn the engine off if it is already running.

The **START** switch engages the starter when the **FRONT/REAR** switch is set to **REAR** and the ignition switch is **ON**.

NOTE:
If the motorhome will not start from the front, check the rear start box to see if the switch was bumped or accidentally set to OFF or REAR. If the motorhome still does not start, try to start it from the rear start box.

CAUTION:
When checking or servicing the engine compartment, the Rear Start switch should be placed in the REAR or OFF position to prevent accidental starting of the engine from the cockpit area.

To Start From the Rear:

When starting the motorhome from the rear, confirm all tools and parts are clear of the engine and underneath the motorhome.

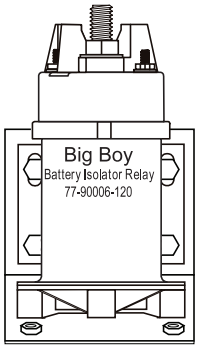
- Turn ignition key to the **ON** position.
- Move rocker switch on the rear start box down to **REAR**.
- Ensure everything is clear of rotating parts.
- Hold the momentary switch to **START**. After the engine starts, release the switch.
- Move switch to the center **OFF** position, to turn the engine off.
- Check the rocker switch to confirm it is in the position desired.
- For normal operation, place the switch to **FRONT**.

Isolator Relay

The Isolator Relay provides a simple means of isolating the two battery systems, house and chassis, and connecting the batteries together when the engine is running.

A momentary dash-mounted switch is added to provide a "BOOST" for the engine batteries from the domestic batteries.

When using the battery boost switch, the relay may have to deliver the full starting current to the engine batteries. The relay contacts must close and provide low resistance without the harmful effects of arcing. To be sure relays can perform under harsh conditions, the contacts are protected with a unique antioxidant coating. The relay is of heavy construction and can easily deliver the needed current. In a battery charging situation, both batteries will charge at equal voltage.



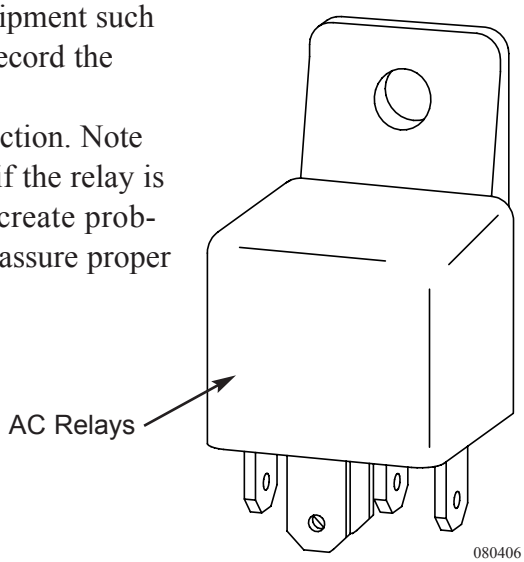
Isolator Relay - Located in rear run box in engine compartment.

060216B

Relays

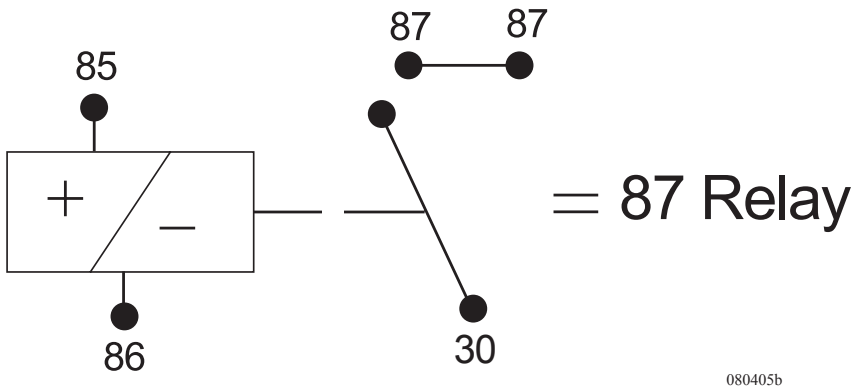
The motorhome uses various relays to operate electrical equipment such as lights and motors. If a relay needs to be replaced, carefully record the location of each wire and all markings or labels.

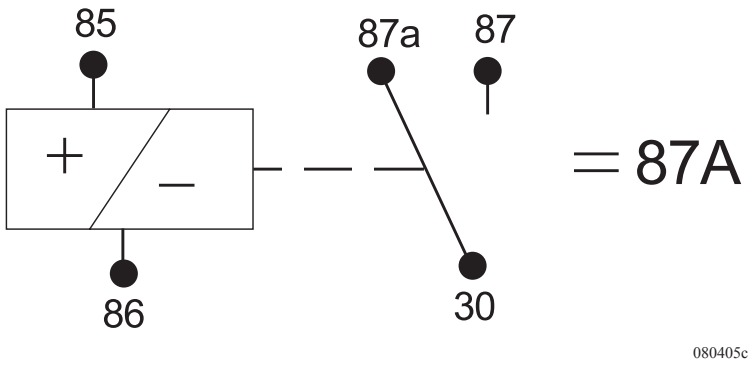
Relays can look the same in appearance, but differ in function. Note that on the side of the relay is a schematic drawing identifying if the relay is 87 or 87a relay. These current ratings differ, and if mixed, will create problems. Ensure the replacement relay is of the current rating to assure proper operation.



080406

Another indicator to the type of relay is the post or legs. Turn the relay over and look at the post.





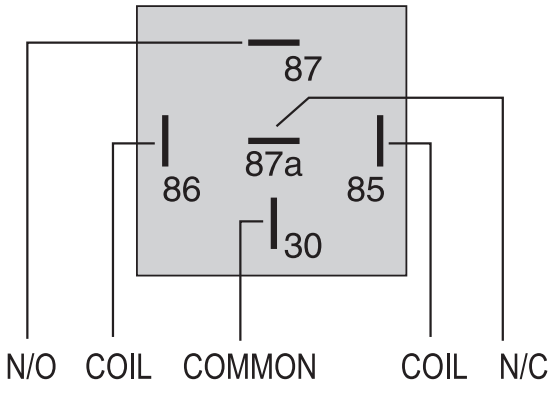
Note the differences between the numbered posts:

1. The 30 post is the incoming fuse and/or breaker power. Some relay applications supply power to the 30 post. Some use it for ground. The 30 post can be used many different ways.
2. The 85 post is one side of the coil, tripped different ways.
3. The 86 post is the opposite side of the coil, tripped different ways.
4. The 87 posts are not common to the 30 post until the relay is tripped. When the relay trips, both 87 posts are common to the 30 post.
5. Using an 87a relay, the 30 post and the 87a post are common. When the coil is tripped, the 87a post becomes inactive and the 30 post becomes common to the 87 post located on the outside of the relay.

A Single Pole Single Throw relay (SPST) is an electro-magnetic switch consisting of a coil (terminals 85 & 86), one common terminal (30), one normally closed terminal (87a), and one normally open terminal (87).

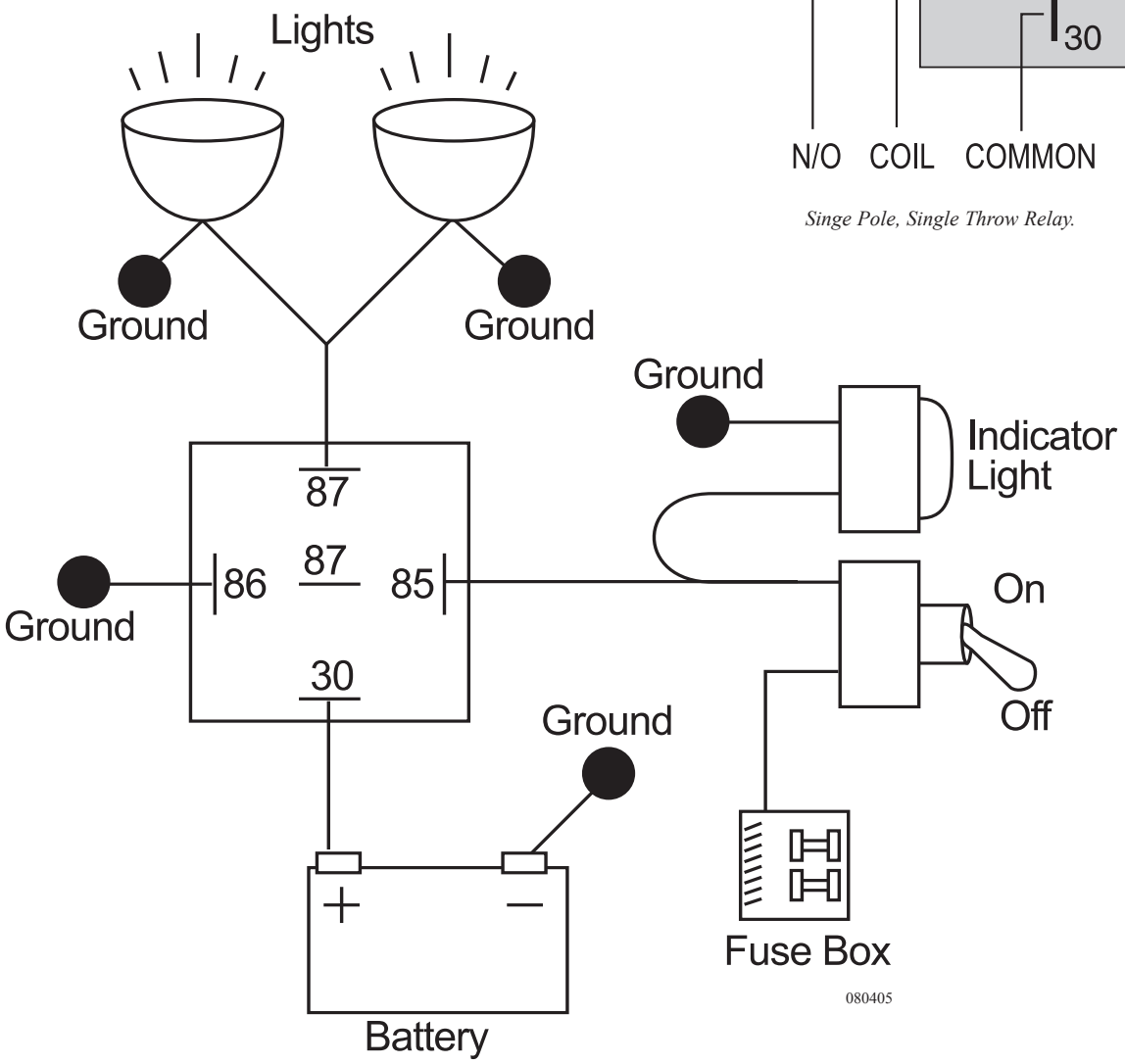
When the coil of the relay is at rest (not energized) the common terminal (30) and the normally closed terminal (87a) have continuity. When the coil is energized, the common terminal (30) and the normally open terminal (87) have continuity.

NOTE:
When there is power applied to the coil, the coil sets up a magnetic field in the windings. When the power is removed, the field collapses. A momentary high voltage discharge will occur. This is how an ignition coil works.



Singe Pole, Single Throw Relay.

EXAMPLE:



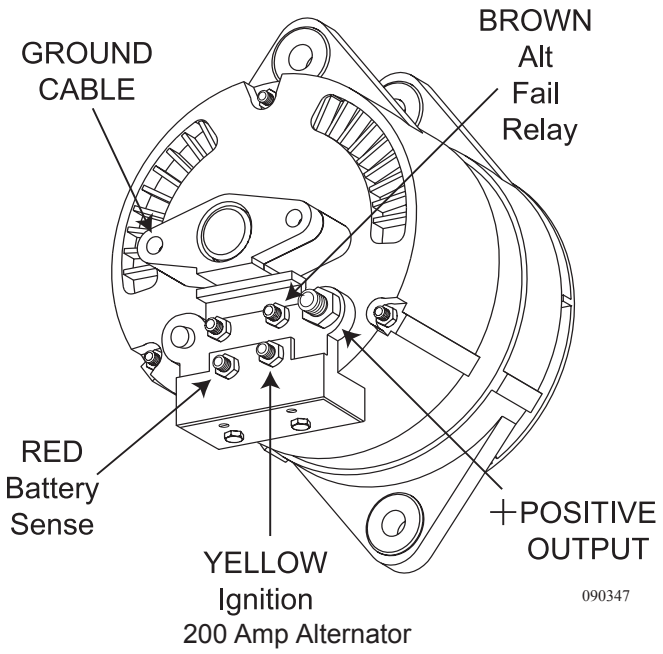
ALTERNATOR

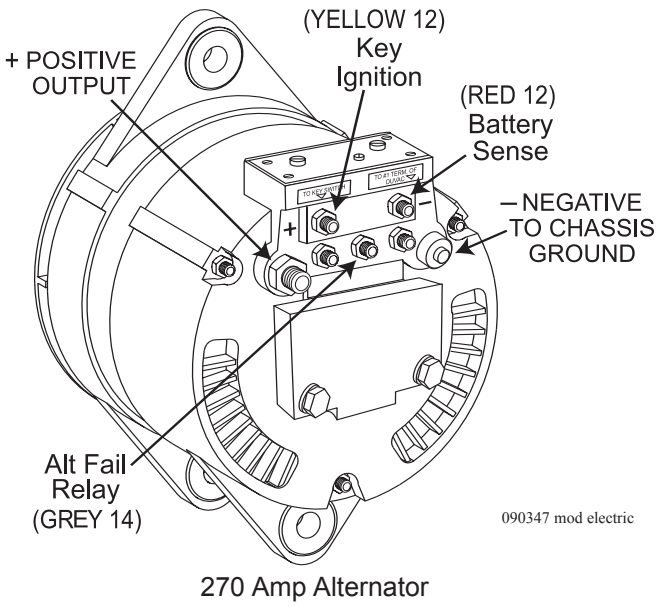
The alternator is designed for output through the engine operating range. When traveling, keep an eye on the voltmeter in the dash area. Normal readings should be between 13 to 14.5 Volts DC. Voltage indications higher or lower indicate a potential problem with the charging system. If the alternator output drops below an acceptable level, a charge indication warning lamp will illuminate.

The alternator replaces amp hours the chassis battery used to start the engine. The amount of charge the alternator sends to the chassis battery is dependent on the amount of time the engine is operated. Repeatedly starting the engine for short periods may not be enough operating time to adequately replace the amp hours the chassis battery uses to start the engine.

The function of the alternator is an electrical system voltage maintainer, not a battery charger. When the engine is operating, the alternator maintains electrical system voltage relative to a load, such as headlights and windshield wipers. When a heavy load is placed on the alternator, such as trying to charge dead house batteries, the operating temperature of the alternator will increase. Excess operating temperature of the alternator for extended periods of operation can lead to premature failure of the alternator.

If the house batteries are in a low state of charge, it is recommended to charge the house batteries with the inverter or an auxiliary battery charger before driving the motorhome.





NOTE:
Standard is 200 Amp and All-Electric is 270 Amp.

CAUTION:
Long-term use of the inverter to operate the microwave while in transit will damage the alternator. Use the generator to operate the microwave while in transit.

Alternator Testing:

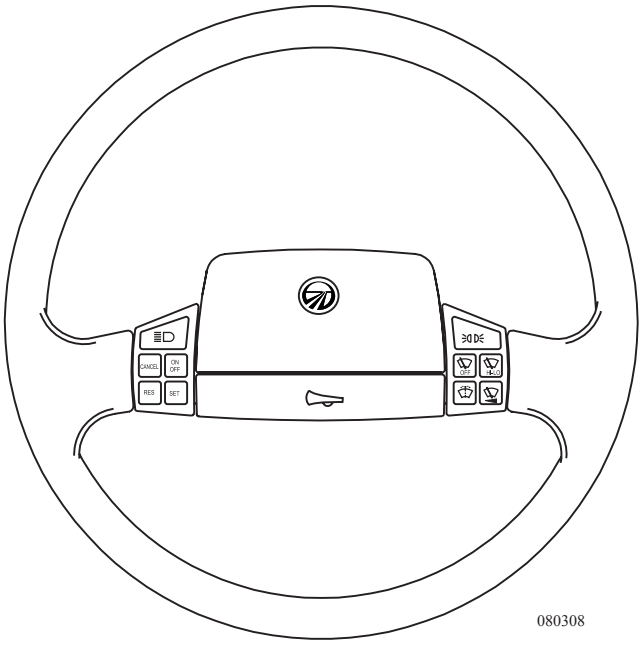
- Check all wiring for burnt or loose electrical connections. Repair as needed.
- Check all grounds and electrical connections to confirm they are clean and tight.

  a. Alternator ground to chassis frame.
  b. Motor block ground to chassis frame.
  c. Chassis battery ground to chassis frame.
  d. Alternator positive output to isolator center terminal.

- Inspect the alternator for damage. A broken fan blade can damage an alternator or throw it out of balance.
- Check belt, pulley and fan for wear. Replace as needed.
- Do not disconnect the battery, or battery wire, from the alternator with the engine running as this can damage the alternator or regulator.
- The pulley for the alternator should be torqued to 80 foot pounds.
- Chassis battery voltage with the engine OFF should range from 12.2 to 12.7 Volt DC.
- Chassis battery voltage with the engine at idle should range 13.5 to 14.2 Volts DC.
- The output of the alternator range is 13.6 to 15.4 Volts DC. Connect a volt meter to the (B+) terminal of the alternator and chassis ground. Idle the engine up to 1200 RPM.
- Connect a clamp-on amp-meter, if available, to the positive battery cable to verify the battery state/rate of charge.

NOTE:
The alternator is not a battery charger. It is designed to maintain proper electrical system voltage. A battery with a low state of charge, or a dead battery, may overheat and damage the alternator.

STEERING COLUMN & SMART WHEEL



080308

The steering wheel system consists of electronic modules enclosed in the steering wheel and the Master Controller typically located in the front run box. Four wires utilizing a "clock-spring" connector in the steering column accomplish communication between the steering wheel and the Master Controller. The Master Controller decodes the signal for the closed switch and operates the corresponding outputs for that function. Two additional wires provide power and ground for the steering wheel backlighting.

The 3 Amp fuse on the Master Controller is for backlighting the switch panel. LED draw is approximately 20 mA.

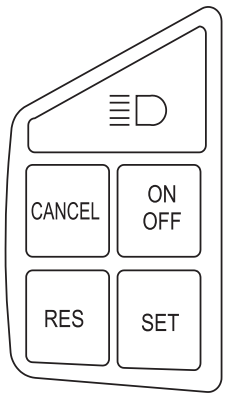
Another function of the smart wheel is the “High Idle” feature.

Smart Wheel Operation

Smart Wheel Functions and Operational Description:

HORN:
The horn bar on the steering wheel sends the appropriate signal to the Master Controller causing the HORN output to activate while the switch is pressed.

HEADLAMP FLASH:
When headlights are **ON**, pressing the switch will turn them off as long as the switch is pressed. Similarly, when the headlamps are **OFF**, pressing the switch causes the headlights to illuminate as long as the switch is pressed.



090270

CRUISE FUNCTIONS:

- **CANCEL -** Signals cruise system to disengage without losing the current speed memory setting.
- **ON/OFF -** Cycles cruise system ON and OFF.
- **RES (RESUME) -** Actuates cruise resume function of engine controller.
- **SET -** Actuates cruise set function of the engine controller.

WARNING:

Do not use cruise control in heavy traffic or on roads that are winding, slippery or unpaved. Do not shift the transmission into "N" (Neutral) with the cruise control on. High engine RPM run up will occur until the cruise control is turned off.

To use the Cummins High Idle Feature:

- With the cruise control **OFF**, Press and release the **RES** button. Each time the switch is pressed and released, the idle will rise in RPMs, from 600-800 RPM. To lower the idle, press and release the **SET** button. Engine idle speed will decrease in RPM increments.
- With the Cruise Control **ON**, press and release the **RES** button once. Engine speed will increase to 900 RPM. Push and hold the **RES** button, engine speed will increase to 1500 RPM. Use **CANCEL** or turn the cruise control **OFF** to return the engine to an idle.
- With the Cruise Control **ON**, press the Set button once. Engine will increase to 1150 RPM. Press and hold the **SET** button, engine speed will decrease to 850 RPM. Use **CANCEL** or turn the cruise control **OFF** to return the engine to idle.

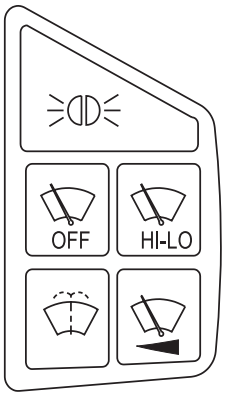
To Use the Detroit High Idle Feature:

- With Cruise Control **ON**, push and release the **RES** button to increase RPM to 800. Repeating this procedure will raise engine speed by 50 RPM until a maximum of 1550 RPM is reached. Push and hold **RES** button steadily to increase RPM. Push and release the **SET** button to decrease RPM. Push the **ON/OFF** button to return the engine to normal idle. The **CANCEL** button has no effect in this mode.

NOTE:

The transmission will not shift into gear if the engine RPM is at or above 900. The display will flash "6" indicating the engine RPM is excessive. Select "N" and lower the engine RPM.

Wiper Function



090270

The windshield wipers are driven by a single motor. Any wiper function generates a **Headlamp On** signal from the Master Controller. To disengage automatic headlight illumination, turn **off** the ignition, or activate and then deactivate the dashboard headlamp switch.

Marker Flashlamp:
Pressing Marker Flashlamp causes the taillights and all marker lights to momentarily flash.

OFF:
Cancels all wiper operations. Wiper function is also cancelled when the ignition is turned off.

HI-LO:
When the button is pressed, wipers activate on **low** speed. If the button is pressed again, the **high** wiper speed setting is activated. Subsequently pressing the **HI-LO** button will alternate wiper operation between **low** and **high** speed mode.

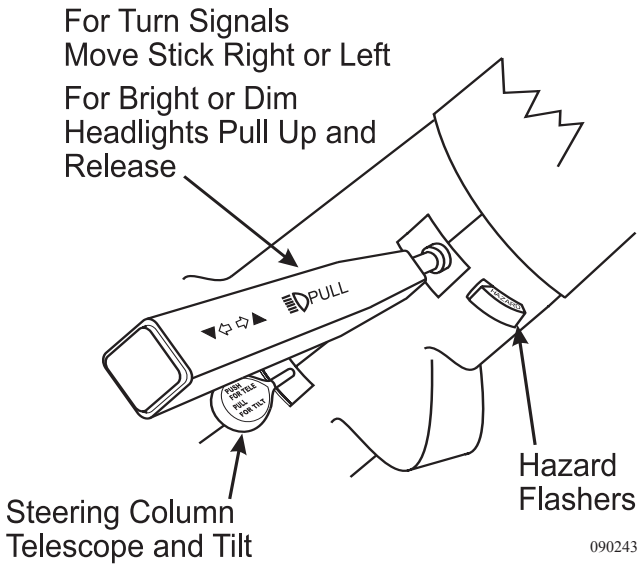
Wiper Wash:
Activates the wash pump relay while the button is pressed. If no wiper function has been selected, the **low** wiper will activate for a period of approximately three wiper cycles, after the switch is released. If any wiper functions have been selected, the wipers will continue to run in the selected mode after the wash button is released.

Wiper Variable:
Operation of the **Wiper Variable** button causes the **low** speed wiper function to activate for one wipe. If the button is pressed again within approximately 30 seconds, the **low** speed wiper function activates again and repeats at an interval determined by the time between the last two operations of the button. Additional button operations will shorten the cycle. Activating other wiper modes cancels the variable mode.

An example: In light rain or misting conditions, press the button once to initially clear the windshield. If the windshield requires a second clearing, press the button again, setting the timed interval between subsequent wipes required by the current conditions. To extend the wipe interval, press the intermittent button twice more, or switch the wipers off and use the same method to set the desired interval.

Tilt and telescope steering wheel control lever is located on the steering column.

- To tilt the steering wheel: Pull the lever up and tilt the steering wheel to the desired level. Release the lever to lock the steering wheel in the new position.
- To telescope the steering wheel: Push and hold the lever down. Move the steering wheel to the desired location. Release the lever to lock the steering wheel in the new position.



Turn indicator and headlight high/low dimmer control is located on the steering column.

- Push the lever forward to activate right turn indicator circuits when the ignition is on.
- Pull the lever back to activate left turn indicator circuits when the ignition is on.
- Pull the lever up to select high/low beam circuits when the headlights are on.

Hazard Flashers:

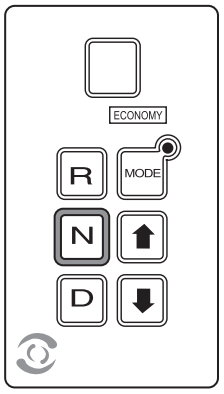
- The flasher button is located on the steering column.
- To turn on the four way flashers, pull **out** on the flasher button. The turn signal alarm will sound.
- To turn off the flashers, push the button **in**.

CONSOLE
Transmission Shift Selector

Transmission Key Pad:

The function of each position of the keypad push-button shifter is as follows:

- Selects **NEUTRAL** by pressing **N**. The area around the **N** button has a raised ridge so the driver can orient his hand to the Neutral button by touch.
- Selects **REVERSE** gear by pressing **R**.
- Selects the forward **DRIVE** range by pressing **D**. The highest forward gear (**6**) appears on the display and the transmission will shift to the first gear. Gear "**6**" will remain on the display through subsequent upshifts or downshifts.



080355c

- The **UPSHIFT** and **DOWNSHIFT arrow** buttons are used to select a higher (if not in sixth gear) or lower (if not in first gear) forward range. These buttons are not functional in **NEUTRAL** or **REVERSE**. One press changes the gear selected by one range. If the up or down button is held continuously, the range will continue to change up or down until the button is released or until the highest/lowest possible gear is selected.
- The **Mode** button enables economy mode.

  - **To Enter Economy Mode:** Press the **MODE** button. The LED will illuminate.

  - **To Exit Economy Mode:** Press the **MODE** button. The LED will extinguish.

Economy Mode:

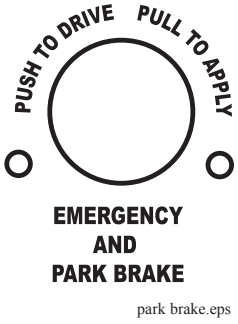
Economy mode affects the upshift schedule 3-4, 4-5, 5-6 and downshift schedule 6-5, 5-4, 4-3. During highway driving, with the cruise control set between 55 and 65 miles per hour, setting the transmission to economy mode will eliminate about 99% of transmission downshifts from sixth to fifth when incurring a slight incline or overpass.

In city driving, with the transmission set to economy mode, the transmission will upshift approximately 200 RPM sooner using less fuel with reduced engine noise. Do Not use economy mode while traveling in mountain terrain. The lower RPM shift schedule will reduce the flow of antifreeze, lubricating oil and air flow through the radiator, resulting in increased transmission and engine temperature.

CAUTION:
Do not use the economy mode in heavy stop and go traffic or mountainous terrains. Frequent shifting occurs when in economy mode while using heavy throttle, increasing transmission fluid temperature. Exit economy mode until road conditions improve.

NOTE:
When the Auxiliary Braking device is used, the display will change to a default reading of 2 or 3. This setting is pre-selected at the factory and can only be altered by an authorized Allison Service center. The transmission is not actually in second or third gear. This is only a reference point so the transmission will optimize engine braking efficiency.

Parking Brake



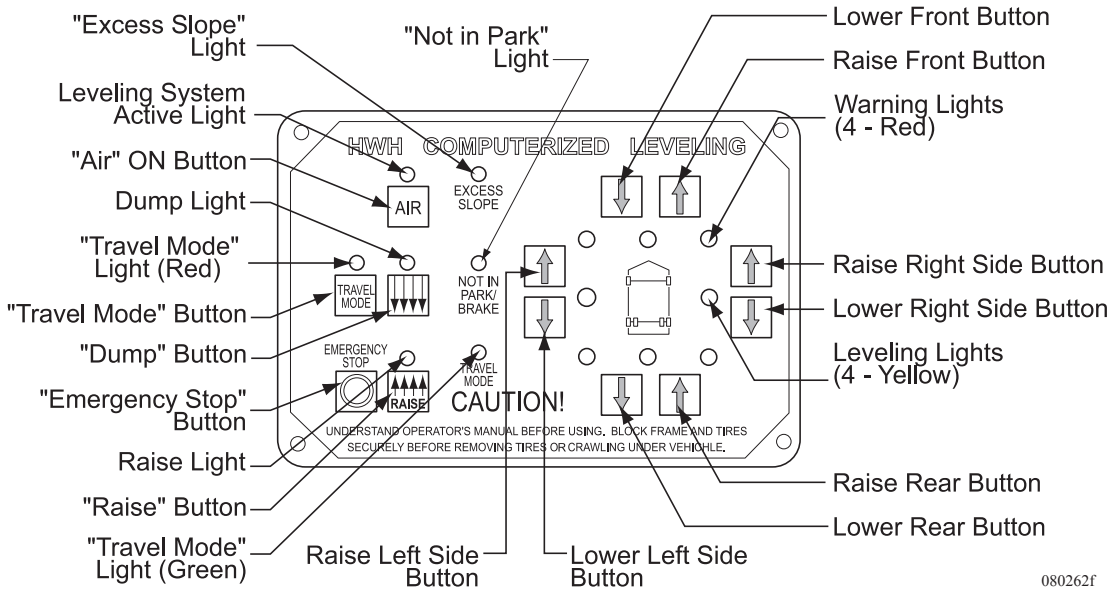
park brake.eps

The parking brake system is activated when the push-pull control knob (located on the driver's left console panel) is pulled. When the knob is pushed, the brake is released. Prior to driving, allow time for the air compressor to build up sufficient air to shut off the air warning lamp.

WARNING:
There is a possibility the parking brake can be accidentally released if the air system is charged. It is advised to fabricate a device to be placed under the parking brake handle preventing small children and pets from releasing the brake when parked. A wooden clothespin clasped to the shaft will be suitable.

HWH Control (Air Systems):

The touch panel, computer controlled, four-point air leveling system controls computerized air-leveling operations. The ignition must be ON in order for the leveling system to function.

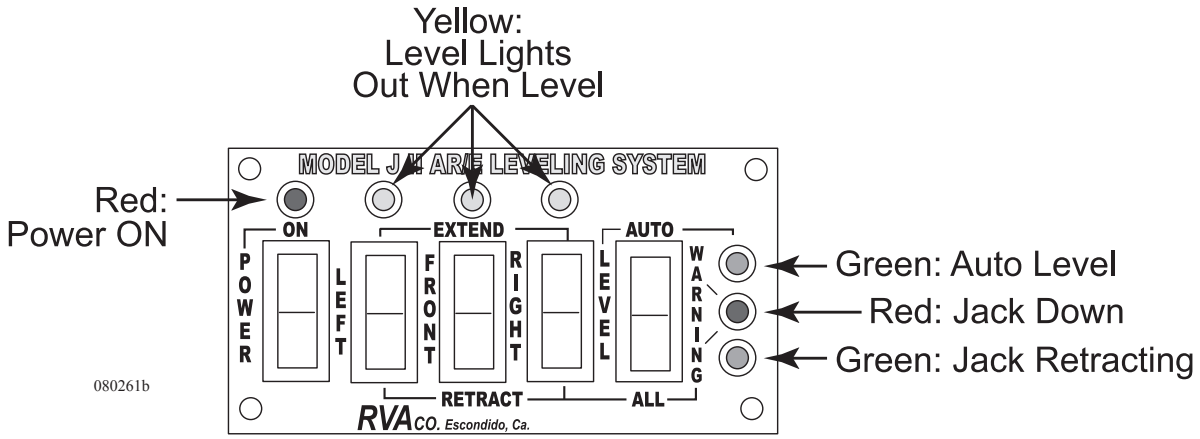


NOTE:
Air suspension will NOT operate unless ignition is ON.

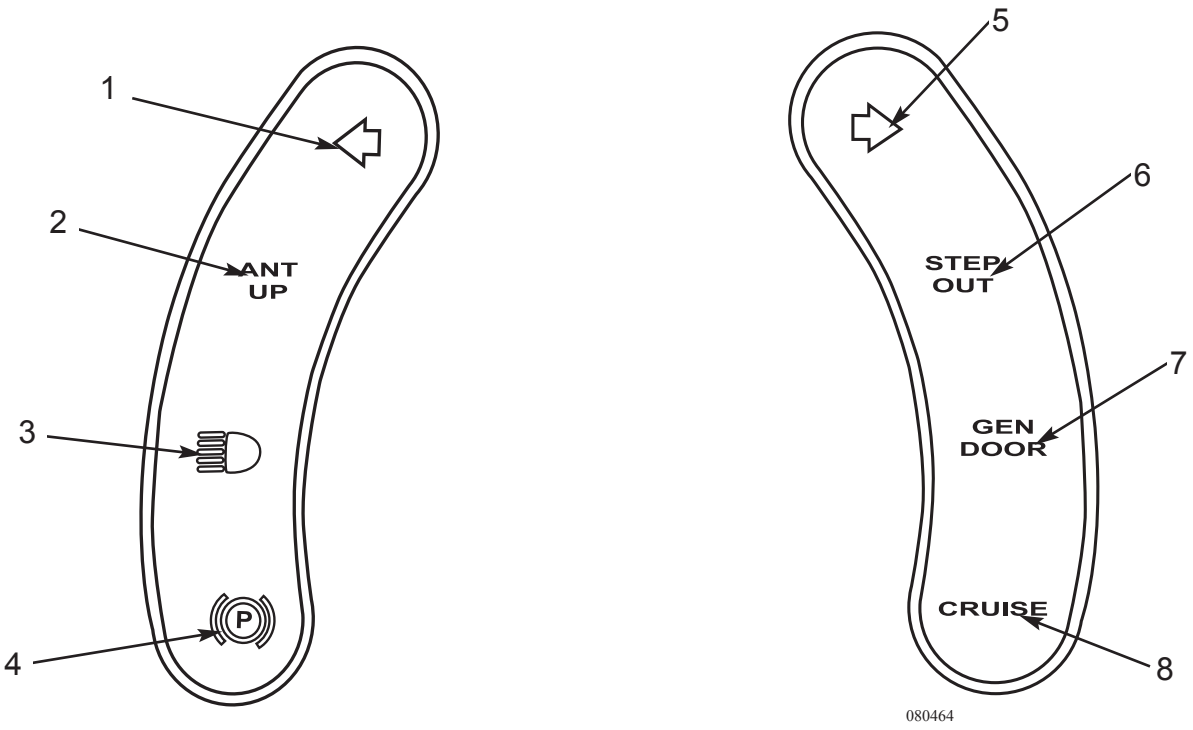
RVA Control - Hydraulic Systems: (Optional)

The three-point hydraulic leveling system is operated from the control module to manually or automatically level the motorhome. The control features a multiple warning system with flashing lights and a “bong” alarm to alert of a jack down.

NOTE:
Hydraulic leveling works only with ignition in ACC position.



DASH - INDICATOR LAMPS



LEFT ARRAY:

1. LEFT ARROW - Audible Turn Indicators:
Left turn indicator circuits active. Alarm cancels when service brake is applied.

2. ANTENNA UP:
Antenna is up, lower antenna before moving motorhome.

3. HEADLIGHT BEAM:
High beams on when illuminated.

4. PARK BRAKE:
Parking/ emergency brake is applied.

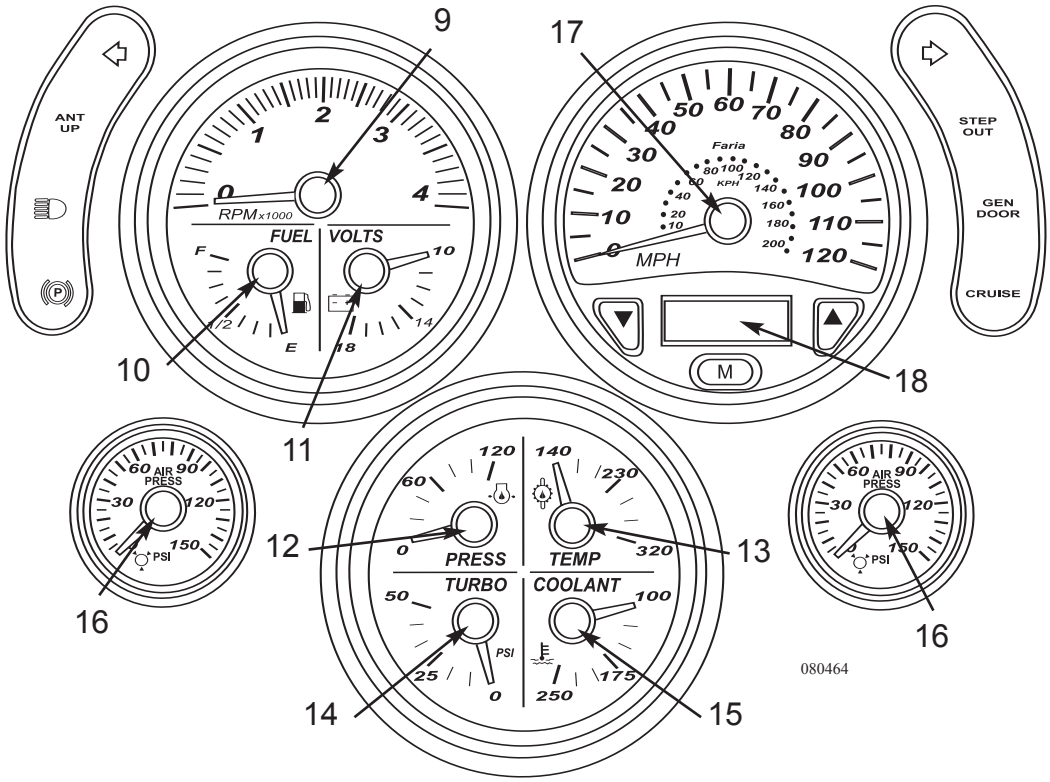
RIGHT ARRAY:

5. RIGHT ARROW - Audible Turn Indicators:
Right turn indicator circuits active. Alarm cancels when service brake is applied.

6. STEP OUT - Entry step is in the extended position. Alerts driver to possible problem with entry step.

7. GEN DOOR - The generator door is open.

8. CRUISE - Cruise control is activated.



3-IN-1 GAUGE:

9. TACHOMETER (0-4K RPM) - Displays engine speed in revolutions per minute (RPM).

10. FUEL GAUGE - Fuel gauge will register approximate fuel level in tank, when ignition switch is in run position.

NOTE:

Fuel mileage varies with driving style and road conditions. Always average more than one tank of fuel to obtain a more accurate figure. The diesel generator and the Aqua-Hot system both use fuel from main tank and will affect fuel mileage figures. Diesel generator and Aqua-Hot will not operate below ¼ tank to ensure there is enough fuel to run main engine.

11. VOLTMETER (10-18 V) - Shows the charge condition in the chassis battery. The normal voltage with the ignition switch ON and the engine OFF varies between 12 and 13 Volts. With the engine operating without a heavy load, the battery charging voltage is about 14 Volts. Battery readings of less than 10.5 Volts, or more than 15 Volts usually indicates a battery or electrical system problem.

4-IN-1 GAUGE:

12. ENGINE OIL PRESSURE (0 - 120 PSI) - Indicates oil pressure, not the amount of oil in the engine. Please refer to manufacturer's instructions for specific pressure recommendations.

13. TRANSMISSION OIL TEMP (140 - 320 F) - Shows temperature of transmission fluid. Normal transmission operating temperature is between 160º and 250º F. The maximum transmission to cooler oil temperature is 300º F. Do not let the transmission temperature exceed 275º F. If excessive temperature is indicated, stop motorhome and shift to neutral. Accelerate engine to 1200-1500 RPM and allow temperature to return to normal.

14. BOOST PRESSURE (0 - 50 PSI) - Indicates boost pressure produced by the engine turbocharger.

15. ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE (100 - 250 F) - Under average conditions the gauge will read between 180º and 205º F. Monitor this gauge frequently when CLIMBING HILLS, TOWING OR IN HIGH AMBIENT TEMPERATURES. If the gauge shows that an over heating condition exists (the needle moving above the 212º F area) IMMEDIATE ACTION should be taken to avoid engine damage.

16. AIR PRESSURE GAUGES, FRONT AND REAR TANKS (0-150 PSI) - One gauge indicates pressure in the front air tank. The second gauge indicates pressure in the rear air tank. The normal air system operating pressures are 105 to 120 psi. These air pressures are preset at the factory. If a problem occurs with either air system not maintaining normal operating pressure, it is an indication of a malfunction in the air system. Use caution and stop the motorhome in a safe area. Have the air system repaired before continued travel.

NOTE:
It is not safe to drive the motorhome with low air pressure. Damage can occur to the suspension and driveline, also affecting operation of the air brake system.

17. SPEEDOMETER - Indicates the speed of the motorhome. The gauge indicates MPH and KPH. Located on the right side of the instrument cluster.

18. LCD DISPLAY AND FUNCTION BUTTONS - The LCD screen displays information received from the engine, transmission and Antilock Brake System (ABS) Electronic Control Units (ECU). The function buttons (▲ ▼ and **M**) allow access to different displays and setting changes.

LCD displays the following when active:

- ABS Warning
- Check Transmission
- Check Engine
- Engine Hot
- Low Oil Pressure
- Low Coolant Level
- Low Battery
- High Battery
- Low Fuel
- Maintenance Warning
- ABS Tag Error
- Low Pressure
- Water in Fuel
- Odometer
- Trip Odometer 1
- Trip Odometer 2
- Engine Hours
- Clock

The system is turned on and off using the ignition. Turn the instrument lighting on and off with headlight switch.

To change lighting intensity:

1. Turn on the headlight switch.
2. Press ▲ to increase instrument lighting intensity.
3. Press ▼ to decrease instrument lighting intensity.

The audible alarm is used to alert the driver of a warning condition while traveling. The warning will then be displayed on the LCD.

To disable audible alarm in normal mode:

1. Press and hold both ▲ and ▼ buttons until the beep stops.

To change LCD display:

- Press **M** to scroll through display screens:
- Odometer • Trip odometer 1 • Trip odometer 2 • Engine Hour • Clock

Data will display, automatically, two seconds after selecting desired screen.

To reset Trip Odometer 1:

1. When **TRIP 1** is displayed on LCD, wait two seconds for LCD screen to show trip mileage.
2. Press and hold **M** to re-set to zero.

To reset Trip Odometer 2:

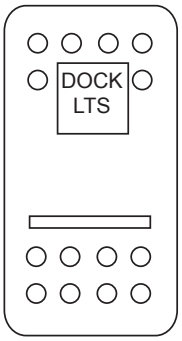
1. When **TRIP 2** is displayed on LCD, wait two seconds for LCD screen to show trip mileage.
2. Press and hold **M** to re-set to zero.

To set clock:

1. When **CLOCK** is displayed on LCD, wait 2 seconds for time to be displayed.
2. Press and hold **M** until clock flashes.
3. Press ▲ to change minutes. Press ▼ to change hours.
4. After clock is set press and hold **M** until clock stops flashing.

NOTE:
Time is displayed as a 24 hour clock.

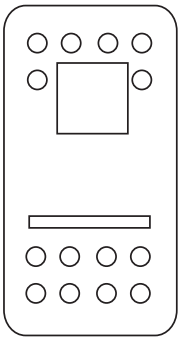
Switches



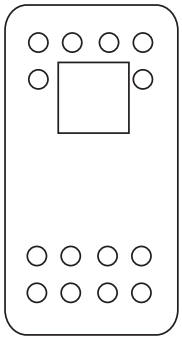
AIR DUMP (Optional):
Deflates air suspension (Hydraulic Leveling only).

DOCK LTS:
The dock lights switch, will operate all dock lights, including the back-up lights. The dock lights switch in the bedroom operates all docking lights.

ATC:
Activating the ATC switch allows greater engine torque during an ATC event.

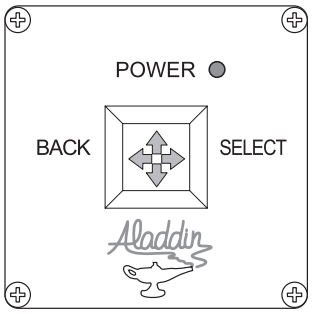


Typical Switch Lighted



Typical Switch Non-Lighted

ALADDIN:
Master reset and storage switch for the Aladdin System is located in the roadside overhead compartment.



Aladdin Joystick 080377d

ALADDIN JOYSTICK:
Used to control Aladdin commands.

BATT BOOST:
The Battery Boost switch is used in the event the motorhome chassis battery has been drained or is at a low charge level where the engine will not start. This switch momentarily "jumps" the house batteries to the chassis batteries to assist in starting the engine.

To Use the Switch:

1. Hold the switch down for ten seconds. With the switch held down, turn on the ignition key. The battery volt gauge on the dash should indicate 12 Volts.
2. If voltage is sufficient continue to hold the switch down and try to start the engine. If the engine does not start, or voltage is not sufficient, the motorhome may require jump starting. See ***Dead Chassis Batteries***.

NOTE:
There should be an audible click from the engine compartment when the solenoid engages.

CAUTION:
The boost switch should not be held for more than 30 seconds. Damage to the boost solenoid may occur from overheating.

When pressed, the battery boost switch will ground the 12 gauge orange wire from the 1000 Amp solenoid. A loud clicking noise should be heard when the solenoid engages. If the boost solenoid is inactive, locate the molex plug and start the troubleshooting process by removing the cover on the dash. It may be necessary to remove the wire from the battery boost solenoid and perform a continuity check from the front to the rear of the motorhome.

BATTERY CUTOFF:
Turns house battery power on to 12 Volt domestic fuse panels.

BLOCK HTR:
This feature warms the engine for starting in sub-freezing or extreme cold temperature. Turning the switch on supplies 120 Volt AC power to the receptacle for the block heater cord. For efficiency, hook the motorhome to shore power when using the block heater receptacle.

To Use the Block Heater:
- Hook to shore power and plug in block heater cord to the receptacle.
- Turn on the Block Heat switch.

NOTE:
It is advised to prepare the engine for starting in sub-freezing temperatures by leaving the block heater plugged in overnight.

ENGINE BRAKE:
Activates the control solenoid for the engine brake system.

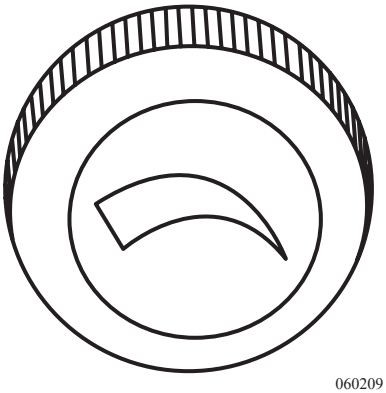
BRAKE HI/LO:
HI = All six cylinders. LO = Three cylinders.

CEILING LIGHTS:
Turns on forward halogen lights over front seats.

CARGO LIGHTS:
Turns on roadside compartment bay lights.

DIMMER/RHEOSTAT:
Controls dash switch backlighting when headlight switch is on.

DRVR SHADE:
Operates the power sun visor located driver's side.



060209

DIMMER

AQUAHOT ENGINE PREHEAT:
The engine preheat loop is an integral part of the Aqua-Hot heating system. In cold ambient temperatures, use this feature to preheat the engine. The Aqua-Hot also supplies supplemental heating to the interior using heat created by the engine. While traveling, the water pump on the engine coolant will pass through the Aqua-Hot. When using the supplemental heating feature, use the Comfort Control thermostat to activate the desired heat exchangers.

To Enable Engine Preheat:
- Turn the Aqua-Hot switch on at kitchen.
- Turn the Aqua Hot Engine Pre-Heat switch **ON** to activate the engine preheat circulation pump. Circulating engine coolant through the engine pre-heat loop will adequately warm the engine to operate for easy starting.
- Allow approximately one to two hours (longer for colder, ambient temperatures) of engine preheating run time. The pump can be operated overnight if desired.
- Turn the engine heat switch **OFF** when engine preheating is not desired.

NOTE:
Layouts may vary with difference in models and options.

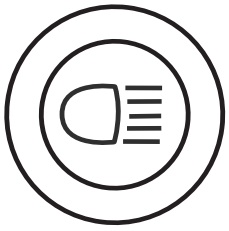
FANS HI/LO:
Operates the two speed overhead fan for use with windshield defrosting, cooling and recirculation.

FOG LTS:
Operates the fog lights with the ignition key on and the headlights in the low beam position. The fog lights will go off when the headlights are switched to high beam.

GEN ON/OFF:
Starts and stops generator from the dash area.

HANDLE STEPWELL: Turns grab handle light ON/OFF.

HEADLIGHTS:
Pull to first click to activate parking lights. Pull to second click to activate headlights.



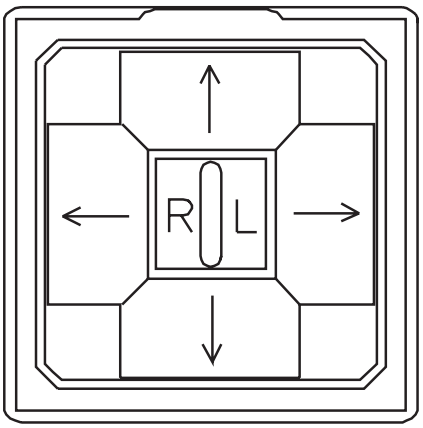
080416

MIRR HEAT:
Turns on the heaters in outside rear view mirrors. The mirror heaters should be used when defogging or deicing is needed. Mirror heat should not be left in the ON position unless continuous fogging conditions occur.

SELECT MIRRORS:
Three-way switch that controls the positions on the mirror.
T (Up): Controls the top mirror.
M (Middle): Controls the center mirror.
B (Down): Controls the lower mirror.

Top Mirror = convex glass.
Middle Mirror = flat glass.
Bottom Mirror = convex glass.

MIRROR ADJUST:
After accepting delivery of the new motorhome it will be necessary to sit in the driver's seat and have the mirrors adjusted for accurate visibility. Use an Allen wrench to adjust mirror arm angle for best visibility. Make sure you can see out of both the driver and the passenger side mirrors before heading out on the road. Place the selector switch to the desired side. Use the outside directional ring to set desired angle. Place the switch in the center position to prevent accidental misadjustment.



080378

NOTE:
Ignition must be in the ON or ACC position.

PASS SHADE:
Operates the Passenger Side power sun visor.

PEDAL IN/OUT:
After sitting in the driver's seat and making adjustments to the mirrors and steering wheel, use the Pedal In/Out switch to adjust the brake and throttle pedal to be either closer or farther away. Locate the switch on the left hand console panel marked Pedal IN/OUT. The switch moves the pedals inward or outward approximately three inches. If you need to move the pedals inward, just push the same switch in the opposite direction. When the pedals reach the end of their traveling distance the motor will stop. Release the switch.

PORCH LIGHT:
Controls porch light.

STEP:
Turns power on or off to step. To leave the step extended when parked, open the door. After the step extends, turn the switch off.

STEP COVER:
The front door models are equipped with a sliding Step-Well Cover that is extended and retracted by two switch locations. One switch is located just inside the entry door on the passenger side armrest. The second switch is located on the center console marked “Step Cover.”

NOTE:
Layouts will vary with difference in models and options.

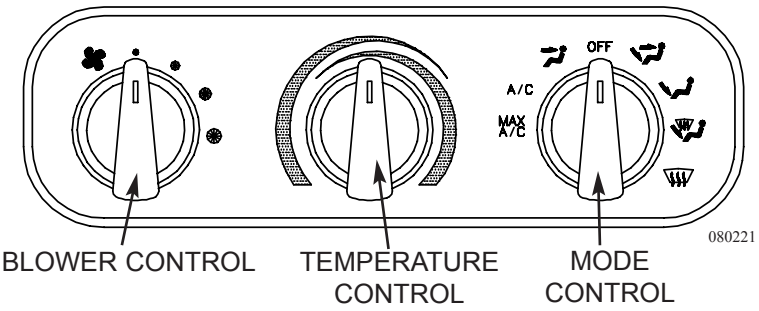
TAG AXLE:
Switch raises and lowers tag axle. In certain situations tag axle may require to be in **UP** position. Raise the tag axle when making sharp turns under 5 mph.

When using tag axle switch:
- Tag axle down, bar light not illuminated.
- Tag axle in up position, bar light illuminates.

NOTE:
DO NOT drive the motorhome over five MPH with the tag axle raised. The manufacturer will not be held responsible for any damage that may occur from driving with the tag axle raised.

DASH AIR CONDITIONER & HEATER CONTROLS

The system is designed to only provide heating, cooling and defrost for the pilot and co-pilot area. The system is not capable of heating or cooling the entire motorhome.



Blower Control Switch:
This switch controls the four speeds of the blower motor. This is one of the best and most effective ways of controlling temperature. The blower will not activate until the Mode Control Switch is set to any position other than Off.

Temperature Control Switch:
Setting the switch to the **Red** zone controls an electric water valve regulating the amount of engine coolant passing through the heating coils in the system. Rotating to the **Blue** zone sets the cut-in/cut-out temperature of the air conditioning compressor on the engine.

Mode Control Switch:
This switch directs air flow by opening or closing damper doors. Use the Mode Control Switch to direct airflow where it is needed to maximize comfort in the cockpit area.

MAX A/C - Recirculated air is drawn from the passenger area and discharged through the dash louvers.

A/C - Fresh Air is drawn from outside into the system and discharged through the dash louvers.

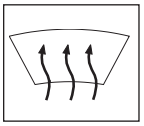
VENT - Fresh air is drawn in and discharged throughout the dash.

OFF - The blower motor does not operate. The fresh air inlet door will close, minimizing outside air infiltration into the motorhome.

BI-LEVEL - Fresh air is drawn in and discharged through the dash and the floor.

FLOOR - Fresh air is drawn in and discharged through the floor louvers.

MIX - Fresh air is drawn in and discharged through the floor and defrost louvers. The A/C system operates to dehumidify the discharged air.



DEFROST - Fresh air is drawn in and discharged through the defrost louvers. The A/C system operates to dehumidify the discharged air.

TEMPERATURE CONTROL SWITCH:

Controls an electric water valve regulating the amount of engine coolant passing through the heating and cooling coils in the system. Rotating to the red area provides warmer air; rotating to the blue area provides cooler air.

NOTE:
The temperature controls which must be set to the blue zone for cool air.

NOTE:
Activate the A/C system mostly to keep internal components of the compressor lubricated.

BLOWER CONTROL SWITCH:

Controls the speed of the blower motor, which is one of the best and most effective ways of controlling the temperature. The switch provides four speeds in all modes except OFF.

Operating Hints and Tips:

- Air intake and discharge temperatures are greatly affected by ambient temperature and relative humidity.
- A large amount of cooling capacity is used to dehumidify air as well as cool it. After three to five minutes of A/C compressor operation, discharged air temperature should be approximately 30º F cooler than the fresh or recirculated air entering the A/C system.
- The air system on the motorhome must have adequate pressure to operate the damper doors.
- At the beginning of the day, activate the compressor with the engine at idle. This will avoid sudden high speed activation resulting in damage from lack of internal compressor lubrication.
- The dash A/C and heater system should be used monthly to keep the compressor lubricated.
- Warm air will discharge from the dash louvers when the Aqua-Hot is on and the forward comfort control is set to the **FURNACE** position. Set the fan control switch between **LOW** and **HI**.

Winter Use:

- De-ice the windshield using the **OFF** (Defrost) mode.
- Higher temperature discharge air will occur with the blower set to a lower speed setting until the engine has reached normal operating temperature.

Summer Use:

- Close all windows and vents to hot, humid outside air.
- **MAX** AC and **HI** blower will provide a quick cool down.
- Using a lower blower speed will produce cooler discharge air.

A/C Heater:

The A/C system will also produce heat to warm the air in the dash area. Much like the refrigeration side of the system, a liquid will be used in the process. This liquid is the engine coolant. The coolant is passed from the radiator to an electronic water valve. The water valve, when open, will allow the coolant to flow through the heater core. The heater core is tubing and fins. Air is drawn into the system by a blower motor through the outside recirculation door opening. Air is blown through the A/C evaporator core and then through the heater core. When the temperature control is in the **WARM** position coolant flows through the heater core. When the temperature is in the **COOL** position coolant flow bypasses the heater core. In either position the air flow is felt at the discharge vents.

Diagnosis of Electric Water Valve:

Theory of Operation: The thermostat is a potentiometer. The water valve, which controls the water flow to the heater core, is opened and closed by a stepper motor mounted on the water valve. A control module compares the output voltage from the potentiometer to the feedback for the stepper motor of the water valve. The control module then drives the motor to within one-half volt of the control potentiometer voltage.

Functional Test:

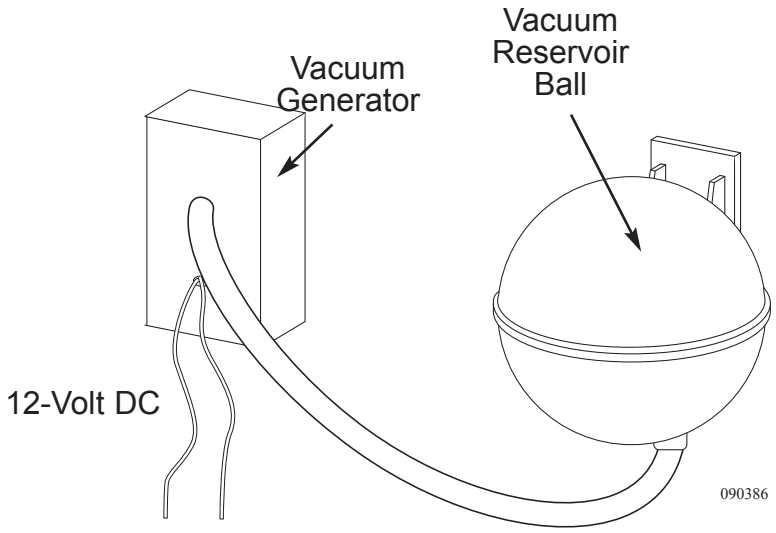
- Start and operate the engine until the water reaches normal operating temperature.
- Set the HVAC temperature control to the full hot position.
- The discharge air outlets should have hot air.
- Rotate the temperature control to full cold position.
- Allow 10 minutes for the temperature to stabilize.
- The discharge air outlets should have cold air.

No Heat:

- Check the blower and air mode operations. Repair prior to proceeding.
- Verify the engine is reaching normal operating temperature.
- Check the inlet hose at the water valve. Inlet water temperature should be approximately equal to the engine coolant temperature.
- With the temp control on **full hot** position, Confirm that the outlet hose of the water valve is at engine water temperature.

Vacuum Generator:

The vacuum generator creates vacuum to open and close the vacuum switches. The vacuum generator creates and stores 15” of vacuum in a reservoir ball. Output from the reservoir is sent to the vent control knobs to open or close vents and switches. The vacuum generator uses the air from the front air storage tank through a ¼" red air line. The vacuum generator will operate whenever the ignition is ON, and the A/C is operating.



About Refrigerants

Chemical Stability:

The air conditioning system life and efficient operations depends upon the chemical stability of the refrigeration system. The refrigeration system is made of Refrigerant-R134a and Polyakylene Gycol (PAG) synthetic lubricant. It is very important that all materials contained within the refrigerant system be chemically compatible.

NOTE:
An ultraviolet or UV Blue Light is used for leak detection.

The only suitable compound for use with R134a is PAG. The total amount of PAG within the refrigerant system is approximately 18% of the total refrigerant in the system.

How much refrigerant is in the system? How much should be used when charging? You will need 1 oz. of PAG for each 7 feet of hose after the first 15 feet of hose. Roughly, a 40 foot motorhome will use 92 feet of refrigerant hose. Take 15 feet off the measurement and the result is 77 feet. This 77 feet is then divided by 7 for total of 11, and represents the number of ounces of PAG oil needed for the A/C system (11 oz.).

Carrying the formula one step further, the 11 oz. equal approximately 18% of the entire system. The total will equate to approximately 61 oz. or 3.8 lbs. of R134a.

High pressure readings are another way to determine the amount of charge. The ambient temperature reading is measured one inch away from the condenser. The ambient temperature reading, plus 40° F, will equate to a value from the pressure table.

EXAMPLE:
90° F. 1 inch from condenser + 40° F = 130° F ----- 198.90 PSIG -
On fully charged system the expected pressure that should be seen on the HIGH-SIDE gauge will be around 200 PSIG.

NOTE:
All systems are charged at the factory with 4.0 lbs of R134a. A fluorescent dye has been added for leak detection.

TEMPERATURE	PSI GAUGE	TEMPERATURE	PSI GAUGE	TEMPERATURE	PSI GAUGE
16° F	15.69	60° F	57.47	112° F	151.30
18° F	17.04	65° F	64.10	114° F	156.10
20° F	18.43	70° F	71.19	116° F	161.10
22° F	19.73	75° F	78.75	118° F	166.10
24° F	21.35	80° F	86.80	120° F	171.30
26° F	22.88	85° F	95.40	122° F	176.60
28° F	24.47	90° F	104.40	124° F	182.00
30° F	26.10	91° F	106.30	126° F	187.50
32° F	27.79	92° F	108.20	128° F	193.10
34° F	29.52	93° F	110.20	130° F	198.90
36° F	31.32	94° F	112.10	135° F	213.70
38° F	33.17	95° F	114.10	140° F	229.40
40° F	35.07	100° F	124.30	145° F	245.80
42° F	37.03	102° F	128.50	150° F	263.00
44° F	39.05	104° F	132.90	155° F	281.00
45° F	40.09	106° F	137.30	160° F	300.10
50° F	45.48	108° F	141.90	165° F	320.00
55° F	51.27	110° F	146.50	170° F	340.80

psi gauge_temp.eps

R-134a Refrigerant:

R134a is classified non-explosive, non-flammable and non-corrosive.

R134a is ozone friendly; however, it is not technician friendly. Proper care in handling must be observed. Under normal atmospheric pressures and temperatures R134a will evaporate so quickly it will freeze anything it comes in contact with. The open container boiling point for R134a is minus 21.7º F. This low boiling point makes for an ideal refrigerant. The tremendous amount of heat transfer which occurs when a liquid boils, or vapors condense, forms the basic principle of all A/C systems. The amount of heat required to raise or lower the temperature of one pound of water by 1º F equals one British Thermal Unit (BTU). The BTU is the standard measurement of an air conditioner system.

Safety and Handling of 134a and Pag Oil:

- Wear eye and hand protection.
- Pag Oil irritates the skin. Flush with water immediately if in contact with any body part.
- Ensure all service work on the A/C system is performed in a well ventilated work area.
- Keep open flame away from service area. The discharge of a refrigerant near an open flame can produce a poisonous gas.

NOTE:
O-rings required for the 134a system are Hydrogenated Nitrile Butadiene Rubber (HNBR), and are green in color.

Air Conditioner Refrigeration Components:

Compressor - The compressor is belt driven from the engine through the compressor and electronic clutch pulley. The compressor will pump freon from a low pressure gas into a high pressure, high temperature gas. This is the start of the refrigeration process.

Condenser - The condenser in front of the radiator is made of coils and fins which provide rapid transfer of heat from the refrigerant as external air passes over the coils. The high pressure gas is changed to a high pressure liquid.

Condenser Fan - A steady flow of cooling air is maintained across the condenser during system operations. The fan is part of the hydraulic system.

Receiver-Drier - Freon leaves the condenser, enters the dehydrator and is stored until needed. The drier filters out moisture in the system. It only takes one drop of moisture to cause a malfunction in the cooling unit.

Expansion Valve - The expansion valve suppresses the refrigerant into the evaporator according to the cooling requirements. The pressure is reduced in the restrictive effort of the expansion valve. A part of the valve is the capillary tube assembly. The capillary tube is the sensing bulb at the outlet of the evaporator.

Evaporator - A tube core and fins are used in the evaporator similar to the condenser. Air is blown through the fins to allow the evaporator to cool and reduce the pressure.

Blower and Motor - Just as the condenser has a fan, the evaporator has a fan called the blower. The blower will draw air from the cab area and force the air over the evaporator coils and fins. This forced air will ensure continuous vaporizing of the R134a.

Relays and Switches - Both electronic and vacuum switches are used in the control and operations of the system.

Troubleshooting - The dash A/C and Heat system uses a combination of compressed air (developed by the chassis system), vacuum air (developed by the vacuum generator) and electric relays and vacuum switches. Therefore, any repair can be classified in one of five categories:

• Electrical • Vacuum • Air Conditioner • Heater • Defroster

The following information is provided to assist in troubleshooting common operational problems which may occur:

No Heating:

1. A/C switch is turned off.
2. Blower switch is turned off.
3. Verify the proper engine coolant level.
4. Verify that the engine is reaching operating temperature.
5. Verify engine coolant is reaching water valve attached to unit.
6. Verify operation of water valve to permit engine coolant to pass through valve to heater core.
7. Check unit fuses.
8. Check power supply to water valve and grounding.
9. Check wiring.
10. Engine thermostat faulty.

No Cooling:

1. Check that the blower is operating, A/C switch is in **A/C** or **Max** position, temperature control is turned to **Max** cooling (blue area).
2. System fuses are not blown.
3. Condenser fan is operating.
4. Check power supply to unit and grounding of system.
5. Check wiring.
6. Coolant valve is leaking.
7. Drive belt is loose or broken.
8. Compressor Clutch is inoperative, will not engage.
9. Expansion Valve is faulty or frozen.
10. Thermostat control is faulty.
11. Mode control switch is faulty.
12. Compressor is faulty.
13. Loss of refrigerant.

Reduced Cooling:
1. Coolant valve not operating correctly.
2. Air passages are obstructed.
3. Loose or worn drive belt.
4. Check blower and select switch.
5. Thermostat control valve is faulty.
6. Expansion valve is faulty.
7. Compressor is faulty.
8. Low refrigerant charge.

Blower Does Not Operate or Runs Slow:
1. Check fuses.
2. Check for loose or corroded connection.
3. Check wiring.
4. Check to ensure ignition switch is "**ON**."
5. Check blower and select switch.
6. Motor shaft has seized.
7. Blower wheel is out of alignment.

Damper Doors Do Not Operate:
1. Does the motorhome air tank have pressure?
2. Is the vacuum generator being powered and producing a vacuum?
3. Check the vacuum line entering the unit for vacuum.
4. Check that the vacuum solenoid mounted on unit is receiving power from the mode switch. If operating properly, the vacuum solenoid will feel hot if current is engaging the solenoid.
5. Check the mode switch.
6. Check wiring.
7. Check for a pinch in the vacuum line leading to the vacuum motor that operates the damper door in question.

SYSTEM CONTROL CENTER

Located behind the overhead access panel of a bay compartment is the System Control Center panel, consisting of the following components.

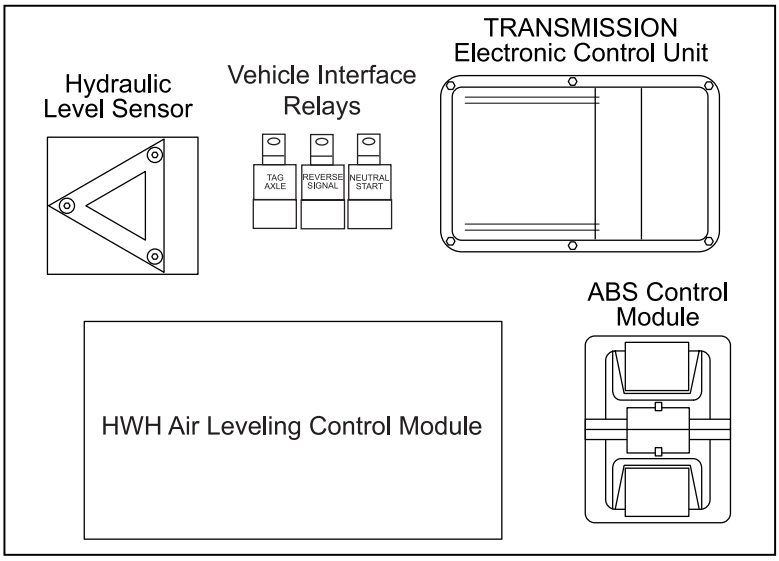
- **Engine Vehicle Interface Relays & Transmission Electronic Control Unit (ECU):** Electronically monitor and control engine and transmission functions and operating conditions.

- **Anti-lock Brake Control Module (ABS):** The ABS control modules monitor road speed of each wheel, braking conditions, and front and drive axle ABS functions. The Tag Axle ABS module is located above the transmission tail shaft housing. The ATC (Automatic Traction Control) system is also part of the ABS system.

- **Air Leveling Control Module:**
  The Air Leveling Control Module operates air solenoids that are mounted in manifolds located above each axle to control Raise, Lower and Travel functions.

- **Air Leveling Sensor:**
  The Air Level Sensor is located on the HWH Air Leveling Control Module.

- **Hydraulic Level Sensor:**
  Monitors level conditions of the motorhome and sends that information to the **Hydraulic Leveling Control Module** mounted in the driver's console.



090420d

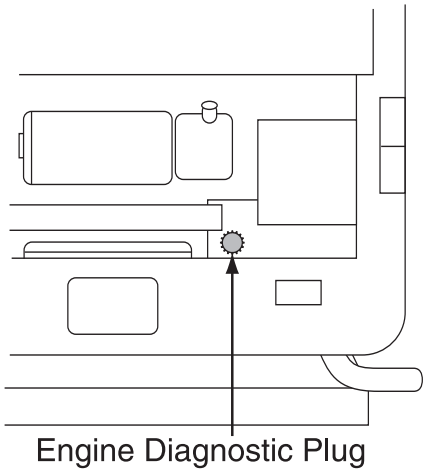
DIAGNOSTIC PLUG LOCATION

The Eaton, Cummins and Allison diagnostic plug is located under the left side of the dash.

Diagnostic Fault Codes:

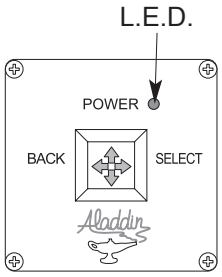
The engine ECM will record three types of fault codes; Electronic Control System Faults, Protection System Faults and Maintenance Indicators. All faults recorded will be **ACTIVE** or **INACTIVE**. Not all faults will light an indicator when they are **ACTIVE**.

Diagnostic Plug (Engine)



090280B

The Aladdin System will display engine and transmission statistics at a quick glance. Four additional engine and transmission screens can be accessed. These screens can be set to a rolling display, or use the joystick to pick an individual screen.

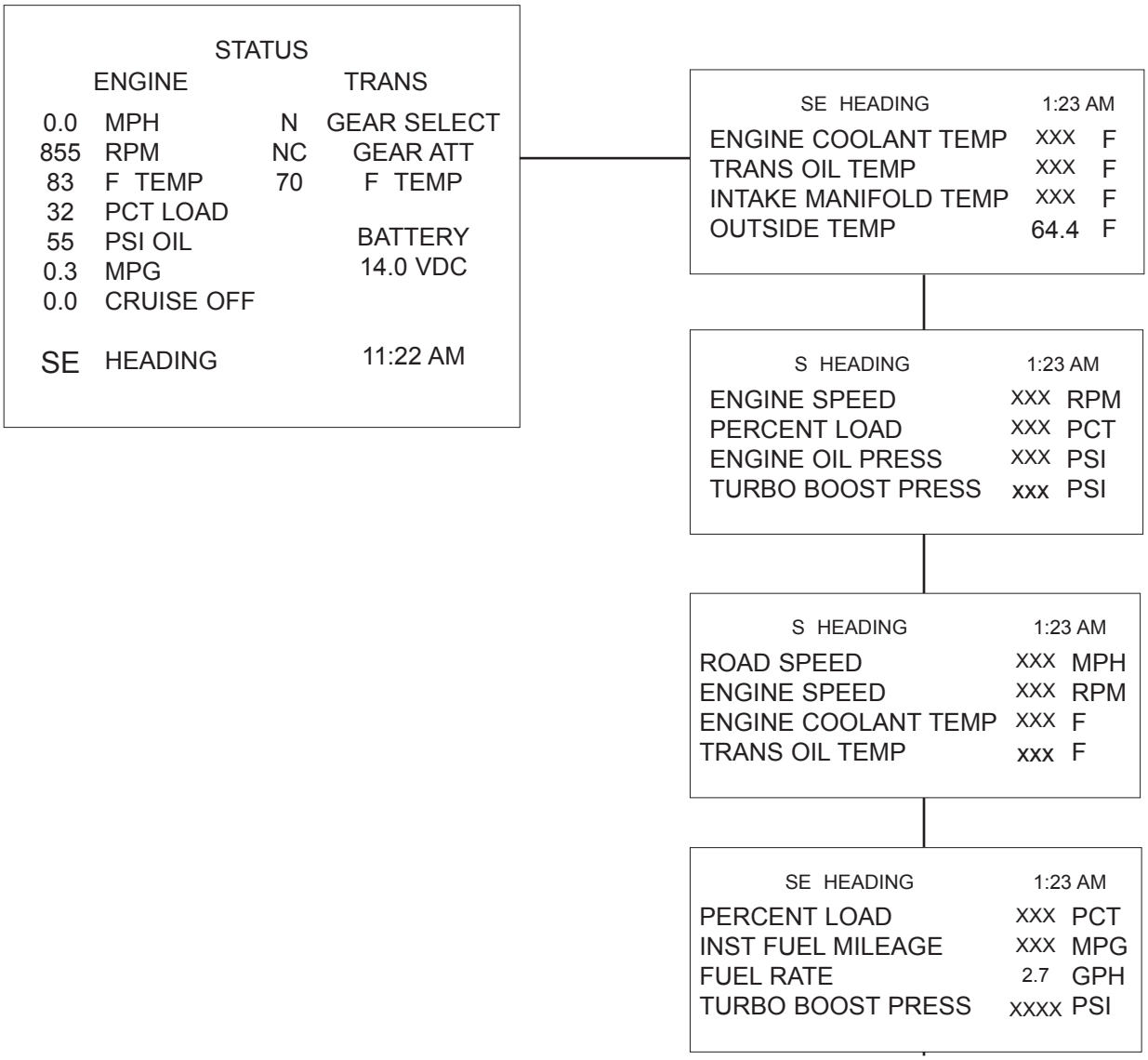


080377d

NOTE:
The backup camera and engine/transmission screens cannot simultaneously display.

To Display Engine and Transmission Status:

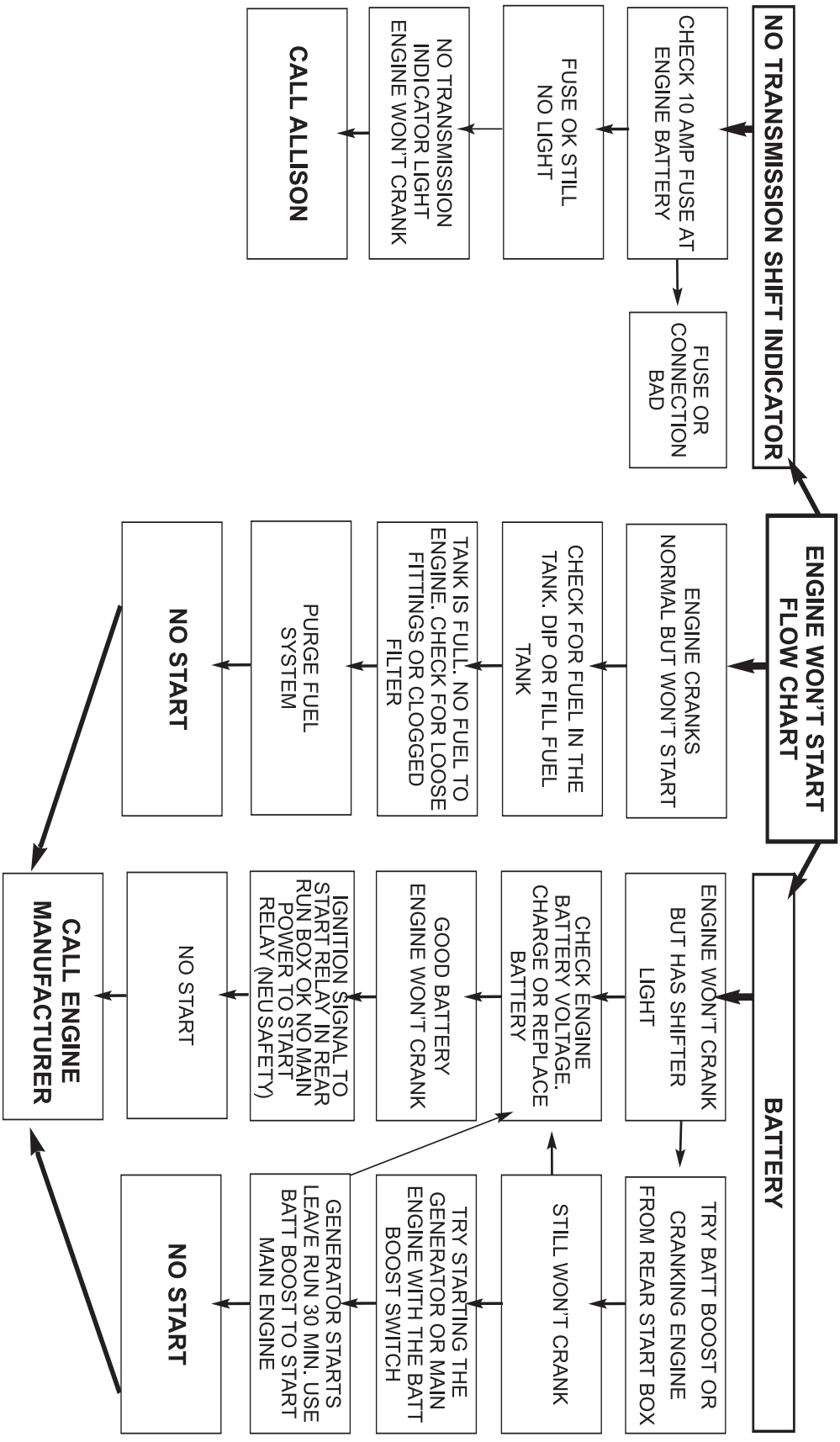
Use the joystick to enter the Engine/Trans Status screen from the Main menu. After entering the Engine/Trans Status screen, move the joystick right for a rolling display of the four sub-screens. Move the joystick up/down to select the desired sub-screen.



BULB USAGE CHART - EXTERIOR

EXTERIOR BULB CHART	
LOCATION	**BULB NUMBER**
HEADLIGHT - HI/LOW BEAM	PHILLIPS 9007
PARK TURN - FRONT	WAGNER T-3157
FOG LIGHTS	HELLA COMET 550
TAIL LIGHT	HELLA R5W or R10W
BRAKE LIGHT	HELLA P21W
THIRD BRAKE LIGHT	HELLA 524
CLEARANCE LIGHTS	GE 194
BACK-UP LIGHTS	Perlux by Grote 07803 MP # 4222W
LICENSE PLATE	GE 194
DOCKING LIGHTS	Hella 893 12V 37.5W
TROUBLE LIGHT	R1910YF
TURN SIGNAL - MIRROR	GROTE 4641 AMBER
GRAB HANDLE - EXTERIOR	GE 194
PORCH LIGHT	F8T5CW
COMPARTMENT BAY LIGHTS	GE 1141

ENGINE “NO START” - FLOW CHART



NOTES

The Executive 2005

Chassis Information

Section 10

CHASSIS - INTRODUCTION 423
AIR SUPPLY SYSTEM 425
Air Governor 426
Air Storage Tanks 426
Air Fittings 427
Air Coupler - Universal 428
Air System - Charging (External) 429
AIR DRYER 429
Desiccant Cartridge 431
Desiccant-Type Air Dryer 432
Air Dryer Cycle 432
AIR SPRING INSPECTION 433
HEIGHT CONTROL VALVES 434
Adjusting Ride Height 435
BRAKE SYSTEMS 436
Air Brakes 436
Park & Emergency Brake System 436
Brake Adjustment/Slack Adjuster 437
Brake Systems - Back-Up 438
ABS/ATC SYSTEM (ANTI-LOCK BRAKES) 439
FRONT AXLE 441
Alignment 442
Lubrication Maintenance Safety 445
Steering Components 445
Steering Column 446
Drag Link 447
Center Link 447
Steering Spindles 448
Control Arm Bushings 448
STEERING GEAR 448
DRIVE AXLE & DRIVE SHAFT 450
U-Joint Angles, Phasing & Drive Shaft Balance 453
Lubrication Maintenance 454
TAG AXLE 454
Oil Lube Intervals 456
SHOCK ABSORBER 456
LEVELING - AIR 457
Automatic Air Leveling 460
Manual Air Leveling 461
LEVELING - HYDRAULIC (OPT) 463
Automatic Leveling 467
Retracting Leveling Jacks 468
Manual Retract Valves 469
Manual Leveling 466
Maintenance 470
ENGINE - GENERAL INFORMATION 471
ENGINE DIAGRAM 472
Cummins - I.S.M-II Standard 472
Cummins ISX (OPT) 474
Detroit Diesel (OPT) 476
STARTING PROCEDURE 478
Normal Starting 478
Cold Weather 478
ENGINE OIL 480
ENGINE SHUTDOWN 482
Extended Engine Shutdown 482
COOLANT 482
Coolant Additives - SCA 485
CHARGE AIR COOLER 488
BRAKE - AUXILIARY (ENGINE BRAKE) 489
TRANSMISSION 490
Shift Selector 490
Transmission Check Indicator 492
Periodic Inspections 493
TRANSMISSION LUBRICATING FLUID 495
Fluid Levels - Cold Check 496
Fluid Levels - Hot Check 496
FUEL SYSTEM 497
Fuel Requirements 497
Fuel Tank 497
Fuel Sender 498
Fuel Lines & Hoses 499
Fuel Filters 499
Rear Start Switches 502
HYDRAULIC SYSTEM 502
Hydraulic Pump 503
Hydraulic Cooler 503
Hydraulic Fan System 504
Thermovalve (ISM & Series 60 Engines) 504
Electric Thermovalve (ISX Engine) 505
Switching Valve 505
Electric Override (ISM only) 505
Fan Motor 506
Hydraulic Filter 506
Hydraulic Reservoir 507
AIR FILTER 508
Changing the Filter 508
Air Filter Minder 508
EGR FILTER (DETROIT ONLY) 509
LUBRICATION MAINTENANCE 509
LUBRICATION CHARTS 513
Cummins - ISM 513
Cummins - ISX (OPT) 515
Detroit Diesel Series 60 (OPT) 517
SPECIFICATIONS CHARTS 519
Dimensions 519
Tank Capacities 519
Engine Specifications 520
Chassis Fluid Capacities 520
Generator Specifications 520
Belts & Filters 521
BATTERY SPECIFICATION CHART 522
METRIC/U.S. CONVERSION CHART 523
MAINTENANCE RECORDS 524

This section contains information and instruction regarding various components of the motorhome chassis. Follow the guidelines and procedures to help understand and operate the motorhome. Complete instructions for engine and transmission are located in their respective operators manual included in the Owner's Information File Box.

WARNING:
When welding is involved for motorhome repair or modification, only qualified, experienced technicians should weld on the chassis. Improper welding procedures and materials may weaken the assembly or result in damage that is not obvious and may not cause an immediate problem or failure. Unauthorized modifications or repairs to the chassis could result in a forfeiture of warranty coverage.

DANGER:
Due to the sensitive nature of the electronics on the chassis, the following precautions are required to protect electrical components in the motorhome chassis:

1. **Disconnect the (+) positive and (-) negative battery connection.**
2. **Cover electronic control components and wiring to protect from hot sparks.**
3. **Disconnect the terminal plugs from the engine Electronic Control Unit, located on the passenger side of the engine block.**
4. **Disconnect all the plugs from the transmission Electronic Control Unit, located in the storage bay between the frame rails.**
5. **Disconnect the wiring from the alternator.**
6. **Do not connect welding cables to electronic control components.**
7. **Attach the welding ground cable no more than two feet from the part to be welded**.

The Roadmaster chassis design provides exceptional balance, handling and braking characteristics. The Roadmaster chassis is an engine and frame unit featuring a semi-monocoque tubular all steel frame design, providing greater structural integrity and uniform stress distribution. Incorporated in the Roadmaster chassis is the exclusive air glide suspension system using eight outboard mounted air bags and shock absorbers. The tag axle uses two inboard mounted air bags and shock absorbers. The design and set up is intended to provide the smoothest ride, best handling and trouble free service while delivering top notch drivability. The chassis has either a three-point hydraulic leveling system or air leveling system, or both. The Roadmaster chassis design offers unsurpassed ease of maintenance and service.

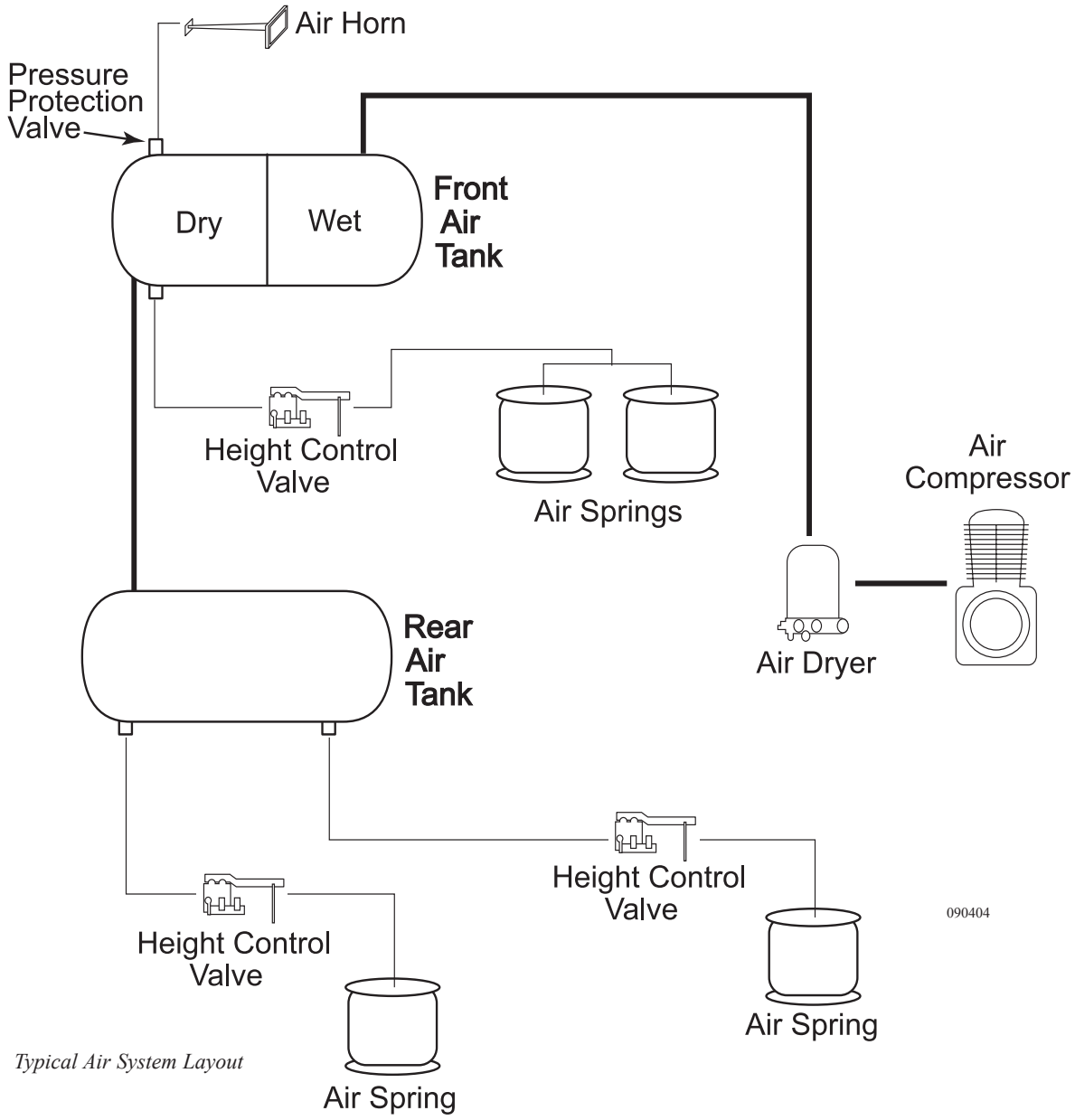
The towing system rating incorporated in the construction of the frame is 10,000 lbs. towing and 1,000 lbs. tongue weight.

100168b

Tag located on the curbside, from behind front wheel, and in generator compartment.

The Roadmaster's exclusive cushion air glide suspension consists of front and rear axles, with leading and trailing arms in a parallel four link arrangement. A panhard bar on each axle controls side motion. Each axle mounts to a wide platform H-frame that carries the coach body on eight outboard mounted air bags (four front and four rear). The tag axle uses two in-board mounted air bags. Each air bag is paired with a Bilstein gas shock absorber. The suspension control arms attach to the frame through bushings, which require no lubrication. The preset suspension ride height automatically maintains the proper suspension height throughout the load range.

The air compressing system on the motorhome is comprised of: a compressor, governor, dryer, front tank and a rear tank. The compressed air system operates several items, including brakes, suspension, air horns, air gauge and the stepwell cover. The air system is charged by a gear driven air compressor mounted on the engine. As engine speed increases, compressed air output increases. When the air is compressed, heat is generated. Heat dissipates as the air is discharged from the compressor. Moisture condenses in the compressed air as it cools and enters the air dryer to be filtered. The filtered air charges the front air tank which is divided in two sides: a wet and a dry side. The compressed air enters the wet side before entering the dry side. A discharge line from the dry side of the front air tank charges the rear air tank. Discharge lines use inline check valves to prevent a back flow of compressed air.



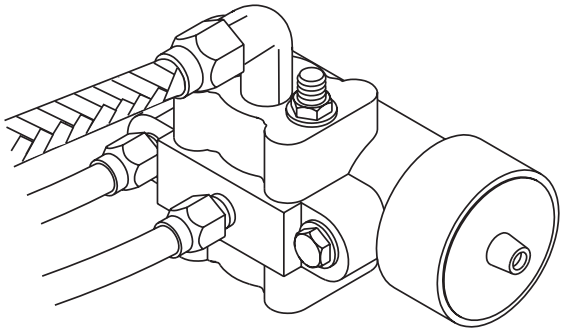
Typical Air System Layout

The pneumatically operated items are divided into two categories: brakes and accessory air. Brakes have full use of supplied air pressure. Accessory air items, such as air horns or stepwell covers, receive air through pressure protection valves (PPV). The PPV will not allow compressed air flow until approximately 60 psi. In the event of an air system problem, the pressure protection valve will leave a reserve air charge for braking. Pressure protection valves are installed for safety.

Air Governor

The air governor, located in the engine compartment, regulates the air compressor to cut-in and cut-out, keeping the air system in the specified operating range of 105 to 120 psi, and sending an air "purge" signal to the Air Dryer.

Cut-in pressure of approximately 105 psi is factory preset from the governor manufacturer and is not adjustable. Cut-out pressure is calibrated to 120 psi. When cut-out pressure is reached, the governor will send an air purge signal to the Air Dryer. This opens the purge port of the Air Dryer, expelling moisture. The purge action of the Air Dryer is identified by the short release of air at the rear of the motorhome.

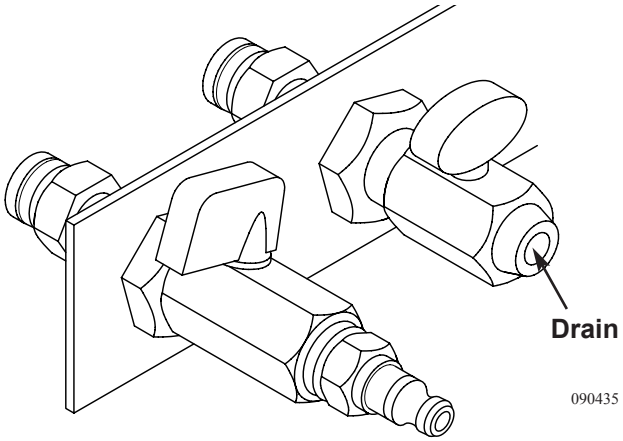


Air governor mounted to engine on curbside

090319

Air Storage Tanks

The front and rear air tanks should be manually drained once a month, or more, depending on operating conditions where humidity is high. The front air tank has a drain valve for both the wet and dry side. The rear air tank only has one drain valve. Open the drain valves until all air is purged from the tanks, allowing five extra minutes for moisture to expel. Remember to close the tank drain valves. Both air tanks have a pressure relief valve which are set to release at approximately 150 psi.



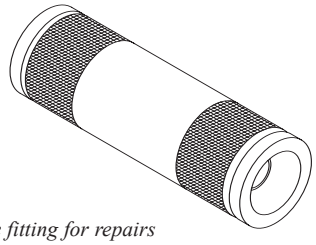
090435

Located Generator Compartment on curbside.

Push-in fittings, used to connect air hoses between pneumatic operated items, are designed for quick and easy maintenance and repair. Sizes and types of fittings vary for different applications. Threaded fittings adapt the push-in fittings to connect pneumatically operated items. Main parts include the release ring, locking ring, solid brass body and special rubber compound O-ring. Damaged hoses can be repaired by splicing.

Air Fitting.tif

Cut-away of push-in fitting.



Splice fitting for repairs

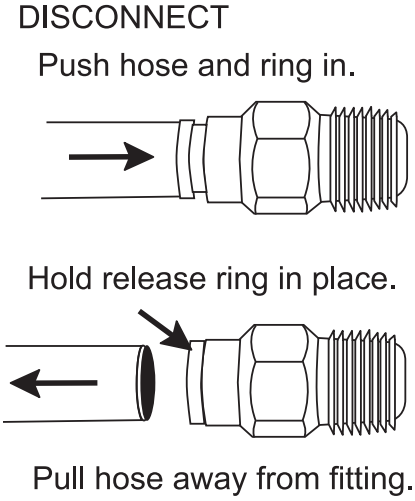
090445

To Disconnect Hose:

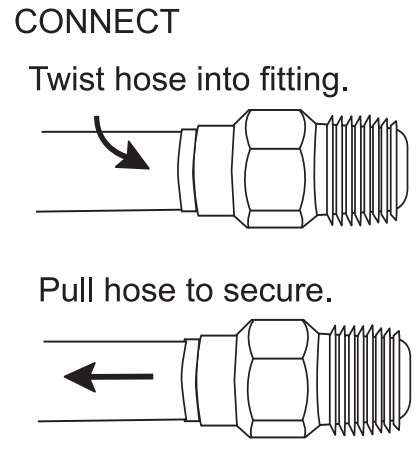
- Push hose into fitting.
- Push release ring down against locking ring portion of the fitting body.
- While holding the release ring down, pull hose away from fitting.

To Connect Hose:

- Push hose into fitting through the release ring and the O-ring, using a slight twisting motion to seat firmly against the internal tube stop.
- Pull hose away from fitting to expand and set inner seal. Ensure hose is properly retained in fitting.



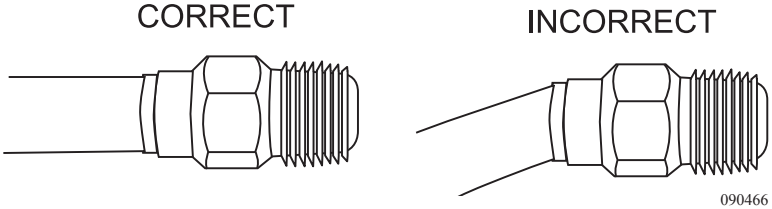
090466



090466

NOTE:
When putting air hose back into fitting, be sure that hose is cut as squarely as possible so that the hose will evenly seal in the fitting. The cavity of the positive tubing stop provides support to prevent leakage.

WARNING:
Do not remove air hoses from fittings while system is pressurized. Serious personal injury may occur.



090466

Air Coupler - Universal

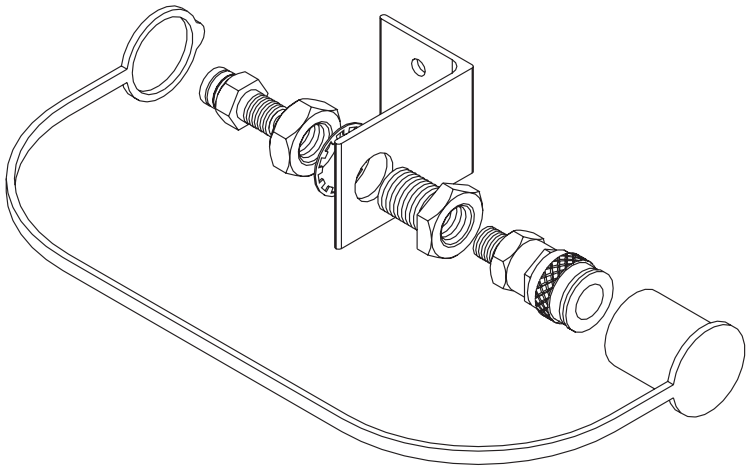
A remote air supply coupler, provided for convenience, is located in the roadside compartment behind the front tire. The universal female fitting will accept several types of ¼" ID male air fittings, including type C automotive. The auxiliary air fitting may be used to inflate tires, air mattresses or other pneumatic items. This fitting is not designed to charge the air system on the motorhome. The air supply for the auxiliary air fitting is charged from the front air tank through a pressure protection valve.

To Use the Universal Air Coupler:

- Remove the plastic protective dust cap.
- Using a firm grip, insert the air fitting into auxiliary air supply. The locking collar is spring loaded and will lock automatically when the fitting is properly inserted.

To remove fitting:

- Firmly grip the air hose near the fitting to prevent recoil.
- Slide the locking collar back to release fitting. The collar will lock into the open position when fully retracted.
- Replace the protective dust cap when finished.

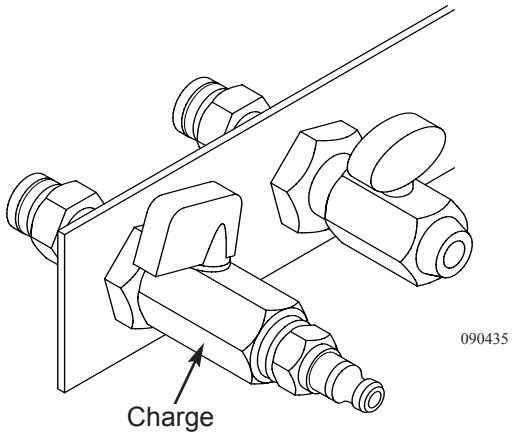


090257

NOTE:

There are small air pressure restrictions in the pressure protection valve and tire stem valve. Due to this restriction, the maximum amount of tire pressure achieved when the system is used to fill a tire is approximately 95 to 105 psi, with the air system on the motorhome charged to 120 psi. Maximum outlet air pressure is achieved when the air system completes the fill cycle indicated by the purge cycle of the air dryer.

The air system on the motorhome can be charged from an external air supply source. Located in the generator compartment is a type C automotive male fitting. Caution should be used when charging the air system from this fitting. The air supplied from an external source may contain moisture. Compressed air introduced into the air system on the motorhome from this fitting is not filtered by the air dryer. The auxiliary air charge fitting will charge the front and rear air tanks. A shut-off valve is installed to prevent air from escaping.



CAUTION:
The external air supply source should be regulated to charge the air system on the motorhome no higher than 120 psi. Damage to the air system or pneumatically operated items may occur

AIR DRYER

The air dryer, located underneath the motorhome next to the transmission, removes moisture from the compressed air system to prevent freezing of brakes or other pneumatic operated items.

The air dryer has three functions: cooling, filtering and drying the air going through the motorhome air system. If an excessive amount of water is present when performing the monthly air tank drain service, the filter for the air dryer may need to be changed.

Operation:

During system pressure build-up, compressed air passes into the air dryer where the filter system removes contaminants and passes the air into the drying stage. When the compressor unloads, the water is expelled and the dry air flows back through the dryer, drying the desiccant for the next cycle. Initially, moisture condenses in the base of the dryer. Moisture-laden air passes through the desiccant bed in the air dryer cartridge and is dried.

- The compressor intakes water vapor with the air. The water vapor condenses as it cools.
- The air dryer prevents water accumulation in air lines that could damage seals and valves and wash away lubricants.
- The air dryer also prevents water in the air lines that can freeze and damage air system components.

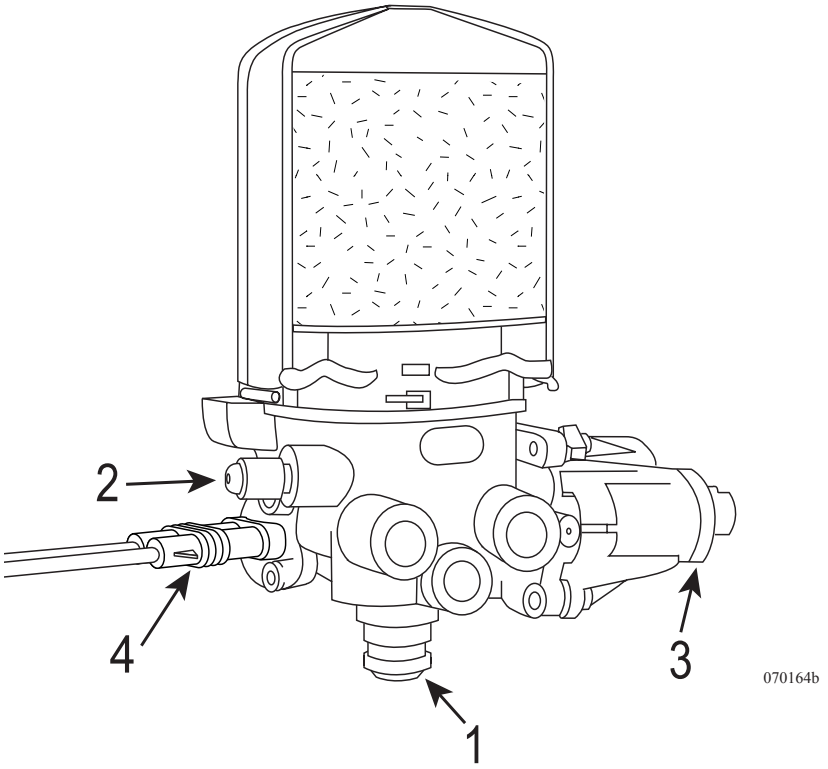
Air Dryer Components:

1. **Purge Valve:** A valve located on the bottom of the air dryer base that remains open during a compressor unload cycle to allow collected moisture, condensation and contamination to expel from the air dryer during the purge cycle.

2. **Pressure Relief Valve:** Protects the air dryer from over-pressurization.

3. **Regeneration Valve:** Controls regeneration of the desiccant by allowing air from the supply and secondary tanks to bypass the outlet check valve.

4. **Heater Power Harness:** Twelve-inch cable with a Metri-Pack plug provides an electrical connection to air dryer heating unit.



In extreme cold, verify that the air dryer heater is in good working order. The 100-watt heater in the air dryer is controlled by ignition power. The heater turns on below 45° F and off when the air dryer temperature is above 86° F. The fuse for the heater is located in the front electric bay, roadside.

WARNING:
Remove all pressure from the air system before disconnecting any component, including the desiccant cartridge. Pressurized air can cause serious personal injury.

The replacement kit contains one cartridge and one O-ring.

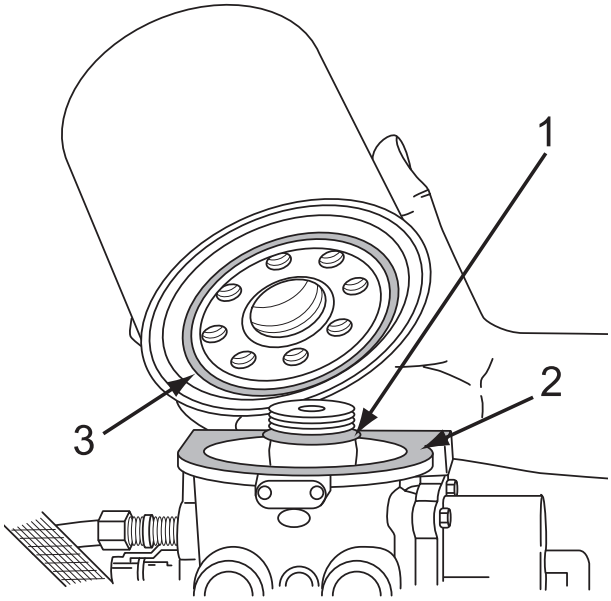
To Replace the Cartridge:

1. Loosen and remove the old cartridge. Use a strap wrench, if necessary.
2. Remove and discard the O-ring from the dryer base.
3. Inspect and clean the seal seat. Repair any minor damage.

NOTE:
If the seats are damaged so badly that a tight seal cannot be maintained, replace the air dryer.

070165

4. Install a new O-ring.
5. Lubricate the O-Ring on the stem with a thin layer of grease.
6. Lubricate the cartridge seal with a thin layer of grease.
7. Thread the replacement cartridge onto the base until the seal touches the base. Tighten the cartridge ONE additional turn. **DO NOT OVERTIGHTEN.**



080223

1. O-Ring
2. Seal Seat
3. Cartridge Seal

REPLACEMENT REQUIREMENTS		
Components	**When to replace?**	**Why?**
Desiccant Cartridge	Every two to three years. When compressor is replaced. Water in supply tank.	Preventive maintenance. Contaminated cartridge. Saturated or contaminated cartridge, high duty cycle (wrong application of air dryer).

Desiccant-Type Air Dryer

1. Warm, humid air from the compressor condenses into either water or water vapor before entering the air dryer.
2. A desiccant-type air dryer protects the motorhome air brake system by drying moisture-laden air before it passes through the air reservoirs and into the brake system.
3. Water collects in the base of the dryer when warm air condenses the water before it enters the dryer, or inside of the dryer before the water reaches the desiccant.
4. The desiccant material then removes additional water vapor, further drying the air.
5. During regeneration phase, the regeneration valve and pressure-controlled check valve remove water from the desiccant bed with a backflow of dried, expanded system air.

Air Dryer Cycle

The governor turns the compressor on when the supply tank pressure drops below cut-in pressure. Compressed air passes into the air dryer at the inlet port:

1. Moisture-laden air and contaminants pass through the desiccant.
2. Moisture is retained by the desiccant. Moisture also collects in the base of the dryer.
3. When the compressor unloads the purge valve opens. The governor turns the compressor off when the system reaches cutout pressure (approximately 120 psi).
4. The dryer purges and expels water collected in the dryer base.
5. When the regeneration valve opens, the dry system air flows back through the dryer. A small charge of air from the front air tank backflows through the filter. The backflow dries the desiccant, preparing it for the next cycle.

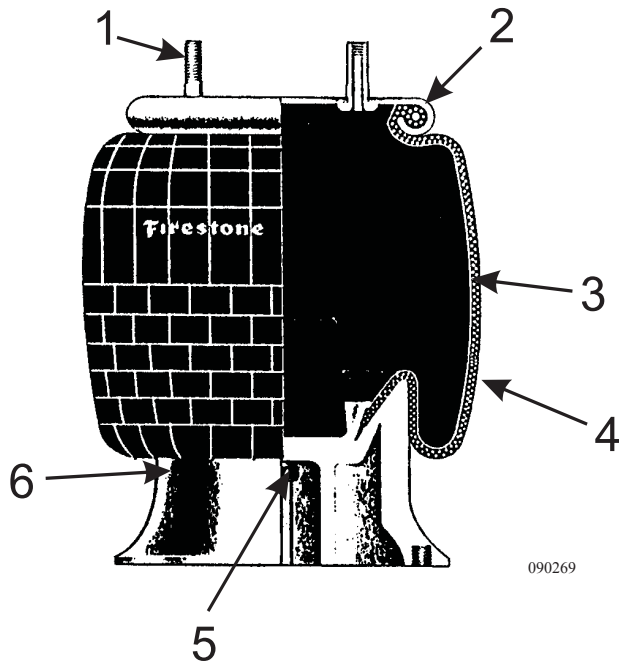
Listed below are items that can be checked when the motorhome is in for periodic maintenance.

NOTE:
Never attempt to service the air suspension on a motorhome with the "air spring" inflated.

- **Inspect** the Outer Diameter (OD) of the air springs. Check for irregular wear or heat cracking.
- **Inspect** the air lines to make sure contact does not exist between the air line and the OD of the air springs. Air lines can rub a hole in an air spring very quickly.
- Check to see that there is sufficient clearance around the complete circumference of the air spring while at maximum diameter.
- **Inspect** the OD of piston for buildup of foreign materials. (On a reversible sleeve style air spring, the piston is the bottom component of the air spring.)
- The correct ride height should be maintained. All motorhomes with air springs have a specified ride height established by the manufacturer. This height should be maintained within ¼ ". This dimension can be checked with the motorhome loaded or empty.
- The leveling valves (or height control valves) assist in ensuring the total air spring system works as required. Clean, **inspect** and replace if necessary.
- Make sure to check shock absorbers for leaking hydraulic oil and worn or broken end connectors. If a broken shock is found, replace it immediately. The shock absorber will normally limit the rebound of an air spring and keep it from over extending.
- Check the tightness of all mounting hardware (nuts and bolts). If loose, tighten. Do not over-tighten.

Cleaning:

The approved cleaning method is to use soap and water, methyl alcohol, ethyl alcohol and isopropyl alcohol. Unapproved cleaning methods include all organic solvents, open flames, abrasive and direct pressurized steam cleaning.



HEIGHT CONTROL VALVES

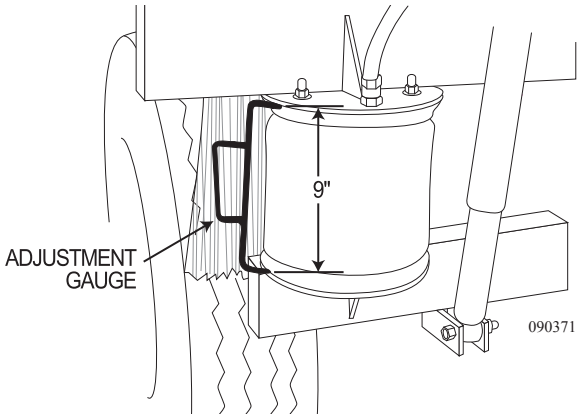
Height Control Valves (HCV) inflate or deflate air springs to maintain proper suspension height throughout the load range. Two Height Control Valves are installed at the rear drive axle to control rear suspension height and left or right tilt of the motorhome. A separate HCV is installed to control front suspension height. The three HCVs mount to the main frame of the motorhome, above the axles, with a linkage rod connecting the valve to the axle.

Actuating components inside of the valves are oil dampened to reduce valve reaction to momentary suspension bounce and rebound. When a constant suspension change occurs, such as a load change or weight transfer through a sustained corner, the valve reacts by adding or purging air from the air springs as needed.

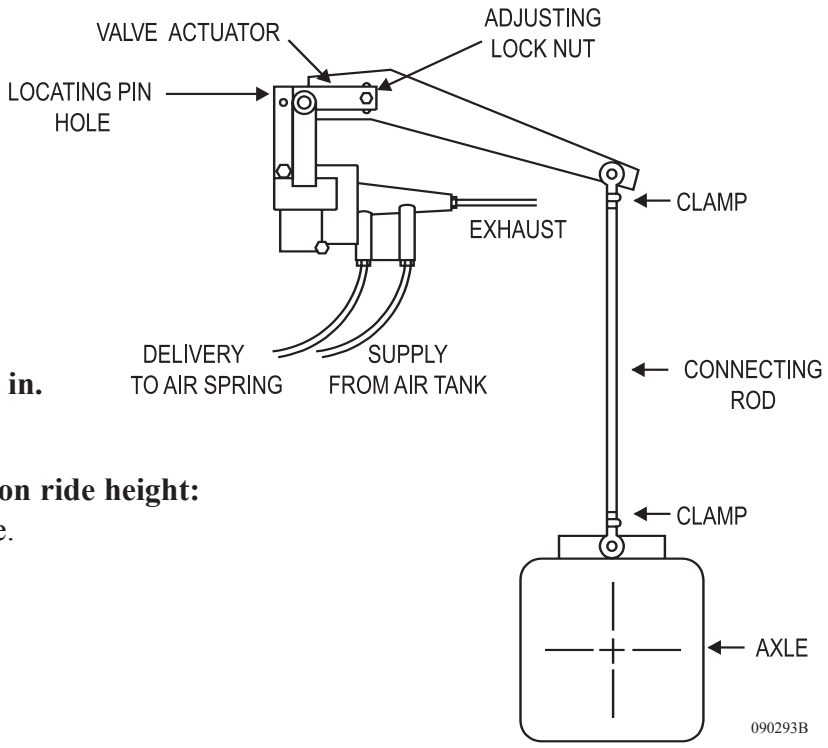
The air springs mount between the axle H-frame assembly and the two main frame rails. Air spring support plates mount to the main frame and the H-frame. There is a specified distance the air spring must maintain between the mounting plates. Other than specified distance between the plates will compromise ride quality and handling, and affect shock absorber travel, drive shaft angle, as well as various other running gear components.

Should it become necessary to check the suspension ride height, start with the motorhome on a flat level surface. The air system must be fully charged with the suspension normalized at ride height. Specified distances may vary plus or minus ¼". Small offset adjustments to the rear valves may be necessary to compensate for slight tilt. Example: Adjusting the curbside rear height control valve up will pivot the roadside front corner down.

NOTE:
Drive shaft angle is affected by the suspension ride height. Improper drive shaft angle can damage suspension or shorten the life of universal joints. Shock absorbers and air springs are in travel centers at proper ride height. The ignition must be on for the suspension to operate when equipped with HWH air leveling.



Measurement is: Front = 9 in., Rear = 9 in.



Preparations to adjust the suspension ride height:

- The motorhome on flat level surface.
- Air system fully charged.
- Ignition key on.
- Suspension at normal ride height.
- Air level system in travel mode.

Start by checking the distance in the front.

1. Measure the distance between the mounting plates of the air springs.
2. If the measurement is off, loosen the adjusting lock nut at the eccentric slot on the valve.
3. Move the plastic arm up to raise suspension height and inflate all the front air springs. Move the plastic arm down to lower suspension height and deflate the air springs. Make adjustments in small increments.
4. After obtaining the specified distance, insert a 1/8" or 7/64" inch twist drill bit into the plastic arm and valve body. This will center the travel of internal piston. Tighten adjusting lock nut between 60-80 in/lbs.
5. Check adjustments made by using the Air Dump switch to deflate air springs. Start the engine and allow the air system to become fully charged. Allow the suspension to adjust and come to a neutral setting.
6. Re-check the suspension height measurement. Follow the same procedure for each rear control valve.
7. Re-check the front suspension height after adjusting the rear height control valves.

NOTE:
Do not modify length of the linkage rods. Make any necessary adjustments using eccentric slot on the ride height control valve.

BRAKE SYSTEMS - *Air Brakes*

The air brake system on the motorhome differs from a conventional automotive hydraulic braking system and should be treated differently. Proper maintenance and lubrication are the keys to keeping the air brake system in proper working order.

Consideration needs to be given to stopping distances and air system pressures. The motorhome requires longer stopping distances. Each brake application uses air from the air system, and engine speed is directly proportional to how fast that air system is replenished. Prepare for downhill grades. It may be necessary to select a lower gear and/or use the engine brake. Use individual short brake applications down long hills, rather than "riding" the brakes, to extend the life of the brake lining. Avoid overheating the brakes. Hot brakes have less stopping power. When maneuvering the motorhome around small areas, or backing into spaces, several individual brake applications might be made. Watch the air gauge. When preparing to back into a space swing the motorhome so it is aligned with the parking slot before backing up.

The air braking system on the motorhome is equipped with low air pressure warning system safety feature. Should a low air condition arise while the vehicle is in operation, a warning buzzer will sound and a dash warning light will illuminate at approximately 60 to 65 psi (pounds per square inch) to alert the operator.

A simple mechanical explanation of what occurs when a brake application is made is as follows: The air system supplies air to the foot brake, or treadle valve. Pushing down on the treadle valve supplies an air charge signal to a sealed brake chamber that consists of a spring and air bladder. The air charge signal pushes on the bladder and extends a threaded rod connected to the automatic slack adjuster. The slack adjuster rotates the S-cam expanding the shoes against the drum. Air disc brakes follow much the same principle, with the exception of the threaded rod directly activating calipers.

Park & Emergency Brake System

The Park and Emergency Brake System (Spring Brakes) applies to the rear drive axle only. When the park brake is applied, air is released from the rear brake chambers, allowing the large spring in each rear brake chamber to manually push the brake pads against the rotor. The air system must be charged above 35 psi to allow the park brake to release. Pushing down on the park brake handle charges the rear brake chambers with air pressure, overriding the emergency brake springs and releasing the brakes. In the event of air loss, while the vehicle is under operation, the park brake will automatically apply (this occurs at approximately 30 psi) acting as an automatic emergency brake system.

When preparing to depart, allow the air system to achieve full air pressure as indicated by the air gauge needles. Listen for the air dryer to purge, indicating that the air dryer is functioning. Look and listen for abnormalities. Abnormal air pressure readings by either needle of the air gauge alerts the operator to have the air system checked to avoid an untimely failure.

Should a failure occur in the air system, preventing the air pressure from building, it may become necessary to "cage" the spring brakes. This is an emergency procedure only. Caging the rear air brake chambers manually overrides the spring brakes and allows the vehicle to move. This procedure does not affect normal service braking.

NOTE:
When the park brake is released, the Park illumination lamp will remain lit until air system pressure is above 65 psi.

WARNING:
When parked, if the air tank is not depleted, there is the possibility of an accidental release of the parking brake. Traveling with small children and/or pets may require a small block to be fabricated to prevent accidental release. The block should be placed under the knob on the dash panel. A wooden clothes pin, clasped at the base of the shaft, will work.

Brake Adjustment/Slack Adjuster

The motorhome is equipped with automatic slack adjusters. As brake lining wears, the slack adjusters will automatically ratchet on the return stroke as needed. This ratchet action will keep the brake lining at proper adjustment. Brake adjustment should not be necessary. Automatic slack adjusters and the connecting S-cam shaft require periodic lubrication and inspection.

NOTE:
Replacement parts should be of the same original equipment size and type. Mixing brake components may result in unequal braking action. Brake adjustments are part of normal maintenance of the motorhome. Brake adjustments are not covered by the manufacturer.

WARNING:
Brake lining may contain asbestos material and should only be serviced by qualified service technicians who are trained in the appropriate precautionary procedures. If any loss of braking effectiveness or abnormal braking indications are noticed, the brakes and slack adjusters should be inspected by a qualified brake technician.

Brake Systems - Back-Up

The motorhome air braking system is equipped with several back-up safety systems and warning alarms in the event of air system failure. For example: should the air compressor fail to charge the air system and low air gauge readings go undetected, a low air pressure warning buzzer will sound and a low air pressure dash warning indicator lamp will illuminate. These warning indicators occur at approximately 65 psi. This will alert the operator of an impending situation. If the motorhome is allowed continued operation, the pneumatic emergency spring brake relay valve, installed in the air system, senses the low air pressure condition and will release the air charge from the spring brake air chambers on the rear drive axle. In this case, the park brakes will automatically apply at approximately 30 psi. This safety back-up system acts as an automatic emergency brake system.

Another back up safety is the air system separation of the front and rear brakes, implemented by using two air tanks. One tank is located in the front and the other is located in the rear. This separation allows the front air tank to operate the front brakes; the rear tank operates the rear drive axle brakes and tag axle brakes. This tank division gives reassurance in case one tank experiences a failure of an accessory air item allowing the compressed air to escape.

Accessory air items are other pneumatically operated items such as the air horn, step well cover, vacuum generator, etc. The accessory air items operate only when air tank pressures exceed 65 psi. This is done with pressure protection valves. Should an accessory air item fail, the pressure protection valve (PPV) reserves the remaining air pressure of 65 psi for braking. This will leave the motorhome with one air tank fully charged for safety back up.

In another situation, whereby all compressed air has escaped from the rear air tank, a pneumatic back-up safety valve is installed. This is the safety inversion valve. The inversion valve senses the absence of rear air tank pressure. In this case the inversion valve will allow the operator to make a modulated spring brake application, made in conjunction with the emergency spring brake relay valve. The inversion valve allows the front air tank pressure to recharge the rear brake chambers after the modulated spring brake application has been made. This back-up system implements use of all the brakes, allowing the operator to bring the motorhome a safe stop. In case of all compressed air charge escaping from the front air tank, the operator will still have full use of the rear brakes.

ABS/ATC SYSTEM (Anti-lock Brakes)

The motorhome is equipped with an anti-lock braking system (ABS) and automatic traction control system (ATC). The ABS system monitors wheel rotation speeds by using a 100-tooth magnetic tone ring mounted to the hub. Revolving with the wheel, the magnetic tone ring is polarized giving positive and negative pulsations. A stationary sensor is mounted adjacent to the tone ring monitoring the magnetic pulses. The pulses are monitored by the ABS electronic control unit (ECU).

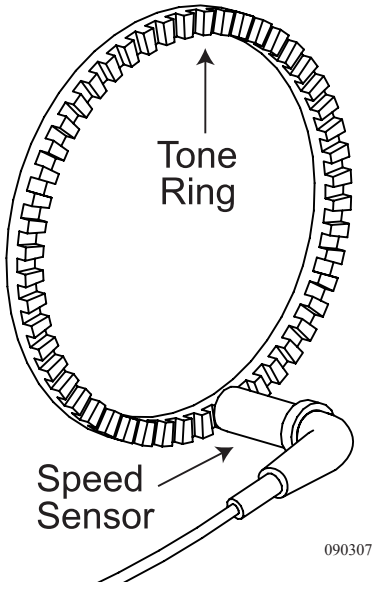
The ECU monitors all available wheel sensors at the rate of 100 times per second. The ECU controls Pressure Modulator Valves. Pressure Modulator Valves have two electric over air solenoids, a hold solenoid and a release solenoid. The modulator valves are open under normal braking, allowing a straight through air signal from the treadle valve to the brake chamber. Should a wheel lose traction under a braking application, the ECU will energize the hold solenoid of the Pressure Modulator Valve to interrupt the air signal from the treadle valve to the brake chamber. The release solenoid vents the existing air signal, at the brake chamber to the atmosphere, allowing the skidding tire to regain traction. Skidding tires have less tractive efficiency. It is possible, under certain conditions, to have the wheel(s) skid with a normal functioning ABS system.

The ABS itself does not apply additional braking power. The purpose of the ABS is limiting brake torque to prevent wheel locking that results in the loss of lateral stability, and increased stopping distances. Cautious driving practices and maintaining adequate safe distances when following vehicles is the key to safe vehicle operation.

WARNING:
The ABS/ATC system is designed to increase tire to road surface traction but cannot overcome naturally occurring laws of physics. The ABS/ATC system, combined with safe driving practices, will reduce the possibility of wheel skid and loss of lateral stability.

ABS Component Function:

- Speed sensors and tone rings on each wheel monitor wheel rotation.
- Each speed sensor communicates wheel rotation pulses to the Electronic Control Unit.
- ECU receives the speed sensor inputs, interprets the signal pulses, calculates speed and acceleration rates of each wheel.
- Based on the speed sensor input, the ECU detects impending wheel lock and operates the ABS Modulator Valves required for proper control. The Modulator Valves can be operated in the air, release or hold modes to regulate air pressure to the brake chambers.
- The braking force is applied at a level which minimizes the stopping distances while maintaining as much lateral stability as possible.



ATC System:

The ATC system improves traction on slippery or unstable road surfaces by limiting excessive drive wheel slip. This is accomplished two ways, limiting engine torque to the drive wheel or engaging a brake to the spinning drive wheel. During normal operation engine torque is unaffected. The ATC system works in conjunction with the ABS Electronic Control Unit. The ECU monitors tone ring speed of the drive wheel in relation to the other wheels. If a speed differential occurs in the drive wheel, the ECU enters Automatic Traction Control mode.

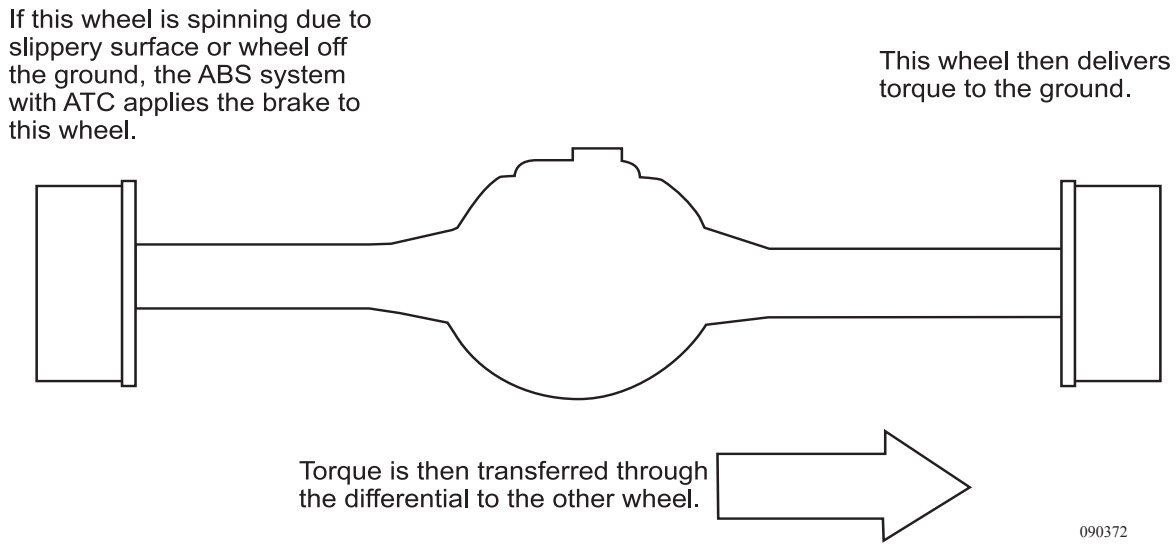
During an ATC event, the ECU will automatically react to optimize traction and safety if the motorhome encounters a slippery road surface. Engine torque is normally reduced to limit drive wheel slip.

NOTE:
The ATC system is always active.

ATC reacts to drive wheel slip by:

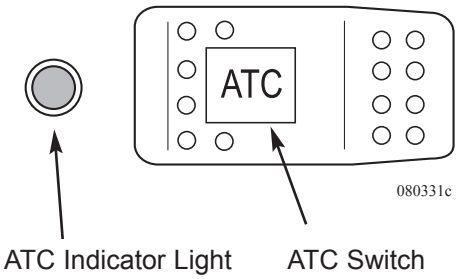
- Reducing engine torque to the drive wheel if road speed is above 25 mph.
- Reducing engine torque and activating drive axle brake controls if road speed is below 25 mph. If the brake control activates, it remains active regardless of road speed.

How Automatic Traction Control (ATC) Works



ATC Switch:

Activating the ATC switch reduces ECU control over engine torque. Momentarily pressing the ATC switch allows the ECU to increase the amount of engine torque applied to the drive wheel in an ATC event. The amount of engine torque applied to the drive wheel will vary with the amount of drive wheel slip versus road speed. In an ATC event, the ECU remains active regardless of road speed or switch position. The indicator light flashes slowly when the ATC switch is activated.



ATC Indicator Light:

During normal operation, the ATC indicator light will illuminate steady when the ignition key is turned ON. The light remains illuminated until the first brake application. If an ATC event occurs, the indicator light will flash quickly. The indicator light will flash slowly if the ATC switch is activated.

CAUTION:

Normally the switch should remain inactive. During an ATC event (drive wheel slip) the ECU will automatically optimize drive wheel traction in most situations. Activating the switch during periods of wheel slip can increase torque to the spinning drive wheel. Drive train damage can occur if the spinning drive wheel should suddenly regain traction. If the motorhome is stuck it is advised to call a professional towing company to limit the possibility of body and drive train damage.

FRONT AXLE

While driving the motorhome, be aware of any changes in the feel of steering and have the system checked when noting apparent differences. It is normal to hear some hydraulic noise from the steering, especially when the steering is at maximum, or while turning the wheel when the motorhome is parked. Investigate any unusual or loud noises that occur. Begin by checking the level of the hydraulic fluid. Traveling at slow speeds over rough surfaces may cause a "clunking" noise to emanate from the steering column, but if noise is heard on smooth surfaces while sharply turning back and forth, the noise should be inspected and repaired as necessary.

Shimmy and looseness should be checked and corrected as soon as possible. If looseness is felt in the steering, the steering linkages can be observed while someone turns the steering wheel left and right. Watch the linkages for evident play or uneven interaction between components to help pinpoint a problem. Wheel bearings should be cleaned and repacked with high temperature disc brake grease every 30,000 miles. Have the steering system checked for damage after a severe impact, such as striking large potholes or curbs, and front-end collisions. Observe the alignment of the steering wheel; a change in the alignment may indicate damage to the steering components or suspension.

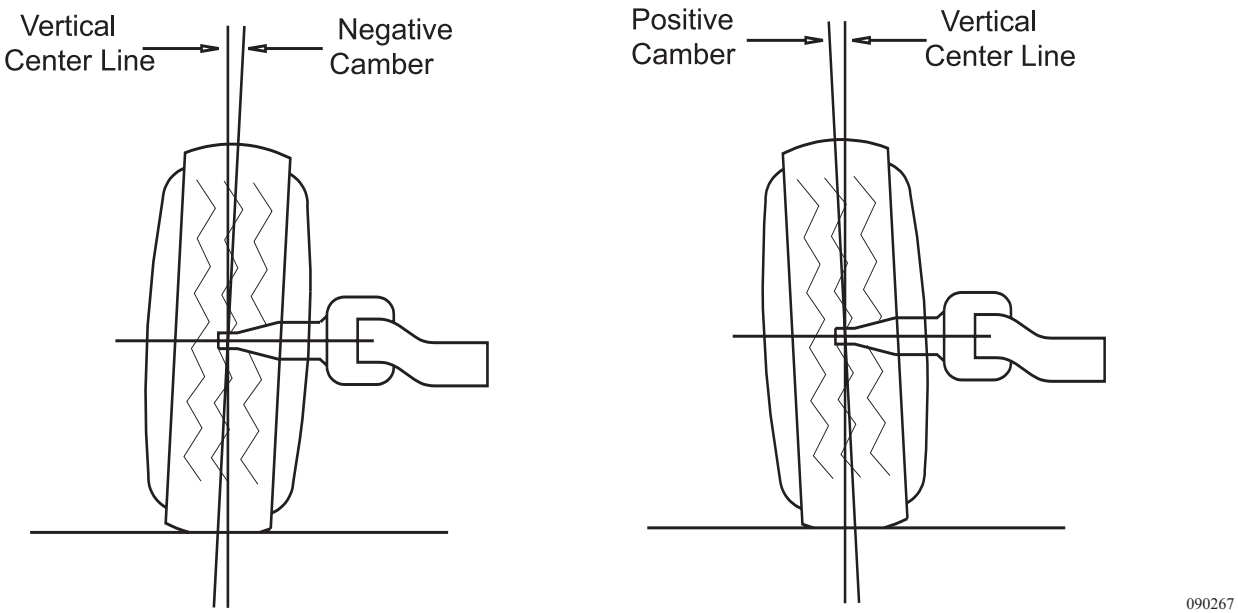
Maintenance for the system entails adequate lubrication. Use only a hand operated grease gun on the fittings. Grease fittings for the steering system are found on the both ends of the drag link (the bar connecting the steering gear to the axle), and on the steering drive shaft located between the steering wheel and steering gear. The correct wheel alignment promotes longer tire wear and ease of handling while minimizing the strain on the steering system and the axle components. Use NLGI #2 Lithium soap base lubricant for all steering linkage and brake components.

Alignment

Camber:

Camber, as shown, is vertical tilt of wheel as viewed from the front of the motorhome. This is machined into the axle when manufactured and is not adjustable.

- "**Positive**" camber is an outward tilt of the wheel at the top.
- "**Negative**" camber is an inward tilt of the wheel at the top.



Toe Setting:

The toe setting represents different distances between the front and rear of the tires (measured at the vertical center line of the tires).

Toe-in:

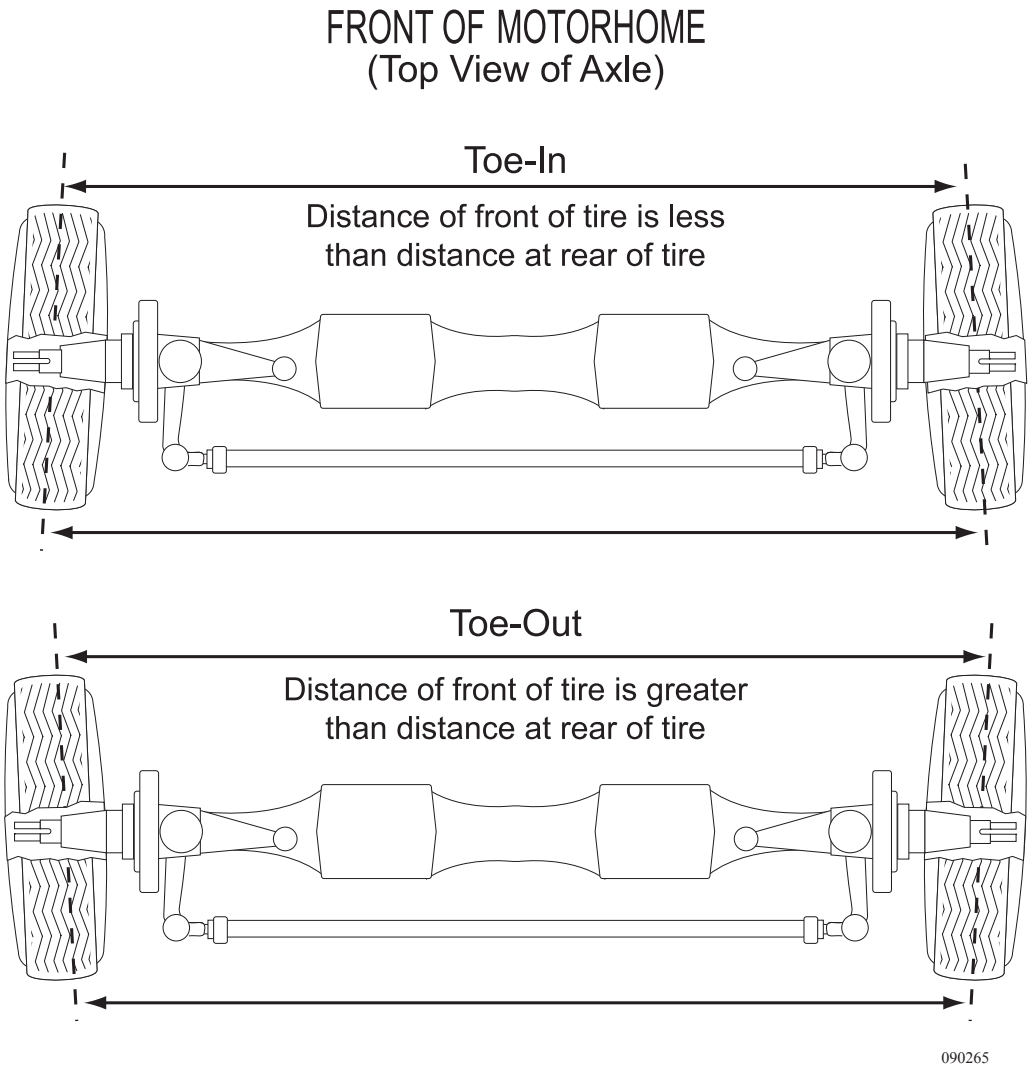
Occurs when the tire front distance is less than the tire rear distance.

Toe-out:

Occurs when the tire front distance is greater than the tire rear distance.

Wheels are generally set with initial toe-in. As the motorhome operates tires tend toward a toe-out condition. By starting with an initial toe-in setting, a desirable "near zero toe-in" can be achieved when the motorhome is in motion.

Incorrect toe settings, where toed-in or toed-out, can have a significant affect on tire wear. The toe setting is adjusted by lengthening or shortening the cross tube.



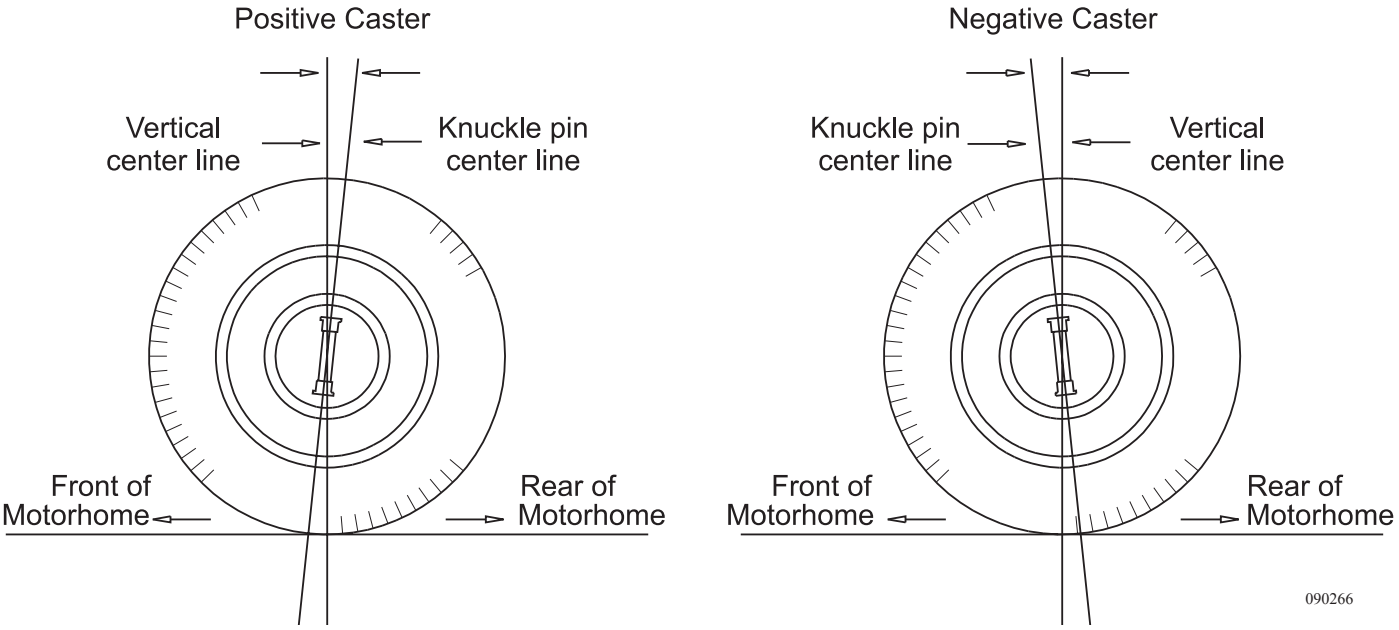
Caster Adjustments:

Caster is the fore and aft tilt (toward the front or rear of the motorhome) of the steering kingpin as viewed from the side of the motorhome.

"**Positive**" caster is the tilt of the top end of the kingpin toward the rear of the motorhome.

"**Negative**" caster is the tilt of the top end of the kingpin toward the front of the motorhome.

Setting the caster angle more positive than specified may result in excess steering effort and/or shimmy. Decreasing the angle may result in the motorhome wandering or poor steering return to center. The caster angle is determined by the installed position of the steer axle.



Left Front

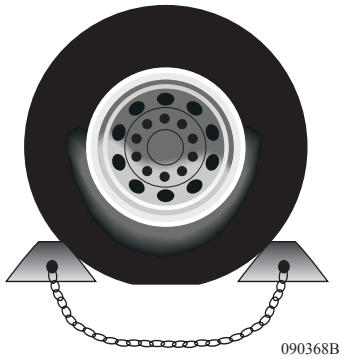
	Min.	Nominal	Max.
Camber	-0.15º	-0.35º	-0.65º
Caster	3.50º	4.50º	5.50º
Toe	0.018º	0.03º	0.042º

Right Front

	Min.	Nominal	Max.
Camber	-0.15º	-0.35º	-0.65º
Caster	3.50º	4.50º	5.50º
Toe	0.018º	0.03º	0.042º

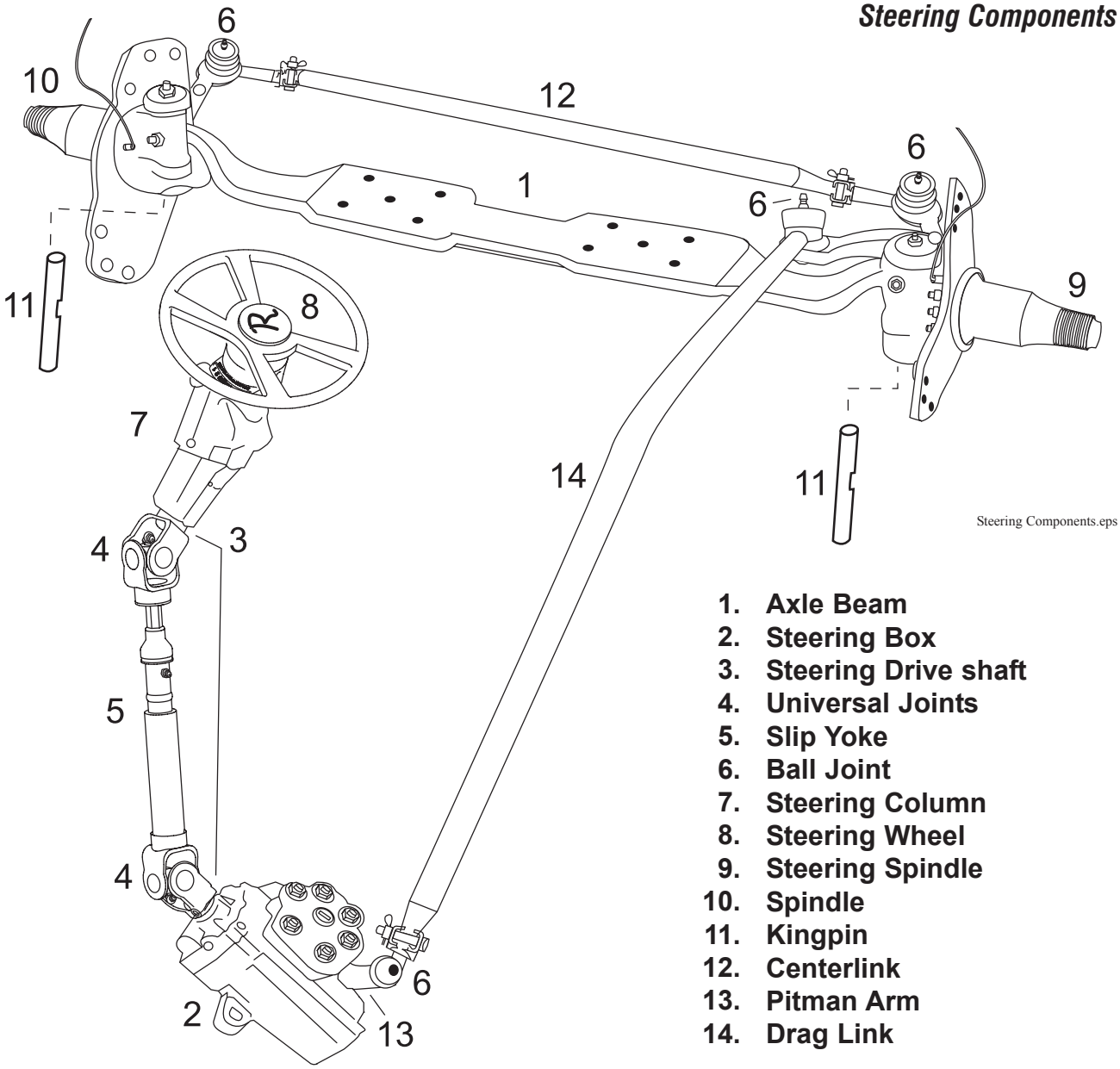
alignment spec chart.eps

The front axle components require periodic lubrication maintenance. Chock wheels for safety prior to accessing components underneath the motorhome.



090368B

Steering Components



1. **Axle Beam**
2. **Steering Box**
3. **Steering Drive shaft**
4. **Universal Joints**
5. **Slip Yoke**
6. **Ball Joint**
7. **Steering Column**
8. **Steering Wheel**
9. **Steering Spindle**
10. **Spindle**
11. **Kingpin**
12. **Centerlink**
13. **Pitman Arm**
14. **Drag Link**

TYPICAL STEERING COMPONENTS

Steering Column

The steering wheel connects to the steering box using a drive shaft. Service the steering drive shaft universal joints and slip yoke every 30,000 miles or annually. Remove the steering column cover to access the upper universal joint and slip yoke lubrication points. The lower universal joint is accessed from underneath in the generator compartment behind the front electrical box.

Greasing the Steering Drive Shaft Universal Joints:

1. Check the drive shaft for looseness. If loose or worn, repair the drive shaft as necessary.

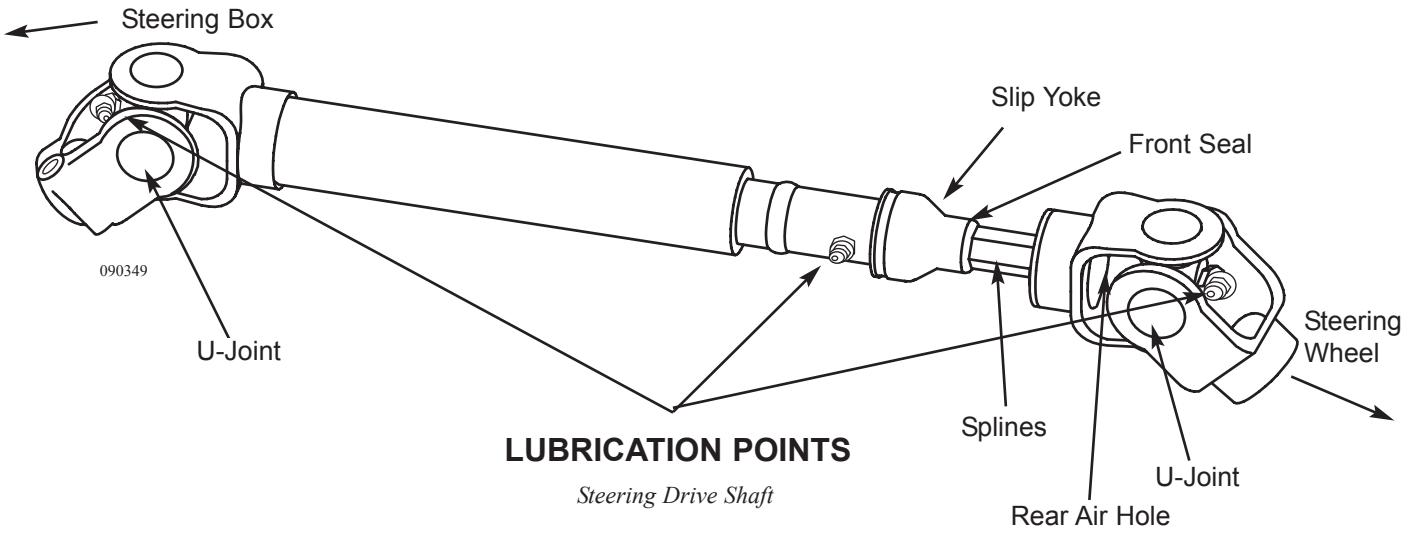
2. Apply the specified grease at the grease fitting on the universal joint. Apply until the new grease purges from all the seals.

3. If the new grease does not purge from the seals, disassemble and clean the joint or replace the universal joint. Do not lose the needle bearings.

Greasing the Steering Drive Shaft Slip Yoke and Splines:

1. Check the drive shaft for looseness. If loose or worn, repair the drive shaft as necessary.

2. With finger, cover the rear air hole so grease flows to the front seal. Apply the specified grease at the grease fitting on the slip yoke. Apply until new grease purges and forces finger away from the air hole in the end of the slip yoke. Greasing interval is yearly or every 30,000 miles.



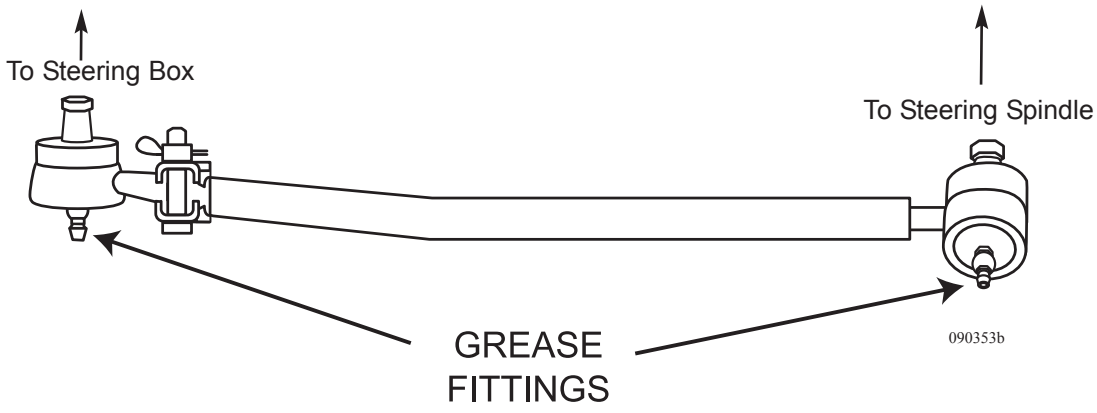
LUBRICATION POINTS

Steering Drive Shaft

Drag Link

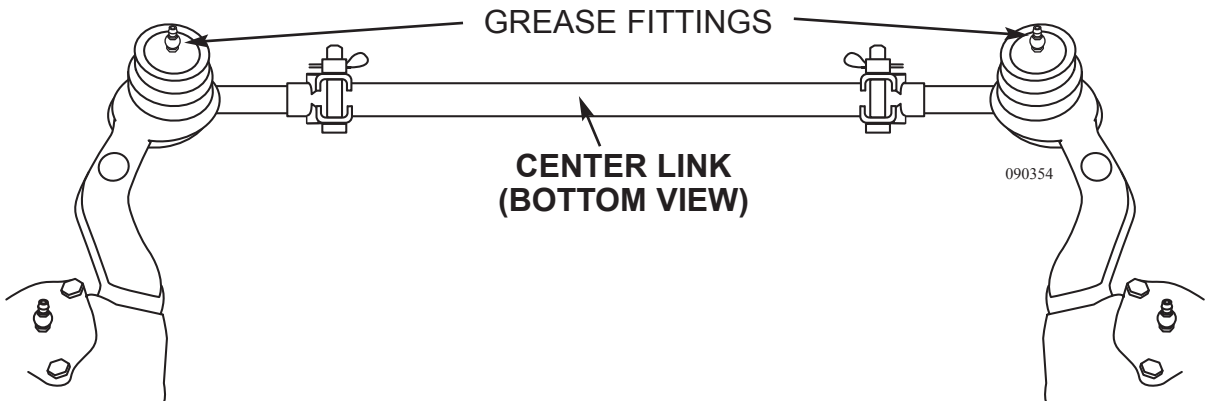
The drag link connects the steering box pitman arm to the steer axle. The movable joint (ball joint) uses sealed boots to prevent water intrusion. Do not rupture the boot when applying grease. Grease interval is six months or every 5,000 miles.

NOTE:
It will be necessary to start the motorhome and turn the steering wheel to access fitting(s).



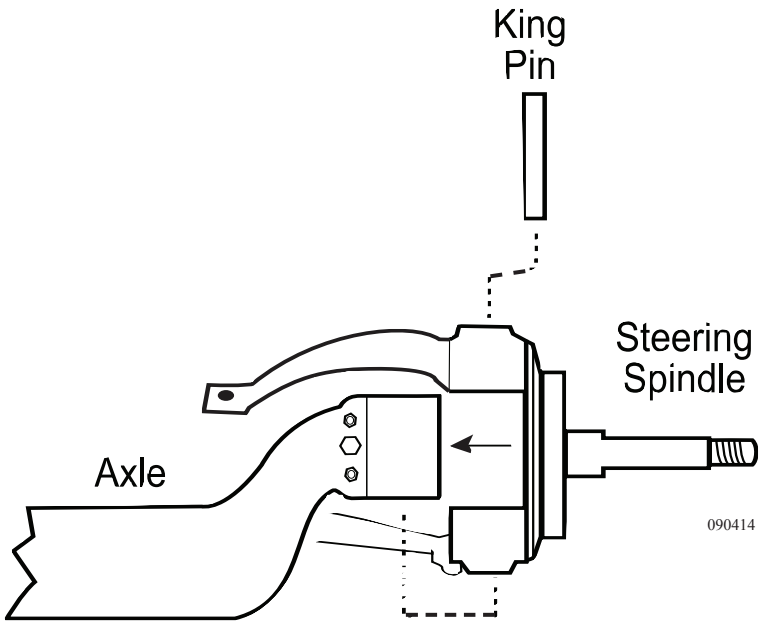
Center Link

The center link is located on the backside of the steer axle. The center link attaches the two wheels together causing the right front to track with the left front. Greasing interval is every six months or 5,000 miles.



Steering Spindles

The steering spindles attach to the front axle and pivot on the kingpin. The wheel end assembly and brake system attach to the spindle. There are upper and lower lubrication points for the kingpin. The drag link attaches to the roadside spindle. After initially lubricating the roadside and curbside kingpins, rotate the steering assembly lock to lock (full left to right) then move assembly back to center. This purges any remaining air pockets. Continue lubricating the kingpins until new grease purges with no air pockets. Greasing interval is every six months or 5,000 miles.



Control Arm Bushings

Control arms align the axles perpendicular with the frame. The panhard bar controls side to side motion of the axles in the frame. Control arm bushings and panhard bar bushings do not require lubrication.

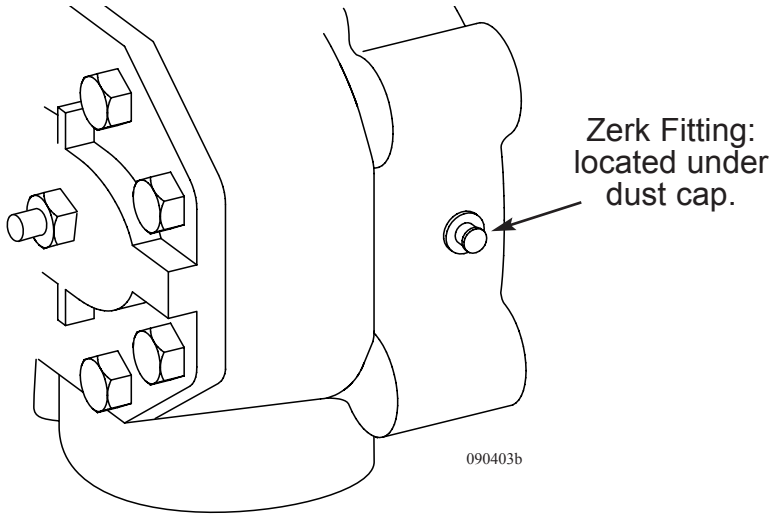
STEERING GEAR

Maintain the grease pack behind the output shaft's dirt and water seal as a general maintenance procedure at least twice a year. The grease fitting is provided in the housing trunnion. Use NLGI grade 2 or 3 multipurpose chassis lube and use only a hand operated grease gun on the fitting. Add grease until it begins to extrude past the sector shaft dirt and water seal.

Power steering is provided by using hydraulic pressure to assist rotating the output shaft of the steering gear. Located at the end of the input shaft of the steering gear is poppet valve and worm drive. The poppet valve directs the hydraulic fluid pressure to a type of spool. The worm drive threads in the center of the spool. When in the center position, pressurized hydraulic fluid bypasses the spool. When a turn is made, the poppet valve shifts to one direction or the other, directing the hydraulic pressure to one side of the spool depending on turning direction. The hydraulic fluid is then cooled before returning to the reservoir.

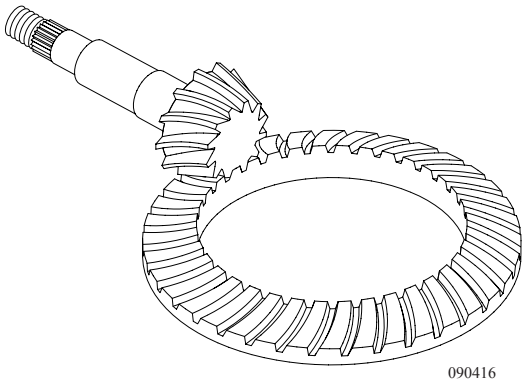
Inspect for signs of leakage when performing fluid level checks.

Changing the hydraulic filter in the engine compartment at regular intervals will help ensure trouble-free operation.



Back of Steering Box

DRIVE AXLE & DRIVE SHAFT


090416

Ring and Pinion Gears

Drive Axle:

The chassis drive axle is a single reduction axle, with a gear ratio of 4.30:1. The differential gears consist of a hypoid pinion and ring gear set and bevel differential gears. The differential carrier can be removed from the axle housing as a unit in order to perform repairs.

All power from the engine to the rear tires is transferred through the rear axle. For this reason, it is important that maintenance be performed on the axle as required to avoid premature wear of the gears and bearings in the axle.

Drive Axle Lubricant:

The rear axle is filled with synthetic gear oil meeting MIL-L-2105D specifications. Change interval is every 250,000 miles, or 36 months, whichever occurs first.

During lubricant change, fine metal particles will be observed clinging to the magnetic fill and drain plugs of the axle. These particles are normal wear particles from the axle components, but will cause faster than normal wear of the axle components if allowed to circulate through the lubricant. It is recommended that the magnetic plugs be tested, if not replaced, at each lubricant change when petroleum-based lubricants are used, or every 100,000 miles when synthetic lubricant is used. These plugs should have sufficient magnetic strength to pick up a 1.5 pound weight of low carbon steel. Never replace a magnetic plug with a non-magnetic "pipe plug" as they will not keep the lubricant clear of metal particles or seal properly.

The level of lubricant in the rear axle should be checked every 30,000 miles or annually, whichever comes first. This will ensure adequate lubricant in the axle for proper operation.

Proper Drive Axle Lubricant Level:

Regular inspection of the drive axle lube levels is an essential maintenance procedure.

- With the motorhome parked on a level surface and rear axle warm, place a large container under axle.
- Clean the area around the fill plug, which is located approximately halfway up the axle housing bowl.
- Remove the fill plug and observe the lubricant level.
- The lubricant should be level with bottom of the hole.
- Important: The lube level close enough to the hole to be seen or touched is not sufficient. The lube must be level with the hole.
- Correct the level as necessary.
- Re-install the fill plug and tighten to 35 to 50 ft. lbs.

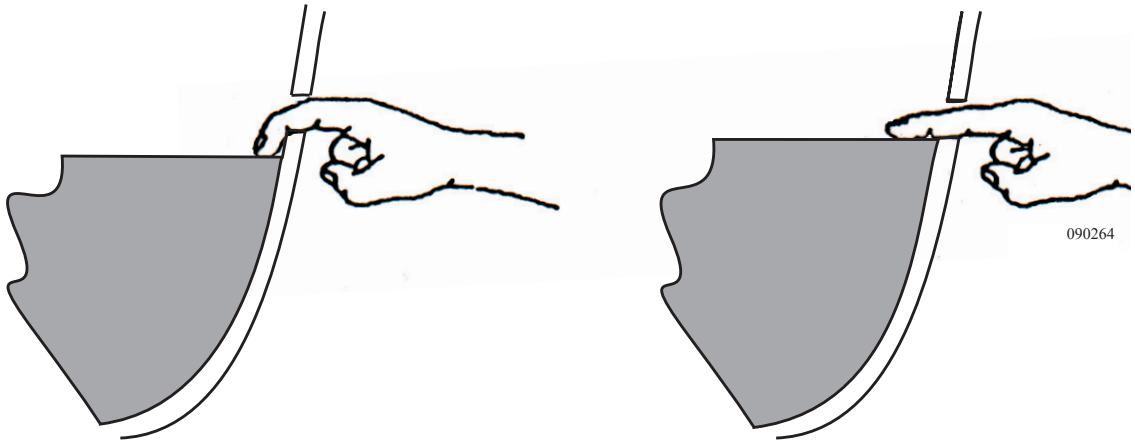
NOTE:

When checking the lube level also check the housing breathers on top of axle housing. Clean the breathers if dirty or replace them if damaged.

To Drain and Replace Lubricant:

1. Place a large container under the axle.
2. Remove drain plug and allow axle to completely drain.
3. Properly dispose of oil.
4. Clean the drain plug and test (replace the drain plug if needed).
5. Install and tighten drain plug to 35 to 50 ft. lbs.
6. Clean the area around the fill plug from the axle-housing bowl.
7. Fill the axle with approved lubricant until the level is even with the bottom of the fill plug hole.

WARNING:
When checking or changing the lubricant, always ensure that the axle is not "hot." Oil temperature 90º F or hotter can easily cause severe burns.



Incorrect Oil Level

Correct Oil Level

Drive Shaft:

The drive shaft transfers the power produced by the engine to the drive axle. A worn or out of balance drive shaft causes chassis vibration that generally increases in intensity with road speed.

NOTE:
It will be necessary to move the motorhome forward or backward to access all fittings on the drive shaft.

Greasing the Drive Shaft Universal Joints:

1. Check the drive shaft for looseness. If loose or worn, repair the drive shaft as necessary.

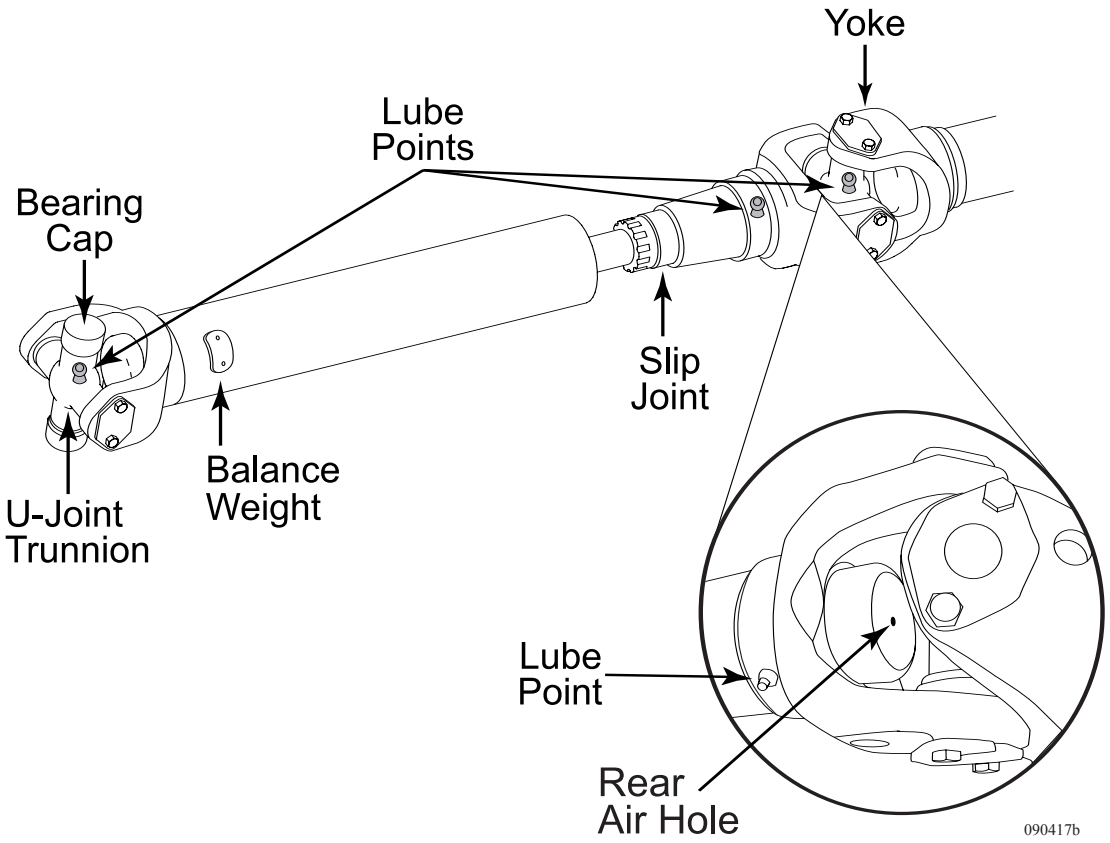
2. Apply the specified grease at the grease fitting on the universal joint. Apply until new grease purges from all the seals.

3. If new grease does not purge at the seals, loosen the bearing cap bolts and re-grease until all four caps purge. If new grease still does not purge, disassemble and clean or replace the universal joint.

Greasing the Drive Shaft Slip Yoke and Splines:

1. Check the drive shaft for looseness. If loose or worn, repair the drive shaft as necessary.

2. With finger, cover the rear air hole so grease flows to the front seal. Apply the specified grease at the grease fitting on the slip yoke. Apply until new grease purges and forces finger away from the air hole in the end of the slip yoke. Greasing interval is 10,000 miles or annually.

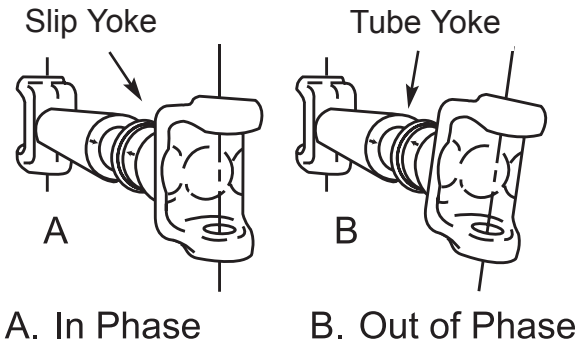


090341

Warning:
Rotating shafts can be dangerous. Rotating shafts can snag clothes, skin, hair, hands, etc. causing serious injury or death. Do not work on or near a shaft "with or without a guard" when the engine is running.

Correct U-joint working angles, U-joint phasing, and drive shaft balance is vital to maintaining a quiet-running drivetrain and long life of drivetrain components (including drive shaft components).

When in phase, the slip yoke lugs (ears) and tube yoke lugs (ears) are in line. Normally this is the ideal condition and gives the smoothest running shaft. There may be an alignment arrow stamped on the slip yoke and on the tube shaft to assure proper phasing when assembling these components. If there are no alignment marks, they should be added before disassembly of the shaft to assure proper reassembly.



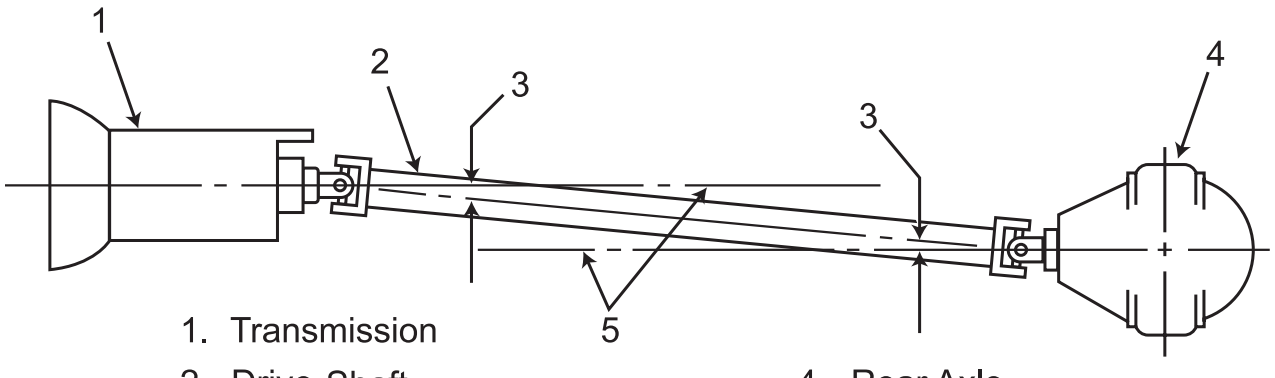
090337

Phasing is relatively simple on a two-joint set, be sure that the slip yoke lugs and the tube yoke lugs are in line.

The U-Joint working angle is the angle formed by the intersection of the drive shaft centerline and the extended centerline of the shaft of any component to which the U-joint connects. Because the double oscillating motion of a U-joint that connects angled shafts causes a fluctuating speed difference between the shafts, the effect created by the U-joint at one end of the shaft must cancel the effect created by the U-joint at the other end. This is done by making U-joint working angles at both ends of the drive shaft approximately equal, with the U-joints in phase. If the yoke lugs at both ends of the shaft are lying in the same plane (a plane which bi-sects the shaft lengthwise), the U-joints will be in phase.

Any condition which allows excessive movement of a drive shaft will cause imbalance: loose end yoke nuts, loose U-joint bearing cap retaining capscrews, worn U-joint trunnions, bearings and worn slip-joint splines.

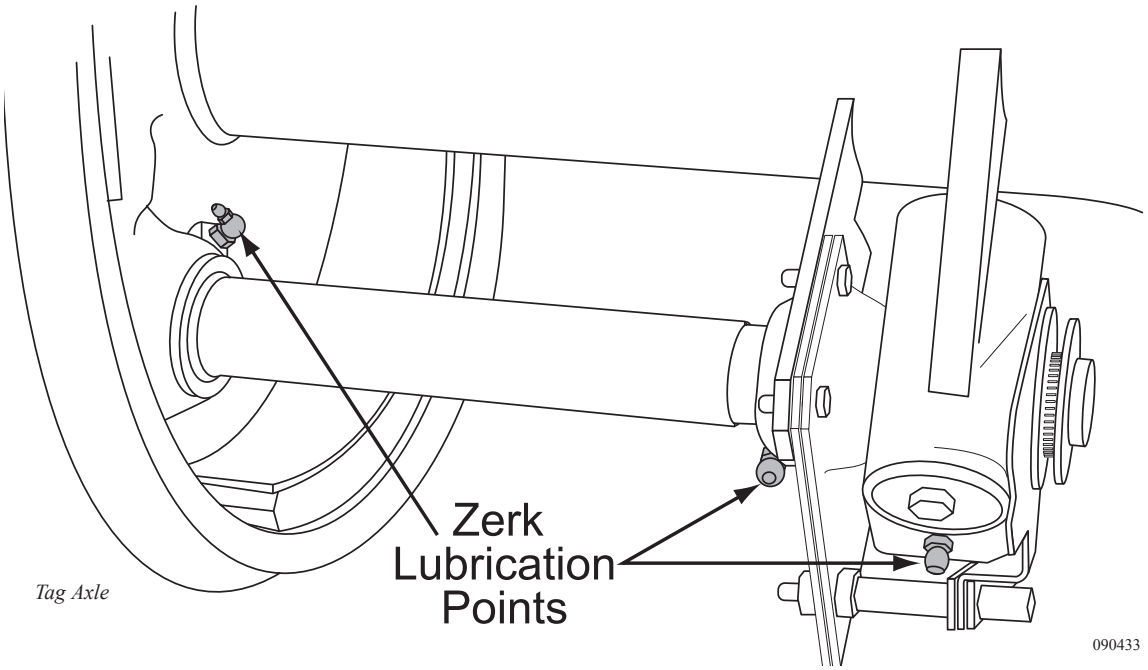
Among the most common causes of U-joint and slip joint damage is lack of lubrication. To keep the motorhome operating smoothly and economically, the drive shaft must be carefully checked and lubricated at regular intervals.



090336 modified

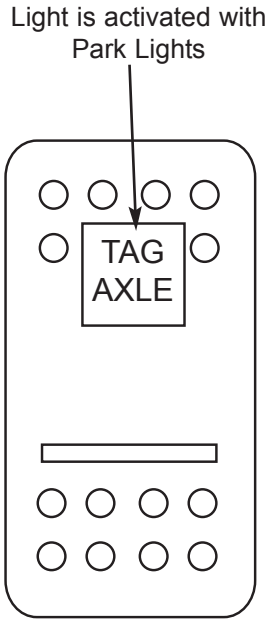
Lubrication Maintenance

The tag axle slack adjuster and "S" cam shaft need to be lubed periodically to ensure proper brake operation. Lubricate every 10,000 miles or 3 months.



Tag Axle

TAG AXLE

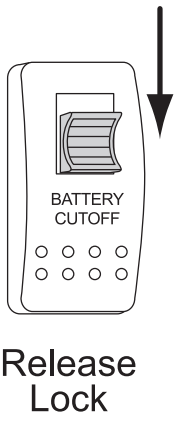


Lighted Switch

The switch for the tag axle is located on the roadside switch panel. Two lights are located on the switch: The tag axle icon will illuminate with the park lights. The lower bar light will illuminate when the tag axle switch is on and the transmission is in neutral, reverse or first gear. When the transmission is in 2nd - 6th gear and the tag axle is covered, the light will be off. Raise the tag axle when performing severe or tight maneuvering under 5 mph to prevent scuffing the tag axle tires. A beeping alarm sounds when the switch is on.

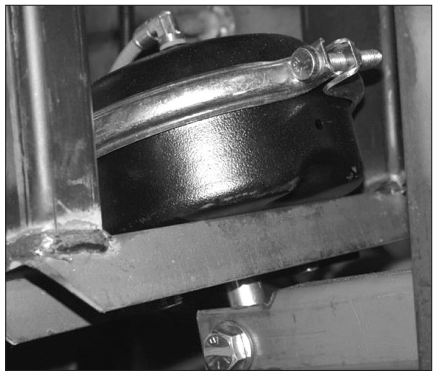
The tag axle raises in the following modes:

- Interior house power must be ON.
- When the switch is on and the transmission is in Neutral, Reverse or First Gear.
- With the tag axle in the up position there is not a specific height requirement other than the tire should be off the ground. If extra clearance is desired, moving the lift chain up one link on each side can increase ground clearance with the tag axle in the raised position.



A description of what occurs in a motorhome equipped with air leveling when the tag axle switch is on:

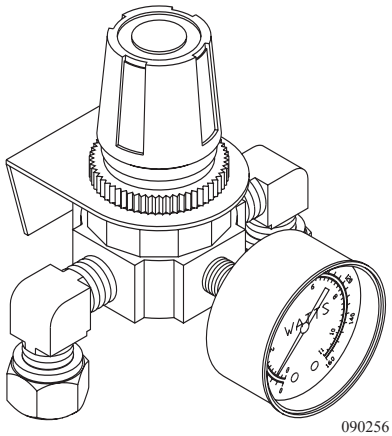
- The tag axle switch supplies 12 Volt DC to the 14 gauge yellow with green stripe wire to the air valve located at the roadside rear.
- The rear air valve applies air pressure to the orange air line at both tag axle lift chambers to raise the axle.
- Air pressure in the tag axle air bags is released. The tag axle remains up in reverse, neutral, first gear or until the switch is turned off.



Tag Axle Lift Chamber (Type 30) Tagairpot2.tif

Adjusting the tag axle load:

Changing the amount of weight carried by the tag axle affects weight distribution between the tag, drive and steering axles. The amount of down force applied to the tag axle is controlled by the amount of air pressure in the tag axle air bags. An adjustable pressure regulator located in the engine compartment sets the amount of air pressure in the tag axle air bags. Regulator pressure is preset at the factory and may require adjustment to obtain the proper weight distribution on all axles. To determine the correct setting of the pressure regulator the motorhome will need weighed after it has been loaded for travel.



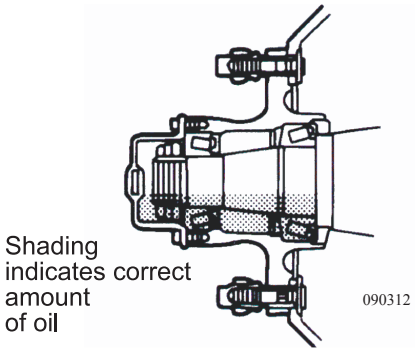
090256

Tag Axle Pressure Regulator

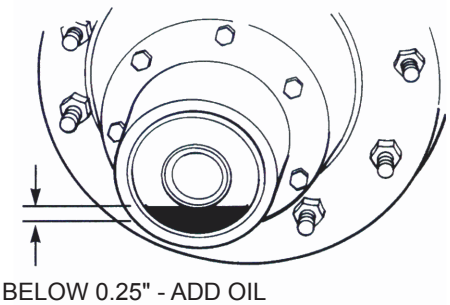
NOTE:
The tag axle pressure regulator valve is located in the engine compartment on the roadside.

Tag Axle Lubrication:

All tag axles use oil to lubricate the wheel bearings. The oil is drained and refilled without removing the wheel end assembly. Remove the hubcap to access the bearing cover and drain plug.



INSPECTION:
Inspect the oil level before every trip or every 5,000 miles. The motorhome should remain motionless for at least 30 minutes in order to stabilize the oil level before inspecting.



To inspect the oil level:

- The motorhome must remain stationary for 30 minutes.
- Remove the chrome hubcap.
- Locate the full and add mark on the outside of the clear plastic cover.
- If the lubricant is low, add recommended fluid to proper level.

Oil Change Intervals

The recommended oil change interval is based on operating conditions, speeds and loads. Limited service applications may allow the recommended interval to be increased. Severe applications may require the recommended interval to be reduced. For more information, contact a Dana/Eaton service representative.

Recommended Interval Change:

- Change the fluid whenever the seals are replaced, the brakes are relined or at 30,000 miles (48,000km). However, check the lubricant twice a year (spring and fall) for contamination. Change as needed.
- If yearly mileage is less than 30,000 miles, change the fluid twice a year (spring and fall).

Lubricant Type:

- Shell Hypoid gear oil, GL-5, S.A.E. 80w/90. Specifications, minimum ambient temperature - 15º F (-26.1º C). There is no maximum ambient temperature. Lubricant temperature must never exceed 250º F (+121º C).

To Drain:

- Place a suitable container below the bearing cover and remove the drain plug. If the cover does not have a drain plug, remove the screws retaining the cover plate to drain the lubricant.
- Replace plug or cover plate and fill bearing assembly with the recommended lubricant.

SHOCK ABSORBER

090315

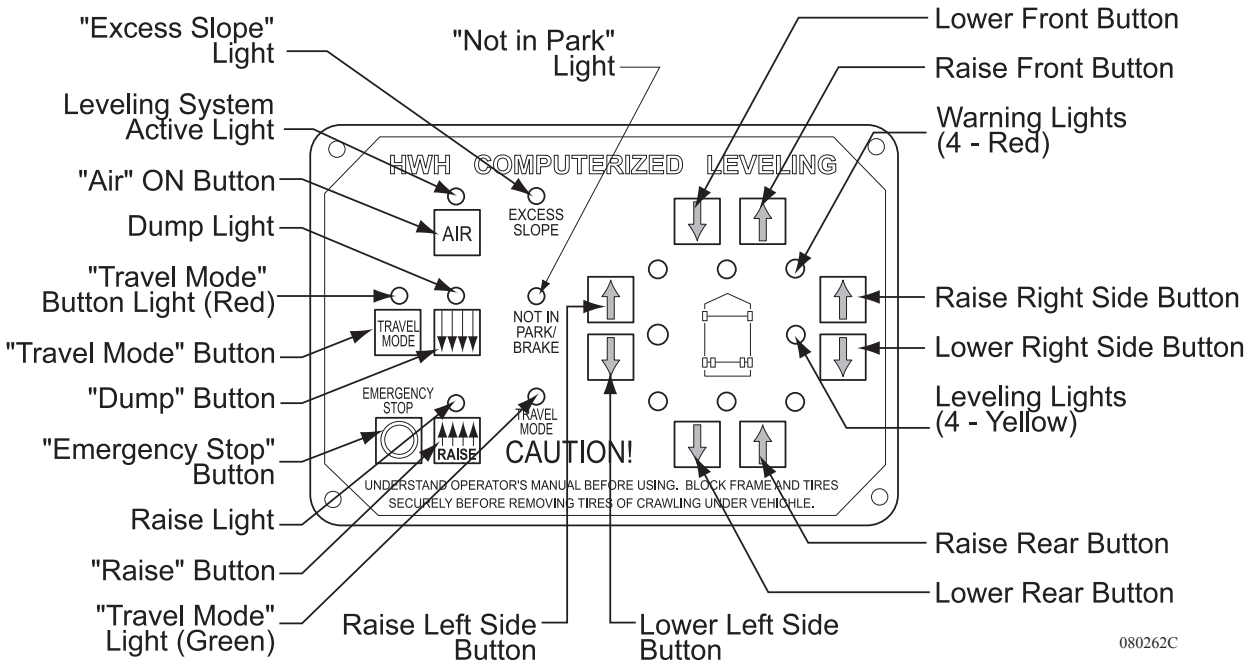
The shock absorber by definition is a hydraulic device used to dampen suspension/body movement. Road surface irregularities are compensated for by the shock absorber. The roadmaster chassis incorporates the "Bilstein" shock in the design of the exclusive air glide suspension system. This shock absorber is a telescopic, mono tube unit filled with nitrogen gas and hydraulic oil. The result of the mixture is uninterrupted damping for the smallest of wheel deflection.

By design, a self lubricating seal is used which will allow approximately 10% of the total oil capacity to pass onto the piston rod. The gradual process of oil loss does not affect the performance of the shock absorber during the service life. This process will be evident after a long period of service by an oil film on the body of the shock absorber. The appearance of a coating or film on the body or rod is completely normal, it is an indication the shock is functioning normally.

Road holding, handling, balance and braking characteristics all can be contributed to the shock absorber. The operating conditions for which the shock absorber must endure will determine the life span. However, since the only moving part is the piston rod, there are no springs, hinges or pins to wear out, get weak or deteriorate.

A touch panel, computer controlled air leveling system uses the air springs to level the motorhome. The system can be set to level the motorhome automatically or the system can be operated manually.

CAUTION:
The ignition must be ON and the system set to travel mode for the air suspension to operate. This is critical to note in the event the motorhome requires emergency towing.



Control Panel Buttons:
Several buttons are located on the control panel.

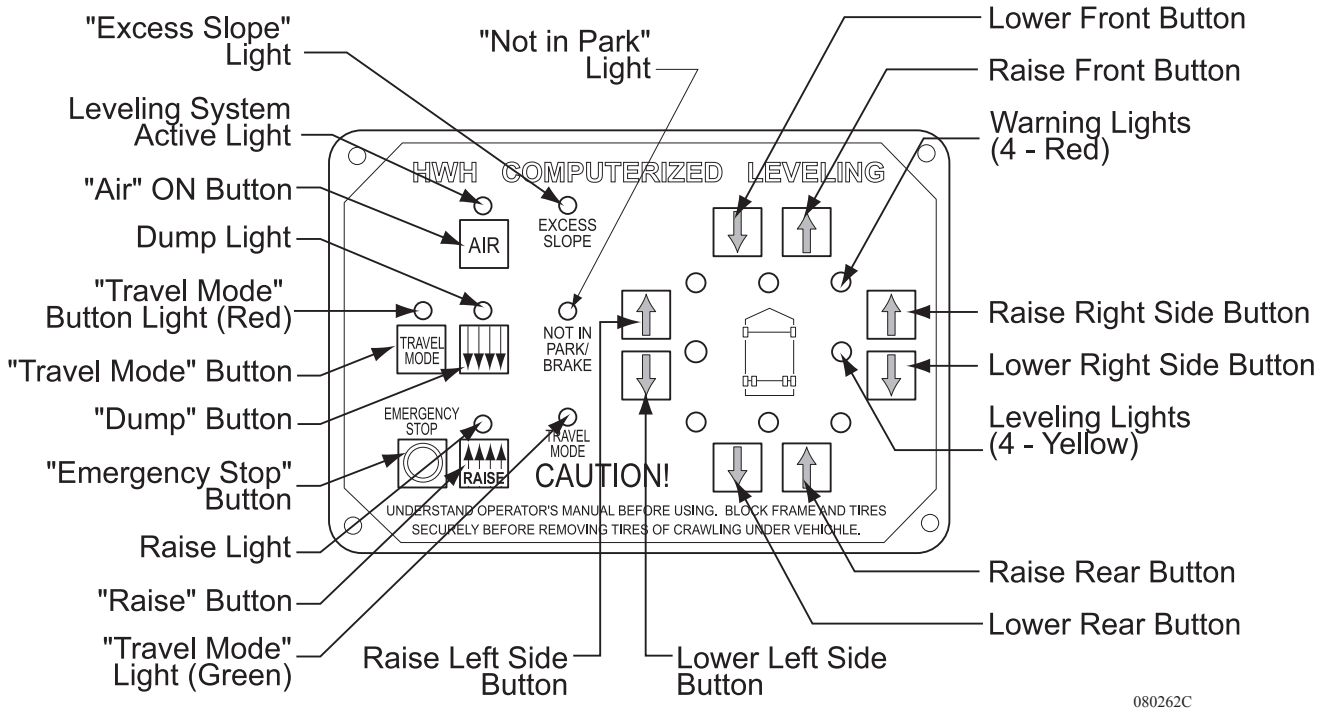
Air = Park brake must be applied to enable this function. The ignition must be in the ON position. Press once to set system in Manual Level mode or press twice to begin Auto-Level mode.

Travel Mode = Places the system in Travel mode and turns OFF the Master Warning lamp. Air system pressure must be at least 80 psi.

Dump = Press this button with ignition ON or in the accessory position to deflate the air springs. System pressure is unaffected.

Emergency Stop = Turns the control panel off except when the ignition is in the **on** position and the park brake is released.

Raise = Press this button with the ignition ON or in the accessory position to inflate the air springs using system air pressure.



Not in Park Brake = Illuminates when the park brake is not engaged and the AIR button is pressed.

Up arrows = Used for manual leveling. Press and hold an UP arrow to raise the corresponding side.

Down arrows = Used for manual leveling. Press and hold a DOWN arrow to lower the corresponding side.

Excess Slope = Indicates the system has attempted to level the motorhome, but the surface is too steep.

Panel Indicator Lamps:

Yellow Level Indicator Lamps = Illuminated lamp indicates that side, end or corner of the motorhome is low. When yellow level lights are extinguished, the motorhome is level.

Red Warning Indicator Lamps = Illuminate when system is set to Manual or Automatic Level to indicate that the Height Control Valves (HCV) are inoperable.

Master Warning Lamp:

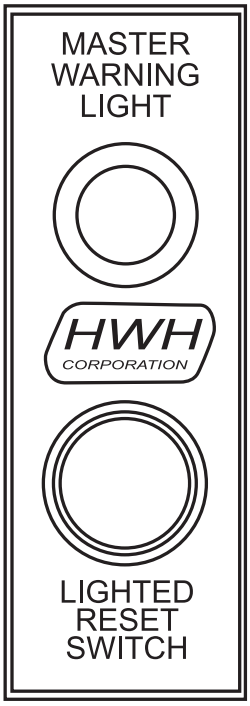
The Master Warning Lamp may illuminate for several reasons with the ignition in the ON or OFF position.

- When system pressure is below 80 psi.
- When any air bag pressure is below 20 psi.
- When the ignition is on and the system is not in the travel mode.
- When manual or automatic leveling mode is activated.
- When the tag axle (if equipped) is raised. The system will not allow manual or automatic leveling when the tag axle is raised.
- If the reset button is illuminated.
- If the lamp remains lit, check the above items. In some cases, it may be necessary to set the system to back to travel mode by pressing the Travel Mode button or releasing the park brake.

Reset Button:

Should the reset button illuminate, an error may have occurred in the system. Press the button to reset the system and to turn the panel off. Accidentally pressing the reset button in some modes can cause the Master Warning lamp or Reset Button to illuminate. Press the Emergency Stop button and set the system to Travel Mode. If the lamp remains illuminated, check the system for a blown fuse in the control center. If the lamp remains lit after confirming that the fuses are properly functioning, have the system diagnosed by a qualified technician.

CAUTION:
When the reset light is illuminated, the motorhome will return to ride height if the ignition is in the on position.



Warning Lamp & Reset Panel located in Roadside Electrical bay.

090454

Automatic Air Leveling

When set to Auto-Level mode, the system will attempt to level to the lowest point first. Example: if the rear of the motorhome is low, the yellow level indicator located at the rear of the motorhome icon will illuminate. The system will dump air from the front air springs until the motorhome is level. If the front air springs fully deflate before the yellow lamp goes out (indicating level), the system will raise the rear of the motorhome until the yellow lamp goes out. If two yellow indicator lamps are illuminated, one on the side and one on the end, the system will level side-to-side first, then end-to-end.

NOTE:
The leveling system will perform best if there is no movement in the motorhome while the system is attempting to auto-level.

CAUTION:
Several inches of unobstructed downward travel is required when using the leveling system. Look underneath the motorhome for any obstacles that could damage undercarriage components before using the leveling system. Do not move the motorhome when manual or automatic leveling mode is set. Suspension and body damage may result.

WARNING:
Never engage the leveling system when anybody is located near or underneath the motorhome. Serious injury or death can occur.

Automatic Air Leveling Procedure:

- Set the parking brake and start the engine. The ignition must be ON to operate the leveling system. Ensure the front wheels are pointing straight ahead. Allow the air system to build to full air pressure, approximately 130 psi. The leveling system operates more efficiently using the high-idle feature.
- Press the AIR button once to turn the leveling system on. The Air indicator light and four red warning lights will glow steady.
- Press the AIR button a second time. The Air indicator light will start flashing and automatic leveling will begin. The system will level only when a yellow side or end light illuminates.
- When all yellow lights are out, the leveling process is complete. The air indicator light will flicker. The engine may now be turned off.

The air indicator light will initially flicker for about ten minutes. After ten minutes, the Air indicator light will go out. The system is in "sleep" mode. The system will awaken at approximately 30-minute intervals to check the level sensing inputs. If the system detects a continuous off-level condition from a sensing input for one minute, the system will try to lower the opposite end/side in an attempt to level the motorhome. If the end/side is at its lowest point of travel, the system compressor will activate to inflate the air spring at the low end/corner and level the motorhome. This process will continue until Emergency Stop is pressed or the parking brake is released with the ignition in the ON position.

NOTE:
If the system is turned off, the processor will not make any adjustments and an off level condition may occur over time.

Excess Slope:

If the system was unable to level motorhome after approximately 15 to 18 minutes, one or two **yellow** Level indicator lights will remain on and the Excess Slope light will illuminate. The system will remain on, but will not go into Sleep Mode. It is recommended to select another site.

Preparation for Travel:

- Follow the procedures listed for "Retracting the Slide-out Rooms" in Section 5.
- Start the engine and allow the air system to fully pressurize (approximately 130 psi).
- Press the Travel Mode button or release the parking brake. The leveling system will automatically disengage. Before travel, the Master Waning lamp must be off and the Travel indicator light must be on. After the leveling system is set to travel mode, it takes about one minute for the suspension system to have sufficient air for travel. DO **NOT** solely rely upon the warning lights to indicate that motorhome suspension is ready for travel.

System Air Compressor:

Should air pressure in the leveling system drop below approximately 90 psi when in Auto-Level mode, a small air compressor provides the leveling system with air pressure. This compressor requires no maintenance.

Manual Air Leveling

Manual Air Leveling Operation:

- Set the parking brake and start the engine. Ensure the front wheels are pointing straight ahead. Allow the air system to build to full air pressure, approximately 130 psi. The leveling system operates more efficiently using the high-idle feature.
- Press the AIR button once to turn the leveling system on. The Air indicator light and four red warning lights will glow steady.
- Press the individual Raise or Lower buttons (UP or DOWN arrows) to raise or lower the position indicated in relation to the motorhome icon.
- A yellow light indicates the side, end or corner of the motorhome is low. Lower the opposite side or end of motorhome to achieve level. If a level position cannot be achieved by lowering, raise the motorhome according to light yellow lights.
- Turn the ignition and control panel off.
- The system will not be in the sleep mode if the coach was leveled in the manual level mode.

NOTE:
Level the motorhome side-to-side before leveling the motorhome front to rear.

Dump Button:

With the engine running, press and hold the Dump button located on the leveling control panel. The system will release air from the air springs and lower the suspension. When the button is released, the suspension will slowly return to normal ride height.

With the engine off, press and hold the Dump button to release all air from the air springs and lower the suspension. Only air in the air springs is released. The air system will remain charged.

CAUTION:
Never lower the suspension and attempt to travel or turn. Body and suspension damage will result.

Raise Button:

With the engine running, and the system at full air pressure, press and hold the Raise button. The system will add air to the springs raising the suspension. When the button is released, the suspension will slowly return to normal ride height.

NOTE:
The motorhome will raise approximately 4". This is helpful when negotiating driveways.

CAUTION:
Do not rely solely upon the travel light. It is the motorhome operator's responsibility ensure the air suspension system is ready for travel.

LEVELING - HYDRAULIC *(Optional)*

A remote control panel located next to the driver seat operates the leveling system. The three point leveling system features a multiple warning system with **Jacks Down** light and a warning bell sounds when any jack is extended between 2 to 6 inches from fully retracted position. The leveling system pump is located in the generator compartment.

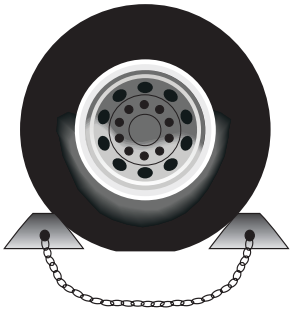
CAUTION:
Prior to leveling it is important that all jacks be in contact with the ground to stabilize and support the frame. The hydraulic jack system is designed to reduce sight selection problems and stabilize the motorhome when parked. No single jack should be used solely to level the motorhome. Using an improper leveling process can result in applying excess torsion stress/twist to the chassis, frame and body, resulting in damage to the windshield or entry door malfunction.

CAUTION:
The leveling jacks are not designed for changing tires. This can cause problems with the suspension system, frame alignment and damage to the windshields. Never use the jacks to elevate any wheel position off the ground.

CAUTION:
Before leveling the motorhome survey the area around and under the motorhome for obstructions that can damage the motorhome or undercarriage components when the air bags are deflated. Damage to the mud flap may occur if it is located over a raised area when suspension is lowered.

CAUTION:
Ensure the potential jack contact points are clear of obstructions or depressions before operation. Keep all people clear of the motorhome during the leveling system operations. Never expose hands or other parts of the body near hydraulic leaks. Hydraulic lines are under high pressure. Oil leaks may cut and penetrate the skin causing serious injury.

CAUTION:
DO NOT move the motorhome while jacks are in contact with the ground or extended. Damage to the jacks may occur.

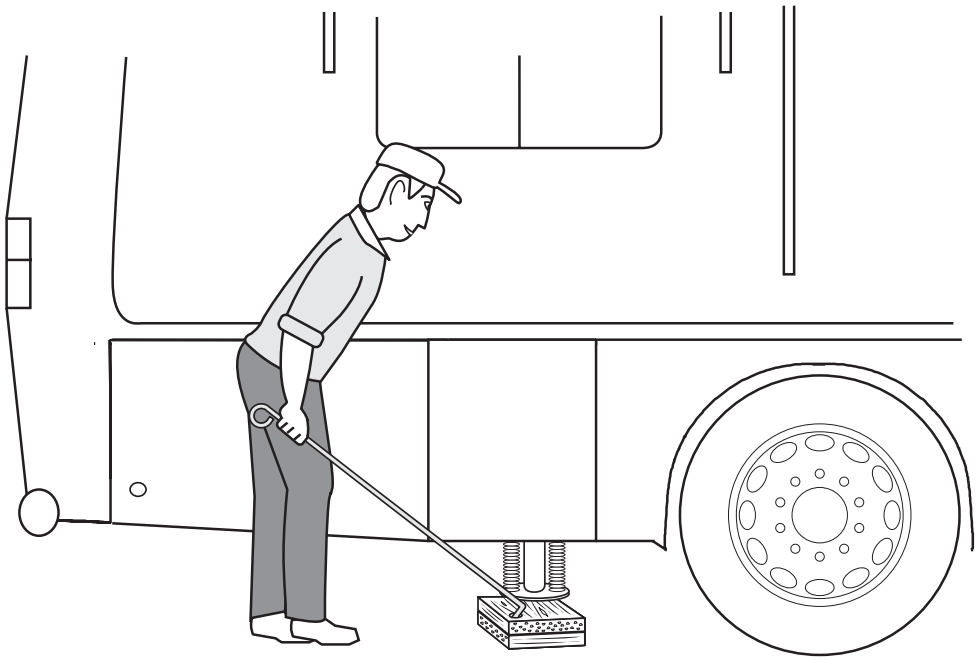


090368

Leveling System Operation:

When operating the leveling system, ensure that all jacks are in contact with the ground to properly stabilize the frame. Once all jacks are in contact with the ground, extend the front jack an additional ½". This allows the front jack to act as a pivot point. Incrementally extend each jack in such a manner as not to apply excessive stress/twist to the frame.

The leveling system was designed to reduce site selection problems. If possible, park the motorhome with the front facing downhill. If additional height or surface support is needed, construct 1' x 1' wooden blocks made from two pieces of ¾" plywood for a total thickness of 1 ½". Drill a hole in one end, and use the awning hook to slide the block under the jack pad.



020185

CAUTION:

Hot asphalt, gravel or dirt may not support the weight that is placed on the hydraulic jack pads. Place thick plywood under the jack pads to help disperse the weight. If blocking up a rear jack pad to gain added clearance when the motorhome is on a slope, place a wheel chock at the opposite set of rear wheels to prevent the motorhome from rolling.

Prior to Leveling:

There are some essential steps to follow prior to operating the leveling system:

- Select a level site if possible. If the site is not level, select another site or park the motorhome with the front facing downhill.
- Lower the air suspension by stepping on the brake several times until system air pressure is below 60 psi. With the ignition on, push and hold the Air Dump switch to lower the suspension. This reduces the amount the jack will need to extend before making contact with the surface.
- Prior to any leveling procedures it is important that all jacks be in contact with the ground to stabilize the frame. This reduces the ability of any one jack to induce excessive stress/twist to the frame as would extending one jack without the others supporting the frame. No single jack should be used to solely level the motorhome.
- If additional height or surface support is needed, construct a 1' x 1' wooden block made from two pieces of ¾" plywood for a total thickness of 1½". Drill hole in corner and use awning wand to slide wooden block under jack pad.
- The Automatic function of the leveling system should only be engaged when the surface is relatively level and solid to prevent excess twist/stress to the frame.
- When manually operating the system, lower the front jack first to create a pivot point for the chassis that will reduces stress/twist to the chassis and body of the motorhome. Torsion stress is significantly reduced when operating the system properly. Incrementally extend all jacks, rather than over-extending a single jack. **Damage resulting from improper leveling procedures and excess twist/stress can range from windshield damage to jamming of the entry door.**
- The remote control switches will operate with a minimum of 7.5 Volts DC. Optimum requirements for operating the system are voltages above 9.6 Volts DC.

Leveling System Safety Features:

The leveling system has safety features to prevent a jack from extending during travel. The control panel will not activate until these safety features are in place.

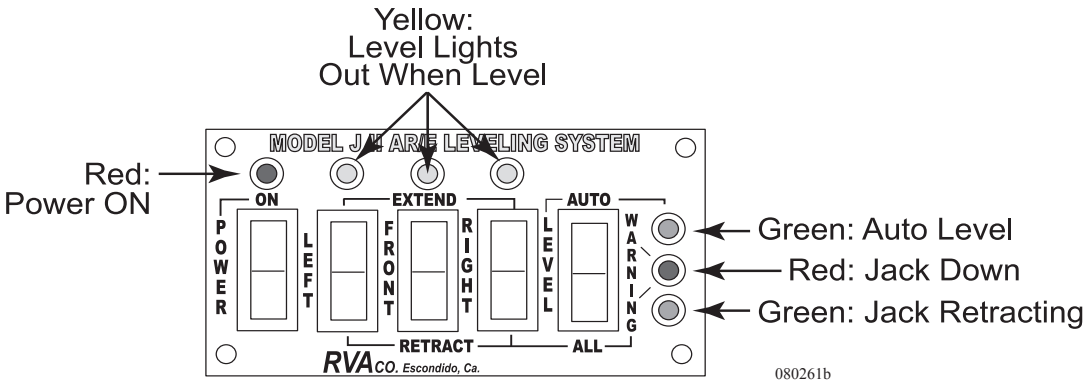
- Turn the ignition switch to the **ACC** position.
- Place the transmission in Neutral.
- Apply the parking brake.

Warning Features Include:

- A warning system consisting of flashing lights and a bong alarm when the system is on or a jack is down.
- The bong alarm may activate momentarily when driving over rough roads, or negotiating curves and corners. Usually this indicates low fluid level.

Remote:

The remote control panel is compromised of three **Retract/Extend** switches, an **Automatic Leveling** / **Retract All** switch and a power **ON/OFF** switch.



Indicator Lamps:

- A **yellow** lamp above any rocker switch indicates a low level condition.
- A flashing **green** lamp indicates the system is in **Automatic Leveling** mode or **Jacks All Retract** mode.

Manual Leveling

Manual Operation:

When manually operating the leveling system, it is important that all jacks are in contact with the ground to properly stabilize the frame. Once all jacks are in contact with the ground, extend the front jack an additional ½" to allow the front jack to create a pivot point. Incrementally extend each jack in such a manner as not to apply excessive stress/twist to the frame.

- Apply the parking brake.
- Turn the ignition switch to **ACC**.
- Lower the air suspension by making several brake applications until system air pressure is below 60 psi. With the ignition on, push and hold the **Air Dump** switch to lower the suspension.
- Turn on the jack control **Power** switch.
- Each yellow light and rocker switch combination corresponds to each jack as positioned on the chassis.

- To extend a particular jack, push and hold the corresponding rocker switch to **Extend** until the **yellow** light goes off. That particular jack is in the level position.
- To retract a particular jack, push and hold the corresponding rocker switch until the jack fully retracts.
- Turn **OFF** the **Power** switch.
- Turn **OFF** the **Ignition** switch.

CAUTION:
Damage to the mud flap may occur if the mud flap is located over a raised area when the suspension is lowered.

CAUTION:
Do not move motorhome while the jacks are still in contact with the ground or extended, damage to the jacks can occur. Do not use the jacks to raise any wheels off the ground. Damage to the motorhome may occur.

Automatic Leveling

Automatic Leveling Operation:

The **All Jacks Retract** mode or **Manual** mode can be engaged at any time during automatic leveling operation. Prior to, and during the automatic leveling process, it is essential that there is no movement in the motorhome.

To begin automatic operation:

- Apply the parking brake.
- Turn the ignition switch to **ACC**.
- Turn the jack control **Power** switch **ON**.
- Press the **Level** switch to **AUTO**.
- The top **green** light will start blinking. After a ½ second delay, the pump motor will activate and all jacks will extend.
- The system will attempt to complete the leveling process in one operation. The motorhome is level when all **yellow** lights, as well as **green** lights, go out.
- If leveling is unsuccessful on the first cycle the system will attempt to level four subsequent times at seven second intervals.
- If both **green** lights start flashing alternately, the system has reached maximum extension on one or more jacks. One or more **yellow** lights will blink, indicating additional height is required under one of the jack pads.
- When the leveling process is complete the **red** warning light will flash, indicating the jacks are down.
- Turn **OFF** the jack control **Power** switch.
- Turn **OFF** the **ignition** switch.

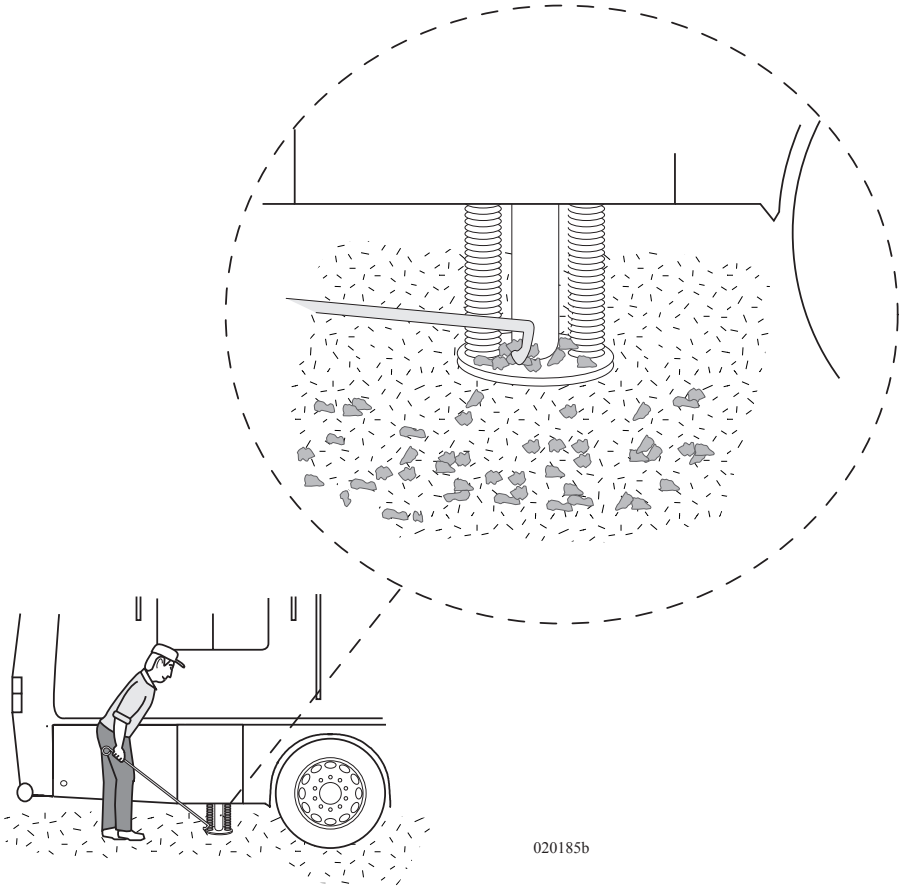
WARNING:
When the jacks are extended, a red Jacks Down warning light will blink and the bong alarm will sound. The alarm will sound if the jacks are down and ignition switch is turned ON.

Retracting Leveling Jacks

Automatic Retract:
Prior to retracting the jacks, it is advisable to start the engine and build air pressure.

- Turn the **ignition** switch to **ACC**.
- Confirm that the parking brake is applied.
- Turn the jack control **Power** switch **ON**.
- Momentarily press the level switch to **ALL**.
- The **red** warning lamp will stop blinking and the "bong" alarm will silence when all jacks are retracted.

INSPECTION:
Before moving the motorhome always perform a visual inspection to be sure that all jacks have fully retracted. Remove any debris that may be on the jack pad.



Hydraulic pressure, in all jacks, is automatically released when the **All Jacks Retract** switch is pressed. The jacks retract by the weight of motorhome and the retract springs on each jack. The bottom **green** light will begin blinking and all jacks will retract. This operation is on a four-minute timer. After four minutes, the **green** light will stop blinking and go out.

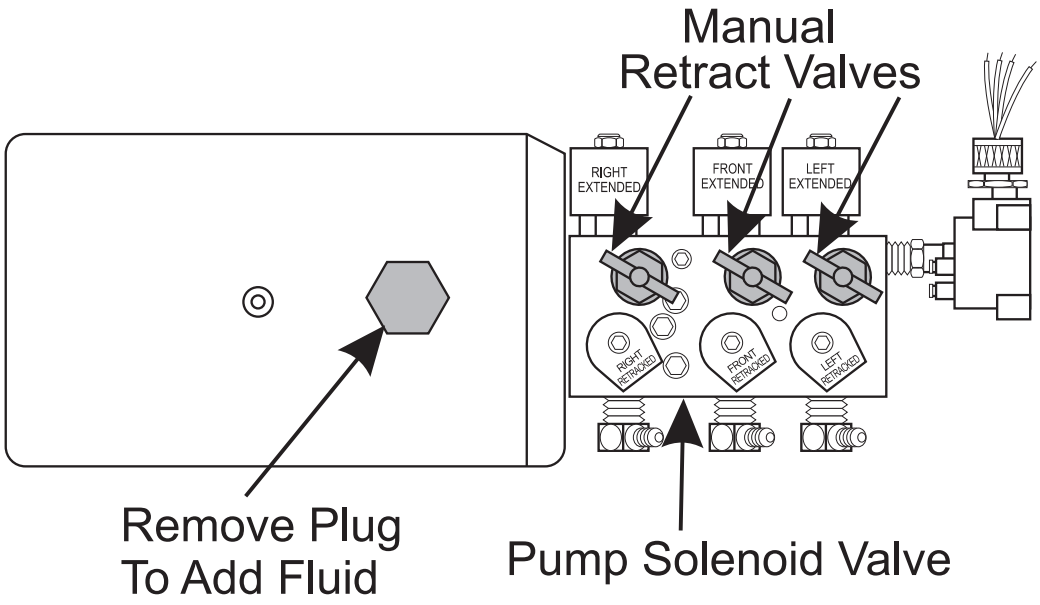
The hydraulic pump is located at the curbside front with easy access through the generator compartment. The manifold and valve assembly is mounted on the pump motor, providing access to the manual retract valves.

In case of mechanical or electrical failure that would prevent the leveling jacks from automatically retracting, the motorhome is equipped with manual emergency retract valves. The manual retract system releases fluid that is under pressure in each jack and allows the fluid to return to the reservoir.

CAUTION:
The motorhome will raise or lower when the manual retract valves are opened. If it becomes necessary to manually retract the jacks, do not crawl under the motorhome to access the valves. Confirm there is sufficient clearance so the valves may be opened safely.

To operate the manual system:

- Turn all three T-handle valves counterclockwise until they stop.
- When the jacks are fully retracted, rotate all the valves fully clockwise. In case one of the jacks is not holding pressure, one of the manual retract valves may not be fully tightened.



020027

Maintenance

Occasionally, when the jacks are fully extended, wipe away dirt from the jack rod to help lengthen the life of the jacks. How often this should be done varies with jack usage. *Dexron III*® will serve as a solvent, as well as a lubricant. Occasional oil or grease on the extended jack ram is normal and aids in the lubrication of the seals.

Component Replacement Model JII-45S:

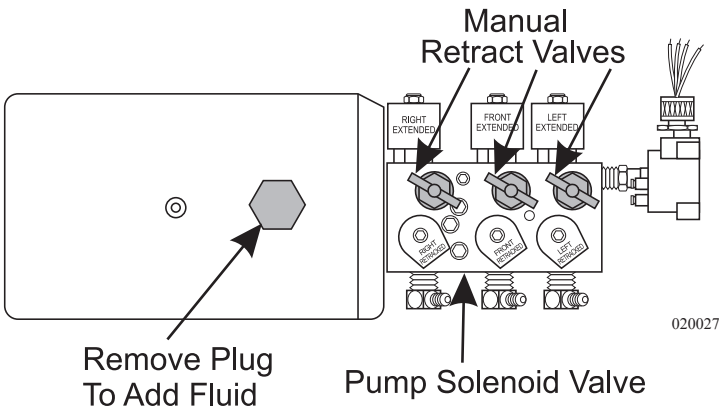
The system is designed for self-purging in the event any component of the hydraulic system has been removed or repaired.

To Purge the System:

• Fully extend and retract each jack twice.

Calibration:

The transmitter module may require calibrating to obtain an accurate level indication. The calibration procedure requires two persons for convenience and accuracy and should only be performed by qualified service technicians.



Adding Fluid:

Indication of low fluid levels is the bong alarm intermittently engaging when turning corners, or the the pump whining or gurgling. Use *Dexron III*® automatic transmission fluid to fill the reservoir.

To Fill the Reservoir:

1. Turn the **ignition** switch to the **ON** position. Turn the jack control **Power** switch **ON**.
2. Extend any jack six inches from the fully retracted position. All other jacks remain fully retracted.
3. Unscrew the reservoir cap from the top of the reservoir.
4. Open a window or the entry door so the bong alarm is audible from outside the motorhome. Slowly fill the reservoir with fluid until the bong alarm stops.
5. Replace the reservoir cap.
6. To retract the extended jack, push the **RETRACT** button.
7. Turn the jack control **Power** switch **OFF**.
8. Turn **OFF** the **ignition** switch.

The diesel engine operates differently from the conventional gasoline engine. Gasoline engines control engine speed using a butterfly throttle plate controlling air/fuel mixture inlet flow. As the throttle plate opens, vacuum created by the piston velocity draws the metered fuel/air charge into the combustion chamber, then ignites from a controlled electric ignition source. Closing the throttle plate limits the fuel/air supply, slowing engine speed, increasing intake manifold vacuum.

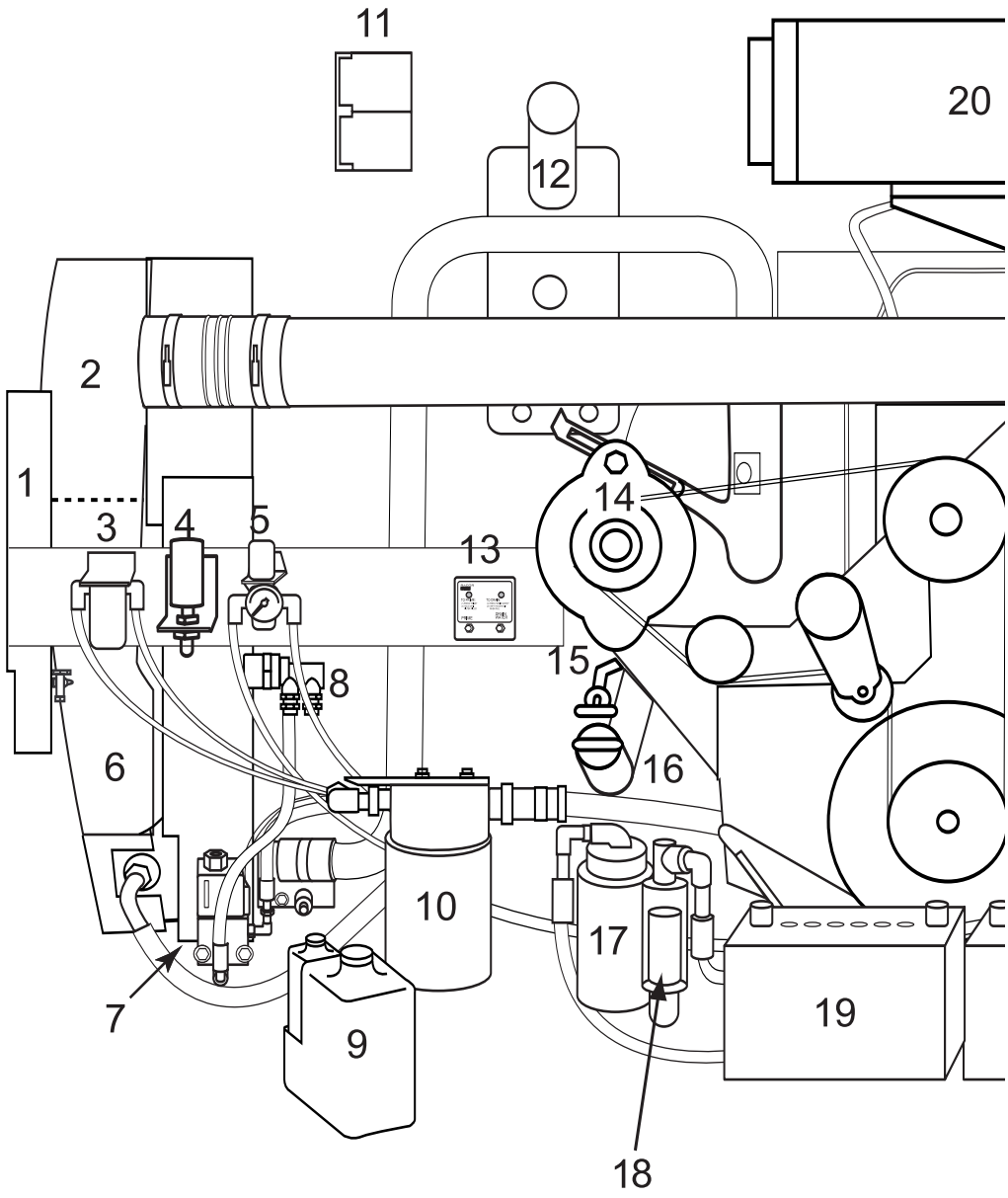
The diesel engine in the motorhome controls engine speed by varying fuel supply only. No throttle plates are used. An exhaust driven turbine system (turbocharger) compresses the fresh air supply into the engine. The fuel is injected under pressure into the combustion chamber. Ignition of fuel/air charge occurs from heat generated by rapid high compression. The turbo boost gauge registers amount of intake manifold pressure measured in lbs./in². Therefore, no intake manifold vacuum exists.

Diesel engine RPM (revolutions per minute) operating speeds are generally much lower than that of the gasoline engine. Peak torque and horsepower output values occur at much lower engine speeds. Idle speeds between the two engine types are similar, however maximum engine speeds are quite different. The gasoline engine generally is not regulated to a maximum engine speed. The maximum engine speed on a diesel engine is controlled by an engine speed governor set by the engine manufacturer.

WARNING:
Do not operate a diesel engine where there are or can be combustible vapors. Vapors can be drawn through the air intake system and cause engine acceleration and over-speeding, resulting in fire, explosion and extensive property damage. Numerous safety devices are available, such as air intake shutoff devices, to minimize risk of an engine over-speeding where an engine (due to its application) might operate in a combustible environment, such as fuel spills or gas leaks.

INFORMATION:
It is the responsibly of the owner to operate the engine in a safe manner. Consult the engine manufacturers owners manual for detailed operating and maintenance instructions.

ENGINE DIAGRAM
Cummins - I.S.M-II Standard

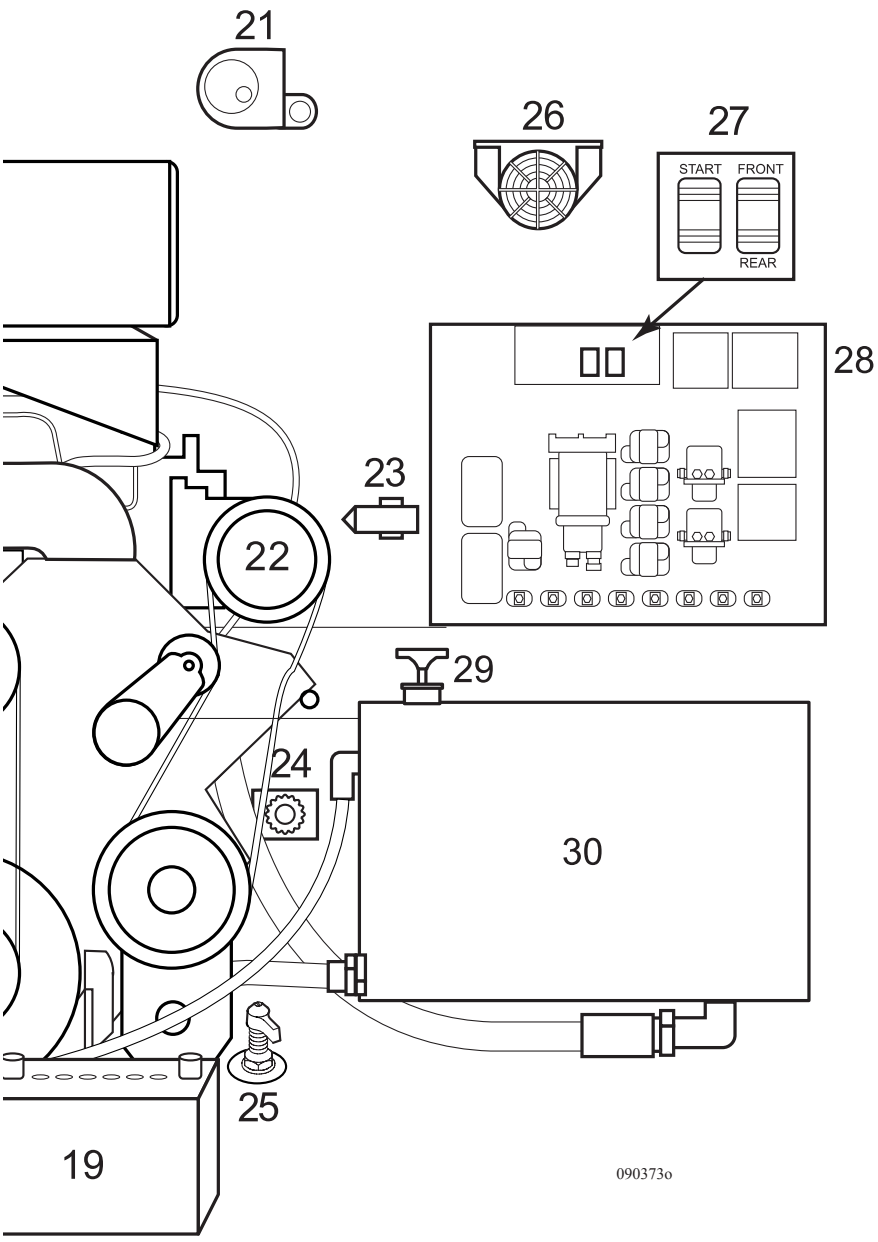


Engine Call out Data:

1. Coolant Reservoir
2. Back-up Alarm
3. Tag Axle Regulator
4. Air Filter Minder
5. Thermovalve (for hydraulic fans)
6. Charge Air Cooler
7. Electric Override Valve (for hydraulic fans)
8. Radiator
9. Primary Fuel Filter

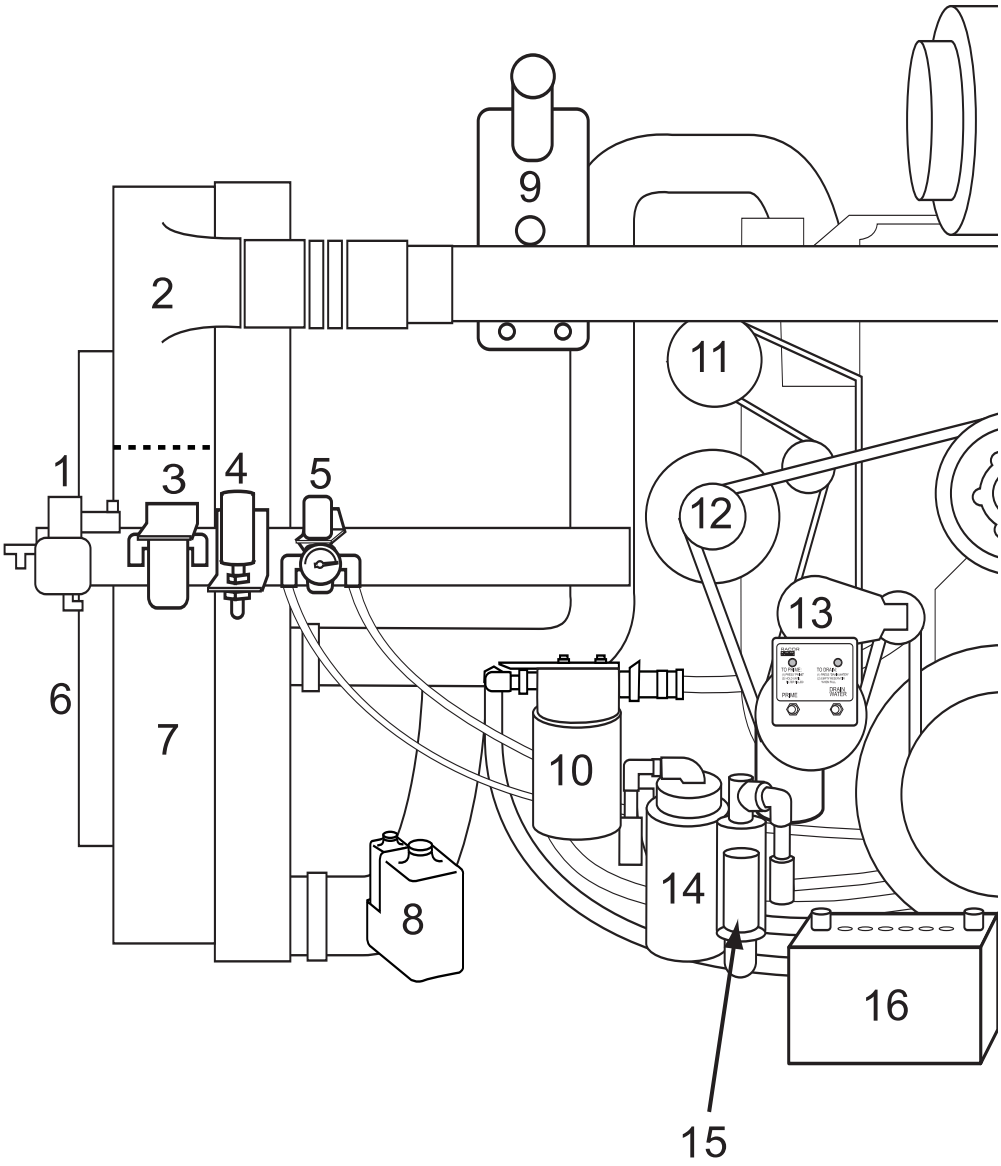
9a. Fuel Control Panel

10. Alternator
11. Engine Oil Dipstick
12. Engine Oil Fill Tube



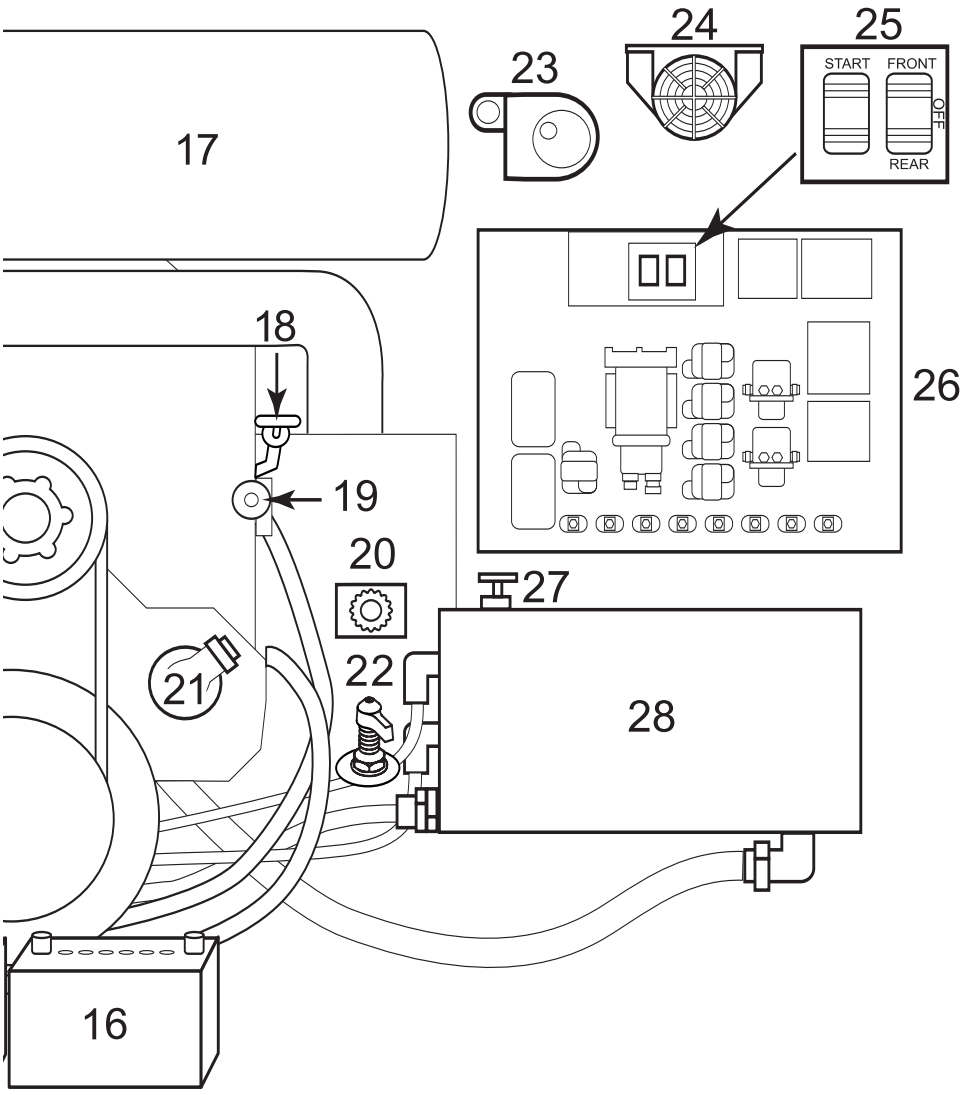
13. Hydraulic Oil Filter
14. Air Filter
15. Chassis Batteries
16. Air Governor
17. Air Conditioning Compressor
18. Chassis Batteries Disconnect
19. Hydraulic Oil Dipstick
20. Hydraulic Oil Reservoir
21. H²O Purge Overflow Bottle
22. Engine Diagnostic Plug
23. Light Reel - 12 Volt.
24. Pre strainer = Diesel fuel

Cummins ISX (Optional)



Engine Callout Data:

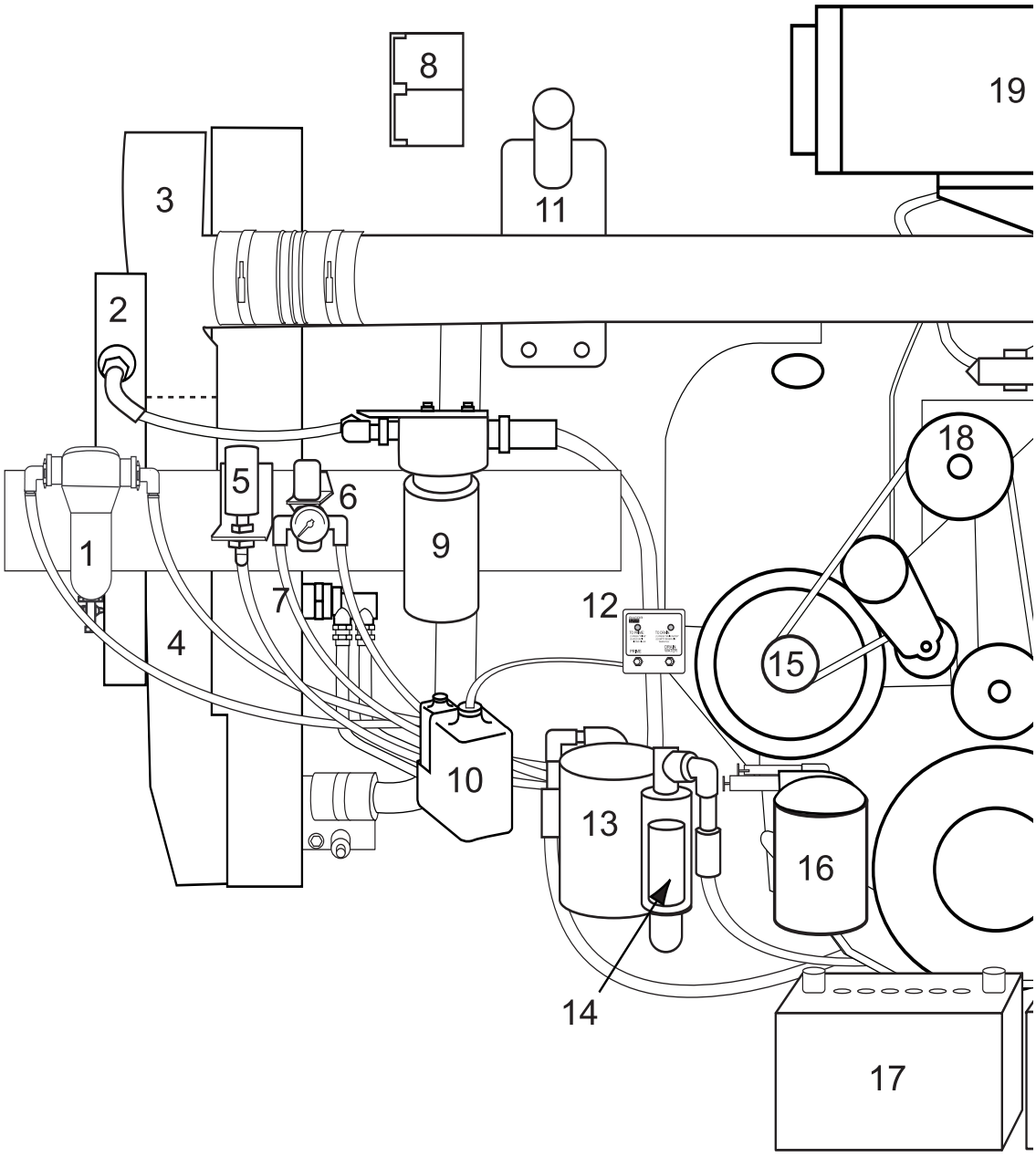
1. Coolant Reservoir
2. Back-up Alarm
3. Tag Axle Regulator
4. Air Filter Minder
5. Hydraulic Fan Control Module
6. Charge Air Cooler
7. Radiator
8. Primary Fuel Filter
9. Alternator
10. Engine Oil Dipstick
11. Engine Oil Fill
12. Hydraulic Oil Filter



090373n

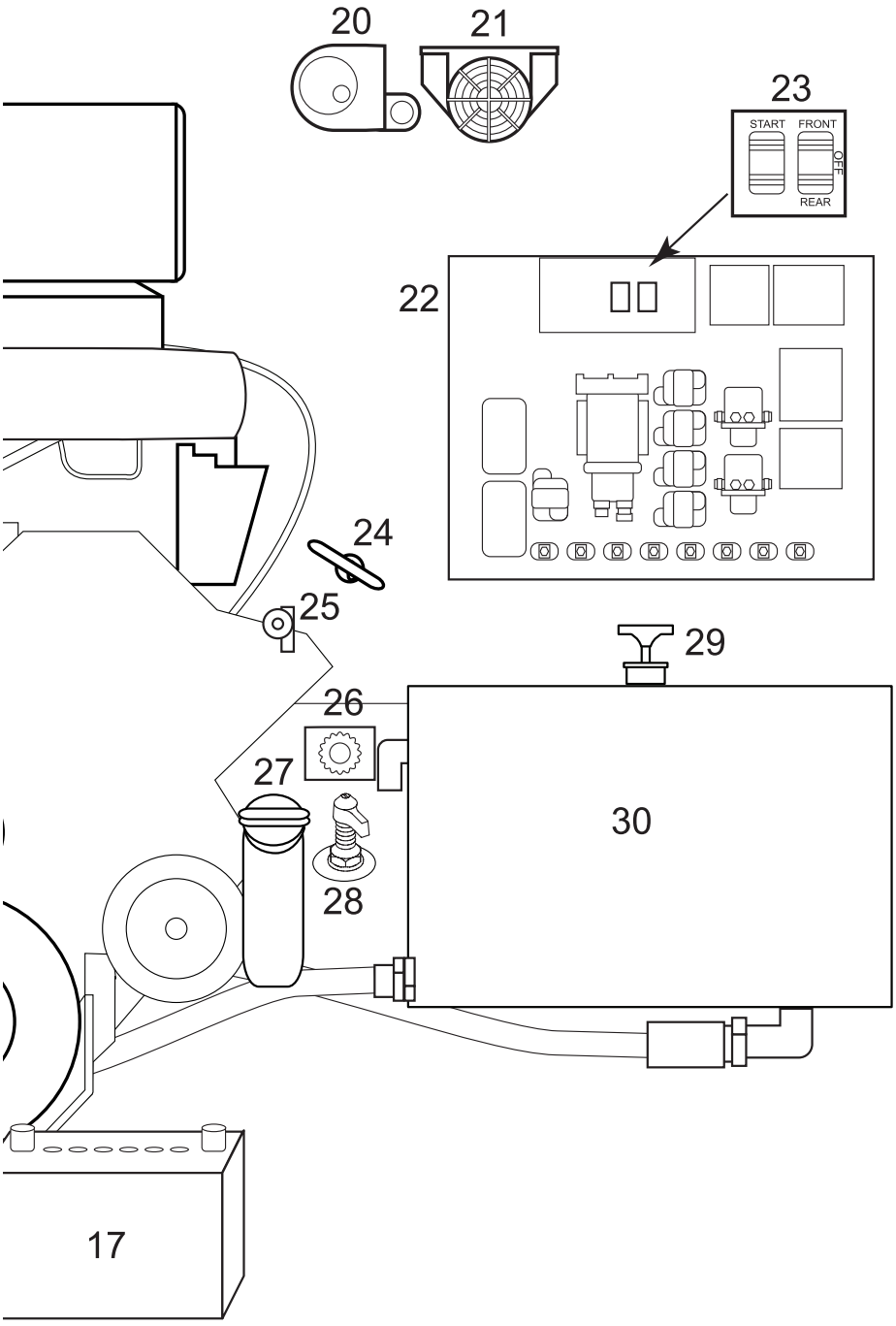
13. Air Filter
14. Air Governor
15. Air Conditioning Compressor
16. Hydraulic Oil Dipstick
17. Hydraulic Oil Reservoir
18. H2O Purge Bottle
19. Rear Electrical Box
20. Engine Front/Rear Start Switch
21. Light Reel
22. Engine Diagnostic Plug
23. Pre-straine: Diesel fuel

Detroit Diesel (Optional)



Engine Call out Data:

1. EGR Filter
2. Hydraulic Cooler
3. Charge Air Cooler
4. Radiator
5. Air Filter Minder
6. Tag Axle Regulator
7. Thermovalve (for hydraulic fans)
8. Black Heater Outlet
9. Hydraulic Oil Filter
10. H2O Purge Bottle
11. Coolant Reservoir
12. Fuel Control Panel
13. Primary Fuel Filter
14. Prestrainer: Diesel Fuel
15. Alternator



090373k exec 05.eps

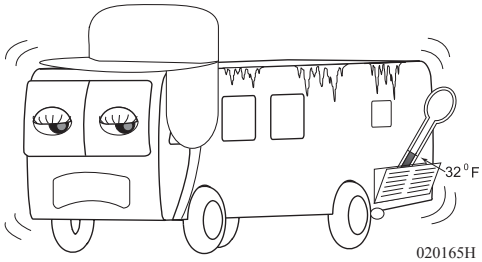
16. Coolant Filter
17. Chassis Batteries
18. Air Conditioning Compressor
19. Air Filter
20. Reel Light
21. Back-up Alarm
22. Rear Run Box
23. Rear Start Switch
24. Engine Oil Dipstick
25. Air Governor
26. Engine Diagnostic Plug
27. Engine Oil Fill Tube
28. Chassis Battery Disconnect
29. Hydraulic Oil Dipstick
30. Hydraulic Oil Reservoir

STARTING PROCEDURE - *Normal Starting*

With the foot throttle in the idle position, turn the key to the start position. When the engine starts, release the key. Allow the engine to idle with no load for three to five minutes. Engine coolant temperature should be up to normal operating range (140º F / 60º C to 212º F / 100º C) before operating the engine under full throttle.

NOTE:
The engine does not have a "wait to start" feature.

Cold Weather



In sub-freezing or extreme cold, engine oil becomes thick and battery output is reduced. Thick oil, combined with less amperage available from the battery, increases difficulty in starting the engine.

Depending on ambient temperature it may be necessary to pre-heat the engine. Located in the coolant passage in the engine is a heating unit that operates from 120 Volt AC. If it is necessary to pre-heat the engine due to ambient temperature, it is recommended to activate the block heater the night before, allowing several hours for the block heater to warm the engine.

Another method to preheat the engine is to use the Aqua-Hot. The optional Aqua-Hot engine pre-heat function will heat engine coolant and the interior. An indication of 100º F or higher of the engine temperature gauge should be sufficient for the engine to start.

It is possible to operate diesel engines in extremely cold environments when the engine is properly equipped with the correct lubricants, fuels and coolant. Cold weather operation can be defined in two categories: Winter and Arctic.

WINTER (32º to -25º F) (0º to -32º C): Use a 50% antifreeze to 50% water coolant mixture, use multi-viscosity oil meeting manufacturers specifications and fuel to have maximum cloud pour points 10º F (6º C) lower than the ambient temperature in which the motorhome operates.

ARCTIC (-25º to -65º F) (-32º to -52º C): Use a 60% antifreeze to 40% water coolant mixture. Use oil meeting manufacturers specifications and fuel to have maximum cloud pour points 10º F (6º C) lower than the ambient temperature in which the motorhome operates.

INFORMATION:
Refer to the engine manufacturers Owner's Manual for more detailed information.

NOTE:
The engine is filled with 15-40w multi-viscosity oil from the factory. Generally this will start the engine in temperature down to 15º F. If the engine has normalized to a temperature below 15º F it will be necessary to pre-heat the engine before starting.

CAUTION:
Upon cranking an engine in cold temperature, the starter may rapidly engage and disengage. If this occurs STOP attempting to crank the engine as starter damage may occur. Pre-heat the engine before making further attempts to start the engine.

Block Heat:

The switch labeled **Block Heat** operates the receptacle for the block heater cord. The block heater, depending on engine size, is rated between 850 and 1500 watts. For efficiency hook to shore power. An auxiliary method is to plug the block heater cord to a separate power cord, as long as the power cord is rated for 15 Amps and the outlet used is GFCI protected rated at 20 Amps. The engine may require several hours of pre-heating before before starting. It is recommended to start pre-heating the engine the night before departure.

To Use the Block Heater:

- Hook to shore power and plug in block heater cord to the receptacle.
- Turn on the Block Heat switch.

Aqua-Hot Engine Pre-Heat:

The diesel burner inside the Aqua-Hot heats an internal engine coolant loop. When the Aqua-Hot Engine Pre-Heat switch is turned on, an engine coolant pump inside the Aqua-hot circulates heated coolant through the engine. The time it takes for the Aqua-Hot to pre-heat the engine depends on ambient temperature. Allow at least three hours of pre-heating before attempting to start the engine.

To Use the System:

- Turn the Aqua-Hot switch at the kitchen to the **ON** position.
- Turn the Aqua-Hot Engine Pre-Heat switch at the dash to the **ON** position. This activates the engine pump inside the Aqua-Hot.

Tips:

1. When operating below 32º F, the engine block heater can enhance engine starting by easing cranking and helping to prevent engine misfire and white smoke during starting.

2. Always follow the recommended oil, fuel, and coolant specifications as outlined in the OEM Engine Manual. Proper oil viscosity and coolant concentration eases engine starting and helps to avoid engine damage.

3. Allow the engine to idle until it sufficiently warms for operation. Utilize the fast idle feature to quicken the process. Wait to operate the motorhome for at least three minutes or until the coolant temperature begins to move.

4. Check the air inlet and filter daily, or as necessary, when driving in snow conditions.

5. The demand on batteries increase during winter; check and service the batteries frequently to help ensure trouble-free starts.

6. Start out slowly with the motorhome to allow the transmission and axle lubricants time to circulate and warm before putting them under full load.

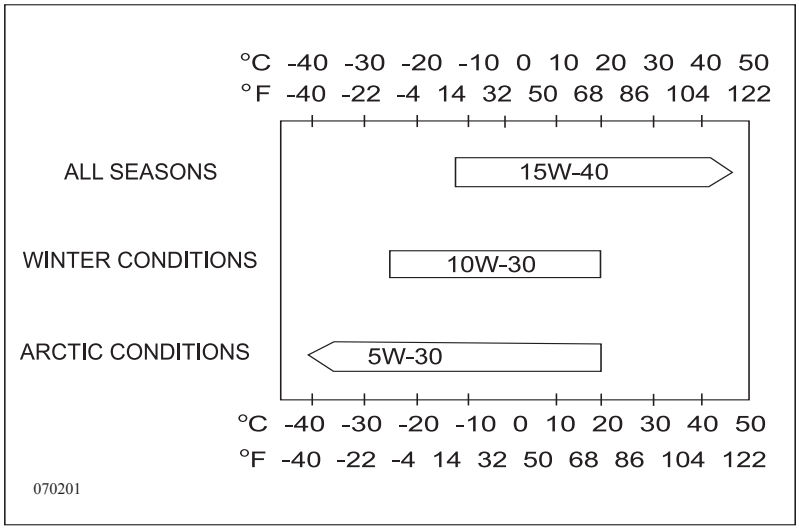
WARNING:
Do not use ether cold starting aids to start the engine as damage may occur.

ENGINE OIL

Cummins Engine Requirements:

The maintenance guidelines in the Cummins Operation & Maintenance Manual are the recommendations for the engine to extend the engine life and improve performance, resulting in cost efficient operations. A good maintenance schedule begins with a daily awareness of the engine and its various systems.

LUBRICATING OIL RECOMMENDATIONS AND SPECIFICATIONS



A high grade 15W-40 multiviscosity heavy duty lubricating oil meeting Cummins Engineering Specification CES 20071 or CES 20076, American Petroleum Institute (API) specification CH-4 which can be used as an alternative to CES 20071 is recommended. Lubricating oils meeting API CG-4 specifications may be used at a reduced drain interval. The engine uses Pennzoil 15W-40 heavy duty engine lubricating oil that meets Cummins specifications. A critical factor in maintaining engine performance and durability is the use of high grade multigrade lubricating oil and strict adherence to the maintenance service intervals.

A straight weight or monograde lubricating oil is not recommended. Shortened drain intervals may be required as determined by a close monitoring of the lubricating oil condition by means of an oil sampling program. The use of oil analysis to extend drain interval is not recommended. There are numerous variables which is the basis of the recommendation.

Synthetic oils API category III specifications are recommended for extreme cold temperatures only. Low viscosity oils, used for winter operations, will aid in starting. Synthetic oils, or oil with adequate low temperature properties used for Arctic operations where the engine cannot be kept warm when shut down, will aid in starting. The use of synthetic oils should not be used to extend drain intervals. Extended oil change intervals can decrease engine life and possibly affect the engine warranty.

Oil additives should not be used unless the oil supplier or oil manufacturer has been consulted and provided positive evidence or data establishing satisfactory performance in the engine.

NOTE:
The engine does not require a “break-in” procedure.

INFORMATION:
Refer to the Engine Manufacturers Owners Manual for details on the oil maintenance schedule.

Detroit Engine Requirements:

The maintenance guidelines in the Detroit Diesel Engine Operators Guide are the recommendations for the engine to extend the engine life and improve performance, resulting in cost efficient operations. A good maintenance schedule begins with a daily awareness of the engine and its various systems.

A high grade 15W-40 multiviscosity heavy duty lubricating oil meeting Detroit Diesel requirements, American Petroleum Institute (API) specification CI-4 is recommended for EGR equipped Engines. Lubricating oils meeting API CI-4 or CH-4 may be used in engines without EGR system.

A critical factor in maintaining engine performance and durability is the use of high grade multigrade lubricating oil and strict adherence to the maintenance service intervals. At temperatures below -20F 5W-XX and 10W-XX oils may be used provided they are API CI-4 rated for EGR equipped engines. Low viscosity oils, used for winter operations, will aid in starting.

CAUTION:
Straight weight, or monograde lubricating oil, is not recommended.

CAUTION:
Do not use oil analysis to extend drain intervals.

Synthetic oils may be used in Detroit Diesel engines provided they are API licensed and meet the performance and chemical requirements of non-synthetic oils outlined in the Detroit Diesel Engine Operators Guide. Synthetic oils can improve low temperature flow properties and high temperature oxidation resistance. Synthetic oils, or oil with adequate low temperature properties used for Arctic operations where the engine cannot be kept warm when shut down, will aid in starting. The use of synthetic oils should not be used to extend drain intervals. Extended oil change intervals can decrease engine life and possibly affect the engine warranty.

Oil additives should not be used in the Detroit Diesel engines. Lubricants meeting the Detroit Diesel specifications outlined in the Operators Guide contain a balanced additive treatment. Supplemental additives are generally not necessary and can be harmful.

NOTE:
Engine damage resulting in the use of supplemental oil additives is not covered by Detroit Diesel Corporation warranty.

NOTE:
The engine does not require a "break-in" procedure.

ENGINE SHUTDOWN

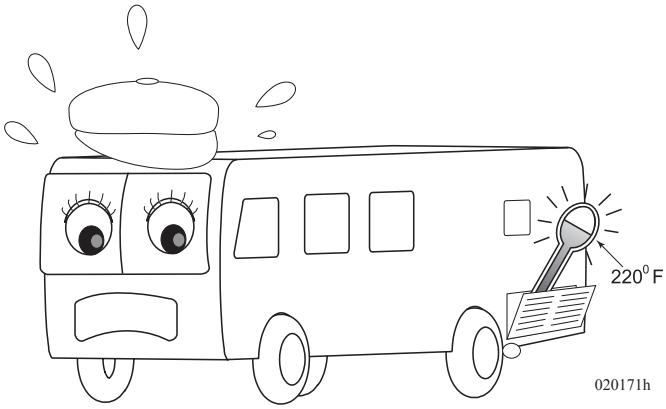
General guidelines for shutting the engine down are fairly simplistic. Allow the engine to idle three to five minutes after a full load operation. This allows adequate cool down of pistons, cylinders, bearings and turbocharger components. Under normal driving conditions, exiting the highway is generally lighter engine operation and the need for the three to five minutes is not necessary.

Extended Engine Shutdown

When the motorhome has been sitting for extended periods, 30 days or more, verify all the fluid levels are correct. Follow the normal starting procedures. If the oil pressure gauge does not register within 15 seconds, shut off the engine immediately to avoid damage. Consult the engine manufacturer's owner's manual for guidelines on troubleshooting low oil pressure, or contact a qualified service technician. Allow the engine to idle for five minutes before operating under a load.

COOLANT

A fully formulated antifreeze or coolant containing a precharge of Supplemental Coolant Additives (SCA) is recommended to significantly simplify coolant system maintenance. The difference between a fully formatted antifreeze and a fully formatted coolant is the percentage of water. Both contain balance amounts of antifreeze, SCA, buffering compounds and a percentage of good clean quality water. The antifreeze of coolant must meet ethylene glycol or propylene glyco recommendations.



A good clean quality water in a 50/50 ratio (40 to 60% working range) mixed with fully formatted antifreeze will provide protection from -34º F to 228º F. The 50/50 mix ratio must be premixed prior to being put in the system. Placing antifreeze and water in the cooling system is not recommended. Consult the manufacturer's OEM for more details.

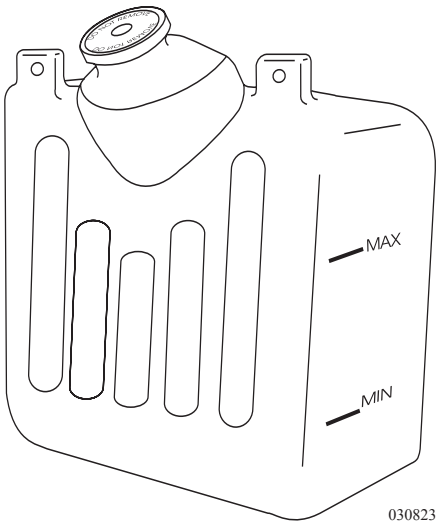
NOTE:
An over concentration of antifreeze, or the use of high silicate antifreeze, can cause damage to the coolant system and engine. Antifreeze is essential in every climate.

WARNING:
Do not continue engine operation when engine temperature rises above 220º F. At 220º. Engine warning light will illuminate and the engine will begin to de-rate in power output. Continued operation will result in engine damage.

NOTE:
Consult the engine manufacturer owners guide for more detailed information.

Engine Coolant Reservoir (Cummins):

The engine coolant reservoir is connected to the radiator by a hose. When the motorhome is driven, coolant heats and expands. A portion of fluid displaced by expansion flows from the radiator into the reservoir tank. When the engine is stopped, the coolant cools and contracts. Coolant is drawn back in the radiator by a vacuum. Thus, the radiator is kept filled with coolant to the desired level at all times resulting in increased cooling efficiency. The coolant level should be at, or slightly above, the appropriate mark on the reservoir tank when the system is cold.



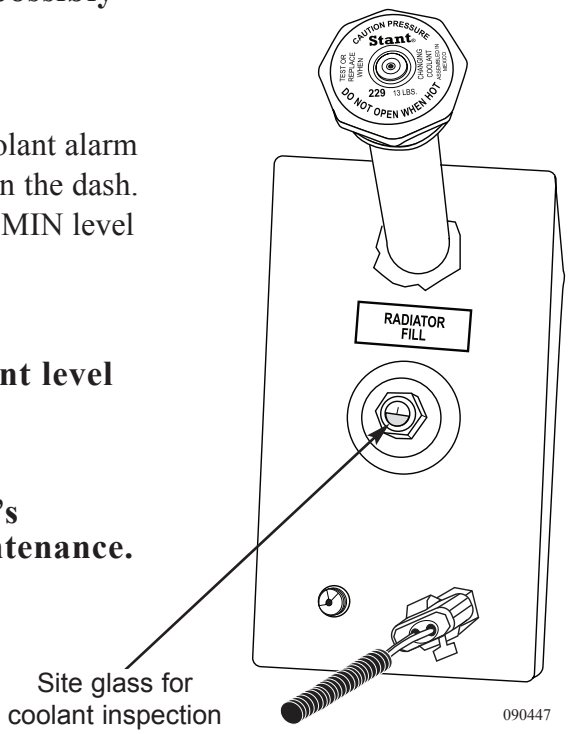
Cummins ISM Engine Coolant Reservoir

CAUTION:
To avoid scalding hot steam or coolant from being released from the engine cooling system, never remove the reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot. Failure to follow this warning may result in damage to the engine cooling system and possibly cause severe personal injury.

- Check the coolant level daily or when refueling.
- If the coolant is below the MIN mark, the low coolant alarm will sound and the low coolant light will appear on the dash.
- The coolant level remains between the MAX and MIN level in the reservoir.

INSPECTION:
Stop the motorhome and inspect the coolant level before continued operation.

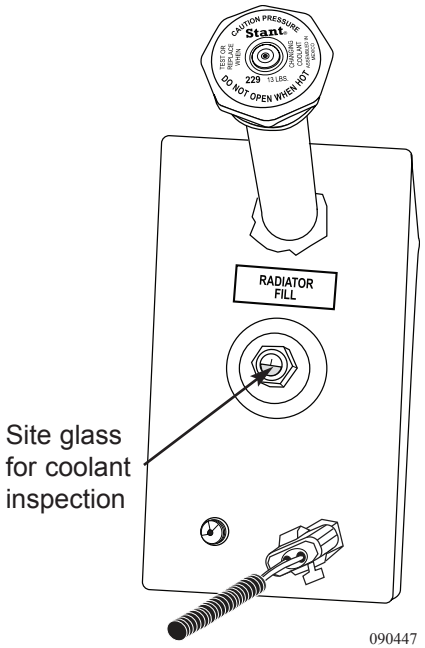
INFORMATION:
Refer to the Engine Manufacturer Owner's Manual for details on engine coolant maintenance.



Cummins ISX Engine Coolant Reservoir

Engine Coolant Reservoir (Detroit):

The engine coolant reservoir is connected to the radiator by a hose. When the motorhome is driven, coolant heats and expands. A portion of fluid displaced by expansion flows from the radiator into the reservoir tank. When the engine is stopped, the coolant cools and contracts. Coolant is drawn back in the radiator by a vacuum. Thus, the radiator is kept filled with coolant to the desired level at all times resulting in increased cooling efficiency. The coolant level should be at the sight glass on the reservoir tank when the system is cold.



Series 60

CAUTION:
To avoid scalding hot steam or coolant from being released from the engine cooling system, never remove the reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot. Failure to follow this warning may result in damage to the engine's cooling system and possibly cause severe personal injury.

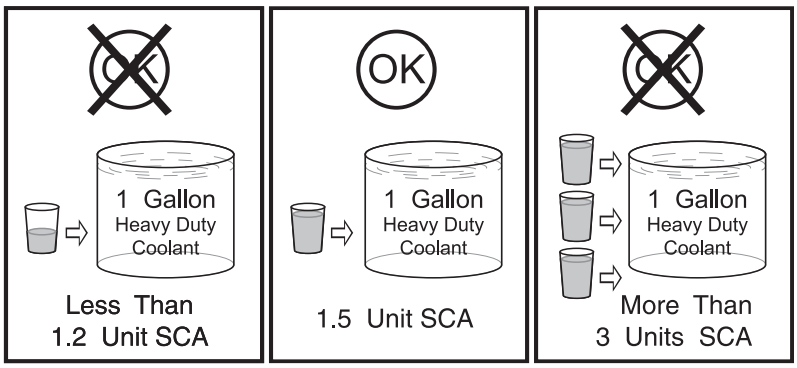
- Check the coolant level when refueling.
- If the coolant is below the minimum level, the low coolant alarm will sound and the low coolant light will appear on the dash.
- The coolant level in the reservoir is visible in sight glass as green.

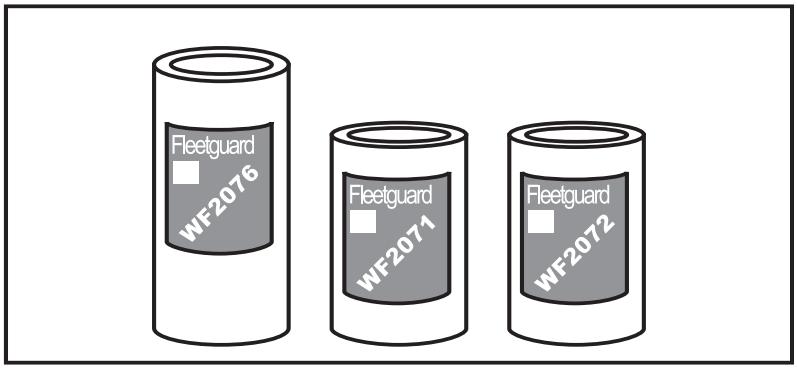
INSPECTION:
Stop the motorhome and inspect the coolant level before continued operation.

Cummins Engine Coolant Additive:

Fully formulated products contain SCA and are required to protect the cooling system from fouling, solder blooming and general corrosion. The coolant filter is required to protect the coolant system from abrasive materials, debris and precipitated coolant additives.

Supplement coolant additives, or equivalent, are used to prevent cylinder liner pitting, corrosion and scale deposits in the cooling system. Use the correct Fleetguard coolant filter to maintain the recommended SCA concentration in the system. Maintain the correct concentration by changing the service filter at each oil drain interval.





090331

NOTE:
The correct filter is determined by the total cooling system capacity and oil drain interval. Refer to the Coolant Capacity Specifications in this section.

CAUTION:
Insufficient concentration of the coolant additives will result in cylinder liner pitting and engine failure. The SCA concentration must not fall below 1.2 units or exceed 3 units per gallon of cooling system capacity.

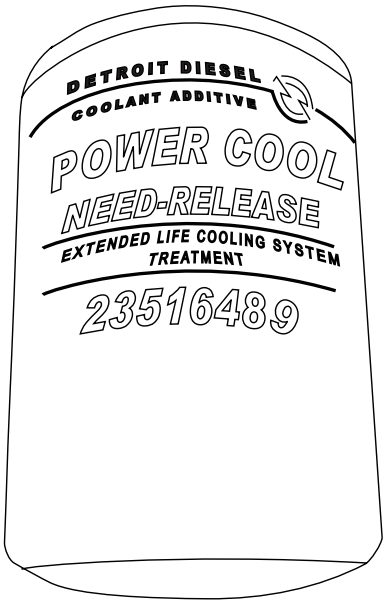
Use the correct Fleetguard coolant filter to maintain the recommended SCA concentration in the system. Maintain the correct concentration by changing the service coolant filter at each oil drain interval. The oil pressure gauge, temperature gauge, warning lamps and other safety lamps should be checked daily to ensure proper operations.

NOTE:
Refer to the OEM engine manual for maintenance instructions. Engine coolant must be changed every two years. The correct filter is determined by the total cooling system capacity. Refer to the *Cummins* manual for additional information.

Detroit Engine Coolant Additive (DDC Series 60):

Fully formulated products contain SCA and are required to protect the cooling system from fouling, solder blooming and general corrosion. The coolant filter is required to protect the coolant system from abrasive materials, debris and recipitated coolant additives.

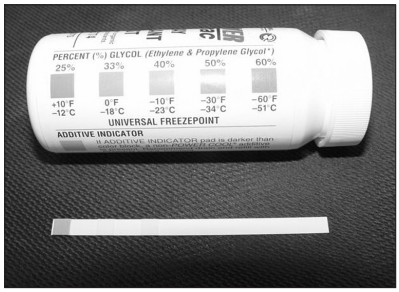
Supplement coolant additives, or equivalent, are used to prevent cylinder liner pitting, corrosion and scale deposits in the cooling system. Use the correct Power Cool coolant filter to maintain the recommended SCA concentration in the system. Maintain the correct concentration by changing the service filter and replacing filter according to test strip results.



090462

Power Cool 3000	Coolant Concentration Limits
Boron	125 - 500 PPM
Nitrite	900 - 3200 PPM
Nitrate	0 - 1000
Silicone	50 - 250 PPM
Phosphorous	0 PPM
pH	8.0 - 11.0

	Maximum Allowable	
	Parts per Million	Grains Per Gallon
Chlorides	40	2.5
Sulfates	100	5.8
Total Dissolved Solids	340	20
Total Hardness - Magnesium and Calcium	170	2.5



Powertracstrips3.tif

CAUTION:
Insufficient concentration of the coolant additives will result in cylinder liner pitting and engine failure. The SCA concentration must not fall below or exceed the manufactuerers recommendations as determined by 3-way test strip check.

Use the correct Power Cool coolant filter to maintain the recommended SCA concentration in the system. Maintain the correct concentration by changing the service coolant filter as indicated by the test strip result at every oil change.

NOTE:
Refer to OEM manual for maintenance instructions. Coolant must be changed every two years.

NOTE:
The correct filter is determined by Detroit Diesel Corporation. Refer to the *Detroit Diesel Operators Guide* for additional information.

When performing maintenance, it is also necessary to **inspect** other components of the cooling system.

Have an **inspection** performed of the surge tank cap seal and have the cap pressure tested, at each oil change. The charge air cooler and radiator also requires an **inspection** for cracks, broken welds, secure mounting, and general cleanliness.

It may be necessary to clean the radiator and external coolers more often under certain conditions. Leaves, twigs, road debris and other contaminants can block the radiator and cooler fins resulting in reduced cooling system performance. Blockage can vary depending on road conditions, climate, and regional conditions. Check the radiator and external coolers weekly for blockage, and clean as required. To clean the radiator and external coolers, compressed air is recommended. In the event that road grime, oil, or inadequate cleaning with compressed air is encountered, a high pressure washer and degreaser may be used with caution, as excessive pressure can bend the radiator fins.

This service includes draining the engine coolant, flushing/cleaning the cooling system, **inspecting** the water pump standpipe, replacing the thermostat, gasket and seal, and replacing the coolant and SCA element.

Coolant Hoses:

Rotten, swollen and worn hoses, as well as loose connections, are frequent causes of coolant system problems. Overheating can be caused by a collapsed hose or a clog caused by rubber shedding from a rotton hose. Replace any hose found to be cracked, swollen or damaged. Connections should be **inspected** periodically and hose clamps tightened.

Every 12 months - Inspect all hoses, clamps, and fittings for leaks due to cracking, softness, and loose clamps/fittings. Look for signs of fluid leaks, damaged end fittings, ballooning, chafed, kinked, or crushed hoses, and loose clamps and fittings. Correct any deficiencies found.

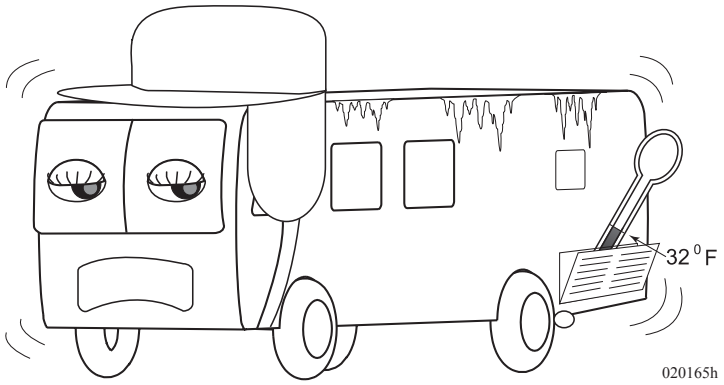
Coolant Overheated:

If the engine is overheated, never pour cold coolant into a hot engine. The sudden change in temperature may crack the cylinder head or block. If the engine is hot, fill slowly to prevent rapid cooling and distortion of engine castings.

Inspect the radiator core and CAC for dirt and debris build-up. Wash any accumulations using high-pressure water, being careful not to damage the fins from excessive pressure. Any grease or oil build-up should first be treated with a non-caustic degreaser to ensure a thorough cleaning.

Coolant System - Thawing:

If the coolant system becomes frozen, the motorhome must be towed. Place the motorhome in a warm area until completely thawed. If the engine is operated when the cooling system is frozen it will result in engine overheating due to insufficient coolant circulation. Once thawed, check engine, radiator and related components for damage caused by expansion of frozen coolant.



CHARGE AIR COOLER

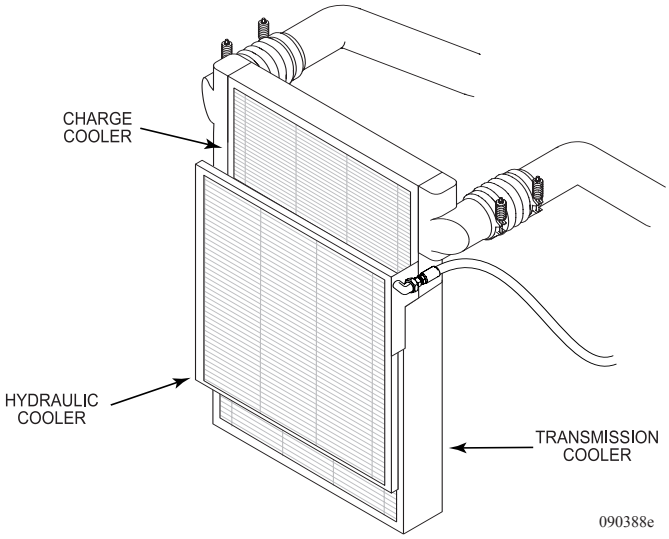
The diesel engine uses compression to ignite the fuel/air charge. To increase compression inside the combustion chamber (resulting in increased power output) a turbocharger is added to the engine. The turbocharger is a paired housing assembly with impellers inside each housing connected by a common shaft. One impeller is propelled by the engine exhaust, which drives the other impeller. The function of the other impeller is to increase compression inside the combustion chamber by forcing air into the intake manifold. This process works well, however, the intake air charge is heated two different ways. Through convection by the exhaust gases driving the turbocharger and any time air is compressed heat is produced. This has a negative effect inside the combustion chamber resulting in lost power potential. Therefore, a Charge Air Cooler (CAC) is installed to cool the intake air before it enters the engine. The CAC may be mounted to either the top or side of the radiator. The CAC performs the same function as a radiator, cooling air instead of liquid. Ambient air passing through the CAC will cool the engine intake air charge.

After leaving the turbocharger, intake air is compressed and heated to approximately 300º to 375º F., depending on the engine load and throttle position. Before air enters the intake manifold, the CAC cools the intake air temperature to the engine manufacturer specifications. Lowered intake air temperatures reduce exhaust emissions, improve fuel economy and increase horsepower. The CAC will continually expand and contract up to ¼" as throttle increases and decreases.

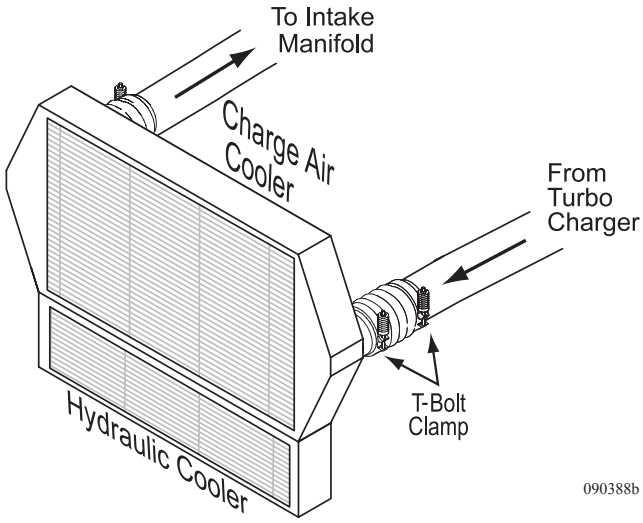
Visually inspect the charge air cooler, every six months, for dirt and debris that may be blocking the fins. If the motorhome develops an oil leak, there is a possibility that the oil will coat the fins of the CAC. Dust will adhere to the oil film and eventually clog the fins, greatly reducing cooling efficiency. When the oil leak is repaired, the CAC must be thoroughly cleaned.

During each oil change **inspect** the engine side of the radiator/CAC assembly for foreign objects that may cause restriction.

Spraying degreaser on the charge air cooler, as well as using a steam cleaner, will not damage the CAC. **However, pressure washer and steam cleaner nozzles placed too close to the CAC can bend the fins.** The recommended cleaning procedure for the CAC and the radiator, is to use a bucket of mild soap and water. Carefully wash with a bristle brush then rinse using a garden hose, with minimum water pressure, standing back a distance to avoid bending the fins.



ISX & Series 60 Assembly



ISM Assembly

BRAKE - AUXILIARY (ENGINE BRAKE)

Auxiliary braking systems are designed to supplement the standard air braking system. These devices are not designed to bring the motorhome to a complete stop; however, can assist in controlling the speed of the motorhome. Use of the engine braking system can extend the life of pads, shoes, rotors and drums, saving on costly service brake repairs.

The "Jake" brake is an engine-braking device that operates on a different principle than an exhaust brake. An engine brake functions by releasing engine compression. The effect of the engine brake increases with engine speed. When the engine brake is activated the Allison transmission automatically downshifts, utilizing the gear selected and maximizing the engine braking effect.

When the engine brake activates, an electrical signal is sent to the engine ECM (electronic control module). The ECM controls a hydraulic circuit that opens the exhaust valves near the end of the compression stroke. The potential engine braking power depends on turbocharger boost pressure, engine speed, compression ratio, injector timing and when the exhaust valves open.

Located on the left console is a **HI/LOW** switch. The **HI/LOW** switch allows for the selection of different levels of engine braking power. Selecting **LOW** activates the engine brake on three cylinders. Selecting the **HI** setting activates the engine brake on six cylinders.

The engine brake will not be active when:

- Engine speed goes below 850 RPM.
- An electronic fault code is active.

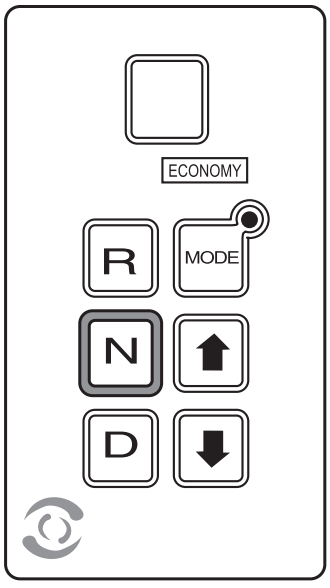
Applying the service brakes will disengage the cruise control. Activating the Jake Brake foot switch will disengage the cruise control and activate the engine brake and brake lights. Use the engine brake when traveling down a hill, on the freeway or exiting the off ramp. The engine brake will allow the engine temperature to decrease while going downhill.

NOTE:
Idle the engine three to five minutes at approximately 1000 RPM to warm the engine before activating the engine brake. Do not operate the engine brake until the engine oil temperature is above 30º C (86º F).

WARNING:
The engine brake is designed to assist the motorhome service brakes. Not for stopping.

TRANSMISSION - *Shift Selector*

The Allison World transmission incorporates the World Transmission Electronic Control (WTEC) system. The system is compromised of five major components connected by a wiring harness: the electronic control unit (ECU), engine throttle position sensor, three speed sensors, remote shift selector (keypad) and the control module. The ECU processes information received from the throttle position sensor, speed sensor, pressure switch and shift selector to activate solenoids on the control module in the transmission. The solenoids control oncoming and off going clutch pressure to provide closed loop shift control. This is accomplished by matching transmission and engine RPM during a shift to establish a desired shift profile within the ECU.



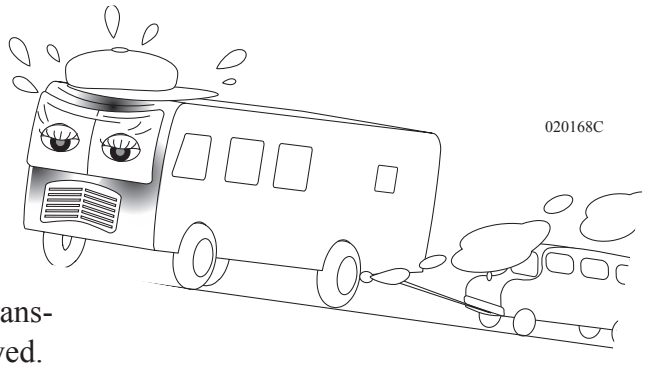
080355c

The system is monitored for the first 30 seconds of each engine start. This is referred to as “auto-detect.” Auto-detect searches for presence of data inputs of transmission components. Auto-detect enables the ECU functions and diagnostics to respond to items that are detected.

Another feature of the transmission is the ability to “learn” or “adapt.” The electronic control system optimizes shift quality by using “Adaptive Shifting.” A wide variety of varied shift conditions is required before optimizing shift quality. Generally, five typical shifts of a consistent shift type is needed to optimize shift quality.

The range selection is accomplished via the remote push button selector. The controls are **R**, **N**, **D**, arrow **UP**, arrow **DOWN**, **MODE** button and a digital display window. Under normal operation press the **D** button and the digital display shows the highest forward range attainable for shift selection in use. The digital display window will also indicate codes for abnormal conditions, and can even be a useful troubleshooting aid. When the ignition is turned **ON**, the display should be visible. This display indicates the presence of neutral start command. If the display indication is not visible, there is no power to the selector and the transmission will not allow the engine to start. This is an indicator of electrical problems with the engine batteries or ECU on shift selector keypad.

The window displays gear selection, various transmission modes, oil level and transmission fault codes.



Keypad Functions:

- Select the **REVERSE** gear by pressing **R**.
- Select **NEUTRAL** by pressing **N**. The area around the **N** button has a raised ridge so the driver can orient his hand to the push buttons by touch, without looking at the display.
- Select **DRIVE** range by pressing **D**. The highest forward gear appears in the display and the transmission will shift to first gear though 6 is displayed.
- The **UPSHIFT** and **DOWNSHIFT** arrow buttons are used to select a higher (if not in "**D**") or lower (if not in "**1**") forward range. These buttons are not functional in **NEUTRAL** or **REVERSE**. One press changes the gear range selected by one. If the button is held continuously, the selected range will continue to change up or down until the button is released or until the highest/lowest possible range of gears is selected.
- The **MODE** button enables a secondary shift point to be selected. This is commonly referred to as **Economy**. It is further used by the service technician to access diagnostic codes when troubleshooting. The diagnostic circuitry must be enabled to display.
- When the Auxiliary Braking device (Jacob brake) is used, the display changes to a default reading of **2** or **3**. This default is pre-selected at the factory and can only be reprogrammed by an authorized Allison Service Center. The transmission is not in second or third gear. This is only a reference for the transmission downshift points to optimize the engine braking effect.
- Engine temperature may rise when ascending long grades using full throttle. Towing a load will increase the demand on the engine. If this occurs, manually shift the transmission down to the next lower gear and use less throttle. The engine will use less fuel and RPM should increase.

NOTE:
The transmission will not accept a manually selected gear change to occur if the gear selected is out of the specified operating range.

NOTE:
The transmission will not shift into gear from Neutral if the engine RPM is at or above 900. The display will flash "6" indicating the engine RPM is excessive. Select "N" and lower the engine RPM.

Transmission Check Indicator

The electronic control system of the transmission is programmed to inform the operator of a problem with the transmission system and reacts automatically to protect the operator, motorhome and transmission. When the Electronic Control Unit (ECU) detects a **DO NOT SHIFT** (DNS) condition the ECU restricts shifting, displays the **CHECK TRANS** warning on the LCD and registers a fault code.

NOTE:
For some problems, fault codes may be registered without the ECU activating the CHECK TRANS warning. An Allison Transmission authorized service outlet should be consulted whenever there is a transmission related concern. They have the equipment to check diagnostic codes and correct problems which may arise.

If the **CHECK TRANS** warning remains on after start up, the transmission system should be immediately checked.

Continued display of the **CHECK TRANS** warning during vehicle operation indicates that the ECU has signaled a diagnostic code. The **CHECK TRANS** warning is accompanied by a flashing display from the shift selector. The shift selector display will show actual range attained and the transmission will not respond to shift selector requests.

Indications from the shift selector are provided to inform the operator that the transmission is not performing as designed and is operating at reduced capabilities. Before turning the ignition off, the transmission may be operated for a short time in the selected range in order to “limp home” for service assistance. Service should be performed immediately in order to minimize potential damage to the transmission.

When **CHECK TRANS** displays on the LCD, the keypad will not respond to command and the transmission generally will downshift to 4th gear. The torque converter will not "lock-up" and engine speed is automatically reduced. Direction changes (i.e. forward to reverse) will not be allowed. Locate a safe secure place to park the motorhome. If the engine is shut off, then engaged after a Check Trans indication, the transmission remains in Neutral until the fault has been corrected.

Diagnostic Codes:

The diagnostic codes are numerical representations of malfunctions in the transmission operations. Each code is a two digit main code and a two digit sub code. The codes, when detected, are logged in the ECU memory. These codes will fall in two classes: active and inactive. Active codes are codes currently effecting the ECU process. Inactive codes are retained but may not effect the ECU process. The diagnostic mode must be entered. A maximum of five codes, **D1** to **D5**, may be listed at one time. The highest priority code will be listed in **D1**. The **MODE** button will enable selection of sequential codes.

To Enable Diagnostic Code Selection Display:

- Stop the motorhome at a safe location.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Simultaneously press the **UP** and **DOWN** arrows twice to enter the stored codes. The first time the arrows are pressed will indicate the oil level display. Press the **UP** and **DOWN** arrows again.
- The codes will display one digit at a time.
- The mode button is pressed to scroll through the codes.
- Any code obtained should be noted and reported to an Allison Service Center for evaluation and possible repair.
- Inactive codes can be cleared by holding the **MODE** button for approximately three seconds. Some codes are self clearing while others will require service or ignition on/off cycles to clear.

Periodic Inspections

The Allison MH Series requires minimum maintenance. Careful attention to the fluid level and the connections for the electronic and hydraulic circuits is very important.

For easier **inspection** the transmission should be kept clean. Make periodic checks for loose bolts and leaking fluid lines. Check the condition of the electrical harnesses regularly. Check the engine cooling system occasionally for evidence of transmission fluid which would indicate a faulty oil cooler. Report any abnormal condition to an Allison dealer.

Prevent Major Problems:

Help the WTEC III control system oversee the operation of the transmission. Minor problems can be kept from becoming major problems if an Allison Transmission distributor or dealer is notified when one of these conditions occur:

1. Shifting feels odd.
2. Transmission leaks fluid.
3. Unusual transmission-related sounds (changes in sound caused by normal engine thermostatic fan cycling, while climbing a long grade with a heavy load, have been mistaken for transmission-related sounds).
4. The **CHECK TRANS** light comes on frequently.

The Importance of Proper Fluid Levels:

Transmission fluid cools, lubricates and transmits hydraulic power. Proper fluid levels must be maintained at all times. If fluid level is too low, the converter and clutches do not receive an adequate supply of fluid. If fluid level is too high, the fluid can aerate. Aerated fluid can cause the transmission to shift erratically or overheat.

The MH Series oil level sensor (OLS) allows the operator to obtain an indication of sensor fluid level from the keypad shift selector. Frequently check for the presence of oil level diagnostics in the transmission. If the OLS has not been detected, troubleshooting of the OLS circuit is required. This will have to be performed by an Allison Service Center. After the OLS circuit is repaired, ensure that reset of the "auto-detect" or manual selection of the OLS function by using a Pro-Link transmission diagnostic center.

Fluid Level Check with the Keypad:

To Enter Oil Level Sense Mode:

- Park the motorhome on a level surface. Place the transmission in "**N**" and set parking brake.
- The transmission temperature must be at least 140º F./60º C, otherwise an error code will appear.
- The motorhome must be stationary and in **Neutral** for approximately two minutes to allow the fluid to settle in the sump.
- The engine must be idling lower than 800 RPM.
- Simultaneously press the **Up** and **Down** buttons once.

The transmission is now in **Oil Level Sense** mode. The display will indicate one character at a time. An "**o**" followed by "**L**" represents **oil level check** mode. One of the following will be indicated:

- **"o K"** represents the level is okay.
- **"Lo"** represents a low fluid level followed by a numeric indication of the number of quarts needed fill the sump.
- **"HI"** represents an overfull condition followed by a numeric indication of the number of quarts the sump is overfull.
- A countdown of flashing numbers indicate the fluid is still settling. When the fluid has stabilized in the sump the true level will be indicated.
- If an **"o" "L" "-"** followed by a number displays, the oil level sensor could not read the level due to one of conditions listed in the "Common Oil Level Fault Codes" chart.

Common Oil Level Fault Codes:

Display	Cause of Code
o,L - O,X	Setting time too short
o,L - 5,0	Engine speed (RPM) too low
o,L - 5,9	Engine speed (RPM) too high
o,L - 6,5	Neutral must be selected
o,L - 7,0	Sump fluid temperature too low
o,L - 7,9	Sump fluid temperature too high
o,L - 8,9	Output shaft rotation
o,L - 9,5	Sensor failure

To Exit Oil Level Sense Mode:

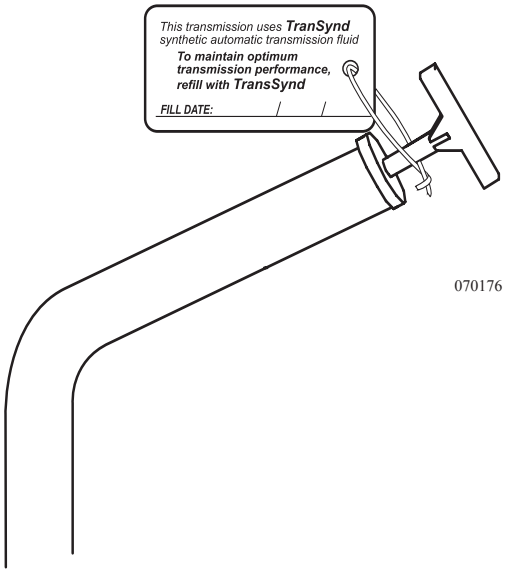
• Press **Neutral**, **Reverse** or **Drive**.

NOTE:
Reading between the Oil Level Sensor and the dipstick may not agree because the OLS compensates for fluid temperatures.

NOTE:
To correctly check the transmission fluid level using the dipstick, the transmission fluid must be at operating temperature. The oil level sensor method of checking the fluid level compensates for transmission fluid temperature between 60º C - 104º C (140º F - 220º F). Any temperature below 60º C (140º F) or above 104º C (220º F) will result in an error code.

TRANSMISSION LUBRICATING FLUID

Transmission performance, reliability and durability are dependent on the type of lubricating fluids used. From the factory, the transmission has been filled with TranSynd™ synthetic transmission fluid. TranSynd™ synthetic transmission fluid extends the service intervals. A small tag has been attached to the dipstick identifying that the transmission is filled with TranSynd™ synthetic transmission fluid. The dipstick/oil fill is located between the engine and transmission underneath the engine access door in the bedroom.



CAUTION:
Do not mix Dexron III® transmission fluid with TranSynd™ Synthetic transmission fluid.

Fluid and Internal Filters Change Interval:

Fluid and internal filters may require changing earlier depending on the severity of operating conditions. Fluid must also be changed whenever there is evidence of dirt or high temperature operation as indicated by discoloration, strong odor or fluid analysis. Local conditions, severity of operation or duty cycle will dictate more or less frequent service intervals.

INFORMATION:
Refer to the Allison transmission owner's manual or contact an authorized Allison service center for change intervals.

Fluid Levels - Cold Check

Transmission Oil Level Dipstick.

Cold Check - Manual Check Procedures:

The concept of a cold check is to determine adequate fluid level for safe operating until a hot check can be performed.

To Check the Fluid When Cold:

- Park the motorhome on a level surface. Set the parking brake.
- With the engine operating at a low idle, put the transmission in **N** (Neutral).
- Chock the wheels to prevent the motorhome from moving.
- Allow the engine to run at idle (500-800 RPM) for one minute.
- Apply the service brakes and shift to **D** (Drive), then to **N** (Neutral) and next to **R** (Reverse) to fill the system. Finally shift to **N** (Neutral) and release the service brakes. Allow the engine to continue to run at idle (500-800 RPM).
- Remove the dipstick and wipe clean. Reinsert the dipstick fully into the tube, then remove to check fluid level. Repeat, to verify reading if needed.
- Safe operating level is anywhere within the **COLD CHECK** band on the dipstick. The fluid level is sufficient enough to operate until a **HOT CHECK** can be performed.
- If the level is not within this band, add or drain the fluid as necessary to put the level to the middle of the **COLD CHECK** band.
- Perform the **HOT CHECK** at the first opportunity after reaching normal operating temperatures (160º - 200º F/71º - 93º C).

CAUTION:

Low or high fluid level can cause overheating and irregular shift patterns. These conditions can damage the transmission if not corrected.

Fluid Levels - Hot Check

- Fluid level rises as temperature increases. Fluid must be hot to ensure an accurate check.
- Be sure fluid has reached normal operating temperature (160º - 200º F/71º - 93º C). If a transmission temperature gauge is not present, check the fluid level when the engine water temperature gauge has stabilized and the transmission has been operated under the load for at least one hour.
- Park the motorhome on a level surface and shift to **N** (Neutral). Apply the parking brake and allow the engine to idle (500 - 800 RPM).
- After wiping the dipstick clean, check the fluid level. Safe operating level is anywhere within the **HOT RUN** band on the dipstick.
- The width of the **HOT RUN** band is approximately one quart of fluid at normal temperature range.
- If the level is not within this band, add or drain the fluid as necessary to put the level within the **HOT RUN** band.
- Ensure that fluid level checks are consistent. Check the level more than once. If readings are not consistent, ensure the transmission breather is clean and not clogged. If readings are still not consistent, contact the nearest Allison distributor or dealer.

Low sulfur #2 diesel fuel or #1 and #2 commercial winter blend diesel fuels are the most common commercially available and recommended for use.

The use of #2 diesel fuel will result in optimum engine performance.

Try to obtain fuel from sources that are serviced often such as large truck service facilities. The fuel supply is fresh and the possibility of introducing contaminants or water into the fuel system is reduced. It is important to not empty the engine of fuel. The fuel system on the engine is sensitive to air. If the engine is allowed to run out of fuel, the fuel system will need to be thoroughly primed before the engine will start. Refer to the *Fuel Filters* article for priming instructions.

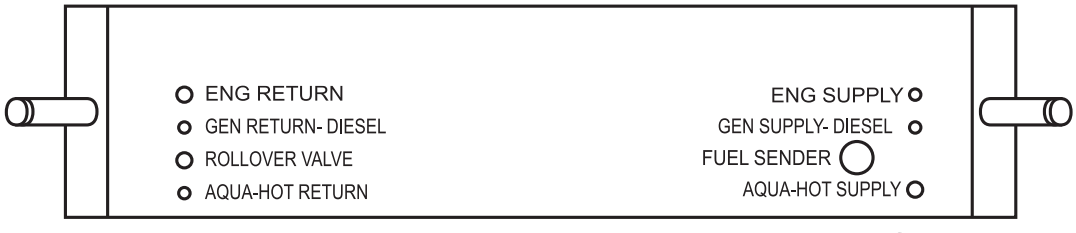
WARNING:
Do not mix gasohol with diesel fuel. This mixture can cause an explosion.

NOTE:
If the engine has run out of fuel it will need to be primed. Refer to Fuel Filters for instructions on priming the fuel system.

NOTE:
Due to the precise tolerances of diesel injection systems, it is extremely important that fuel be kept clean and free of dirt or water. Dirt or water in the system can cause severe damage to both the fuel pump and the fuel injectors. Fuel additives for lubricity are not recommended. There are numerous diesel fuel additives to help remove moisture from fuel, prevent microbe growth and to prevent gelling during cold weather. Before adding any type of fuel additive or extender, consult the *Manufacturer's* Owner's Manual.

Fuel Tank

The diesel fuel tank is made of aluminum. Pick-up and return lines are placed at opposite ends of the tank inhibiting fuel aeration. The engine pickup tube is cut at a 45° angle to allow optimum flow to the engine. The generator and Aqua-Hot intake tubes are set to approximately ¼ of a tank. This will prevent depleting the fuel supply while dry camping.



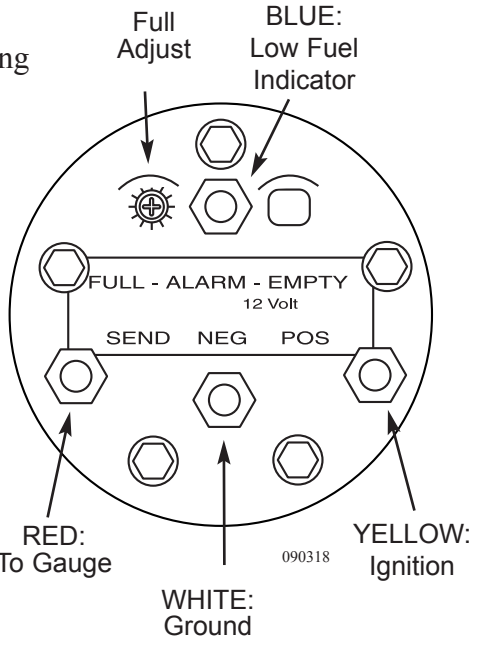
Fuel Sending Unit

The bottom of the tank is made in a “V” configuration allowing the engine pick-up tube access to almost all available fuel in the tank. Internal baffles slow fuel slosh. A check valve placed at the bottom of the baffle, at the end of the tank with the pick-up tube, prevents fuel starvation through long corners when fuel supply is low.

NOTE:
Fill the fuel tank if the motorhome is going to be stored for any length of time to reduce the amount of potential condensation. After storage, check the vent tube for blockage. It is not uncommon for insects to plug the vent tube. If pressure or vacuum exists when the fuel cap is removed, the vent tube may be blocked. The end of the vent tube is located on the curbside of the fuel tank, near the bottom.

Fuel Sender

The "Centroid" fuel sender has no moving parts and works by measuring capacitance (electrical property) between its inner and outer tubes in the tank. The more fuel between the tubes, the higher the reading. Electronics in the "hockey-puck" head of the sender convert the capacitance to current to drive the fuel gauge.



Fuel Sending Unit.

Connections:
The "Centroid" sender has four connections:
1 & 2 - Positive (POS) and Negative (NEG): Battery voltage to run the electronics in the sender head.
3 - SEND: Connects to the SEND terminal of the gauge on the dash.
4 - ALARM: Makes a connection internally to the negative (NEG) terminal when the low fuel alarm level is reached (when the fuel gauge is reading about 1/8 tank). This turns on the fuel indicator on the liquid crystal display on the speedometer and is not adjustable.

Adjustments:
The "Centroid" sender has two adjustments:
1 - EMPTY: Adjusts for length of sender. It has been set at the factory, covered with a sealant and should not be changed.
2 - Full Adjustment (FULL): The full adjustment can be used to correct for slight differences between fuel meters. During installation, it has been factory calibrated and should not need re-adjustment.

The correct adjustment technique, with a full tank of fuel, is to start with the full adjustment screw completely clockwise. This should cause the reading to be above full. Adjust slowly, rotate counterclockwise, until the full mark on the gauge is reached. The intent is to always adjust downscale rather than upscale.

Troubleshooting:

A. Electronic Output: The sender has a transistorized output to prevent an ohmmeter from getting a correct reading of its output resistance.

B. Fuel Only: The sender will not work correctly in conducting fluids such as water (it will read above full all the time in water). One possibility is that when there is a constant above-full reading there may be water in the bottom of the fuel tank.

C. Contact Centroid: Probably 90% of the return Centroid tests work okay on the bench. If you have incorrect readings contact Centroid (**telephone: 800-423-3574,** or preferably, **fax: 386-423-3709**) with the symptoms. A short,"fill in the blanks" troubleshooting test is provided to test the sender. It is easier to find the problem that way than after the sender has been removed from the system, since the problem is not necessarily with the sender.

Fuel Lines & Hoses

Make a visual check for fuel leaks at all engine-mounted fuel lines, connections and at the fuel tank pick-up and return lines. Leaks in this area may best be detected by checking for accumulation of fuel under the tank. Engine performance and auxiliary equipment is dependent upon the ability of flexible hoses to transfer lubricating oil, air, coolant and fuel. Maintenance of hoses is an important step in ensuring efficient, economical and safe operation of the engine and related equipment.

INSPECTION:

Check hoses daily as part of the pre-start inspection. Examine hoses for leaks. Check all fittings, clamps and ties. Make sure the hoses are not touching shafts, couplings or heated surfaces, including exhaust manifolds, sharp edges or other obvious hazardous areas. Over time, vibration from the engine and road can move or fatigue clamps and ties. To ensure continued proper support, inspect fasteners frequently and tighten or replace them as necessary.

Fuel Filters

Three filters are used for the engine: pre-filter, primary and secondary filter. The reusable pre-filter and the primary filter are located in the engine compartment. The secondary filter is located on the engine. Prime the fuel system when filters are changed or if the engine has run out of fuel.

Filter Maintenance Intervals:

- Change the primary fuel/water separator filter every six months or every 15,000 miles.
- Refer to the ***Manufacturers Guide*** for service intervals of the secondary fuel filter.

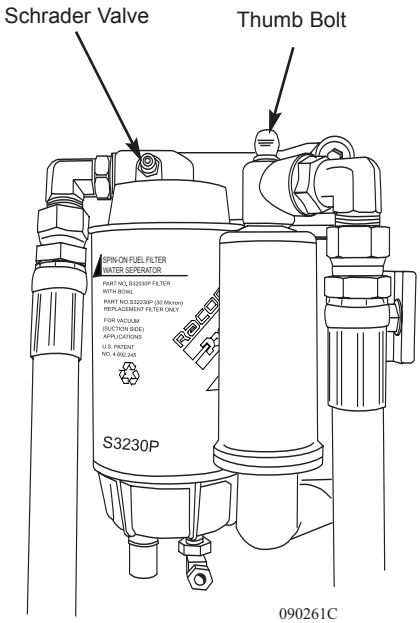
NOTE:

It is recommended to wear gloves and old clothing when working with diesel fuel. Avoid getting fuel in the interior of the motorhome.

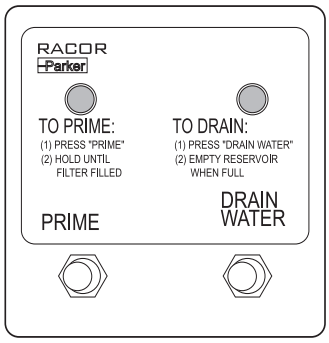
Primary Filter System:

The primary filter system filters the fuel, detects water that may be present in the fuel supply and is also used to prime the fuel system. The fuel goes through the reusable pre-filter before entering the primary filter.

When changing the filter, a suitable container is required to catch the waste fuel. Properly dispose of waste fuel. **Do not reuse fuel** and risk introducing contaminants into the system.

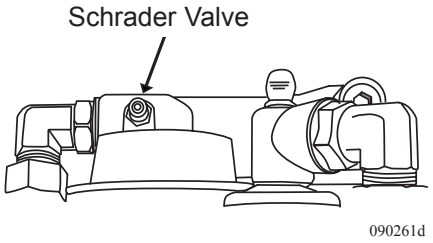


1. Remove the thumb bolt, washer and top housing. Remove the bowl, pre-filter and O-rings.
2. Wear safety goggles. Clean the pre-filter and bowl in a solvent bath, or using compressed air.
3. Inspect the O-rings for cuts or damage. Replace if needed.
4. Lube O-rings with motor oil or clean fuel.
5. Install pre-filter onto bottom block. Install bowl with arrow pointing down. Replace the top housing, confirming that the O-rings are properly seated.
6. Replace thumb bolt and tighten by hand. Using pliers, turn the bolt three-quarter turn to firmly seat the O-ring seals.
7. Remove bottom discharge line and primary filter. Drain fuel from filter into container.
8. Lube O-ring on new filter with motor oil or clean fuel. It is not necessary to fill the filter with fuel.
9. Install filter onto housing. Tighten an additional three-quarter to one full turn after seat contacts base. Install discharge line to bottom of filter.



Control Panel

NOTE:
Over tightening may result in damage to the unit.



090261d

To Prime the Fuel System:

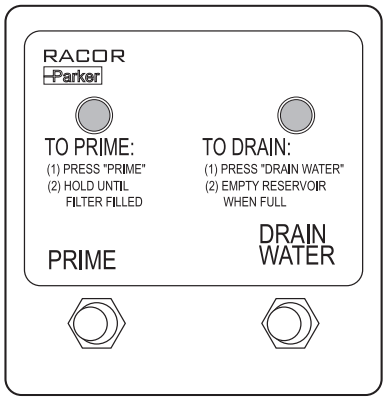
1. Turn the ignition key on. Do not attempt to start the engine.
2. Remove the dust cap from the Schrader valve. Press and hold the Prime button while holding the Schrader valve open with finger or object. Hold Prime button until filter is full. Stand clear as fuel may spray from Schrader valve.
3. After the fuel purges from Schrader valve, release the valve. Continue to hold the Prime button one additional minute. This should allow the engine to start.
4. Install the dust cap to the Schrader valve. Start and operate the engine at high idle for about three minutes. If the engine fails to readily start, initiate one or two additional purge cycles.

NOTE:
The engine may run rough for a short period until all remaining air is forced through the fuel system.

NOTE:
It is normal for the pre-filter bowl not to be full of fuel while the engine is running.

Water in Fuel (H^2O) Light:

If the **Water in Fuel** light illuminates on the dash, the primary filter has detected water in the fuel. Do Not continue engine operation as fuel contaminated with water can damage fuel injectors. Water is heavier than fuel. A discharge line is located at the bottom of the primary filter. Purge water from the filter using the **H2O purge** button on the filter control panel. Contaminated fuel will purge from the bottom of the filter into a holding bottle located below the engine on the curbside.



090261b

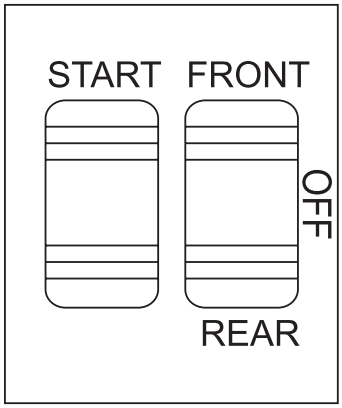
To Remove Water from the Filter:

1. Turn the ignition key **on**. Do not start the engine. The drain indicator lamp on the filter control panel should illuminate when the **Drain** button is pressed. The electronics in the control panel will not allow the system to drain if the system has not detected water.
2. Press and hold the **Drain** button. The system will purge water from the filter into the storage container located in the curbside engine compartment. Change the fuel filter at the earliest convenience. Empty the storage container at the same time.

NOTE:
The Drain Water function will operate only when water is detected in the primary fuel filter.

NOTE:
Always carry an extra Racor element as one tank full of excessively contaminated diesel fuel can plug a filter.

Rear Start Switches



090373h

The rear start switches are for safety and convenience. The front/rear switch has three positions:

1. **FRONT** - Motorhome will only start with the ignition key.
2. **REAR** - Motorhome can only be started with the rear start switch.

NOTE:
The Ignition switch must also be in the "on" position.

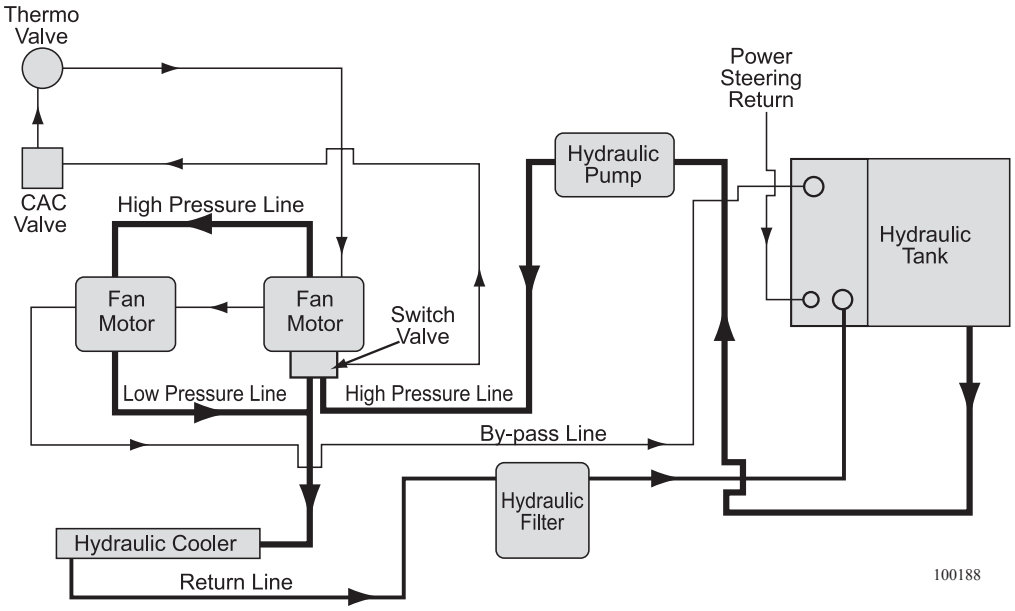
3. **OFF** - Starter will not engage with either ignition key or rear start switch. It will also turn the engine off if it is already running.

The **Start** switch engages the starter when the front/rear switch is set to **Rear** and the ignition switch is **on**.

HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

The motorhome uses an engine driven hydraulic pump to operate both the power steering and engine hydraulic cooling fan systems, sharing one common reservoir. The hydraulic fluid used is an automatic transmission fluid (*Dexron III*®) which has a wide ambient temperature operating range.

CAUTION:
If ambient temperatures approach 0º F, Pennzoil Arctic Blue hydraulic fluid, or equivalent hydraulic fluid, should be used. Using incorrect hydraulic system fluid weights in cold temperatures will raise the hydraulic system operating pressure and may damage the hydraulic cooler.



Typical System: May vary with engine type.

Hydraulic Pump

The hydraulic pump creates pressure by meshing sets of gears together inside a close tolerance housing. A filtered supply of hydraulic fluid from the hydraulic reservoir enters the intake side of the pump. The meshing gear assembly "squeezes" the oil through the pump to the output side delivering pressurized fluid to the switching valve mounted on the hydraulic fan motor. The ISM engine uses a two-part hydraulic pump assembly. One side of the pump drives the hydraulic fan motors; the other side is used for the power steering. The ISX and Series 60 engines uses a transmission-mounted hydraulic pump for the fan motors. The power steering pump is mounted behind the compressor on the ISX, and directly to the accessory drive on the Series 60. Each pump type is equipped with internal by-pass pressure relief valves. If hydraulic pressure should exceed specification, the internal by-pass valve will force open to lower fluid pressure and maintain a specified rating. Hydraulic pressure is generally not rated in psi but in the term Bar. One bar is equivalent to approximately 14.5 psi. Hydraulic pressures with a system at no load may be as low as eight bars on the output side of the pump. When a load is placed on the hydraulic pump, such as fan speed ramping up, hydraulic fluid flow slows from hydraulic fluid restriction and pressure increases.

This may be understood as a faucet with a garden hose attached. Crimping the hose with the faucet on will create pressure from the restriction. This principle applies to the hydraulic system. The hydraulic pump is the supply; the load is the hydraulic fan motors. Hydraulic system pressure at full load can exceed 130 bar or 2000 psi. Hydraulic system pressure falls dramatically after the load. The return line pressure may be as low as six to eight bars. The fluid enters the hydraulic cooler where the heat is dissipated.

Hydraulic Pump (Series 60 & ISX):

The hydraulic pump is driven by a separate gear assembly mounted to the transmission called a PTO (power take-off). The intermediate shaft and coupling between the PTO and the hydraulic pump are lubricated by transmission fluid. No maintenance is required.

Hydraulic Cooler

The hydraulic cooler operates to prevent hydraulic fluid from overheating. When a load is placed on the hydraulic system, heat is created in the fluid. Heat must be dissipated to prevent the hydraulic fluid from overheating and breaking down. After cooling, the fluid is filtered before returning to the reservoir.

Care must be used when starting an engine in very cold climates. As with any oil, lower temperatures thicken the oil. Hydraulic system pressure increases due to the viscosity of the fluid. Although the hydraulic pump is equipped with pressure relief valves, the thick oil on the return line can exceed the operating pressure of the hydraulic cooler.

Hydraulic Fan System

The hydraulic fan drive system cools the radiator, charge air cooler, hydraulic fluid cooler, transmission cooler and the dash air conditioning condenser. The components of the hydraulic fan system are: hydraulic reservoir, filter, pump, hydraulic fan motor(s), hydraulic switching valve and thermovalve. Cooling fan speed is proportional to engine speed and coolant temperature. When coolant temperature rises above 185º F, the thermovalve slowly closes off the bypassing hydraulic fluid from the switching valve. As coolant temperature rises, a spool valve begins to move in the switching valve. The spool valve directs the pressurized hydraulic fluid to the fan motors. The higher the coolant temperature, the further the spool valve is moved in the switching valve, providing a higher volume of pressurized hydraulic fluid to the fan motors. Fan motor speed is increased to meet the demand for cooling. The action of the thermovalve is designed to move the spool in the switching valve to ramp up fan motor speed. This design saves horsepower and increases fuel mileage by precise control of hydraulic fan motor speed. The fan motors will increase in speed when the motorhome is ascending long hills or operating in high ambient temperatures. It is normal for the fans to "roar" when they are operating. Fan motor speed and engine RPM are approximately the same with the switching valve at full engagement.

Thermovalve (ISM & Series 60 Engines)

The wax filled thermovalve, mounted at the top of the radiator, controls the action of the switching valve. When the radiator is cool, hydraulic fluid is allowed to flow through the inlet and outlet ports of the thermovalve and return to the hydraulic reservoir. As coolant temperature inside the radiator rises to approximately 185º F, wax inside the thermovalve begins to melt and expand, which restricts hydraulic fluid flow through the thermovalve. The restricted hydraulic fluid pressure then begins to move the internal spool valve of the switching valve. This process will continue until coolant temperature inside the radiator reaches approximately 199º F. At this temperature, hydraulic fluid flow through the thermovalve is stopped, moving the spool valve to full open position.

Electric Thermovalve (ISX Engine)

The ISX engine uses an electric thermovalve to monitor two thermal sensors. One sensor is located in the charge air pipe between the charge air cooler and intake manifold. If the intake air charge temperature becomes too high, the hydraulic fans will engage to cool the charge air cooler. The other temperature sensor monitors engine coolant. As coolant temperature increases, hydraulic fan speed will commensurate with engine temperature. This method will use engine power sparingly to operate the fans and keep the engine at the correct operating temperature.

Switching Valve

The switching valve is mounted to the fan motor and controls direction of high pressure hydraulic fluid flow. High pressure hydraulic fluid comes from the hydraulic pump to the switching valve before returning to the reservoir. Either the thermovalve or the electric override valve directs the fluid to the spool in the switching valve. When the radiator is cool, pressurized hydraulic fluid will bypass the fan motors and return to the fluid reservoir. As radiator temperature rises, the thermovalve signal is slowed or stopped to the switching valve. High pressure fluid is then directed to the fan motors, cooling the radiator.

Electric Override (ISM only)

Motorhomes are equipped with an electric over hydraulic override control valve, located at the lower rear corner of the radiator package. This valve is normally closed and is plumbed parallel with the thermovalve and performs the same hydraulic signal function as the thermovalve, but electrically controlled by the engine computer.

The engine computer monitors intake manifold temperature. The electronics of the engine control a relay located in the rear run box. When intake manifold operating temperature is normal, the electronic engine will energize the coil of the relay. This energizes the coil of the override valve and the hydraulic fluid signal flows through the override valve to the thermovalve. If the engine electronics detect an over temperature condition of the intake manifold, the coil of the 87a relay is deactivated. Power to the override valve is removed, hydraulic fluid flow signal is stopped and internal spool of the switching valve moves to full open position. The high pressure fluid is directed to fan motors cooling the radiator.

Fan Motor

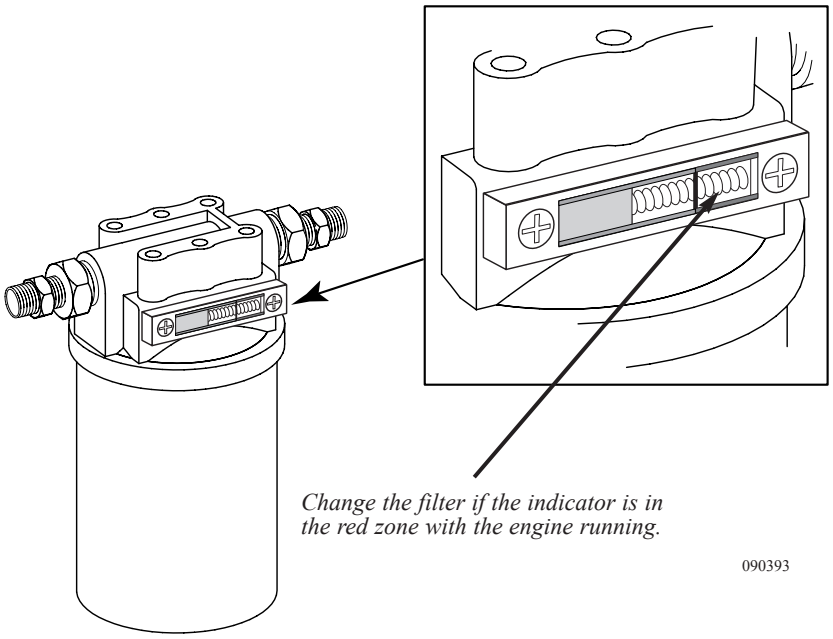
The fan motors are driven by hydraulic fluid pressure from the switching valve. Fan motors work on the same mechanical principle as a hydraulic pump, only in reverse. Instead of creating hydraulic pressure by meshing gears together in a close tolerance housing, the fan motor(s) receive hydraulic pressure. The hydraulic fluid drives the fan motor's internal gear assembly, spinning the fan motor and attached fan blades.

The switching valve is mounted to one fan motor. Fluid is directed to the input of that motor first. The output of the first motor is hooked to the input of the second motor (ISM only). The hydraulic fluid is then cooled and filtered before returning to the reservoir.

NOTE:
Detroit Series 60 and Cummins ISX engines use one fan motor, ISM engines use two.

Hydraulic Filter

The hydraulic system filter, located in the engine compartment, has special features to protect the precision tolerance hydraulic components. The filter head assembly has a built in sight gauge that indicates fluid flow through the filter. A specially designed media filter absorbs harmful contaminants such as moisture and dirt. When the engine is running, use the sight gauge to check the filtering process.



Change the filter if the indicator is in the red zone with the engine running.

090393

The **green** zone indicates that hydraulic fluid is properly filtered and flowing unrestricted through the filter and head assembly back to the reservoir. As the filter traps harmful debris and contaminants, the indicator will move into the **red** zone.

When the indicator is in the **red** zone, it is indicating filter is clogged and fluid is bypassing the element to return to the reservoir. The filter head is equipped with a built in bypass valve to prevent a clogged filter from developing a leak due to excess hydraulic fluid pressure inside a clogged filter.

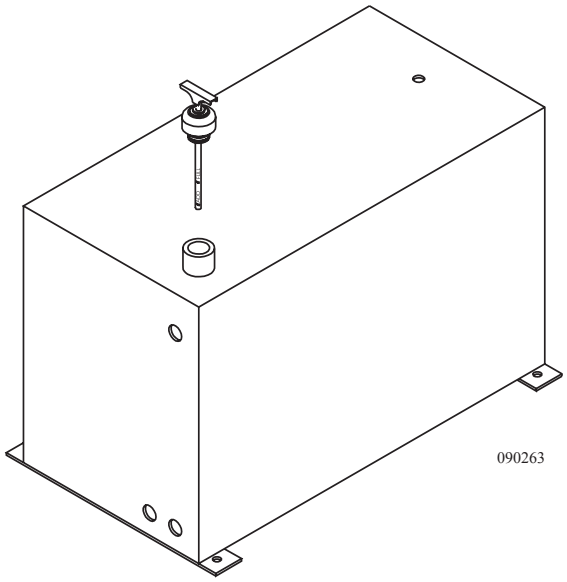
The filter is rated at ten micron*. Change the filter before the built in sight gauge is operating in the **red** zone. This will ensure the hydraulic fluid is properly filtered.

Filter number: Parker IN HC 5720 (ten micron)
***One micron is one millionth of one meter.**

Hydraulic Reservoir

The hydraulic reservoir, located in the engine compartment, is made from aluminum so the tank will not be affected by moisture that may condense. The oil level in the reservoir should be checked when the hydraulic fluid is at operating temperature. This should be done every 6,000 miles or three months. The oil dipstick/oil fill is located on top of the reservoir. The oil level should be kept between the full and add marks on the dipstick. When performing fluid level checks, inspect fittings and hoses for signs of leakage. Look underneath the motorhome for signs of fluid leakage. Avoid untimely and costly failures by having leaks repaired. Change the hydraulic oil filter every 15,000 miles or once a year.

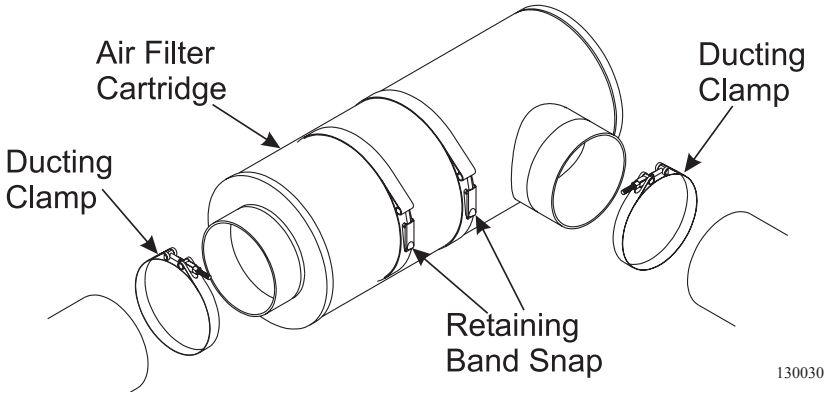
NOTE:
Use *Dexron III*® transmission fluid when adding oil.



Steering/Fan Reservoir

AIR FILTER
Changing the Filter

The entire air filter cartridge is discarded and replaced by loosening the inlet and outlet ducting clamps and releasing the retaining band snaps. The air filter is located in the rear engine compartment.

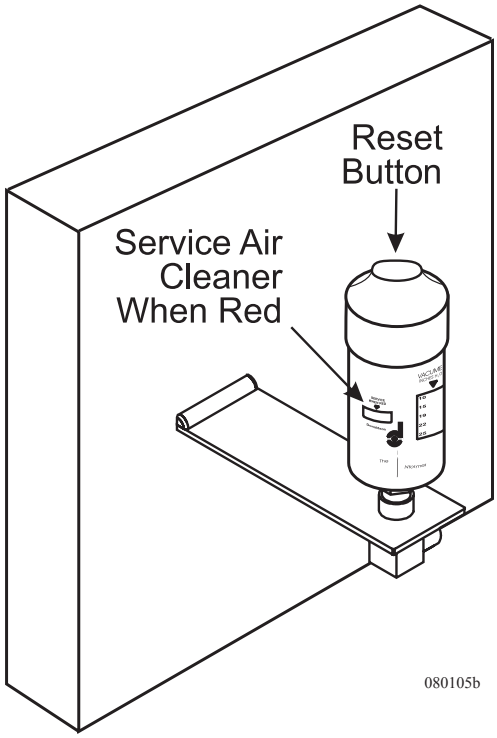


Air Filter Minder

The air filter minder is a precision overflow restriction gauge designed to take the guesswork out of air cleaner replacement.

The air filter minder is located in the rear engine compartment. As dirt captured by filter cartridge slowly builds up, vacuum between the filter and charge air cooler increases. The indicator locks at the point of maximum restriction so readings can be taken with or without the engine running.

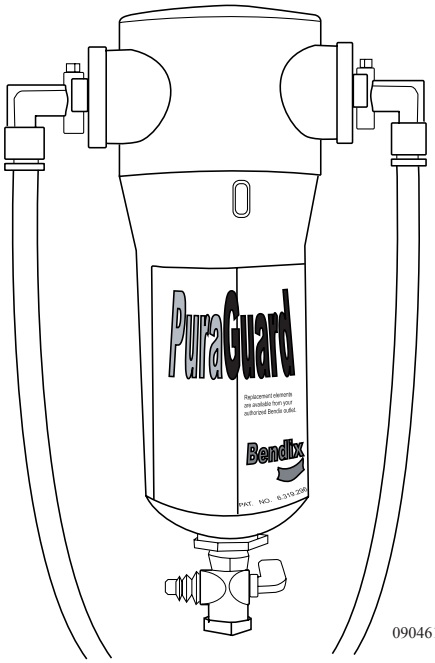
When the desired change-out point is reached, the air filter should be replaced and the service indicator reset by pushing the **Reset** button on the top of the minder.



EGR FILTER (DETROIT ONLY)

The PuraGuard filter is used to remove oil from the air supply for the EGR valve system. Oil in pneumatic valves can cause the valves to operate sluggishly, or not at all. Removing oil from the air supply for the EGR system helps to ensure longevity of the valves. **The filter should be drained monthly and replaced annually.** When performing maintenance, always dispose of drainage and filters properly.

CAUTION:
Discharge air system before removing filter.



EGR Filter located in the engine compartment.

LUBRICATION MAINTENANCE

Performing regular scheduled maintenance ensures reliable operation and optimum service life of the various chassis components. Completed maintenance brings peace of mind knowing the various components have received proper service. Failure to follow maintenance guidelines, or perform scheduled maintenance, results in inefficient operation, premature component wear or component failure resulting in breakdown.

Maintenance schedules are usually performed at certain mile or time intervals. When performing high level procedures, lower level service should also be performed.

NOTE:
Maintenance schedules are based on normal operating conditions and use. Operating under unusual or adverse condition shortens service intervals.

NOTE:
Engine and transmission service intervals are listed in their respective manuals.

Proper Lubricant Waste Disposal:

When performing service maintenance on the engine, transmission or rear axle, waste fluids and filters should be properly disposed of or recycled. Package used oils, antifreeze and other fluids in sealed containers. In many cases used oil is accepted free of charge at county disposal sites. Waste fluids are toxic to pets and other animals. Waste fluids should not be left in open containers. The sweet odor of antifreeze is attractive to pets, but highly toxic.

CAUTION:
Properly dispose of used antifreeze and waste oil. Animals like the sweet odor of antifreeze and may ingest it if left in open containers. Wipe up any fluid spills. Pets may lie in puddles of fluid, many of which are irritants and can cause severe chemical burns if not properly washed.

Lubricant Classification:

Lubricants are manufactured in many forms for a variety of applications. There are many different oil and grease consistencies each with a designed application. To properly select a particular type of lubricant for a specific application, the component must be evaluated. Component stress loads, ambient temperature, working temperature and environmental exposure are just a few of the variables to consider. Select the proper lubricant for its intended application. As an example: selecting high viscosity grease to lubricate a lock cylinder results in sluggish lock cylinder operation especially in a cool environment. Conversely, using graphite to lubricate a component that is under extreme temperature and load will result in component failure.

Grease ratings and their base compounds are especially important when selecting a lubricant type for an intended application. Some grease compounds are manufactured for multi-use application. These are acceptable if the grease rating is in accordance with the manufacturer's recommended lubricant type and rating.

Lubricants:

Many chassis components require lubrication. The types of lubricants used will vary with the application of the component. A component may fail prematurely due to lack of lubrication or from using an incorrect lubricant type. The component manufacturer usually recommends a particular type of lubricant with a minimum approval rating. Most lubricants are tested under strict guidelines set by the ASTM (American Society for Testing and Materials). The NLGI (National Lubricating Grease Institute) helps disperse information to the grease production industry. Grease containers usually have an approval rating by the SAE (Society of Automotive Engineers), Mil Spec (Military Specification), API (American Petroleum Institute) or by other recognized and accepted organizations. The correct lubricant type with an approved specific rating must be used whenever applying, changing or adding any lubricant. When purchasing lubricants for a specific application be sure the label affirms the type of lubricant required with the tested rating by the term "meets or exceeds" in accordance with the manufacturer specifications.

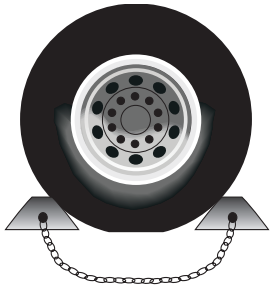
Lubricating greases are made from different base compounds giving the grease different lubricating consistencies, properties and maximum operating temperatures. Most containers list the base compound and maximum operating temperature usually listed as melting point or drip point. Lubricating components, such as brake component for example, require a high temperature special base compound grease. Lubricating this type of component with other than specified grease type will result in inadequate lubricating qualities resulting in component malfunction or failure.

INSPECTION:
When performing any scheduled maintenance, inspect the area around where you are working. For example, changing the oil, look at the rear differential. Inspect for visual signs of fluid leaks.

Most fluids and lubricants have a distinct odor, which can be used to detect early signs of trouble. Generally, odors are most detectable soon after parking. Unusual sounds are another method of detecting a problem early. There are many types of sounds that are normal, such as the cyclic purging of the air dryer. Become familiar with the different sounds. If something sounds odd, smells peculiar or looks unusual investigate the situation.

Greasing:

Thoroughly clean all Zerk grease fittings before applying new lubricant. Keep paper towels or disposable rags handy when greasing. When lubricating items such as drive shafts and steer axle components, continued grease application is generally required until new grease appears at exit points.


090368

Some items use sealed boots around the component to prevent moisture intrusion. When greasing these types of components, care must be given to prevent excess lubricant pressure from rupturing the seal.

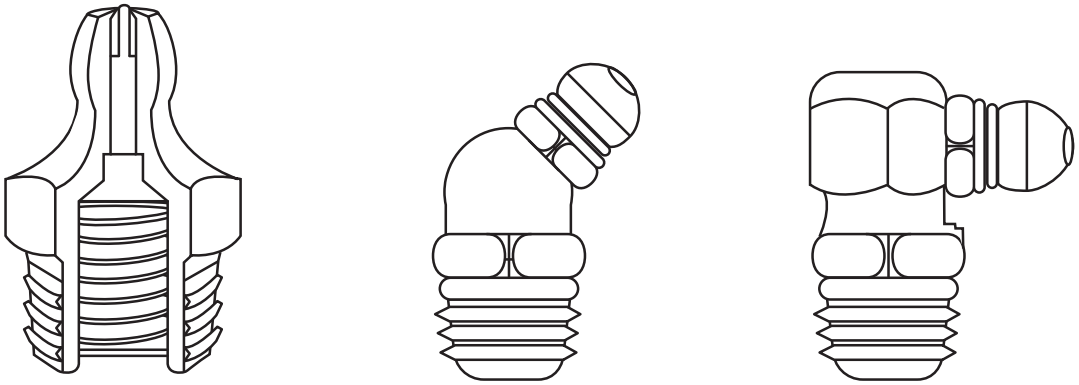
WARNING:
Always chock wheels before going underneath the motorhome.

Brake actuating components require lubrication to keep the actuating components freely operating. Avoid contaminating brake linings with lubricant. Particular care and attention to details should be taken when lubricating brake actuating components. Wheel removal may be necessary to gain access the grease fittings.

To apply grease:

- Clean the grease fitting. Initially operate grease gun until new lubricant discharges from nozzle, then wipe nozzle clean to avoid introducing contaminants into the component.
- Snap nozzle onto grease fitting.
- Nozzle must remain in line with the grease fitting during the application process. If the nozzle is not in line, lubricant will collect around nozzle and grease fitting, failing to lubricate the component.
- Wrap the nozzle with a paper towel or rag to prevent contamination and accidental soiling of other areas.

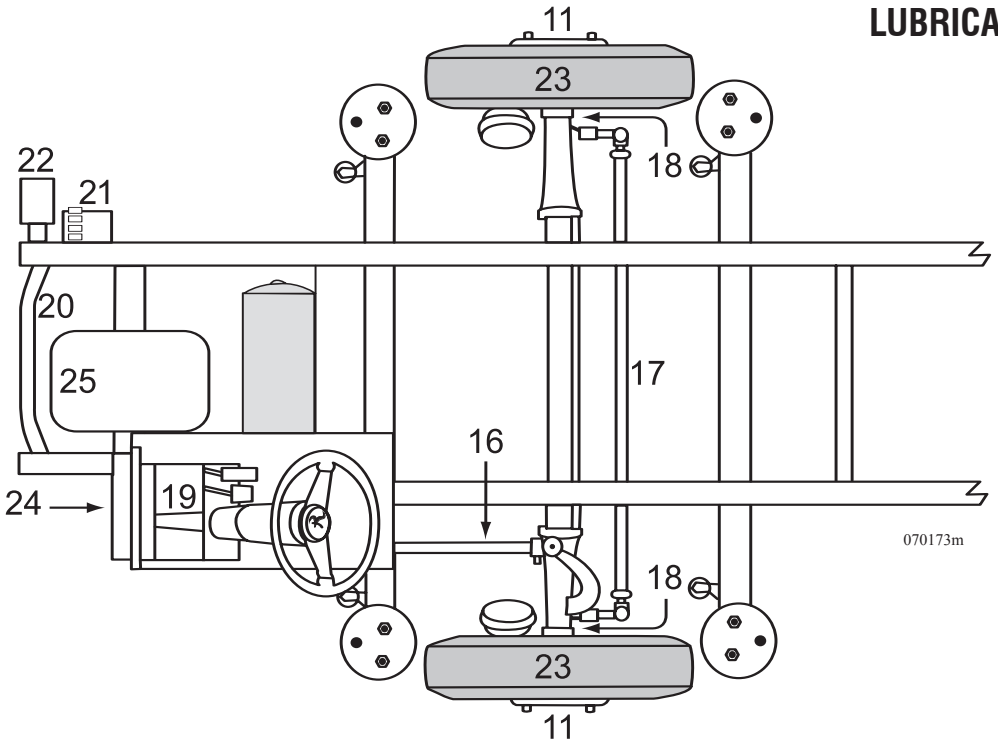
If the component does not accept grease the Zerk fitting may be plugged or damaged. Zerk fittings are replaceable and generally available at most auto supply stores. Zerk fittings come in a variety of angles depending on the application. Every effort should be made to lubricate the component, as neglect will only result in premature component failure.



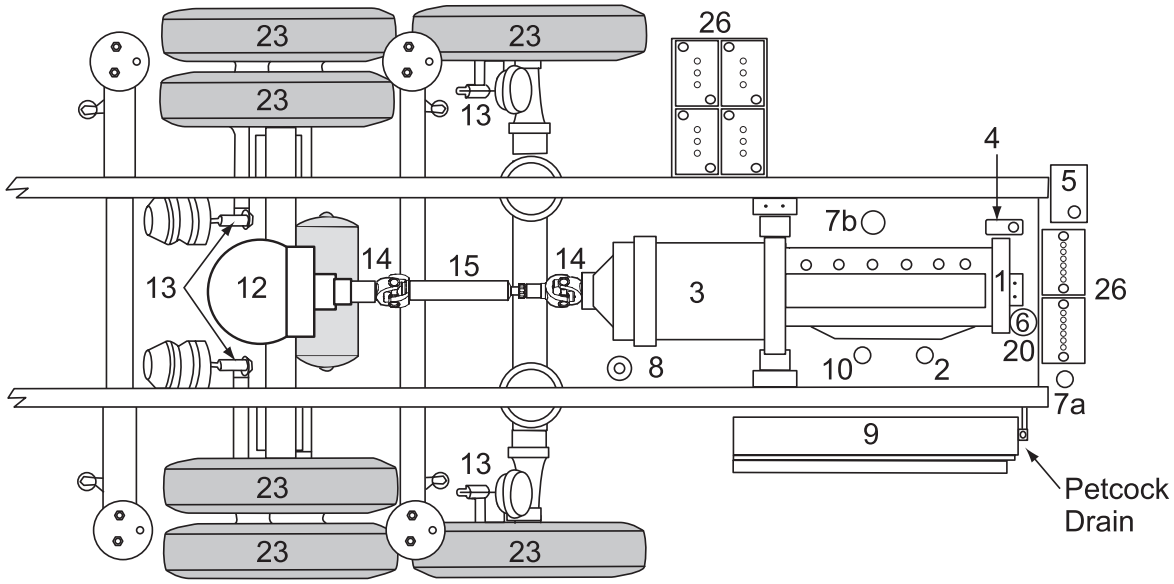
Typical Zerk Fitting.

090418

NOTE:
Some grease fittings may not be accessible until the steering wheel is turned or the motorhome is moved slightly.



Component:	Action:	When:	Code-Refer to Chart:
1. Engine Oil	Keep to Full Mark	Before Each Trip + Daily Enroute	EO
2. Engine Oil Filter	Replace	At Oil Change	OEM
3. Transmission	Keep to Full Mark	Refer to OEM Manual	TS
4. Engine Coolant	Replace	Refer to OEM Manual	AF
5. Hydraulic Fluid Reservoir	Keep to Full Mark	Monthly	TF
6. Hydraulic Filter	Replace	15,000 or Annually	TF
7a. Filter Fuel/Water Separator (Primary)	Replace	15,000 or 6 Months	FF
7b. Filter Fuel (Secondary)	Replace	Refer to OEM Manual	OEM
8. Air Dryer Filter	Replace	2 -3 Years	-
9. Radiator/Charge Air Cooler	Inspect	Weekly	-
10. Coolant Filter	Replace	Refer to OEM Manual	OEM
11. Wheel Bearings	Re-pack	30,000 or Annually	HT
12. Rear Differential	To Filler Plug	250,000 or 3 Years	MP
13. Slack Adjusters/S-Cams	Grease-3 Fittings ea.	10,000 or 3 Months	CBL
14. Drive Shaft Universal Joints	Grease-2 Fittings	10,000 or Annually	CL
15. Drive Shaft Slip Yoke	Grease-1 Fitting	10,000 or Annually	CL
16. Drag Link	Grease-2 Fitting	5,000 or 6 Months	CL
17. Center Link	Grease-2 Fittings	5,000 or 6 Months	CL
18. Spindles/Kingpins	Grease-2 Fittings ea.	5,000 or 6 Months	CL
19. Steering Drive Shaft	Grease-3 Fittings	30,000 or Annually	CL-4
20. Air Tank Drains	Drains	Monthly	-
21. HWH Reservoir	Keep to Full Mark	6,000 or 3 Months	TF
22. RVA Reservoir	Keep to Full Mark	6,000 or 3 Months	TF
23. Tire Pressure	Check	Before Each Trip + Daily Enroute	-
24. Steering Box	Grease-1 Fitting	Twice a Year	CL
25. Generator	Refer to Service Manual	Refer to OEM Manual	OEM
26. Batteries	Inspect	Bi-Monthly	DW
	Apply	10,000 or Quarterly	P



REAR

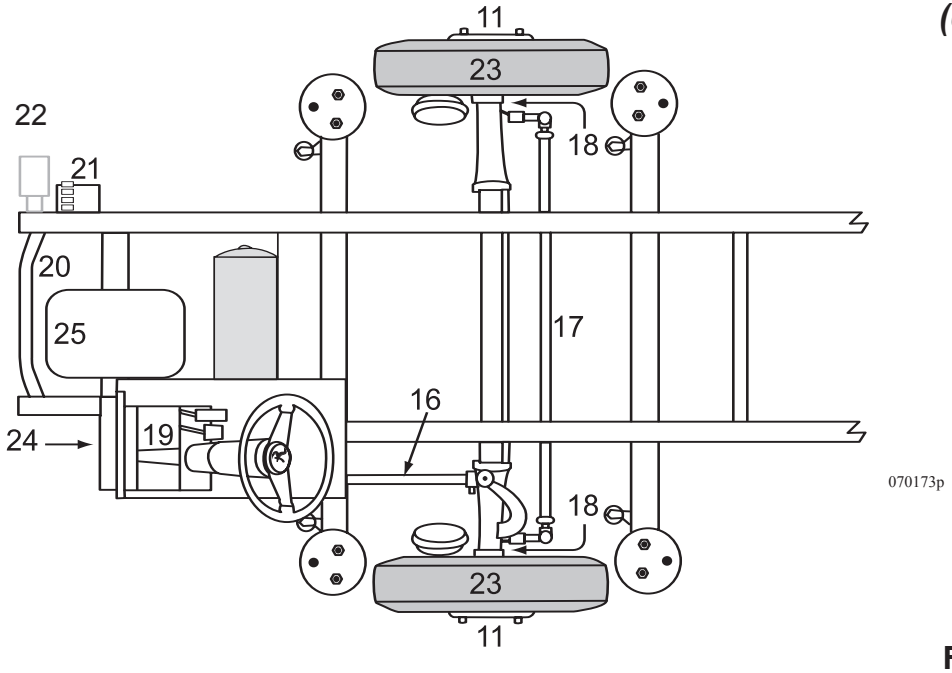
070174m

Lubrication Code Chart:

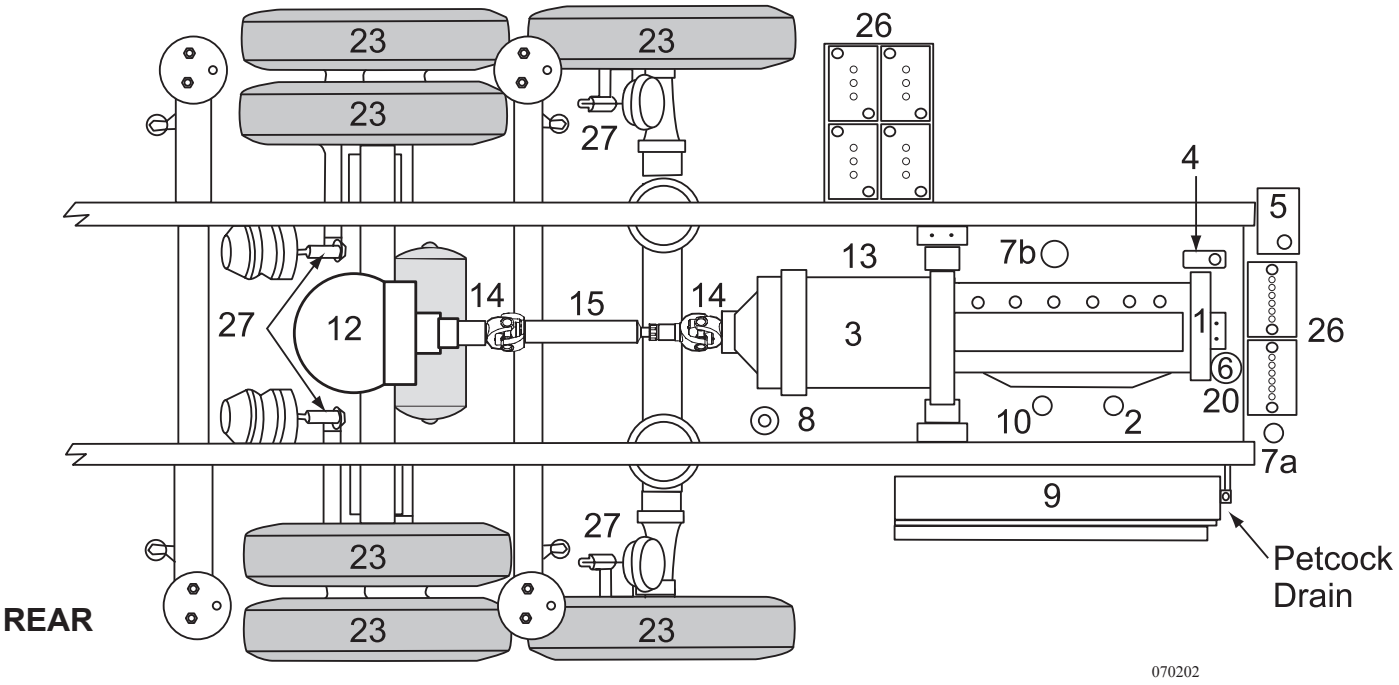
CL-4	U-Joints located inside coach under steering cover.
EO	Engine oil as recommended by engine manufacturer.
OEM	Refer to the Original Equipment Manufacturer's manual.
MP	API GL-5 or MT-1 type gear lubricant - Pennzoil Gear Plus SUPER-EW 75W-90, Synthetic.
GO	EP-SAE 90 gear oil.
CL	Chassis lubricant should be a high quality non corrosive multi-purpose lithium soap base lubricant that is water resistant and designed to withstand extremely high operating temperatures.
TF	Transmission fluid. Use *Dexron III*® transmission fluid only.
AF	Consult ***Cummins*** **Owner's Manual** for antifreeze type.
BF	Dot-3 Brake fluid.
FF	Fuel Filter.
CBL	Clay-based Lubricant.
HT	High Temperature Bearing Grease
TS	TranSynd™
DW	Distilled Water
P	Petroleum Jelly

NOTE:

Service must be performed every twelve (12) months, regardless of actual mileage, to protect seals, bearings and gaskets from drying out and failing. The motorhome must be started and driven for at least 20 miles bi-monthly. It is important to remember the generator maintenance interval is based on hours of usage. Consult the *Cummins* Owner's Manual for the generator service interval.



Component:	Action:	When:	Code-Refer to Chart:
1. Engine Oil	Keep to Full Mark	Daily	EO
2. Engine Oil Filter	Replace	At Oil Change	OEM
3. Transmission	Keep to Full Mark	Refer to OEM Manual	TS
4. Engine Coolant	Replace	Refer to OEM Manual	AF
5. Hydraulic Fluid Reservoir	Keep to Full Mark	Monthly	TF
6. Hydraulic Filter	Replace	15,000 or Annually	TF
7a. Filter Fuel/Water Separator (Primary)	Replace	15,000 or 6 Months	FF
7b. Filter Fuel (Secondary)	Replace	Refer to OEM Manual	OEM
8. Air Dryer Filter	Replace	2 -3 Years	-
9. Radiator/Charge Air Cooler	Inspect	Weekly	-
10. Coolant Filter	Replace	Refer to OEM Manual	OEM
11. Wheel Bearings	Re-pack	30,000 or Annually	HT
12. Rear Differential	To Filler Plug	250,000 or 3 Years	MP
13. PTO (ISX)	Inspect Fittings	Monthly	-
14. Drive Shaft Universal Joints	Grease-2 Fittings	10,000 or Annually	CL
15. Drive Shaft Slip Yoke	Grease-1 Fitting	10,000 or Annually	CL
16. Drag Link	Grease-2 Fitting	5,000 or 6 Months	CL
17. Center Link	Grease-2 Fittings	5,000 or 6 Months	CL
18. Spindles/Kingpins	Grease-2 Fittings ea.	5,000 or 6 Months	CL
19. Steering Drive Shaft	Grease-3 Fittings	30,000 or Annually	CL-4
20. Air Tank Drains	Drains	Monthly	-
21. HWH Reservoir	Keep to Full Mark	6,000 or 3 Months	TF
22. RVA Reservoir (N/A on ISX)	-	-	-
23. Tire Pressure	Check	Before Each Trip & Enroute Daily	-
24. Steering Box	Grease-1 Fitting	Twice a Year	CL
25. Generator	Refer to Service Manual	Refer to OEM Manual	OEM
26. Batteries	Inspect	Bi-Monthly	DW
27. Slack Adjuster/S-Cam	Grease-3 Fittings ea.	10,000 or Quarterly	CBL



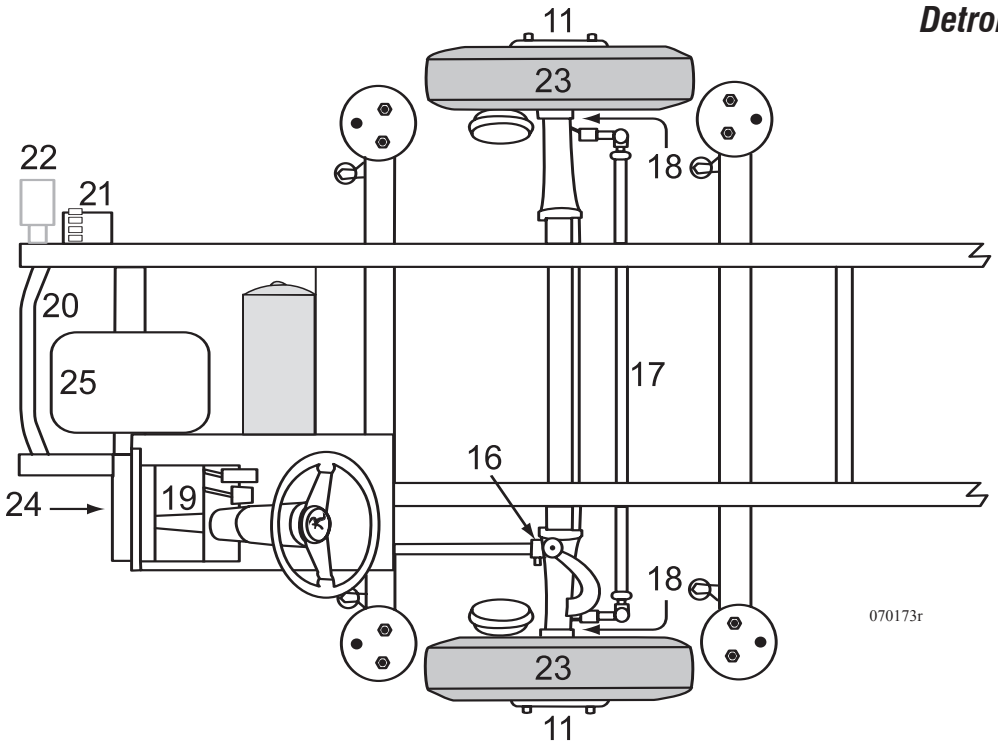
Lubrication Code Chart:

CL-4	U-Joints located inside coach under steering cover.
EO	Engine oil as recommended by engine manufacturer.
OEM	Refer to the Original Equipment Manufacturer's manual.
MP	API GL-5 or MT-1 type gear lubricant - Pennzoil Gear Plus SUPER-EW 75W-90, Synthetic.
GO	EP-SAE 90 gear oil.
CL	Chassis lubricant should be a high quality non corrosive multi-purpose lithium soap base lubricant that is water resistant and designed to withstand extremely high operating temperatures.
TF	Transmission fluid. Use *Dexron III*® transmission fluid only.
AF	Consult ***Cummins* Owner's Manual** for antifreeze type.
BF	Dot-3 Brake fluid.
FF	Fuel Filter.
CBL	Clay-based Lubricant.
HT	High Temperature Bearing Grease
TS	TranSynd™
DW	Distilled Water
P	Petroleum Jelly

NOTE:

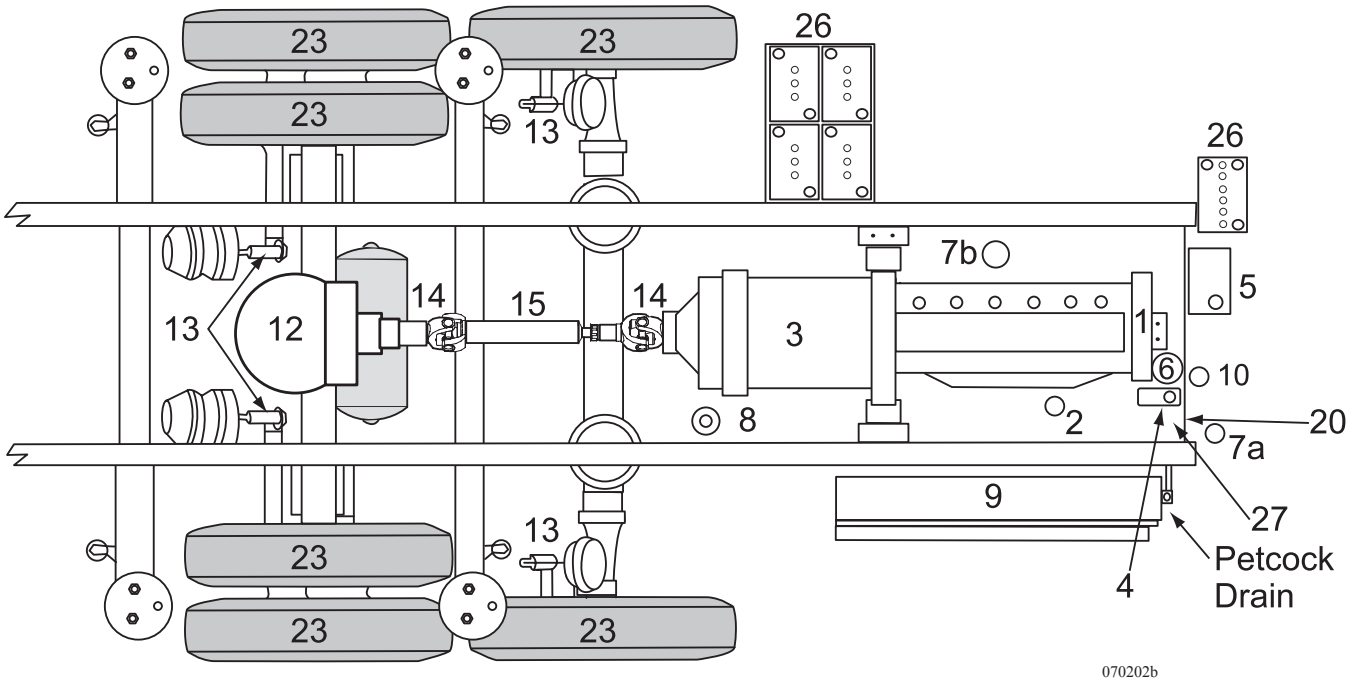
Service must be performed every twelve (12) months, regardless of actual mileage, to protect seals, bearings and gaskets from drying out and failing. The motorhome must be started and driven for at least 20 miles bi-monthly. It is important to remember the generator maintenance interval is based on hours of usage. Consult the *Cummins* Owner's Manual for the generator service interval.

Detroit Diesel Series 60 (Optional)



FRONT

	Component:	Action:	When:	Code-Refer to Chart:
1.	Engine Oil	Keep to Full Mark	Before Each Trip + Daily Enroute	EO
2.	Engine Oil Filter	Replace	At Oil Change	OEM
3.	Transmission	Keep to Full Mark	Refer to OEM Manual	TS
4.	Engine Coolant	Replace	Refer to OEM Manual	AF
5.	Hydraulic Fluid Reservoir	Keep to Full Mark	Monthly	TF
6.	Hydraulic Filter	Replace	15,000 or Annually	TF
7a.	Filter Fuel/Water Separator (Primary)	Replace	15,000 or 6 Months	FF
7b.	Filter Fuel (Secondary)	Replace	Refer to OEM Manual	OEM
8.	Air Dryer Filter	Replace	2 -3 Years	-
9.	Radiator/Charge Air Cooler	Inspect	Weekly	-
10.	Coolant Filter	Replace	Refer to OEM Manual	OEM
11.	Wheel Bearings	Re-pack	30,000 or Annually	HT
12.	Rear Differential	To Filler Plug	250,000 or 3 Years	MP
13.	Slack Adjusters/S-Cams	Grease-3 Fitting ea.	10,000 or 3 Months	CBL
14.	Drive shaft Universal Joints	Grease-2 Fittings	10,000 or Annually	CL
15.	Drive shaft Slip Yoke	Grease-1 Fitting	10,000 or Annually	CL
16.	Drag Link	Grease-2 Fitting	5,000 or 6 Months	CL
17.	Center Link	Grease-2 Fittings	5,000 or 6 Months	CL
18.	Spindles/Kingpins	Grease-2 Fittings ea.	5,000 or 6 Months	CL
19.	Steering Drive Shaft	Grease-3 Fittings	30,000 or Annually	CL-4
20.	Air Tank Drains	Drains	Monthly	-
21.	HWH Reservoir	Keep to Full Mark	6,000 or 3 Months	TF
22.	RVA Reservoir	Keep to Full Mark	6,000 or 3 Months	TF
23.	Tire Pressure	Check	Before Each Trip + Daily Enroute	-
24.	Steering Box	Grease-1 Fitting	Twice a Year	CL
25.	Generator	Refer to Service Manual	Refer to OEM Manual	OEM
26.	Batteries	Inspect	Bi-Monthly	DW
		Apply	10,000 or Quarterly	P
27.	EGR Filter	Drain / Replace	Monthly/Annualy	OEM



REAR

Lubrication Code Chart:

CL-4	U-Joints located inside coach under steering cover.
EO	Engine oil as recommended by engine manufacturer.
OEM	Refer to the Original Equipment Manufacturer's manual.
MP	API GL-5 or MT-1 type gear lubricant - Pennzoil Gear Plus SUPER-EW 75W-90, Synthetic.
GO	EP-SAE 90 gear oil.
CL	Chassis lubricant should be a high quality non corrosive multi-purpose lithium soap base lubricant that is water resistant and designed to withstand extremely high operating temperatures.
TF	Transmission fluid. Use *Dexron III*® transmission fluid only.
AF	Consult ***Detroit Diesel Operators Guide*** for antifreeze type.
BF	Dot-3 Brake fluid.
FF	Fuel Filter.
CBL	Clay-based Lubricant.
HT	High Temperature Bearing Grease
TS	TranSynd™
DW	Distilled Water
P	Petroleum Jelly

NOTE:

Service must be performed every twelve (12) months, regardless of actual mileage, to protect seals, bearings and gaskets from drying out and failing. The motorhome must be started and driven for at least 20 miles bi-monthly. It is important to remember the generator maintenance interval is based on hours of usage. Consult the *Cummins* Owner's Manual for the generator service interval.

Weights	40PBDD	40PBT	42SBW	43DS2	43PBT	43PBQ	45PRT	45PNQ	45PBQ
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating	47,600	47,600	47,600	47,600	47,600	47,600	47,600	47,600	47,600
Gross Combined Weight Rating	57,600	57,600	57,600	57,600	57,600	57,600	57,600	57,600	57,600
Front Gross Axle Weight Rating	14,600	14,600	14,600	14,600	14,600	14,600	14,600	14,600	14,600
Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating	23,000	23,000	23,000	23,000	23,000	23,000	23,000	23,000	23,000
Tag Axle Weight Rating	10,000	10,000	10,000	10,000	10,000	10,000	10,000	10,000	10,000
Measurements									
Wheelbase	226"	250"	271"	283"	283"	283"	283"	283"	273"
Overall Length	41' 7"	41' 7"	43' 4"	44' 4"	44' 4"	44' 4"	TBD Eng	TBD Eng	44' 10"
Exterior Height **(to top of A/C units; actual is 12' 1 3/8")**	12' 1"	12' 1"	12' 1"	12' 1"	12' 1"	12' 1"	12' 1"	12' 1"	12' 1"
Interior Height **(82" carpet to vinyl)**	82"	82"	82"	82"	82"	82"	82"	82"	82"
Interior Width	96"	96"	96"	96"	96"	96"	96"	96"	96"
Exterior Width	100 1/2"	100 1/2"	100 1/2"	100 1/2"	100 1/2"	100 1/2"	100 1/2"	100 1/2"	100 1/2"

NOTE:
The actual overall length of the motorhome may differ from that indicated due to variances in the manufacturing process and/or installed components. The actual length may be greater or less than that indicated.

Tank Capacities

Tank Capacities (Approximate Gallons) All Models	
Grey Holding Tank	56 gal
Black Holding Tank	40 gal
Fresh Water Tank	100 gal
LP-Gas Tank*	38 gal
Fuel Tank	150 gal
**Actual filled LP-Gas Tank Capacity is 80% of listing due to safety shut off required on tank.*	

NOTE:
All tank capacities are estimated based upon calculations provided by the tank manufacturers and represent approximate capacities. The actual "usable capacity" may be greater or less then the estimated capacities based upon fabrication and installation of the tanks.

NOTE:
This chart reflects product specifications available at the time of printing. Therefore any floor plans introduced thereafter may not be reflected in the chart. All other information contained throughout the manual will still apply.

Engine Specifcations

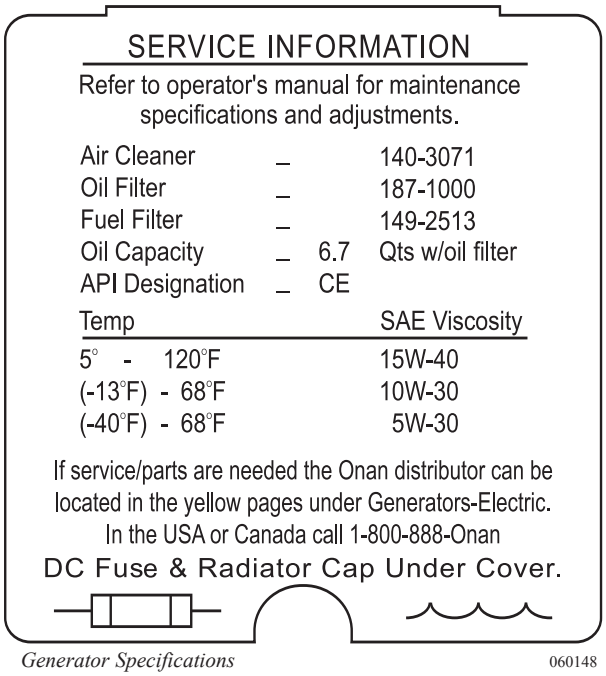
ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS	ISM	ISX	Series 60
Cubic Inch Displacement	11 L/62 CI	15 L/915CI	14.0L/858 CI
Engine HP	500 HP @ 1800 RPM	525 HP @ 1800 RPM	525 @ 2100 RPM
Engine Torque	1550 lbs./ft. @ 1200 RPM	1,650 @ 1200 RPM	1650 @ 1200 RPM
Governed Speed	1800 RPM	2000 RPM	2100 RPM
Firing Order	153624	153624	156324
Rear Axle Ratio	4:30:1	4:30:1	4:30:1
Alternator Amp Size	200 Amp/270 Amp Option	200 Amp/270 Amp Option	200 Amp/270 Amp Option

Chassis Fluid Capacities

Chassis Liquid Capacities	ISM	ISX	Series 60
Engine Oil	38 Qts.	48 Qts.	40 Qts.
Transmission Oil (initial amount)	32 Qts.	32 Qts.	32 Qts.
Transmission Oil (with service)	36 Qts. w/ filter	36 Qts. w/ filter	36 Qts. w/Filter
Radiator Coolant (initial amount)	50 - 55 Qts.	64 Qts.	50-55 Qts.
A/C Refrigerant (initial amount)	4 lbs. 134 A	4 lbs. 134 A	4lbs. 134 A
Hydraulic Oil	50 - 55 Qts.	50 - 55 Qts.	50-55 Qts.
Rear End	15 Qts. Approx.	15 Qts. Approx.	15 Qts. Approx.

Generator Specifications

10 Kw



Generator Specifications 060148

Cummins Engines

Filter & Belt	Manufacturer	ISM	ISX
Coolant Filter	Fleetguard	WF 2071	WF 2126
Oil Filter	Fleetguard	LF 9001	LF 9001
Fuel Filter Primary	Parker	53230P	53230P
Fuel Filter (Secondary)	Fleetguard	FS 1000	FF 2200
Aqua-Hot Fuel Filter	Raycor	R2TRA000T (10 micron)	R2TRA000T (10 micron)
Hydraulic Filter	Parker	IN HC 5720 (10 micron)	IN HC 5720 (10 micron)
Alternator Belt	Cummins	3028521	3682893
A/C Belt	Dayco	3401283	3682687
Air Filter	Donaldson	P53744802 (MP 2329)	P53744802 (MP 2329)
Air Dryer Filter	Meritor Wabco	R950011	R950011
Transmission Filter	Allison	29526889	29526889
A/C Filter Drier	--	MP 05400001*	MP 05400001*

**MP= Manufacturer Part #.*

Detroit Engine

Filter & Belt	Manufacturer	Series 60
Coolant Filter	Power Cool	WF 2071
Oil Filter x 2	Power Guard	LF 9001
Fuel Filter Primary	Power Guard	200200 (25 micron)
Fuel Filter (Secondary)	Power Guard	FS 1000
Aqua-Hot Fuel Filter	Raycor	R2TRA000T (10 micron)
Hydraulic Filter	Parker	IN HC 5720 (10 micron)
Alternator Belt	Detroit Diesel	23520613
A/C Belt	Detroit Diesel	23520613
Air Filter	Donaldson	P53744802 (MP 2329)
Air Dryer Filter	Meritor Wabco	R950011
Transmission Filter	Allison	29526889
A/C Filter Drier	--	MP 05400001*

**MP= Manufacturer Part #.*

NOTE:
Filter and belt numbers were correct at the time of printing. Verify the numbers at time of removal. The manufacturer will not be responsible for incorrect filter or belt usage. Please refer to the engine manufacturer's operating instructions for specific maintenance information.

BATTERY SPECIFICATION CHART

Application	AH (20HR)	CCA†	RC (25A @ 80° F) MINUTES
12 Volt Chassis* Group 31p - MHD (2 each)		950	195
6 Volt Domestic** U2200 (4 each)	450		75Amp@ 80º F. = 230 Min.
12 Volt Domestic* GPL-8D (All Electric - 5 each)	255	1350	461

Approximate Hours of Ampere Load					
**U2200	5 AMPS	10 AMPS	15 AMPS	20 AMPS	25 AMPS
	110	44	25	18	14

**Batteries connected in parallel. **Four batteries connected in a Series/Parallel configuration.*
†CCA Ratings are at 0º F. These are the minimum requirements.

Approximate Hours at Ampere Load				
AGM GPL-8D	5 AMPS	8 AMPS	15 AMPS	25 AMPS
	153	95.6	51	30.6

Voltage to maintain 1.75 Volts per cell (10.5 Volts for 12 Volt battery).

Battery State of Charge vs Voltage/Specific Gravity			
VOLTAGE	SPECIFIC GRAVITY	STATE OF CHARGE	DEPTH OF DISCHARGE
12.66	1.265	100%	0%
12.45	1.225	75%	25%
12.25	1.190	50%	50%
12.05	1.145	25%	75%
11.90	1.100	0%	100%

Voltage Reading: Battery fully charged at rest for one hour.

Battery Charge Voltage chart.eps

Engine Cold Cranking Amp Requirements				
ISM	1800	CCA	12	VOLTS
ISX	1850	CCA	12	VOLTS
Series 60	1800	CCA	12	VOLTS

CCA Rating are at 0º F. These are the minimum requirements.

U.S. Customary to Metric			Metric to U.S. Customary	
Measurement	Multiplied By	Equals/Measurement	Multiplied By	Equals
Length				
inches (in)	25.4	millimeters (mm)	0.03937	inches (in)
inches (in)	2.54	centimeters (cm)	0.3937	inches (in)
feet (ft)	0.3048	meters (m)	3.281	feet (ft)
yards (yd)	0.9144	meters (m)	1.094	yards (yd)
miles (mi)	1.609	kilometers (km)	0.6215	miles (mi)
Area				
square inches (in^2)	645.16	square millimeters (mm^2)	0.00155	square inches (in^2)
square inches (in^2)	6.452	square centimeters (cm^2)	0.15	square inches (in^2)
square feet (ft^2)	0.0929	square meters (m^2)	10.764	square feet (ft^2)
Volume				
cubic inches (in^3)	16387.0	cubic millimeters (mm^3)	0.000061	cubic inches (in^3)
cubic inches (in^3)	16.387	cubic centimeters (cm^3)	0.06102	cubic inches (in^3)
cubic inches (in^3)	0.01639	liters (L)	61.024	cubic inches (in^3)
fluid ounces (fl oz)	29.54	milliliters (mL)	0.03381	fluid ounces (fl oz)
pints (pt)	0.47318	liters (L)	2.1134	pints (pt)
quarts (qt)	0.94635	liters (L)	1.0567	quarts (qt)
gallons (gal)	3.7854	liters (L)	0.2642	gallons (gal)
cubic feet (ft^3)	28.317	liters (L)	0.03531	cubic feet (ft^3)
cubic feet (ft^3)	0.02832	cubic meters (m^3)	35.315	cubic feet (ft^3)
Weight/Force				
ounces (av) (oz)	28.35	grams (g)	0.03527	ounces (av) (oz)
pounds (av) (lb)	0.454	kilograms (kg)	2.205	pounds (av) (lb)
U.S. tons (t)	907.18	kilograms (kg)	0.001102	U.S. tons (t)
U.S. tons (t)	0.90718	metric tons (t)	1.1023	U.S. tons (t)
Torque/Work Force				
inch-pounds (lbf.in)	11.298	Newton-centimeters (N.cm)	0.08851	inch-pounds (lbf.in)
foot-pounds (lbf.ft)	1.3558	Newton-meters (N.m)	0.7376	foot-pounds (lbf.ft)
Pressure/Vacuum				
inches of mercury (inHg)	3.37685	kiloPascals (kPa)	0.29613	inches of mercury (inHg)
pounds per square inch (psi)	6.895	kiloPascals (kPa)	0.14503	pounds per square inch (psi)

Measurement	Subtract	Divide By	Equals/Measurement	Multiply By	Add	Equals
Temperature						
degrees Fahrenheit (ºF)	32	1.8	degrees Celsius (ºC)	1.8	32	degrees Fahrenheit (ºF)

MAINTENANCE RECORDS

After scheduled services are performed, record the date, odometer reading and who performed the service in the boxes provided after the maintenance interval. Any additional information from "Owner Checks and Services" or "Periodic Maintenance" can be added on the following record pages. **In addition, retain all maintenance receipts.** The owner information portfolio is a convenient place to store them.

LUBRICATION SERVICE RECORD

KEY TO SERVICES

A – Lubrication & Inspection
A1 – Motor Oil & Filter Change
A2 – Transmission Oil Change
A3 – Drive Axle Oil Change
A4 – Wheel Bearing Service
B – Prescribed Service
C – Prescribed Service
D – Prescribed Service
E – Prescribed Service

MILEAGE	SERVICES									JOB PERFORMED	
	A	A1	A2	A3	A4	B	C	D	E	DATE	BY
1											
2											
3											
4											
5											
6											
7											
8											
9											
10											
11											
12											
13											
14											
15											
16											
17											
18											
19											
20											
21											
22											
23											
24											
25											
26											
27											
28											
29											
30											

LUBRICATION SERVICE RECORD

KEY TO SERVICES

A – Lubrication & Inspection
A1 -- Motor Oil & Filter Change
A2 -- Transmission Oil Change
A3 – Drive Axle Oil Change
A4 – Wheel Bearing Service
B – Prescribed Service
C – Prescribed Service
D – Prescribed Service
E – Prescribed Service

MILEAGE	SERVICES									JOB PERFORMED	
	A	A1	A2	A3	A4	B	C	D	E	DATE	BY
1											
2											
3											
4											
5											
6											
7											
8											
9											
10											
11											
12											
13											
14											
15											
16											
17											
18											
19											
20											
21											
22											
23											
24											
25											
26											
27											
28											
29											
30											
31											
32											
33											
34											
35											
36											
37											
38											
39											
40											
41											
42											
43											
44											
45											
46											
47											
48											
49											
50											

BATTERY RECORD

MAKE	TYPE	DATE INSTALLED	REPAIRS	DATE REPLACED	SERVICE	
					MONTHS	MILES

TIRE RECORD

MAKE	TYPE	PLY	DATE INSTALLED	REPAIRS	DATE REPLACED	SERVICE	
						MONTHS	MILES

BATTERY RECORD

MAKE	TYPE	DATE INSTALLED	REPAIRS	DATE REPLACED	SERVICE	
					MONTHS	MILES

TIRE RECORD

MAKE	TYPE	PLY	DATE INSTALLED	REPAIRS	DATE REPLACED	SERVICE	
						MONTHS	MILES

TECHNICAL PUBLICATIONS

Manager Vance Buell

OPERATIONS

TECHNICAL WRITERS

Robert Buckholtz - OR
William Birch - OR
James Magee - OR
Fran Weisenstein - IN

CREATIVE DESIGNERS

Kelly Stroble - OR
Aaron Graham - OR
Julie Slagle - IN

TECHNICAL ILLUSTRATIONS

Kelly Stroble, Aaron Graham, Josh Means

The Executive 2005 Technical Writer James Magee
The Executive 2005 Layout Aaron Graham
The Executive 2005 Cover Design Aaron Graham

PRINTING

Holiday Graphics - IN

ONLINE

CORPORATE SITE
www.monaco-online.com

ONLINE TOURS
www.monaco-online.com/tours/

The Executive 2005

Index

A

ABS/ATC System (Anti-lock Brakes) 439
Air Conditioning - Roof 186
Auto Temp Start 188
Heat Pump 187
Operations 186
Return Air Filters 188
Air Dryer 429
Air Dryer Cycle 432
Desiccant Cartridge 431
Desiccant-Type Air Dryer 432
Air Filter Bed 508
Air Filter Minder 508
Changing the Filter 508
Air Mattress 236
Troubleshooting 238
Air Spring Inspections 433
Air Supply System 425
Air Coupler - Universal 428
Air Fittings 427
Air Governor 426
Air Storage Tanks 426
Air System - Charging (External) 429
Aladdin™ Engine Display 417
Aladdin™ System 246
Compass Calibration 248
Operations 246
System Options 248
All Electric (OPT) 374
Alternator 379
House Batteries 377
Main Battery Disconnect 379
Meters 375
Overview 375
Remotes 376
Wiring Systems Interfaced 380
Alternator 392
Alternator Testing Procedure 393
Appliances - Introduction 167
Aqua-Hot 190
Aqua-Hot Overall View 195
Bay Thermostat 193
Coolant Tank 193
Fuel Filter/Water Separator 194
Troubleshooting 192
Automatic Appliance Selector 182

B

Backing Up A Motorhome 59
Battery 364
Battery Charge Time & Consumption Rate 369
Battery Maintenance 366
Battery Voltage & Current 368
House Batteries 365
How It Works 364
Starting Battery 364
Testing the Battery 366
Battery - Chassis 386
Battery Cut-off Switch 327
Battery Disconnect - Chassis 385
Battery Disconnect - House 326
Battery Specification Chart 522
Bedroom Panel 263
Brake - Auxiliary (Engine Brake) 489
Brake Systems 436
Air Brakes 436
Brake Adjustment/Slack Adjuster 437
Brake Systems - Back-Up 438
Park & Emergency Brake System 436
Breaking Camp 66
Bulb Usage - Interior 373
Bulb Usage Chart - Exterior 418

C

Carbon Monoxide Detector 113
Alarm 115
Cleaning & Maintenance 116
Operation 114
Testing 115
Ceiling 146
Cell Phone Antenna 244
Charge Air Cooler 488
Chassis - Introduction 423
Chassis Electrical - Introduction 385
Citizen Band (CB) Radio 243
Cold Weather Conditions 293
Cold Weather Storage 293
Collision Warning System (OPT) 45
CWS Components 45
CWS Situations 48
Data Recorder 51
Driver Display Unit 46
Side Sensors 48
Smart Cruise® 47

Console **397**
Leveling Controls 399
Parking Brake 398
Transmission Shift Selector 397
Cooktop - All Electric (OPT) **184**
Cooktop - LP-Gas **182**
Cleaning & Care 184
Coolant **482**
Coolant Additives - SCA 485
Countertops **150**
Solid Surface 150
Customer Relations **18**

D

Dash - Indicator Lamps **400**
Gauges 401
Operation 403
Switches 404
Dash Air Conditioner & Heater Controls **408**
About Refrigerants 411
Diagnostic Plug Location **416**
Diagnostic Plug (Engine) 416
Dinette Bed Conversion (OPT) **236**
Dishwasher (OPT) **202**
Distribution Panel - House 12 Volt **362**
Distribution Panels - House 240/120 ..... **359**
Circuit Breaker 360
Door - Sliding **233**
Drive Axle & Drive Shaft **450**
Lubrication Maintenance 454
U-Joint Angles, Phasing & Drive Shaft Balance ... 453
Driving & Safety **35**
Driving Tips 40
Familiarize Yourself 35
Inspections 35
Mirror Adjust (Manual) 35
Safety Seat Belts 37
Dry Camping Tips **63**
Dumping System (OPT) **288**

E

EGR Filter (Detroit Only) **509**
Electric Baseboard Heater (OPT) **196**
Emergency Roadside Procedures **67**
Dead Chassis Battery 71
In Case of Flat Tire 69
Light - Retractable 70
OnStar® (OPT) 68
Running Out of Fuel 70
Engine - General Information **471**
Engine "No Start" - Flow Chart **419**
Engine Diagram **472**
Cummins - I.S.M-II Standard 472
Cummins ISX (OPT) 474
Detroit Diesel (OPT) 476
Engine Oil **480**
Engine Shutdown **482**
Extended Engine Shutdown 482
Entry Door **211**
Air Seal 211
Door Bell 213
Latch Adjustments 212
Screen Door 212
Entry Step **207**
Operation 207
Stepwell 209
Stepwell Cover 209
Tips 208
Equipment - Introduction **207**
Escape (Egress) Window **118**
Exterior Care **123**
Bright Metal 126
Corrosion 123
Drying 124
Tire Care 125
Washing 123
Waxing 124
Wheels - Aluminum 126
Exterior Maintenance **127**
Fiberglass 127
Roof Care & Seal Inspections 127

F

Fabrics 130
Fabric Cleaning Codes 130
Fabric Specifications Charts 132
Leather 141
Ultratech..... 141
Vinyl 139
Fans 230
Bathroom Fan 231
Exhaust Fan 230
Faucets 282
Fire Extinguisher 117
Floors..... 142
Carpet Cleaning 142
Laminate Floor (OPT) 145
Tile Floors 143
Front Axle 441
Alignment 442
Center Link 447
Control Arm Bushings 448
Drag Link 447
Lubrication Maintenance Safety 445
Steering Column 446
Steering Components 445
Steering Spindles 448
Fuel System 497
Fuel Filters 499
Fuel Lines & Hoses 499
Fuel Requirements 497
Fuel Sender 498
Fuel Tank 497
Rear Start Switches 502
Fuses 362
Knowing When to Say When 363
Tools of the Trade 363
Fuses & Circuits 387
Isolator Relay 389
Rear Start Switches 388
Relays 389

G

Generator - 240 Volt AC 333
Generator Exercise 337
Generator Fuel 336
Powering the Equipment 335
Pre-Start Checks 334
Resetting the Circuit Breaker 337
Starting the Generator 334
Stopping the Generator 335
Generator - Auto Gen Start (RC7 GS) 338
GFCI Breakers & Outlets 361
Glossary of Terms 21

H

Height Control Valves 434
Adjusting Ride Height 435
Hitch 55
Tow Plug Connection 56
Using the Rear Receiver 55
House Electrical - Introduction 325
Hydraulic System 502
Electric Override (ISM only) 505
Electric Thermovalve (ISX Engine) 505
Fan Motor 506
Hydraulic Cooler 503
Hydraulic Fan System 504
Hydraulic Filter 506
Hydraulic Pump 503
Hydraulic Reservoir 507
Switching Valve 505
Thermovalve (ISM & Series 60 Engines) 504

I

Interior Care 129
Cockpit 129
Introduction 17
Inverter - 3000 Watt 341
Battery Charging with the Inverter 342
Battery Temperature Sensor 343
Main Menu Display 344
Meters Menu 344
Pass-Through AC Power 343
Programming the Inverter 345
RC7 GS Remote 341
Re-booting the Inverter 348
Stand-By Operation 342
Inverter-Sine Wave (OPT) 349
Automatic Generator Start Programming 355
Battery Charging 353
Battery Temperature Sensor 354
Inverter Facts 358
Meters Menu 354
Pass-Through Power 354
Programming & Resetting 352
Remote 350
Stand-by Operation 353

J,K

Kenwood Receiver-Monitor 244
Kenwood GPS Navigation 245
Keyless Entry 214
Bay Doors - Unlock 216
Key Fob 216
Keyless Entry Code Programming 215

L

Ladder - Rear 242
Leveling - Air 457
Automatic Air Leveling 460
Manual Air Leveling 461
Leveling - Hydraulic (OPT) 457
Manual Leveling 466
Automatic Leveling 467
Retracting Leveling Jacks 468
Lights - Interior Halogen 373
Limited Warranty Transfer Application 31
LP-Gas Consumption 318
LP-Gas Detector 306
Alarm 308
Maintenance 308
Testing 307
LP-Gas Distribution Lines 317
LP-Gas Emergency Procedures - Checklist 309
LP-Gas Fundamentals 312
LP-Gas Hose Inspection 316
LP-Gas Regulator 314
LP-Gas Safety Tips 319
LP-Gas Systems 305
LP-Gas Tank 309
Measurement 309
Tank Capacity 310
Tank Filling 310
Tank Operation 312
Lubrication Charts 513
Cummins - ISM 513
Cummins - ISX (OPT) 515
Detroit Diesel Series 60 (OPT) 517
Lubrication Maintenance 509

M,N,O

Maintenance Records 524
Metric/U.S. Conversion Chart 523
Microwave/Convection Oven 178
Cleaning the Microwave/Convection Oven 179
Setting the Clock 179
Mold & Mildew 153

P

Pest Control 155
Plumbing Manifold 272
Power Sunvisor 233
Power Super Slide (OPT) 240
Pre-trip Preparations - Checklist 52
Privacy Drapery Electric (OPT) 232

Q,R

Radio-Bedroom 241
Rear View System 57
See Vision (OPT) 58
Refrigerator - Norcold 167
Air in Propane Gas Supply Lines 173
Control Panel 169
Cooling Unit Fans 171
Doors 171
Icemaker 170
Interior Light 172
Operation Specifics 168
Refrigerator Alarm 171
Service 173
Storage Procedures 172
Refrigerator - Residential (OPT) 173
Reporting Safety Defects 18

S

Safety Legend 15
Satellite Radio (OPT) 249
Satellite System (OPT) 256
"Instant On" Operation 258
In-Motion System (OPT) 259
Operation 257
Satellite Receiver 256
Tracvision System (OPT) 257
Seat Controls 234
Swivel Seats 235
Security System (OPT) 105
Service Center 298
Service Suggestions 19
Be Reasonable With Your Requests 20
Inspect the Work Properly 20
No Looking Over the Technician's Shoulder 20
Prepare a List 20
Prepare for the Appointment 20
Set-up Procedure Checklist 61
Shock Absorber 456
Shore Power Hook-up 327
AC120 Volt & Amp Meters 332
Power Cord Reel (OPT) 331
Shower 146
Slide-out Operation 217
Bedroom Slide-out 221
Care & Maintenance - Carefree Awning 225
Care & Maintenance - Girard Awning 230
Door Awning - Girard 229
Four-Channel Remote (OPT) 229
Main Room Slide-out 218
Manual Override - Electric Bedroom Slide-out 222
Patio Awning - Girard 226
Slide-out Cover 223
Storm Precautions 226
Wardrobe Slide-out 223
Window Awning - Girard (OPT) 229
Window Awnings - Manual Carefree 224
Smoke Detector 112
Maintenance 113
Operation 112
Testing 112
Troubleshooting 113
Soap Dispenser - Liquid 283
Sofa Bed Conversion 235
Solar Panel (OPT) 370
Charge Controller 371
Solar Panel Care 372
Specifications Charts 519
Belts & Filters 521
Chassis Fluid Capacities 520
Dimensions 519
Engine Specifications 520
Generator Specifications 520
Tank Capacities 519
Stainless Steel Surface 151
Starting Procedure 478
Cold Weather 478
Normal Starting 478
Steering Column & Smart Wheel 394
Smart Wheel Operation 394
Tilt & Telescope 397
Wiper Function 396
Steering Gear 448
Storage 158
Long Term 159
Removal from Storage 162
Short Term 158
Winter Storage Checklist 161
Storage - Under bed 239
Super Slide (OPT) 239
System Control Center 415

T

Tag Axle 454
Oil Change Intervals 456
Taking Delivery 18
Customer Responsibilities 19
Dealer Responsibilities 19
Monaco Responsibilities 18
Tires 76
Air Pressure Checklist 82
Importance of Air Pressure 77
Inspecting & Pressure 80
Storage of Tires - Long Term..... 85
Supporting When Leveling 83
Tire Chart - Goodyear 78
Tire Pressure Inflation Guideline 78
Tire Rotation 84
Tire Vibration 84
Tread 84
Toilet 290
Cleaning & Maintenance 291
Drain Traps & Auto Vents 292
Towing Procedures 74
Brake - Disabling Parking Brake 75
Transfer Switch 332
Transmission 490
Periodic Inspections 493
Shift Selector 490
Transmission Check Indicator 492
Transmission Lubricating Fluid 495
Fluid Levels - Cold Check 496
Fluid Levels - Hot Check 496
TV & Entertainment Components 249
Antenna Boost 251
Connections - Cable TV, Computer & Telephone .. 250
Television - Ceiling Mounted (OPT) 250
Television (Front) Lockout Feature 250
Television Inputs 250
Television/Entertainment System - Bedroom 255
Television/Entertainment System - Front 252
TV Antenna 251
Typical Water Bay 299

U

Universal Remote 260

V

Vendor List 25
Views 103
Curbside 104
Front 103
Rear 103
Roadside 104

W,X,Y,Z

Wall Coverings 147
Wall Thermostat 185
Warranty - Limited: 2005 Roadmaster Chassis 6
Disclaimer of Consequential & Incidental Damages ... 9
Events Discharging Warrantor from Under Warranty . 8
How to Get Service 8
Legal Remedies 9
Limitations of Implied Warranties 6
What the Warranty Covers 7
What the Warranty Does Not Cover 8
What We Will Do to Correct Problems 7
Warranty - Limited: The Executive 2005 1
Disclaimer of Consequential Damages 4
Events Discharging Warrantor from Obligation Under Warranty 4
How to Get Service 3
Legal Remedies 5
Limitations of Implied Warranties 2
What the Warranty Covers 2
What the Warranty Does Not Cover 4
What We Will Do to Correct Problems 2
Warranty Information File 10
Washer-Dryer 198
Test Procedure 199
Washer-Dryer Maintenance 200
Winterizing the Washer-Dryer 201
Washer-Dryer Prepared 197
Waste Water Systems 284
Proper Waste Disposal 284
Tank Flush 287
Waste Drain & Sewage Tanks 285
Waste Drain Hose 285
What Not to Put in Waste Holding Tanks 284
What to Put in Holding Tanks - Black Tank 286
What to Put in Holding Tanks - Grey Tank 286

Water - Hose Reel 271
City Hook-Up 271
Fresh Tank Fill 272
Water Dispenser - Hot 176
Water Filters 276
Galley Water Filter & Sanitizer (OPT) 277
Maintenance 279
Water Pump 273
Pressure Accumulator Tank 275
Water Pump Troubleshooting 274
Water Systems 281
Disinfecting Fresh Water 281
Troubleshooting 281
Water Systems - Introduction 267
Water Systems Diagram 300
Water Tanks 268
Gravity Fill 270
Measurements & Calibration 268
Weighing the Motorhome 88
Six-Point Weighing (Example) 93
Weight Label 92
Wheel Mounting 86
Window Treatments 152
Day/Night Shades 152
Mini blinds 152
Windows 151
Condensation 151
Winterization 293
De-Winterization 297
Using Air Pressure 294
Using Nontoxic Antifreeze 296
Wood Care 148

NOTES